



unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Mark

Version 27

Copyrights & Licensing

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Date: 2020-03-25

Version: 27

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Literal Text

Date: 2020-03-25

Version: 10

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text

Date: 2020-03-25

Version: 10

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy

Date: 2020-03-25

Version: 12

Published by: unfoldingWord®

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

Date: 2020-03-25

Version: 14

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Greek New Testament

Date: 2020-02-20

Version: 0.12

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible

Date: 2020-02-20

Version: 2.1.11

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Copyright © 2019 by unfoldingWord

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/> or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: "The original work by unfoldingWord is available from unfoldingword.org/utn". You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at unfoldingword.org/contact/.

Table of Contents

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes	14
Mark	14
Introduction to the Gospel of Mark	15
Mark 1	17
Mark 2	63
Mark 3	95
Mark 4	132
Mark 5	174
Mark 6	218
Mark 7	275
Mark 8	313
Mark 9	353
Mark 10	404
Mark 11	459
Mark 12	493
Mark 13	541
Mark 14	580
Mark 15	653
Mark 16	701
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy	722
Abstract Nouns	723
Active or Passive	725
Apostrophe	728
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information	730
Background Information	733
Biblical Money	736
Connecting Words and Phrases	738
Copy or Borrow Words	742
Direct and Indirect Quotations	744
Double Negatives	746
Doublet	748
Ellipsis	750
Euphemism	752
Exclamations	754
Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'	756
First, Second or Third Person	758
Forms of You	760
How to Translate Names	761
Hyperbole	765
Hypothetical Situations	769
Idiom	772
Inclusive and Exclusive "We"	774
Introduction of a New Event	776

Introduction of New and Old Participants	779
Irony	782
Litotes	785
Merism	787
Metaphor	789
Metonymy	795
Nominal Adjectives	797
Numbers	799
Order of Events	802
Ordinal Numbers	804
Parables	806
Parallelism	808
Personification	811
Proverbs	813
Quotations and Quote Margins	815
Reflexive Pronouns	817
Rhetorical Question	820
Simile	823
Symbolic Action	826
Symbolic Language	828
Synecdoche	830
Textual Variants	832
Translate Unknowns	834
Translating Son and Father	837
Verse Bridges	839
When Masculine Words Include Women	841
unfoldingWord® Translation Words	843
Abiathar	844
abomination, abominable	845
Abraham, Abram	846
accuse, accused, accuser, accusation	847
adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress	848
adversary, enemy	849
advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels	850
afflict, affliction, distress	851
age, aged	852
amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, ...	853
amen, truly	854
ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather	855
Andrew	856
angel, archangel	857
anoint, anointed, anointing	859
apostle, apostleship	860
appoint, appointed	861
ash, ashes	862
asleep, fall asleep, sleep, sleeper, sleepless	863

assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting	864
astray, go astray, went astray, lead astray, stray	865
authority	866
baptize, baptized, baptism	867
Barabbas	868
Bartholomew	869
basket, basketfuls	870
bear, bearer, carry	871
beast	872
Beelzebul	873
beg, beggar, needy	874
believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief	875
beloved	877
Bethany	878
betray, betrayer	879
bind, bond, bound	880
blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous	881
bless, blessed, blessing	882
blood	884
body	885
bold, boldness, emboldened	886
bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee	887
bread	888
bridegroom	889
brother	890
burnt offering, offering by fire	891
bury, buried, burial	892
Caesar	893
Caesarea, Caesarea Philippi	894
call, call out	895
camel	897
Capernaum	898
captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured	899
cast out, driving out, throw out	900
centurion	901
children, child, offspring	902
chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect	904
Christ, Messiah	905
clean, wash	907
clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments	909
command, commandment	910
commander	911
commit, committed, commitment	912
compassion, compassionate	913
condemn, condemned, condemnation	914
confess, confession	915

cornerstone	916
corrupt witness, false report, false testimony, false witness	917
council	918
courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage, ...	919
court, courtyard	921
covenant	922
create, created, creation, creator	924
cross	925
crown, crowned	926
crucify, crucified	927
cry, cry out, outcry	928
cure, cured, heal, healed, healing, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy	929
curse, cursed, cursing	931
curtain	932
Cyrene	933
darkness	934
David	935
day	936
deceive, deceit, deceiver, deceitful, deception, illusions	937
defile, defiled	938
delight	939
demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit	940
demon-possessed	941
desert, wilderness	942
desolate, desolation, alone, deserted	943
devour	944
die, dead, deadly, death,	945
disciple	947
divorce	949
doctrine, teaching, beliefs, instructions, knowledge	950
dove, pigeon	951
earth, earthen, earthly	952
Edom, Edomite, Idumea	953
elder, older, old	954
Elijah	955
endure, endurance	956
envy, covet	957
eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever	958
evil, wicked, unpleasant	960
ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins	962
face, facial	963
faith	964
faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy	965
false prophet	967
famine	968
fast, fasting	969

fear, afraid, dread	970
feast, feasting	971
festival	972
fig	973
fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot	974
fishermen, fishers	975
flesh	976
fool, foolish, folly	977
footstool	978
forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned	979
forsake, forsaken, leave	981
fruit, fruitful, unfruitful	982
fulfill, fulfilled, carried out	984
Galilee, Galilean	985
gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway	986
generation	987
Gentile	988
Gethsemane	989
glory, glorious, glorify	990
God	992
God the Father, heavenly Father, Father	994
Golgotha	996
good news, gospel	997
good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best	999
govern, government, governor, proconsul	1001
grain, grainfields	1002
grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place	1003
groan, groans, groanings	1004
guilt, guilty	1005
hand	1006
hard, harden, hardness	1008
harvest, reap	1009
head	1010
heart	1011
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly	1012
heir	1014
hell, lake of fire	1015
Herod, Herod Antipas	1016
Herodias	1017
high priest, chief priests	1018
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit	1020
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred	1022
honey, honeycomb	1024
honor	1025
hour	1026
hour, moment, immediately, for a while	1027

house	1028
house of God, Yahweh's house	1029
household	1030
hypocrite, hypocrisy	1031
image, carved image, cast metal images, figure, carved figure, statue	1032
inherit, inheritance, heir	1033
instruct, instruction, instructors	1034
interpret, interpretation, interpreter	1035
Isaac	1036
Isaiah	1037
Israel, Israelite, Jacob	1038
Israel, Israelites	1039
it is written	1040
James (son of Alphaeus)	1041
James (son of Zebedee)	1042
Jericho	1043
Jerusalem	1044
Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus	1045
Jew, Jewish	1047
John (the apostle)	1048
John (the Baptist)	1049
Jordan River, Jordan	1050
joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing	1051
Judas Iscariot	1053
Judea	1054
kin, kinfolk, kindred, kinsman	1055
kind [NOT kindness]	1056
King of the Jews	1057
king, kingdom, kingship	1058
kingdom	1059
kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven	1061
kiss	1063
know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish	1064
labor, laborer, work, hard work	1065
lamp	1066
lampstand	1067
law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law	1068
lawful, unlawful, not lawful, lawless, lawlessness	1070
leper, leprosy	1072
life, live, living, alive	1073
light, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten	1075
like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if	1076
locust	1077
loins, waist	1078
lord, Lord, master, sir	1079
lots, casting lots	1081

love, beloved	1082
lust, lustful, passions, desires	1084
Mary Magdalene	1085
Mary, the mother of Jesus	1086
Matthew, Levi	1087
mercy, merciful	1088
messenger	1090
might, mighty, mighty works	1091
mind, mindful, remind, reminder, likeminded	1092
miracle, wonder, sign	1093
mock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, laughingstock	1095
Moses	1096
Most High	1097
Mount of Olives	1098
multiply, multiplied, multiplication	1099
mystery, hidden truth	1100
name	1101
nation	1102
Nazareth, Nazarene	1103
neighbor, neighborhood, neighboring	1104
oath, swear, swearing, swear by	1105
obey, obedient	1106
oil	1107
olive	1108
on high, in the highest	1109
palace	1110
parable	1111
partial, partiality	1112
Passover	1113
peace, peaceful, peacemakers	1114
people of God	1115
people, people group,	1116
perish	1118
persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue	1119
Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas	1120
Pharisee	1121
Philip, the apostle	1122
pig, pork, swine	1123
Pilate	1124
plant, planted, implanted, replanted, transplanted, sow	1125
possess, possessed, possession, dispossess	1126
power, powerful, powerfully	1127
pray, prayer	1129
preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation	1130
priest, priesthood	1132
prison, prisoner, imprison	1134

profit, profitable, unprofitable	1135
promise, promised	1136
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess	1137
prostrate, worship	1139
proud, pride, prideful	1140
purple	1141
quench, quenched, unquenchable	1142
Rabbi	1143
raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up	1144
ransom, ransomed	1146
rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness	1147
rebuke	1148
receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance	1149
reed	1150
reject, rejected, rejection	1151
repent, repentance	1152
report, reported, reputation	1153
rest, rested, restless	1154
resurrection	1155
return	1156
reveal, revealed, revelation	1157
reward, prize, deserve,	1158
right hand	1159
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, ...	1160
robe, robed	1162
rule, ruler, ruling, overrules	1163
run, runner, rushed, quickly went, scattered, flows	1164
Sabbath	1165
sacrifice, sacrifices, offering	1166
Sadducee	1168
sandal	1169
Satan, devil, evil one	1170
save, saved, safe, salvation	1172
scribe	1174
Sea of Galilee, Sea of Kinnereth, lake of Gennesaret, Sea of Tiberias	1175
seed, semen	1176
seek, search, look for	1177
seize, seizure	1178
send, sent, send out	1179
servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women	1180
sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication	1182
shadow, overshadow, shade	1183
shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach	1184
shepherd, chief shepherd	1186
Sidon, Sidonians	1188
sign, proof, reminder	1189

silver	1190
Simon the Zealot	1191
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning	1192
sister	1194
skull	1195
soldier, warrior	1196
son	1197
Son of God, the Son	1199
Son of Man, son of man	1201
soul, self	1202
spirit, spiritual	1203
staff, clubs	1205
strength, strengthen, strong	1206
stumble, reeling	1208
suffer, suffering	1209
sword, swordsmen	1211
synagogue	1212
tabernacle	1213
tax, taxed, taxation, taxpayers, tax collector,	1214
teach, teaching, untaught	1216
teacher, Teacher	1217
temple	1218
tempt, temptation	1220
test, tested, testing, testing in the fire	1221
testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness	1222
the twelve, the eleven	1224
thief, rob, robber, robbery, bandits	1225
Thomas	1226
thorn, thorn bush, thistle	1227
time, untimely, date	1228
to minister, ministry	1229
tongue, language	1230
torment, tormented, tormentors	1231
tradition	1232
tremble, stagger	1233
trespass	1234
tribulation, distresses, trouble	1235
tribute, contribution, fined	1236
trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, ...	1237
true, truth	1238
tunic	1240
turn, turn away, turn back, return	1241
Tyre, Tyrians	1243
understand, understanding, thinking	1244
unleavened bread	1245
vain, vanity	1246

vine	1247
vineyard	1248
voice	1249
walk, walked	1250
waste, wasted, wasteland, becomes weak	1251
watch (biblical time)	1252
watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out	1253
watchtower, tower	1254
water	1255
will of God	1256
wine, wineskin, new wine	1257
winepress	1258
wise, wisdom	1259
woe	1260
womb	1261
word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, ...	1262
work, works, deeds	1264
world, worldly	1265
worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless	1266
wrong, wronged, wrongdoer, mistreat, hurt, hurtful	1267
year	1268
yeast, leaven, unleavened	1269
Zebedee	1270
Contributors	1271
unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors	1271
unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors	1277
unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors	1278
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors	1278
unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors	1279



unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Mark

Introduction to the Gospel of Mark

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of the Book of Mark

1. Introduction (1:1-13)
2. The ministry of Jesus in Galilee
3. Early ministry (1:14-3:6)
4. Jesus becomes more popular among the people (3:7-5:43)
5. Moving away from Galilee and then returning (6:1-8:26)
6. Progress toward Jerusalem, repeated times when Jesus predicts his own death; the disciples misunderstand, and Jesus teaches them how difficult it will be to follow him (8:27-10:52)
7. Last days of ministry and preparation for final conflict in Jerusalem (11:1-13:37)
8. The death of Christ and the empty tomb (14:1-16:8)

What is the Book of Mark about?

The Gospel of Mark is one of four books in the New Testament that describe some of the life of Jesus Christ. The authors of the gospels wrote about different aspects of who Jesus was and what he did. Mark wrote much about how Jesus suffered and died on the cross. He did this to encourage his readers who were being persecuted. Mark also explained Jewish customs and some Aramaic words. This may indicate that Mark expected most of his first readers to be Gentiles.

How should the title of this book be translated?

Translators may choose to call this book by its traditional title, “The Gospel of Mark,” or “The Gospel according to Mark.” They may also choose a title that may be clearer, such as, “The Good News about Jesus that Mark wrote.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Who wrote the Book of Mark?

The book does not give the name of the author. However, since early Christian times, most Christians have thought that the author was Mark. Mark was also known as John Mark. He was a close friend of Peter. Mark may not have witnessed what Jesus said and did. But many scholars think that Mark wrote in his gospel what Peter told him about Jesus.

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

What were Jesus’ teaching methods?

The people regarded Jesus as a rabbi. A rabbi is a teacher of God’s law. Jesus taught in similar ways as other religious teachers in Israel. He had students who followed him wherever he went. These students were called disciples. He often told parables. Parables are stories that teach moral lessons. (See: [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [the law](#) and [disciple](#) and [parable](#))

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

What are the Synoptic Gospels?

The Gospels of Matthew, Mark, and Luke are called the Synoptic Gospels because they have many similar passages. The word “synoptic” means to “see together.”

The texts are considered “parallel” when they are the same or almost the same among two or three gospels. When translating parallel passages, translators should use the same wording and make them as similar as possible.

Why does Jesus refer to himself as the “Son of Man”?

In the gospels, Jesus calls himself the “Son of Man.” It is a reference to Daniel 7:13-14. In this passage there is a person described as a “son of man.” That means the person was someone who looked like a human being. God gave authority to the son of man to rule over the nations forever. And all the people will worship him forever.

Jews of Jesus’ time did not use “Son of Man” as a title for anyone. Therefore, Jesus used it for himself to help them understand who he truly was. (See: [Son of Man, son of man](#))

Translating the title “Son of Man” can be difficult in many languages. Readers may misunderstand a literal translation. Translators can consider alternatives, such as “The Human One.” It may also be helpful to include a footnote to explain the title.

Why does Mark frequently use terms indicating short periods of time?

The Gospel of Mark uses the word “immediately” forty-two times. Mark does this to make the events more exciting and vivid. It moves the reader quickly from one event to the next.

What are the major issues in the text of the Book of Mark?

The following verses are found in older versions of the Bible but are not included in most modern versions. Translators are advised not to include these verses. However, if in the translators’ region, there are older versions of the Bible that include one or more of these verses, the translators can include them. If they are included, they should be put inside square brackets ([]) to indicate that they were probably not original to Mark’s Gospel.

- “If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.” (7:16)
- “where their worm never dies and the fire is never quenched” (9:44)
- “where their worm never dies and the fire is never quenched” (9:46)
- “And the scripture was fulfilled that says, ‘He was counted with the lawless ones’” (15:28)

The following passage is not found in the earliest manuscripts. Most Bibles include this passage, but modern Bibles put it in brackets ([]) or indicate in some way that this passage may not have been original to Mark’s Gospel. Translators are advised to do something similar as the modern versions of the Bible.

- “Early on the first day of the week, after he arose, he appeared first to Mary Magdalene, from whom he had cast out seven demons. She went and told those who were with him, while they were mourning and weeping. They heard that he was alive and that he had been seen by her, but they did not believe. After these things he appeared in a different form to two of them, as they were walking out into the country. They went and told the rest of the disciples, but they did not believe them. Jesus later appeared to the eleven as they were reclining at the table, and he rebuked them for their unbelief and hardness of heart, because they did not believe those who saw him after he rose from the dead. He said to them, ‘Go into all the world, and preach the gospel to the entire creation. He who believes and is baptized will be saved, and he who does not believe will be condemned. These signs will go with those who believe: In my name they will cast out demons. They will speak in new languages. They will pick up snakes with their hands, and if they drink anything deadly, it will not hurt them. They will lay hands on the sick, and they will get well.’ After the Lord had spoken to them, he was taken up into heaven and sat down at the right hand of God. The disciples left and preached everywhere, while the Lord worked with them and confirmed the word by the signs that went with them.” (16:9-20)

(See: [Textual Variants](#))

Mark 1

Mark 1 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 1:2-3, which are words from the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

“You can make me clean”

Leprosy was a disease of the skin that made a person unclean and unable to properly worship God. Jesus is capable of making people physically “clean” or healthy as well as spiritually “clean” or right with God. (See: [clean](#), [wash](#))

“The kingdom of God is near”

Scholars debate whether the “kingdom of God” was present at this time or is something that is still coming. English translations frequently use the phrase “at hand,” but this can create difficulty for translators. Other versions use the phrase “is coming” and “has come near.”

Mark 1:1

General Information:

The book of Mark begins with the prophet Isaiah's foretelling of the coming of John the Baptist, who baptizes Jesus. The author is Mark, also called John Mark, who is the son of one of the several women named Mary mentioned in the four Gospels. He is also the nephew of Barnabas.

the Son of God (ULT) who is the Son of God (UST)

This is an important title for Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of Jesus Christ](#)
- [of God](#)
- [the Son of God](#)
- [gospel](#)
- [Christ](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [about Jesus the Messiah](#)
- [of God](#)
- [who is the Son of God](#)
- [good news](#)
- [the Messiah](#)

ULT

¹ This is the beginning of the [gospel of Jesus Christ, the Son of God](#).

UST

¹ This is the beginning of the [good news about Jesus the Messiah who is the Son of God](#).

Mark 1:2

before your face (ULT)

ahead of you (UST)

This is an idiom that means “ahead of you.” (See: [Idiom](#))

your face...your way (ULT)

ahead of...you...when you come (UST)

Here the word “your” refers to Jesus and is singular. When you translate this, use the pronoun “your” because this is a quote from a prophet, and he did not use Jesus’ name. (See: [Forms of You](#))

the one who (ULT)

He (UST)

This refers to the messenger.

will prepare your way (ULT)

will make people ready for when you come (UST)

Doing this represents preparing the people for the Lord’s arrival. Alternate translation: “will prepare the people for your arrival” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [prophet](#)
- [Isaiah](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [I am sending](#)
- [face](#)
- [As](#)
- [it is written](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [prophet](#)
- [Isaiah...he](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [I am sending](#)
- [ahead of](#)
- [It began just as...said that it would when...wrote long ago](#)
- [It began just as...said that it would when...wrote long ago](#)

ULT

² [As it is written](#) in [Isaiah](#) the [prophet](#), “Behold, [I am sending](#) my [messenger](#) before your [face](#), the one who will prepare your way.”

UST

² [It began just as](#) the [prophet](#) [Isaiah said that it would when he wrote long ago](#), “Look, [I am sending](#) my [messenger ahead of](#) you. He will make people ready for when you come.”

Mark 1:3

The voice of one calling out in the wilderness (ULT)
He will call out to anyone who hears him in the desolate place (UST)

This can be expressed as a sentence. Alternate translation: "The voice of one calling out in the wilderness is heard" or "They hear the sound of someone calling out in the wilderness"

Make ready the way of the Lord; make his paths straight (ULT)
Make yourselves ready to welcome the Lord. Get everything organized for his coming (UST)

These two phrases mean the same thing. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Make ready the way of the Lord (ULT)
Make yourselves ready to welcome the Lord (UST)

"Get the road ready for the Lord." Doing this represents being prepared to hear the Lord's message when he comes. People do this by repenting of their sins. Alternate translation: "Prepare to hear the Lord's message when he comes" or "Repent and be ready for the Lord to come" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of the Lord](#)
- [wilderness](#)
- [The voice](#)
- [of one calling out](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the Lord](#)
- [desolate place](#)
- [He will call out to anyone who hears him](#)
- [He will call out to anyone who hears him](#)

ULT

³ [The voice of one calling out](#) in the [wilderness](#), 'Make ready the way [of the Lord](#); make his paths straight.'

UST

³ [He will call out to anyone who hears him](#) in the [desolate place](#), 'Make yourselves ready to welcome [the Lord](#). Get everything organized for his coming.'

Mark 1:4

General Information:

In these verses the words "he," "him," and "his" refer to John.

John came (ULT)

The messenger that Isaiah wrote about was John...

John...He (UST)

Be sure your reader understands that John was the messenger spoken of by the prophet Isaiah in the previous verse.

Translation Words - ULT

- baptizing
- a baptism
- of sins
- the forgiveness
- of repentance
- John
- wilderness
- preaching

Translation Words - UST

- People called him...The Baptizer...was baptizing people
- Then I will baptize you
- that you have sinned
- so that God may forgive you
- Be sorry...and decide to stop it
- John...John...He
- a desolate area near the Jordan River
- telling them

ULT

⁴ [John](#) came, [baptizing](#) in the [wilderness](#) and [preaching a baptism of repentance](#) for [the forgiveness of sins](#).

UST

⁴ The messenger that Isaiah wrote about was [John](#). [People called him "The Baptizer."](#) [John](#) was in [a desolate area near the Jordan River](#). [He was baptizing people](#) and [telling them](#), "[Be sorry that you have sinned, and decide to stop it, so that God may forgive you. Then I will baptize you.](#)"

Mark 1:5

The whole country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem (ULT)

A great number of people from the district of Judea and the city of Jerusalem...Many of those who heard him (UST)

The words “whole country” are a metaphor for the people who live in the country and a generalization that refers to a great number of people, not to every single person. Alternate translation: “Many people from Judea and Jerusalem” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

They were baptized...by him in the Jordan River, confessing their sins (ULT)
agreed that they had sinned...John baptized them in the Jordan River (UST)

They did these things at the same time. The people were baptized because they repented of their sins. Alternate translation: “When they repented of their sins, John baptized them in the Jordan River” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [They were baptized](#)
- [sins](#)
- [confessing](#)
- [of Judea](#)
- [Jordan](#)
- [of Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [baptized them](#)
- [had sinned](#)
- [agreed that](#)
- [of Judea](#)
- [Jordan](#)
- [city of Jerusalem](#)

ULT

⁵ The whole country [of Judea](#) and all the people [of Jerusalem](#) went out to him. [They were baptized](#) by him in the [Jordan](#) River, [confessing](#) their [sins](#).

UST

⁵ A great number of people from the district [of Judea](#) and the [city of Jerusalem](#) went out to the wilderness to hear John speak. Many of those who heard him [agreed that](#) they [had sinned](#). Then John [baptized them](#) in the [Jordan](#) River.

Mark 1:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [John](#)
- [honey](#)
- [waist](#)
- [camel's](#)
- [locusts](#)
- [wearing a coat](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [John](#)
- [honey](#)
- [waist](#)
- [camel's](#)
- [grasshoppers](#)
- [wore rough clothes](#)

ULT

⁶ [John](#) was [wearing a coat](#) of [camel's](#) hair and a leather belt around his [waist](#), and he was eating [locusts](#) and wild [honey](#).

UST

⁶ [John wore rough clothes](#) made of [camel's](#) hair and a leather belt around his [waist](#). He ate [grasshoppers](#) and [honey](#) that he found in that desolate area.

Mark 1:7

He proclaimed (ULT)

He was preaching (UST)

“John proclaimed”

of whom the strap of his sandals I am not worthy to stoop down to untie (ULT)

I am not even worthy to stoop down and untie his sandals (UST)

John is comparing himself to a servant to show how great Jesus is. Alternate translation: “I am not even worthy to do the lowly task of removing his shoes” (See: [Metaphor](#))

the strap of his sandals (ULT)

his sandals (UST)

At the time Jesus was on earth, people often wore sandals that were made of leather and tied to their feet with leather straps.

to stoop down (ULT)

to stoop down (UST)

“bend down”

Translation Words - ULT

- [worthy](#)
- [more powerful](#)
- [He proclaimed](#)
- [of...sandals](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [worthy](#)
- [is very great. I am nothing compared to him](#)
- [He was preaching](#)
- [sandals](#)

ULT

⁷ [He proclaimed](#), saying, “One will come after me who is [more powerful](#) than I, of whom the strap of his [sandals](#) I am not [worthy](#) to stoop down to untie.

UST

⁷ [He was preaching](#), “Very shortly one will come who [is very great. I am nothing compared to him](#). I am not even [worthy](#) to stoop down and untie his [sandals](#).

Mark 1:8

but he will baptize you with the Holy Spirit (ULT) but he will baptize you with the Holy Spirit (UST)

This metaphor compares John's baptism with water to the future baptism with the Holy Spirit. This means John's baptism only symbolically cleanses people of their sins. The baptism by the Holy Spirit will truly cleanse people of their sins. If possible, use the same word for "baptize" here as you used for John's baptism to keep the comparison between the two. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [baptized](#)
- [will baptize](#)
- [Holy](#)
- [the Holy Spirit](#)
- [with water](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [baptized](#)
- [will baptize](#)
- [Holy](#)
- [the Holy Spirit](#)
- [with water](#)

ULT

⁸ I [baptized](#) you [with water](#), but he [will baptize](#) you with [the Holy Spirit](#)."

UST

⁸ I [baptized](#) you [with water](#), but he [will baptize](#) you with [the Holy Spirit](#)."

Mark 1:9

it happened in those days (ULT)

During the time when John was preaching (UST)

This marks the beginning of a new event in the story line. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

he was baptized...by John (ULT)

baptized him...John (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "John baptized him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [he was baptized](#)
- [Nazareth](#)
- [Jordan River](#)
- [in Galilee](#)
- [John](#)
- [days](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [baptized him](#)
- [Nazareth, a town](#)
- [Jordan River](#)
- [in the district of Galilee](#)
- [John](#)
- [During the time when John was preaching](#)

ULT

⁹ Now it happened in those [days](#) that [Jesus](#) came from [Nazareth in Galilee](#), and [he was baptized](#) by [John](#) in the [Jordan River](#).

UST

⁹ [During the time when John was preaching](#), [Jesus](#) came from [Nazareth, a town in the district of Galilee](#). He went to where John was preaching, and [John baptized him](#) in the [Jordan River](#).

Mark 1:10

the Spirit coming down on him like a dove (ULT)
the Spirit of God descending on himself. The Spirit of God came down like a dove (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) this is a simile, and the Spirit descended upon Jesus as a bird descends from the sky toward the ground or 2) the Spirit literally looked like a dove as he descended upon Jesus. (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heavens](#)
- [Spirit](#)
- [water](#)
- [a dove](#)
- [like](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven](#)
- [Spirit of God...Spirit of God](#)
- [water](#)
- [a dove](#)
- [like](#)

ULT

¹⁰ And immediately, as Jesus came up out of the [water](#), he saw the [heavens](#) split open and the [Spirit](#) coming down on him [like a dove](#).

UST

¹⁰ Immediately after Jesus came up out of the [water](#), he saw [heaven](#) open up and the [Spirit of God](#) descending on himself. The [Spirit of God](#) came down [like a dove](#).

Mark 1:11

a voice came out of the heavens (ULT)

God spoke from heaven and said (UST)

This represents God speaking. Sometimes people avoid referring directly to God because they respect him. Alternate translation: "God spoke from the heavens" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Euphemism](#))

Son...beloved (ULT)

Son...the one whom I love dearly (UST)

This is an important title for Jesus. The Father calls Jesus his "beloved Son" because of his eternal love for him. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heavens](#)
- [Son](#)
- [beloved](#)
- [a voice](#)
- [I am very pleased](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven](#)
- [Son](#)
- [one whom I love dearly](#)
- [God spoke...and said](#)
- [I am very pleased](#)

ULT

¹¹ Then [a voice](#) came out of the [heavens](#), "You are my [beloved Son](#). [I am very pleased](#) with you."

UST

¹¹ [God spoke](#) from [heaven and said](#), "You are my [Son](#), the [one whom I love dearly](#). [I am very pleased](#) with you."

Mark 1:12

Connecting Statement:

After Jesus' baptism, he is in the wilderness for 40 days and then goes to Galilee to teach and call his disciples.

compelled him to go out (ULT)
sent Jesus out (UST)

"forced Jesus to go out"

Translation Words - ULT

- Spirit
- wilderness
- compelled...to go out

Translation Words - UST

- Spirit of God
- desolate area
- sent...out

ULT

¹² Then immediately, the [Spirit](#) [compelled](#) him [to go out](#) into the [wilderness](#).

UST

¹² Then the [Spirit of God](#) [sent](#) Jesus [out](#) into the [desolate area](#).

Mark 1:13

He was...in the wilderness (ULT)

He was there (UST)

"He stayed in the wilderness"

forty days (ULT)

for forty days (UST)

"40 days" (See: [Numbers](#))

He was...with (ULT)

He was...There were...in that place (UST)

"He was among"

Translation Words - ULT

- [angels](#)
- [being tempted](#)
- [served](#)
- [Satan](#)
- [wilderness](#)
- [wild animals](#)
- [days](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [angels](#)
- [During that time...was tempting him](#)
- [were taking care of](#)
- [Satan](#)
- [there](#)
- [wild animals](#)
- [days](#)

ULT

¹³ He was in the [wilderness](#) forty [days](#), [being tempted](#) by [Satan](#). He was with the [wild animals](#), and the [angels served](#) him.

UST

¹³ He was [there](#) for forty [days](#). [During that time, Satan was tempting him.](#) There were [wild animals](#) in that place, and [angels were taking care of](#) him.

Mark 1:14

after...John was arrested (ULT)

Later, after...the governor Herod had John put in prison (UST)

"after John was placed in prison." This can be stated in active form.
Alternate translation: "after they arrested John" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

was arrested...proclaiming...gospel (ULT)
the governor Herod had...put in prison...he was preaching...good news (UST)

"telling many people about the good news"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [of God](#)
- [gospel](#)
- [Galilee](#)
- [John](#)
- [proclaiming](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [God's](#)
- [good news](#)
- [the Galilee district. In Galilee](#)
- [John](#)
- [he was preaching](#)

ULT

¹⁴ Now after [John](#) was arrested, [Jesus](#) came into [Galilee proclaiming](#) the [gospel of God](#).

UST

¹⁴ Later, after the governor Herod had [John](#) put in prison, [Jesus](#) went to [the Galilee district. In Galilee, he was preaching God's good news.](#)

Mark 1:15

The time...is fulfilled (ULT)

The time has come at last (UST)

"It is now time"

the kingdom of God is near (ULT)

God will soon show that he is king (UST)

"it is almost time for God to begin to rule over his people"

Translation Words - ULT

- of God
- gospel
- believe
- is fulfilled
- kingdom of God
- Repent
- time
- kingdom

Translation Words - UST

- God
- good news
- Believe
- has come at last
- God...will...show that he is king
- Be sorry that you have sinned, and decide to stop it, so that God may forgive you
- time
- will...show that he is king

ULT

¹⁵ He said, "The [time is fulfilled](#), and the [kingdom of God](#) is near. [Repent](#) and [believe](#) in the [gospel](#)."

UST

¹⁵ He was saying, "The [time has come at last](#). [God](#) will soon [show that he is king](#). [Be sorry that you have sinned, and decide to stop it, so that God may forgive you](#). [Believe](#) the [good news](#)."

Mark 1:16

When...he saw Simon...Andrew (ULT)

One day...he saw two men, Simon...Andrew (UST)

"Jesus saw Simon and Andrew"

casting a net in the sea (ULT)

They were casting their fishing net into the sea (UST)

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "throwing a net into the water to catch fish" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Andrew
- of Galilee
- Simon
- of Simon
- Sea of Galilee
- sea
- fishermen

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Andrew
- Galilee lake
- Simon
- Simon's
- Galilee lake
- sea
- They earned money by catching and selling fish

ULT

¹⁶ When he was walking beside the [Sea of Galilee](#), he saw [Simon](#) and [Andrew](#) the [brother of Simon](#) casting a net in the [sea](#), for they were [fishermen](#).

UST

¹⁶ One day, while Jesus was walking along by the [Galilee lake](#), he saw two men, [Simon](#) and [Simon's brother](#), [Andrew](#). They were casting their fishing net into the [sea](#). [They earned money by catching and selling fish](#).

Mark 1:17

Come, follow me (ULT)
come with me (UST)

“Follow me” or “Come with me”

I will make you to become fishers of men (ULT)
Just like you have been gathering fish...I will teach you
how to gather people (UST)

This metaphor means Simon and Andrew will teach people God's true message, so others will also follow Jesus. Alternate translation: “I will teach you to gather men to me like you gather fish” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [fishers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [gather](#)

ULT

¹⁷ So [Jesus](#) said to them, “Come, follow me, and I will make you to become [fishers](#) of men.”

UST

¹⁷ Then [Jesus](#) said to them, “Just like you have been gathering fish, come with me and I will teach you how to [gather](#) people.”

Mark 1:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

18 Then immediately they left the nets and followed him.

UST

18 Immediately they left their fishing work with nets, and they went with him.

Mark 1:19

in the boat (ULT)

were...in a boat (UST)

It can be assumed that this boat belongs to James and John.

Alternate translation: "in their boat" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

mending the nets (ULT)

mending fishing nets (UST)

"repairing the nets"

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- of Zebedee
- John
- James

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- a man named Zebedee
- John
- James

ULT

¹⁹ As Jesus was walking on a little farther, he saw [James](#) the son [of Zebedee](#) and [John](#) his [brother](#); they were in the boat mending the nets.

UST

¹⁹ After they had gone on a little further, Jesus saw two other men, [James](#) and James' [brother](#), [John](#). They were the sons of [a man named Zebedee](#). They were all in a boat mending fishing nets.

Mark 1:20

he called them (ULT)

he told them to come with him (UST)

It may be helpful to state clearly why Jesus called to James and John.
Alternate translation: "called them to come with him" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the hired servants (ULT)

the hired servants (UST)

"servants who worked for them"

and they followed him (ULT)

and they went away with Jesus (UST)

James and John went with Jesus.

Translation Words - ULT

- [he called](#)
- [Zebedee](#)
- [father](#)
- [hired servants](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [he told...to come with him](#)
- [who](#)
- [father](#)
- [hired servants](#)

ULT

²⁰ And immediately, [he called](#) them and they left their [father Zebedee](#) in the boat with the [hired servants](#), and they followed him.

UST

²⁰ As soon as Jesus saw them, [he told](#) them [to come with him](#). So they left their [father](#), [who](#) remained in the boat with the [hired servants](#), and they went away with Jesus.

Mark 1:21

Connecting Statement:

Jesus teaches in the synagogue of the town of Capernaum on the Sabbath. By sending a demon out of a man he amazes the people in all the nearby area around Galilee.

they came into Capernaum (ULT)

Jesus and his apprentices went into a nearby town called Capernaum (UST)

"arrived at Capernaum"

Translation Words - ULT

- [synagogue](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [Capernaum](#)
- [and taught](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jewish preaching place...there](#)
- [next Jewish day of rest](#)
- [a nearby town called Capernaum](#)
- [and began teaching the people who had gathered](#)

ULT

²¹ Then they came into [Capernaum](#), and immediately on the [Sabbath](#), Jesus went into the [synagogue and taught](#).

UST

²¹ Jesus and his apprentices went into [a nearby town called Capernaum](#). On the [next Jewish day of rest](#), he went into the [Jewish preaching place and began teaching the people who had gathered there](#).

Mark 1:22

for he was teaching them as someone who has authority and not as the scribes (ULT)

The idea of “teach” can be stated clearly when talking about “someone who has authority” and “the scribes.” Alternate translation: “for he was teaching them as someone who has authority teaches and not as the scribes teach” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [scribes](#)
- [authority](#)
- [teaching](#)
- [teaching](#)
- [They were astonished](#)
- [as](#)
- [as](#) (2)

Translation Words - UST

- [taught the Jewish laws, who repeated the different things that other men had taught](#)
- [a teacher who relies on what he himself knows](#)
- [way...taught](#)
- [taught...did...teach](#)
- [They were amazed](#)
- [like](#)
- [like](#) (2)

ULT

²² [They were astonished](#) at his [teaching](#), for he was [teaching](#) them [as](#) someone who has [authority](#) and not [as](#) the [scribes](#).

UST

²² [They were amazed](#) at the [way](#) he [taught](#). He [taught like a teacher who relies on what he himself knows](#). He did not [teach like](#) those who [taught the Jewish laws, who repeated the different things that other men had taught](#).

Mark 1:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [synagogue](#)
- [unclean](#)
- [an...spirit](#)
- [an unclean spirit](#)
- [he cried out](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [preaching place where Jesus taught](#)
- [evil](#)
- [an...spirit](#)
- [an evil spirit](#)
- [The man with the evil spirit began shouting](#)

ULT

²³ Just then there was a man in their [synagogue](#) with [an unclean spirit](#), and [he cried out](#),

UST

²³ In the Jewish [preaching place where Jesus taught](#), there was a man that [an evil spirit](#) controlled. [The man with the evil spirit began shouting](#),

Mark 1:24

What do we have to do with you, Jesus of Nazareth (ULT)

Hey! Jesus, from Nazareth! We evil spirits have nothing to do with you (UST)

The demons ask this rhetorical question meaning there is no reason for Jesus to interfere with them and that they desire him to leave them. Alternate translation: "Jesus of Nazareth, leave us alone! There is no reason for you to interfere with us." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Have you come to destroy us (ULT)

Have you come to destroy us (UST)

The demons ask this rhetorical question to urge Jesus not to harm them. Alternate translation: "Do not destroy us!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [Holy One](#)
- [of God](#)
- [of Nazareth](#)
- [I know](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [Holy One](#)
- [from God](#)
- [from Nazareth](#)
- [I know](#)

ULT

²⁴ saying, "What do we have to do with you, [Jesus of Nazareth](#)? Have you come to destroy us? [I know](#) who you are—the [Holy One of God](#)!"

UST

²⁴ "Hey! [Jesus, from Nazareth](#)! We evil spirits have nothing to do with you! Have you come to destroy us? [I know](#) who you are. You are the [Holy One from God](#)!"

Mark 1:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [rebuked](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [rebuked](#)

ULT

²⁵ But [Jesus rebuked](#) the demon, saying,
"Be quiet and come out of him!"

UST

²⁵ [Jesus rebuked](#) the evil spirit, saying,
"Be quiet and come out of him!"

Mark 1:26

threw him down (ULT)

shook the man violently (UST)

Here the word "him" refers to the demon-possessed man.

while crying out with a loud voice (ULT)

He screamed loudly (UST)

The demon is the one who is crying out, not the man.

Translation Words - ULT

- [unclean](#)
- [spirit](#)
- [unclean spirit](#)
- [with a...voice](#)
- [while crying out](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [evil](#)
- [spirit](#)
- [evil spirit](#)
- [He screamed](#)
- [He screamed](#)

ULT

²⁶ Then the [unclean spirit](#) threw him down and went out from him [while crying out with a](#) loud [voice](#).

UST

²⁶ The [evil spirit](#) shook the man violently. [He screamed](#) loudly, and then he came out of the man and left.

Mark 1:27

**they asked each other, saying, "What is this? A new teaching with authority...they obey him (ULT)
they discussed this among themselves, saying, "This is amazing...does he teach in a new and authoritative way...they obey him (UST)**

The people used the two questions to show how amazed they were. The questions can be expressed as exclamations. Alternate translation: "they said to each other, 'This is amazing! He gives a new teaching, and he speaks with authority!...and they obey him!'" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

He...commands (ULT)

he...commands (UST)

The word "He" refers to Jesus.

Translation Words - ULT

- [He...commands](#)
- [unclean](#)
- [authority](#)
- [spirits](#)
- [unclean spirits](#)
- [A...teaching](#)
- [they obey](#)
- [were amazed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [he...commands](#)
- [evil](#)
- [authoritative way](#)
- [spirits](#)
- [evil spirits](#)
- [does he teach](#)
- [they obey](#)
- [were amazed](#)

ULT

²⁷ All the people [were amazed](#), so they asked each other, saying, "What is this? A new [teaching](#) with [authority](#)! [He](#) even [commands](#) the [unclean spirits](#) and [they obey](#) him!"

UST

²⁷ All the people who were there [were amazed](#). As a result, they discussed this among themselves, saying, "This is amazing! Not only [does he teach](#) in a new and [authoritative way](#), but [he](#) also [commands](#) the [evil spirits](#) and [they obey](#) him!"

Mark 1:28

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Galilee](#)
- [news](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of Galilee](#)
- [The people...told many others](#)

ULT

²⁸ So the [news](#) about him immediately went out everywhere into the whole region of [Galilee](#).

UST

²⁸ [The people](#) very soon [told many others](#) throughout the whole district [of Galilee](#) what Jesus had done.

Mark 1:29

Connecting Statement:

After healing the demon-possessed man, Jesus healed Simon's mother-in-law and many other people.

Translation Words - ULT

- [synagogue](#)
- [Andrew](#)
- [of Simon](#)
- [John](#)
- [James](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jewish preaching place](#)
- [Andrew](#)
- [of Simon](#)
- [John](#)
- [James](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

²⁹ And immediately after coming out of the [synagogue](#), they came into the [house of Simon](#) and [Andrew](#), along with [James](#) and [John](#).

UST

²⁹ After they left the [Jewish preaching place](#), Jesus, Simon and Andrew, along with [James](#) and [John](#), went directly to the [house of Simon](#) and [Andrew](#).

Mark 1:30

Now Simon's mother-in-law was lying sick with a fever (ULT)

The word "Now" introduces Simon's mother-in-law to the story and gives background information about her. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#) and [Background Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Simon's](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Simon's](#)

ULT

³⁰ Now [Simon's](#) mother-in-law was lying sick with a fever, and immediately they told Jesus about her.

UST

³⁰ [Simon's](#) mother-in-law was lying in bed because she was feeling sick due to having a fever. Right away someone told Jesus about her being sick.

Mark 1:31

and raised her up (ULT)

and helped her up (UST)

“caused her to stand” or “made her able to get out of bed”

the fever left her (ULT)

She...recovered from the fever (UST)

You may want to make explicit who healed her. Alternate translation: “Jesus healed her of the fever” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

she started serving them (ULT)

began serving them (UST)

You may want to make explicit that she served food. Alternate translation: “she provided them with food and drinks” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [she started serving](#)
- [hand](#)
- [and raised...up](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [began serving](#)
- [hand](#)
- [and helped...up](#)

ULT

³¹ So he came, took her by the [hand](#), [and raised](#) her [up](#). Then the fever left her, and [she started serving](#) them.

UST

³¹ Jesus went to her, took her by the [hand](#), [and helped](#) her [up](#). She immediately recovered from the fever and [began serving](#) them.

Mark 1:32

General Information:

Here the words "him" and "he" refer to Jesus.

all those who were sick and those possessed by demons (ULT)
many others who were sick and those that evil spirits controlled (UST)

The word "all" is an exaggeration to emphasize the great number of people who came. Alternate translation: "many who were sick or possessed by demons" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [those possessed by demons](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [that evil spirits controlled](#)

ULT

³² Now when it became evening, after the sun had set, they brought to him all those who were sick and [those possessed by demons](#).

UST

³² That evening, after the sun had gone down, some people brought to Jesus many others who were sick and those [that evil spirits controlled](#).

Mark 1:33**the whole city was gathered together at the door (ULT)**

The word “city” is a metonym for the people who lived in the city. Here the word “whole” is probably a generalization to emphasize that most people from the city gathered. Alternate translation: “Many people from that city gathered outside the door” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [gathered together](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [had gathered](#)

ULT

³³ And the whole city was [gathered together](#) at the door.

UST

³³ It seemed as though everyone who lived in the town [had gathered](#) at the doorway of Simon's house.

Mark 1:34

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [demons](#)
- [demons](#) (2)
- [cast out](#)
- [he healed](#)
- [they knew](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [evil spirits](#)
- [evil spirits](#) (2)
- [He...forced...to come out from people](#)
- [Jesus healed](#)
- [they knew that](#)

ULT

³⁴ So [he healed](#) many who were sick with various diseases, and [cast out](#) many [demons](#), but he did not allow the [demons](#) to speak because [they knew](#) him.

UST

³⁴ [Jesus healed](#) many people who were sick with various diseases. [He](#) also [forced](#) many [evil spirits to come out from people](#). He did not allow the [evil spirits](#) to tell people about him, because [they knew that](#) he was the Holy One from God.

Mark 1:35

General Information:

Here the words "he" and "him" refer to Jesus.

Connecting Statement:

Jesus takes time to pray in the midst of his time of healing people. He then goes to towns throughout Galilee to preach, heal, and cast out demons.

a solitary place (ULT)

a place where there were no people (UST)

"a place where he could be alone"

Translation Words - ULT

- [he prayed](#)
- [solitary](#)
- [he got up](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [he prayed](#)
- [where there were no people](#)
- [Jesus got up](#)

ULT

³⁵ Then [he got up](#) very early, while it was still dark, and left and went out to a [solitary](#) place, and there [he prayed](#).

UST

³⁵ [Jesus got up](#) very early the next morning while it was still dark. He left the house and went away from the town to a place [where there were no people](#). Then [he prayed](#).

Mark 1:36

Then Simon...those who were with him (ULT)

Here "him" refers to Simon. Also, those with him include Andrew, James, John, and possibly other people.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Simon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Simon](#)

ULT

³⁶ Then [Simon](#) and those who were with him searched for him.

UST

³⁶ [Simon](#) and his companions searched for him.

Mark 1:37

Everyone...is looking for you (ULT)

Everyone in town is looking for you (UST)

The word "Everyone" is an exaggeration to emphasize the very many people who were looking for Jesus. Alternate translation: "Many people are looking for you" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- is looking for

Translation Words - UST

- is looking for

ULT

³⁷ When they found him, they also said to him, "Everyone [is looking for](#) you."

UST

³⁷ When they found him they said, "Everyone in town [is looking for](#) you."

Mark 1:38

General Information:

Here the words "he" and "I" refer to Jesus.

Let us go elsewhere (ULT)

"We need to go to some other place." Here Jesus uses the word "us" to refer to himself, along with Simon, Andrew, James, and John.

Translation Words - ULT

- [I may preach](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [I can preach](#)

ULT

³⁸ But he said to them, "Let us go elsewhere, out into the surrounding towns, so that [I may preach](#) there also. For that is why I have come."

UST

³⁸ He said to them, "We need to go to the neighboring towns so that [I can preach](#) there as well. This is the reason I came here."

Mark 1:39

he went...throughout all of Galilee (ULT)
they went...they went...throughout Galilee district (UST)

The words "throughout all" are an exaggeration used to emphasize that Jesus went to many locations during his ministry. Alternate translation: "He went to many places in Galilee" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [synagogues](#)
- [demons](#)
- [of Galilee](#)
- [casting out](#)
- [preaching](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jewish preaching places](#)
- [evil spirits](#)
- [Galilee district](#)
- [forced...to come out from people](#)
- [Jesus would preach](#)

ULT

³⁹ So he went throughout all [of Galilee](#), [preaching](#) in their [synagogues](#) and [casting out](#) the [demons](#).

UST

³⁹ So they went throughout [Galilee district](#). As they went, [Jesus would preach](#) in the [Jewish preaching places](#) and [forced evil spirits to come out from people](#).

Mark 1:40

a leper came to him, begging him and kneeling down and saying to him

"A leper came to Jesus. He knelt down and was begging Jesus and said"

If...you are willing, you can make me clean (ULT)
because you are able to heal me if you are willing (UST)

In the first phrase, the words "to make me clean" are understood because of the second phrase. Alternate translation: "If you are willing to make me clean, then you can make me clean" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

you are willing (ULT)
you are willing (UST)

"want" or "desire"

you can make me clean (ULT)
because you are able to heal me (UST)

In biblical times, a person who had any of certain skin diseases was considered unclean until his skin had healed enough that he was no longer contagious. Alternate translation: "you can heal me" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [make...clean](#)
- [a leper](#)
- [begging](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to heal](#)
- [a man who had a bad skin disease called leprosy](#)
- [and pleaded...Please heal me](#)

ULT

⁴⁰ Then [a leper](#) came to him, [begging](#) him and kneeling down and saying to him, "If you are willing, you can [make](#) me [clean](#)."

UST

⁴⁰ One day [a man who had a bad skin disease called leprosy](#) came to Jesus. He knelt down in front of Jesus [and pleaded](#) with him, saying, "[Please heal me](#), because you are able [to heal](#) me if you are willing!"

Mark 1:41

Moved with compassion (ULT)

Jesus felt compassion for him (UST)

Here the word “moved” is an idiom meaning to feel emotion about another’s need. Alternate translation: “Having compassion for him, Jesus” or “Jesus felt compassion for the man, so he” (See: [Idiom](#))

I am willing (ULT)

Since I am willing to heal you (UST)

It may be helpful to state what Jesus is willing to do. Alternate translation: “I am willing to make you clean” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Moved with compassion
- Be clean
- hand

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus felt compassion for him
- be healed
- hand

ULT

⁴¹ [Moved with compassion](#), Jesus reached out his [hand](#), touched him, and said to him, “I am willing. [Be clean.](#)”

UST

⁴¹ [Jesus felt compassion for him](#). He reached out his [hand](#) and touched the man. Then he said to him, “Since I am willing to heal you, [be healed!](#)”

Mark 1:42

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- he was made clean
- leprosy

Translation Words - UST

- the man was healed
- a leper

ULT

⁴² Immediately the [leprosy](#) left him, and [he was made clean](#).

UST

⁴² Immediately [the man was healed](#)! He was no longer [a leper](#)!

Mark 1:43

General Information:

The word “him” used here refers to the leper whom Jesus healed.

Translation Words - ULT

- [sent...away](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [he was sending...away](#)

ULT

⁴³ But Jesus strictly warned him and immediately [sent](#) him [away](#).

UST

⁴³ Jesus gave the man a warning as [he was sending](#) him [away](#).

Mark 1:44

Be sure to say nothing to anyone (ULT)

"Be sure to not say anything to anyone"

show yourself to the priest (ULT)

a priest and show yourself to him in order that he may examine you and see that you no longer have leprosy (UST)

Jesus told the man to show himself to the priest so that the priest could look at his skin to see if his leprosy was really gone. The law of Moses required people to present themselves to the priest if they had been unclean but were no longer unclean. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

show yourself (ULT)

and show yourself...in order that...may examine you and see that you no longer have leprosy (UST)

The word "yourself" here represents the skin of the leper. Alternate translation: "show your skin" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

a testimony to them (ULT)

the testimony to the community that you no longer have leprosy (UST)

It is best to use the pronoun "them," if possible, in your language. Possible meanings are 1) "a testimony to the priests" or 2) "a testimony to the people."

Translation Words - ULT

- [commanded](#)
- [a testimony](#)
- [cleansing](#)
- [priest](#)
- [Moses](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [commanded](#)
- [the testimony...that you no longer have leprosy](#)
- [people whom God has healed from leprosy](#)
- [a priest...him...he](#)
- [Moses](#)

ULT

44 And he said to him, "Be sure to say nothing to anyone, but go, show yourself to the [priest](#), and offer for your [cleansing](#) what [Moses commanded](#), as [a testimony](#) to them."

UST

44 He said, "Do not tell anyone what just happened. Instead, go to [a priest](#) and show yourself to [him](#) in order that [he](#) may examine you and see that you no longer have leprosy. Then make the offering that [Moses commanded](#) for [people whom God has healed from leprosy](#). This will be [the testimony](#) to the community [that you no longer have leprosy](#)."

Mark 1:45

But he went out (ULT)

The man did not follow Jesus' instruction (UST)

The word "he" refers to the man Jesus healed.

and began...to spread the news widely (ULT)

Here "spread the news widely" is a metaphor for telling people in many places about what had happened. Alternate translation: "began to tell people in many places about what Jesus had done" (See: and [Metaphor](#))

so much that (ULT)

As a result (UST)

The man spread the news so much that

so much that Jesus could no longer enter a town openly (ULT)

As a result, Jesus was no longer able to enter towns publicly because the crowds of people would surround him (UST)

This was the result of the man spreading the news so much. Here "openly" is a metaphor for "publicly." Jesus could not enter the towns because many people would crowd around him. Alternate translation: "that Jesus could no longer enter a town publicly" or "that Jesus could no longer enter the towns in a way that many people would see him" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

remote places (ULT)

places where no one lived (UST)

"lonely places" or "places where no one lived"

from everywhere (ULT)

from all over that region (UST)

The word "everywhere" is a hyperbole used to emphasize how very many places the people came from. Alternate translation: "from all over the region" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [remote](#)
- [to proclaim](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [where no one lived](#)
- [telling...about](#)

ULT

⁴⁵ But he went out and began [to proclaim](#) often and to spread the news widely, so much that Jesus could no longer enter a town openly. But he stayed out in [remote](#) places, and people were still coming to him from everywhere.

UST

⁴⁵ The man did not follow Jesus' instruction. He began [telling](#) many people [about](#) how Jesus had healed him. As a result, Jesus was no longer able to enter towns publicly because the crowds of people would surround him. Instead, he remained outside the towns in places [where no one lived](#). But people kept coming to him from all over that region.

Mark 2

Mark 2 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

“Sinners”

When the people of Jesus’ time spoke of “sinners,” they were talking about people who did not obey the law of Moses and instead committed sins like stealing or sexual sins. When Jesus said that he came to call “sinners,” he meant that only people who believe that they are sinners can be his followers. This is true even if they are not what most people think of as “sinners.” (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Fasting and Feasting

People would fast, or not eat food for a long time, when they were sad or were showing God that they were sorry for their sins. When they were happy, like during weddings, they would have feasts, or meals where they would eat much food. (See: [fast](#), [fasting](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Rhetorical Questions

The Jewish leaders used rhetorical questions to show that they were angry because of what Jesus said and did and that they did not believe that he was God’s Son (Mark 2:7). Jesus used them to show the Jewish leaders that they were arrogant ([Mark 2:25-26](#)). (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Mark 2:1

Connecting Statement:

After preaching and healing people throughout Galilee, Jesus returns to Capernaum where he heals and forgives the sin of a paralyzed man.

it was heard that he was at home (ULT)
People spread the news quickly to others that Jesus had returned and was in the house (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the people there heard that he was staying at his home" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Capernaum](#)
- [days](#)
- [home](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Capernaum town](#)
- [some days had passed](#)
- [the house](#)

ULT

¹ When Jesus came again to [Capernaum](#) after a few [days](#), it was heard that he was at [home](#).

UST

¹ After [some days had passed](#), Jesus returned to [Capernaum town](#). People spread the news quickly to others that Jesus had returned and was in [the house](#).

Mark 2:2

So many gathered there (ULT)

Soon a great number of people gathered where Jesus was staying. The number was so great (UST)

The word "there" refers to the house that Jesus stayed in Capernaum. Alternate translation: "So many people gathered there" or "So many people came to the house" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

there was no more space, not even (ULT)

This refers to there being no space inside the house. Alternate translation: "there was no more room for them inside" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Jesus spoke the word to them (ULT)

Jesus spoke God's message to them (UST)

"Jesus spoke his message to them"

Translation Words - ULT

- [gathered there](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [gathered where Jesus was staying](#)

ULT

² So many [gathered there](#) that there was no more space, not even at the door, and Jesus spoke the word to them.

UST

² Soon a great number of people [gathered where Jesus was staying](#). The number was so great that the house was full. There was no longer space to stand, not even around the doorway. Jesus spoke God's message to them.

Mark 2:3

he was carried by four men (ULT)

Four men carried...on a sleeping pad (UST)

“four of them were carrying him.” It is likely that there were more than four people within the group that brought the man to Jesus.

bringing...a paralyzed man (ULT)

bringing...a man who was paralyzed...him (UST)

“were bringing a man who was unable to walk or use his arms”

ULT

³ Then some men came to him bringing a paralyzed man; he was carried by four men.

UST

³ Some people came to the house bringing to Jesus a man who was paralyzed. Four men carried him on a sleeping pad.

Mark 2:4

they could not get near him (ULT)

They were not able to bring the man close to Jesus (UST)

“could not get close to where Jesus was”

they removed the roof...they lowered (ULT)

So, they went up on the roof...They lowered...through the hole (UST)

Houses where Jesus lived had flat roofs made of clay and covered with tiles. The process of making a hole in the roof can be explained more clearly or made more general so that it may be understood in your language. Alternate translation: “they removed the tiles from the part of the roof above where Jesus was. And when they had dug through the clay roof, they lowered” or “they made a hole in the roof above where Jesus was, and then they lowered”

ULT

⁴ When they could not get near him because of the crowd, they removed the roof where Jesus was, and after they made an opening, they lowered the bed on which the paralyzed man was lying.

UST

⁴ They were not able to bring the man close to Jesus because of the crowd that had gathered. So, they went up on the roof of the house and made a big hole in the roof above Jesus. They lowered the paralyzed man on his sleeping pad through the hole in front of Jesus.

Mark 2:5

When...saw...their faith (ULT)
perceived that...the men believed that he could heal this man (UST)

"Seeing the men's faith." Possible meanings are 1) that only the men who carried the paralyzed man had faith or 2) that the paralyzed man and the men who brought him to Jesus all had faith. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Son (ULT)
My child (UST)

The word "Son" here shows Jesus cared for the man as a father cares for a son. Alternate translation: "My son" (See: [Metaphor](#))

your sins are forgiven (ULT)

If possible translate this in such a way that Jesus does not clearly say who forgives the man's sins. Alternate translation: "your sins are gone" or "you do not have to pay for your sins" or "your sins do not count against you"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [sins](#)
- [are forgiven](#)
- [Son](#)
- [faith](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [sins](#)
- [I have forgiven](#)
- [My child](#)
- [believed that he could heal this man](#)

ULT

⁵ When [Jesus](#) saw their [faith](#), he said to the paralyzed man, "[Son](#), your [sins are forgiven](#)."

UST

⁵ After [Jesus](#) perceived that the men [believed that he could heal this man](#), he said to the paralyzed man, "[My child](#), [I have forgiven](#) your [sins](#)!"

Mark 2:6

they reasoned in their hearts (ULT)

They started thinking to themselves (UST)

Here “their hearts” is a metonym for the people’s thoughts. Alternate translation: “were thinking to themselves” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [scribes](#)
- [hearts](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [men who taught the Jewish laws](#)
- [to themselves](#)

ULT

⁶ Now some of the [scribes](#) were sitting there, and they reasoned in their [hearts](#),

UST

⁶ Some [men who taught the Jewish laws](#) were sitting there. They started thinking [to themselves](#),

Mark 2:7

Why does this man speak this way (ULT)
Who does this man think he is talking like that...by saying that (UST)

The scribes used this question to show their anger that Jesus said "Your sins are forgiven." Alternate translation: "This man should not speak this way!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Who can forgive sins but God alone (ULT)
No person can forgive sins—only God can (UST)

The scribes used this question to say that since only God can forgive sins, then Jesus should not say "Your sins are forgiven." Alternate translation: "Only God can forgive sins!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sins](#)
- [God](#)
- [forgive](#)
- [can](#)
- [He blasphemes](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sins](#)
- [God](#)
- [forgive](#)
- [can](#)
- [He is proud and insults God](#)

ULT

⁷ "Why does this man speak this way? [He blasphemes](#)! Who [can forgive sins](#) but [God](#) alone?"

UST

⁷ "Who does this man think he is talking like that? [He is proud and insults God](#) by saying that! No person [can forgive sins](#)—only [God](#) can!"

Mark 2:8

in his spirit (ULT)
within himself (UST)

“in his inner being” or “in himself”

they were thinking...within themselves (ULT)
they were thinking (UST)

Each of the scribes was thinking to himself; they were not talking to each other.

Why are you thinking these things in your hearts (ULT)
Why are you thinking that I don't have the right to forgive sins (UST)

Jesus uses this question to tell the scribes that what they are thinking is wrong. Alternate translation: “What you are thinking is wrong.” or “Do not think that I am blaspheming.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

these things...in your hearts (ULT)
that I don't have the right to forgive sins...are you thinking (UST)

The word “hearts” is a metonym for their inner thoughts and desires. Alternate translation: “this inside yourselves” or “these things” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [hearts](#)
- [in...spirit](#)
- [knew](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [are you thinking](#)
- [within himself](#)
- [knew](#)

ULT

⁸ Immediately [Jesus knew](#) in his [spirit](#) that they were thinking like this within themselves. He said to them, “Why are you thinking these things in your [hearts](#)?”

UST

⁸ [Jesus knew](#) right away [within himself](#) what they were thinking. He said to them, “Why [are you thinking](#) that I don't have the right to forgive sins?”

Mark 2:9

What is easier to say to the paralyzed man...take up... your bed, and walk (ULT)

Which would be easier for me to say to the paralyzed man...Take your sleeping pad and walk (UST)

Jesus uses this question to make the scribes think about what might prove whether or not he could really forgive sins. Alternate translation: "I just said to the paralyzed man, 'Your sins are forgiven.' You may think that it is harder to say 'Get up, take up your bed, and walk,' because the proof of whether or not I can heal him will be shown by whether or not he gets up and walks." or "You may think that it is easier to say to the paralyzed man 'Your sins are forgiven' than it is to say 'Get up, take up your bed, and walk.'" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sins](#)
- [are forgiven](#)
- [Get up](#)
- [walk](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sins](#)
- [I have forgiven](#)
- [Stand up](#)
- [walk](#)

ULT

⁹ What is easier to say to the paralyzed man, 'Your [sins are forgiven](#)' or to say ' [Get up](#), take up your bed, and [walk](#)'?

UST

⁹ Which would be easier for me to say to the paralyzed man, '[I have forgiven](#) your [sins](#)' or to say, '[Stand up](#)! Take your sleeping pad and [walk](#)'?

Mark 2:10

But in order that you may know (ULT)

“But so that you may know.” The word “you” refers to the scribes and the crowd.

that the Son of Man has authority (ULT)

that the Son of Man has authority (UST)

Jesus refers to himself as the “Son of Man.” Alternate translation: “that I am the Son of Man and I have authority” (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sins](#)
- [to forgive](#)
- [authority](#)
- [Son of Man](#)
- [earth](#)
- [you may know](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sins](#)
- [to forgive](#)
- [authority](#)
- [Son of Man](#)
- [earth](#)
- [I will demonstrate to you](#)

ULT

¹⁰ But in order that [you may know](#) that the [Son of Man](#) has [authority](#) on [earth to forgive sins](#),” he said to the paralytic,

UST

¹⁰ [I will demonstrate to you](#) that the [Son of Man](#) has [authority](#) on [earth to forgive sins](#).” Then he said to the paralyzed man,

Mark 2:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [get up](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Stand up](#)
- [home](#)

ULT

11 "I say to you, [get up](#), take up your mat, and go to your [house](#)."

UST

11 "[Stand up](#)! Pick up your sleeping pad! And go [home](#)!"

Mark 2:12

in front of everyone (ULT)

while all the people there were watching (UST)

“while all the people there were watching”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- they glorified
- they were...amazed
- he got up

Translation Words - UST

- God
- they praised
- They were...amazed
- The man stood up

ULT

¹² So [he got up](#) and immediately took up the mat, and went out in front of everyone. Therefore, [they were](#) all [amazed](#) and [they glorified God](#), and they said, “We never saw anything like this.”

UST

¹² [The man stood up](#) immediately! He picked up the sleeping pad, and then he went away, while all the people there were watching. [They were](#) all [amazed](#), and [they praised God](#) and said, “We have never before seen anything like what happened just now!”

Mark 2:13

Connecting Statement:

Jesus is teaching the crowd beside the Sea of Galilee, and he calls Levi to follow him.

the sea (ULT) of Galilee lake (UST)

This is the Sea of Galilee, which is also known as the Lake of Gennesaret.

the crowd came to him (ULT) A...crowd came to him (UST)

"the people went where he was"

Translation Words - ULT

- sea
- he taught

Translation Words - UST

- of Galilee lake
- he taught

ULT

¹³ Then he went out again by the [sea](#), and all the crowd came to him, and [he taught](#) them.

UST

¹³ Jesus left Capernaum town and walked along the shore [of Galilee lake](#). A large crowd came to him and [he taught](#) them.

Mark 2:14

Levi the son of Alphaeus (ULT)
a man named Levi whose father's name was Alpheus (UST)

Alpheus was Levi's father. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Levi](#)
- [tax collector's tent](#)
- [He got up](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [a man named Levi](#)
- [office where he collected taxes](#)
- [He got up](#)

ULT

¹⁴ As he passed by, he saw [Levi](#) the son of Alphaeus sitting at the [tax collector's tent](#) and he said to him, "Follow me." [He got up](#) and followed him.

UST

¹⁴ As he walked, he saw [a man named Levi](#) whose father's name was Alpheus. He was sitting in his [office where he collected taxes](#). Jesus said to him, "Come with me and be my apprentice." [He got up](#) and went with Jesus.

Mark 2:15

Connecting Statement:

It is now later in the day, and Jesus is at Levi's house for a meal.

Levi's house (ULT)

Levi's house (UST)

"the home of Levi"

sinners (ULT)

others who the religious leaders considered to be

sinners (UST)

people who did not obey the law of Moses but committed what others thought were very bad sins

And...many...for there were...they followed him (ULT)

Possible meanings are 1) "for there were many tax collectors and sinful people who followed Jesus" or 2) "for Jesus had many disciples and they followed him."

Translation Words - ULT

- [with Jesus](#)
- [sinners](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [tax collectors](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [with Jesus](#)
- [others who the religious leaders considered to be sinners](#)
- [apprentices](#)
- [men who collected taxes](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

¹⁵ And it happened that Jesus was having a meal in Levi's [house](#), and many [tax collectors](#) and [sinners](#) were dining [with Jesus](#) and his [disciples](#), for there were many and they followed him.

UST

¹⁵ Later, Jesus was eating a meal in Levi's [house](#). Many [men who collected taxes](#) and [others who the religious leaders considered to be sinners](#) were eating [with Jesus](#) and his [apprentices](#). There were many people like this who were going everywhere with Jesus.

Mark 2:16

he eat with tax collectors and sinners (ULT) he eat and drink with sinners and men who collect taxes (UST)

The scribes and Pharisees asked this question to show they disapproved of Jesus' hospitality. This can be worded as a statement. Alternate translation: "He should not eat with sinners and tax collectors!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- scribes
- sinners
- sinners (2)
- to...disciples
- Pharisees
- tax collectors
- tax collectors (2)

Translation Words - UST

- Men who taught the Jewish laws
- sinners
- sinners (2)
- apprentices
- and who were members of the Pharisee sect
- men who collected taxes
- men who collect taxes (2)

ULT

¹⁶ When the [scribes](#), who were [Pharisees](#), saw that Jesus was eating with [sinners](#) and [tax collectors](#), they said to his [disciples](#), "Why does he eat with [tax collectors](#) and [sinners](#)?"

UST

¹⁶ [Men who taught the Jewish laws and who were members of the Pharisee sect](#) saw that Jesus was eating with [sinners](#) and [men who collected taxes](#). They asked Jesus' [apprentices](#), "Why does he eat and drink with [sinners](#) and [men who collect taxes](#)?"

Mark 2:17

Connecting Statement:

Jesus responds to what the scribes had said to his disciples about his eating with tax collectors and sinful people.

he said to them (ULT)

he said to the men who taught the Jewish laws (UST)

“he said to the scribes”

People who are healthy do not need a physician, but people who are sick need one (ULT)

Healthy people do not need a doctor. On the contrary, it is those who are sick who need a doctor (UST)

Jesus used this proverb about sick people and doctors to teach them that only people who know that they are sinful realize that they need Jesus. (See: [Proverbs](#))

People who are healthy (ULT)

Healthy people (UST)

“healthy”

I did not come to call righteous people, but sinners (ULT)

I did not come to invite those who think they are righteous to come to me, but those who know that they have sinned (UST)

Jesus expects his hearers to understand he came for those who want help. Alternate translation: “I came for people who understand they are sinful, not for people who believe they are righteous” (See: [Irony](#))

but sinners (ULT)

but those who know that they have sinned (UST)

The words “I came to call” are understood from the phrase before this. Alternate translation: “but I came to call sinners” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [righteous people](#)
- [to call](#)
- [sinners](#)
- [People who are healthy](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [those who think they are righteous](#)
- [to invite...to come to me](#)

ULT

¹⁷ When [Jesus](#) heard this he said to them, “[People who are healthy](#) do not need a physician, but people who are sick need one. I did not come [to call righteous people](#), but [sinners](#).”

UST

¹⁷ After [Jesus](#) heard what they were asking, he said to the men who taught the Jewish laws, “[Healthy people](#) do not need a doctor. On the contrary, it is those who are sick who need a doctor. I did not come [to invite those who think they are righteous to come to me](#), but [those who know that they have sinned](#).”

- those who know that they have sinned
- Healthy people

Mark 2:18

Connecting Statement:

Jesus tells parables to show why his disciples should not fast while he is with them. (See: [Parables](#))

the...Pharisees...fasting...the disciples...of the Pharisees (ULT)

the...Pharisee sect...abstaining from food, as they often did...the apprentices...of the Pharisees (UST)

These two phrases refer to the same group of people, but the second is more specific. Both refer to the followers of the Pharisee sect, but they do not focus on the leaders of the Pharisees. Alternate translation: "the disciples of the Pharisees were fasting...the disciples of the Pharisees"

they came (ULT)

Some men came to Jesus (UST)

"Some men." It is best to translate this phrase without specifying exactly who these men are. If in your language you have to be more specific, the possible meanings are 1) these men were not among John's disciples or the disciples of the Pharisees or 2) these men were among John's disciples.

Now...they came...said to Jesus (ULT)

Now at this time...Some men came to Jesus...asked him (UST)

"came and said to Jesus"

Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [disciples](#) (2)
- [disciples](#) (3)
- [disciples](#) (4)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [of John](#)
- [of John](#) (2)
- [fasting](#)
- [fast](#)
- [fast](#) (2)

Translation Words - UST

- [apprentices](#)
- [apprentices](#) (2)
- [disciple](#) (3)
- [apprentices](#) (4)
- [Pharisee sect](#)
- [Pharisees](#)

ULT

18 Now the [disciples of John](#) and the [Pharisees](#) were [fasting](#), so they came and said to Jesus, "Why do the [disciples of John](#) and the [disciples](#) of the [Pharisees](#) [fast](#), but your [disciples](#) do not [fast](#)?"

UST

18 Now at this time, the [apprentices of John the Baptizer](#) and some men who belonged to the [Pharisee sect](#) were [abstaining from food, as they often did](#). Some men came to Jesus and asked him, "The [apprentices of John](#) and of the [Pharisees](#) [often abstain from food](#). Why do your [apprentices](#) not [abstain from food](#)?"

- of John the Baptizer
- of John (2)
- abstaining from food, as they often did
- often abstain from food
- do...abstain from food (2)

Mark 2:19

Jesus...The wedding attendants cannot fast while...bridegroom is still with them, can they (ULT)
Jesus...When...a man is marrying a woman...his friends will certainly not abstain from food while...he...is still with them (UST)

Jesus uses this question to remind the people of something they already know and to encourage them to apply it to him and his disciples. Alternate translation: "Wedding attendants do not fast while the bridegroom is with them. Rather they celebrate and feast." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [attendants](#)
- [As long as](#)
- [fast](#)
- [they...fast](#) (2)
- [bridegroom](#)
- [bridegroom](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [his friends](#)
- [especially while](#)
- [will...abstain from food](#)
- [The wedding is a time of feasting and celebrating...It is not a time for abstaining from food](#) (2)
- [a man is marrying a woman...he](#)
- [groom...groom](#)

ULT

¹⁹ So [Jesus](#) said to them, "The wedding [attendants](#) cannot [fast](#) while the [bridegroom](#) is still with them, can they? [As long as](#) they have the [bridegroom](#) with them, [they](#) cannot [fast](#)."

UST

¹⁹ [Jesus](#) said to them, "When [a man is marrying a woman](#), [his friends](#) will certainly not [abstain from food](#) while [he](#) is still with them. [The wedding is a time of feasting and celebrating](#) with the [groom](#). [It is not a time for abstaining from food, especially while](#) the [groom](#) is with them."

Mark 2:20

will be taken away...the bridegroom (ULT)

will be taken away...the groom (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the bridegroom will go away" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

will be taken away from them...they will fast (ULT)

will be taken away from them...they will abstain from food (UST)

The word "them" and "they" refer to the wedding attendants.

Translation Words - ULT

- [they will fast](#)
- [bridegroom](#)
- [the days](#)
- [days](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [they will abstain from food](#)
- [groom](#)
- [day](#)
- [days](#)

ULT

²⁰ But [the days](#) will come when the [bridegroom](#) will be taken away from them, and in those [days](#), then [they will fast](#).

UST

²⁰ But some [day](#), the [groom](#) will be taken away from them. Then in those [days](#), [they will abstain from food](#)."

Mark 2:21

No one sews a piece of new cloth on an old garment (ULT)

People do not sew a patch of unshrunk cloth on an old garment in order to mend a hole...the garment (UST)

Sewing a piece of new cloth on an old garment will make the hole on an old garment worse if the piece of new cloth has not yet shrunk. Both the new cloth and old garment will be ruined. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [an...garment](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [an...garment...the garment](#)

ULT

²¹ No one sews a piece of new cloth on an old [garment](#). Otherwise the patch tears away from it, the new from the old, and there is a worse tear.

UST

²¹ Jesus went on to say to them, "People do not sew a patch of unshrunk cloth on an old [garment](#) in order to mend a hole. If they did, when they washed [the garment](#), the patch would shrink and the new piece of cloth would tear off more of the old cloth. As a result, the hole would become even bigger!"

Mark 2:22

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to tell another parable. This one is about putting new wine into old wineskins rather than into new wineskins. (See: [Parables](#))

new wine (ULT)

new wine (UST)

“grape juice.” This refers to wine that has not fermented yet. If grapes are unknown in your area, use the general term for fruit juice.

old wineskins (ULT)

old animal skin bags (UST)

This refers to wineskins that have been used many times.

wineskins (ULT)

animal skin bags (UST)

These were bags made out of animal skins. They could also be called “wine bags” or “skin bags.”

the wine will burst the skins (ULT)

the new wine will burst the skin bags because they would not stretch when the wine ferments and expands (UST)

New wine expands as it ferments, so it would cause old, brittle wineskins to tear open.

will be destroyed (ULT)

would be (UST)

“will be ruined”

wineskins...fresh (ULT)

animal skin bags...new (UST)

“new wineskins” or “new wine bags.” This refers to wineskins that have never been used.

Translation Words - ULT

- [will be destroyed](#)
- [wine](#)
- [wineskins](#)
- [wine](#)
- [skins](#)
- [wine](#) (2)
- [wineskins](#)
- [wine](#) (2)
- [wineskins](#) (2)

ULT

²² No one puts new [wine](#) into old [wineskins](#). Otherwise the [wine](#) will burst the [skins](#) and both the [wine](#) and the [wineskins will be destroyed](#). Instead, new [wine](#) is put into fresh [wineskins](#).”

UST

²² Similarly, people do not put new [wine](#) into old [animal skin bags](#) to store it. If they did, the [new wine](#) will burst the [skin bags](#) because they would not stretch when the wine ferments and expands. As a result both the [wine](#) and the [skin bags would be](#) ruined! On the contrary, people must put new [wine](#) into new [skin bags](#)!”

Translation Words - UST

- would be
- wine
- animal skin bags
- new wine
- skin bags
- wine (2)
- skin bags
- wine (2)
- skin bags (2)

Mark 2:23

Connecting Statement:

Jesus gives the Pharisees an example from scripture to show why the disciples were not wrong to pick grain on the Sabbath.

picking the heads of grain (ULT) **were plucking...some of the heads of grain (UST)**

Plucking grain in others' fields and eating it was not considered stealing. The question was whether it was lawful to do this on the Sabbath. The disciples picked the heads of grain to eat the kernels, or seeds, in them. This can be worded to show the full meaning. Alternate translation: "pick heads of grain and eat the seeds" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the heads of grain (ULT) **some of the heads of grain (UST)**

The "heads" are the topmost part of the wheat plant, which is a kind of tall grass. The heads hold the mature grain or seeds of the plant.

Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [Sabbath day](#)
- [heads of grain](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [apprentices...apprentices](#)
- [Jewish day of rest](#)
- [heads of grain](#)

ULT

²³ Now it happened that on the [Sabbath day](#), Jesus went through the grainfields, and his [disciples](#) began to make their way along, picking the [heads of grain](#).

UST

²³ On one [Jewish day of rest](#), Jesus was walking through some grain fields with his [apprentices](#). As they were walking along through the grain fields, the [apprentices](#) were plucking some of the [heads of grain](#).

Mark 2:24

Connecting Statement:

The Pharisees ask a question about what the disciples were doing (verse 23).

are they doing that which is not lawful on the Sabbath days (ULT)

They are breaking the Jewish law concerning the day of rest...are they doing that (UST)

Plucking grain in others' fields and eating it (verse 23) was not considered stealing. The question was whether it was lawful to do this on the Sabbath.

ULT

²⁴ So the [Pharisees](#) said to him, "Look, why are they doing that which is not [lawful](#) on the [Sabbath days](#)?"

UST

²⁴ Some of the [Pharisees](#) saw what they were doing and said to Jesus, "Look! [They are breaking the Jewish law concerning the day of rest](#). Why are they doing [that](#)?"

Look, why are they doing that which is not lawful on the Sabbath days (ULT)

Look! They are breaking the Jewish law concerning the day of rest. Why are they doing that (UST)

The Pharisees ask Jesus a question to condemn him. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Look! They are breaking the Jewish law concerning the Sabbath." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Look (ULT)

Look (UST)

"Look at this" or "Listen." This is a word used to get the attention of someone to show them something. If there is a word in your language that is used to draw a person's attention to something, you could use that here.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Pharisees](#)
- [Sabbath days](#)
- [is...lawful](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Pharisees](#)
- [day of rest](#)
- [They are breaking the Jewish law concerning...that](#)

Mark 2:25

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to scold the Pharisees by asking them a question.

He said...to them (ULT)

Jesus said to them (UST)

“Jesus said to the Pharisees”

Have you never read what David did...the men who were with him (ULT)

Have you never read the scriptures concerning King David...the men who were with him (UST)

Jesus asks this question to remind the scribes and Pharisees of something David did on the Sabbath. The question is very long, so it can be divided into two sentences. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Have you never read what David did...he (ULT)

Have you never read the scriptures concerning King David...they (UST)

This can be stated as a command. Alternate translation: “Remember what you read about what David did...him.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Have you...read what...David (ULT)

Have you...read the scriptures concerning...King David (UST)

Jesus refers to reading about David in the Old Testament. This can be translated showing the implicit information. Alternate translation: “read in the scriptures what David” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [King David](#)

ULT

²⁵ He said to them, “Have you never read what [David](#) did when he was in need and hungry—he and the men who were with him—

UST

²⁵ Jesus said to them, “Have you never read the scriptures concerning [King David](#) and the men who were with him when they were hungry?

Mark 2:26

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes asking the question he began in verse 25.

how he went into the house of God...to those who were with him (ULT)

This can be expressed as a statement separate from verse 25.

Alternate translation: "He went into the house of God...to those who were with him." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

how he went (ULT)

The word "he" refers to David.

the bread of the presence (ULT) some of the bread that had been on display before God (UST)

This refers to the twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God during Old Testament times.

Translation Words - ULT

- of God
- house of God
- was high priest
- priests
- Abiathar
- bread
- is...lawful
- house

Translation Words - UST

- of God
- house of God
- was high priest...The high priest
- According to our laws, only the priests could eat that bread
- Abiathar
- bread
- According to our laws, only the priests could eat that bread
- house

ULT

²⁶ how he went into the [house of God](#) when [Abiathar was high priest](#), and ate the [bread](#) of the presence, which is not [lawful](#) to eat, except for the [priests](#), and he even gave some to those who were with him?"

UST

²⁶ During the time [Abiathar was high priest](#), King David entered the [house of God](#) and asked for some bread. [The high priest](#) gave him some of the [bread](#) that had been on display before God. [According to our laws, only the priests could eat that bread!](#) But David ate some of it. Then he also gave some of it to the men who were with him."

Mark 2:27

The Sabbath was made for mankind (ULT)

The day of rest was established for the needs of people (UST)

Jesus makes clear why God established the Sabbath. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God made the Sabbath for mankind" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

mankind (ULT)

the needs of people (UST)

"man" or "people" or "the needs of people." This word here refers to both men and women. (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

not mankind for the Sabbath (ULT)

People were not made in order to meet the requirements of the Jewish day of rest (UST)

The words "was made" are understood from the previous phrase. They can be repeated here. Alternate translation: "mankind was not made for the Sabbath" or "God did not make mankind for the Sabbath" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Sabbath](#)
- [Sabbath](#) (2)

Translation Words - UST

- [day of rest](#)
- [Jewish day of rest](#) (2)

ULT

²⁷ Then he said to them, "The [Sabbath](#) was made for mankind, and not mankind for the [Sabbath](#)."

UST

²⁷ Jesus said to them further, "The [day of rest](#) was established for the needs of people. People were not made in order to meet the requirements of the [Jewish day of rest](#)!"

Mark 2:28

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- Son of Man
- Sabbath

Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- Son of Man
- day of rest

ULT

²⁸ Therefore, the [Son of Man](#) is [Lord](#), even of the [Sabbath](#)."

UST

²⁸ So, to be clear, the [Son of Man](#) is [Lord](#), even of the [day of rest](#)!"

Mark 3

Mark 3 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Sabbath

It was against the law of Moses to do work on the Sabbath. The Pharisees believed healing a sick person on the Sabbath was “work,” so they said that Jesus did wrong when he healed a person on the Sabbath. (See: [law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law](#))

“Blasphemy against the Spirit”

No one knows for sure what actions people perform or what words they say when they commit this sin. However, they probably insult the Holy Spirit and his work. Part of the Holy Spirit's work is to make people understand that they are sinners and that they need to have God forgive them. Therefore, anyone who does not try to stop sinning is probably committing blasphemy against the Spirit. (See: [blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous](#) and [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

The twelve disciples

The following are the lists of the twelve disciples:

In Matthew:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James son of Zebedee, John son of Zebedee, Philip, Bartholomew, Thomas, Matthew, James son of Alphaeus, Thaddaeus, Simon the Zealot and Judas Iscariot.

In Mark:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James the son of Zebedee and John the son of Zebedee (to whom he gave the name Boanerges, that is, sons of thunder), Philip, Bartholomew, Matthew, Thomas, James the son of Alphaeus, Thaddaeus, Simon the Zealot, and Judas Iscariot.

In Luke:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James, John, Philip, Bartholomew, Matthew, Thomas, James the son of Alphaeus, Simon (who was called the Zealot), Judas the son of James, and Judas Iscariot.

Thaddaeus is probably the same person as Jude, the son of James.

Brothers and Sisters

Most people call those who have the same parents “brother” and “sister” and think of them as the most important people in their lives. Many people also call those with the same grandparents “brother” and “sister.” In this chapter Jesus says that the most important people to him are those who obey God. (See: [brother](#))

Mark 3:1

Connecting Statement:

Jesus heals a man on the Sabbath in the synagogue and shows how he feels about what the Pharisees had done with the Sabbath rules. The Pharisees and Herodians begin to plan to put Jesus to death.

a man who had a withered hand (ULT)
a man...whose hand was shriveled (UST)

“a man with a crippled hand”

Translation Words - ULT

- [the synagogue](#)
- [a...hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [a Jewish preaching place](#)
- [whose hand](#)

ULT

¹ Then Jesus entered into [the synagogue](#) again, and there was a man who had a withered [hand](#).

UST

¹ On another Jewish day of rest Jesus again went into [a Jewish preaching place](#). There was a man there [whose hand](#) was shriveled.

Mark 3:2

Some people watched...him...closely...to see if he would heal him on the Sabbath (ULT)

Some men of the Pharisee sect watched him carefully in order to see whether he would heal the man on the day of rest (UST)

“Some people watched Jesus closely to see if he would heal the man with the withered hand”

Some people watched...him...closely (ULT)

Some men of the Pharisee sect watched him carefully (UST)

“Some of the Pharisees.” Later, in [Mark 3:6](#), these people are identified as Pharisees.

so that they might accuse him (ULT)

If Jesus were to heal the man that day, the Pharisees would accuse him breaking the law by the working on the Sabbath. Alternate translation: “so that they could accuse him of wrongdoing” or “so that they could accuse him of breaking the law” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Sabbath](#)
- [he would heal](#)
- [they might accuse](#)
- [Some people watched...closely](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [day of rest](#)
- [he would heal](#)
- [they wanted to be able to accuse...of doing something wrong](#)
- [Some men of the Pharisee sect watched...carefully](#)

ULT

² [Some people watched](#) him [closely](#) to see if [he would heal](#) him on the [Sabbath](#) so that [they might accuse](#) him.

UST

² [Some men of the Pharisee sect watched](#) him [carefully](#) in order to see whether [he would heal](#) the man on the [day of rest](#); [they wanted to be able to accuse](#) him [of doing something wrong](#).

Mark 3:3

in our midst (ULT)

in front of everyone (UST)

"in the middle of this crowd"

Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [Stand up](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)
- [Stand up here...So the man stood up](#)

ULT

³ So Jesus said to the man who had the withered [hand](#), "[Stand up](#) in our midst."

UST

³ Jesus said to the man whose [hand](#) was shriveled, "[Stand up here](#) in front of everyone!" [So the man stood up.](#)

Mark 3:4

Is it lawful to do good on the Sabbath days...or to kill (ULT)

Do the laws that God gave Moses permit people to do good on the day of rest...Do the laws permit us...on the day of rest...permit us...or...to refuse to help a person and let them die (UST)

Jesus said this to challenge them. He wanted them to acknowledge that it is lawful to heal people on the Sabbath. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

to do good on the Sabbath days or to do harm; to save a life or to kill (ULT)

to do good on the day of rest, or to do evil...to save a person's life on the day of rest, or...to refuse to help a person and let them die (UST)

These two phrases are similar in meaning, except that the second is more extreme. (See: [Parallelism](#))

to do harm; to save a life or to kill (ULT)

to do evil...to save a person's life...or...to refuse to help a person and let them die (UST)

It may be helpful to repeat "is it lawful," as that is the question Jesus is asking again in another way. Alternate translation: "is it lawful to save a life or to kill" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

a life (ULT)

a person's life (UST)

This refers to physical life and is a metonym for a person. Alternate translation: "someone from dying" or "someone's life" (See: [Metonymy](#))

But they were silent (ULT)

But they did not reply (UST)

"But they refused to answer him"

Translation Words - ULT

- to save
- a life
- to do good
- Sabbath days
- Is it lawful

Translation Words - UST

- to save
- a person's life
- to do good
- day of rest...day of rest

ULT

⁴ Then he said to the people, "[Is it lawful to do good](#) on the [Sabbath days](#) or to do harm; [to save a life](#) or to kill?" But they were silent.

UST

⁴ Then Jesus said to the people, "[Do the laws that God gave Moses permit people to do good](#) on the [day of rest](#), or to do evil? [Do the laws permit us to save a person's life](#) on the [day of rest](#), or [permit us](#) to refuse to help a person and let them die?" But they did not reply.

- Do the laws that God gave Moses permit people...Do the laws permit us...permit us

Mark 3:5

he looked around (ULT)

He looked around (UST)

"Jesus looked around"

grieved (ULT)

He was very disappointed (UST)

"was deeply saddened"

by the hardness of their heart (ULT)

that they were stubborn and not willing to help the man (UST)

This metaphor describes how the Pharisees were unwilling to have compassion on the man with the withered hand. Alternate translation: "because they were unwilling to have compassion on the man" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Stretch out your hand (ULT)

Extend your hand (UST)

"Reach out with your hand"

his hand was restored (ULT)

it became all right again (UST)

This can be stated with an active form. Alternate translation: "Jesus restored his hand" or "Jesus made his hand the way it was before" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of...heart
- hand
- hand
- hardness

Translation Words - UST

- that...were stubborn and not willing to help the man
- hand
- it
- that...were stubborn and not willing to help the man

ULT

⁵ Then he looked around at them with anger, grieved by the [hardness](#) of their [heart](#), and said to the man, "Stretch out your [hand](#)." So he stretched it out, and his [hand](#) was restored.

UST

⁵ He looked around at them angrily. He was very disappointed that they [were stubborn and not willing to help the man](#). So he said to the man, "Extend your [hand](#)!" When the man extended his shriveled hand, [it](#) became all right again!

Mark 3:6

began to plot (ULT)

They...met...Together they planned (UST)

“began to make a plan”

the Herodians (ULT)

some of the Jews who supported Herod Antipas, who ruled the district of Galilee (UST)

This is the name of an informal political party that supported Herod Antipas.

as to how they might kill him (ULT)

how they could kill Jesus (UST)

“how they might kill Jesus”

Translation Words - ULT

- Pharisees
- began to plot

Translation Words - UST

- Pharisees
- They...met...Together they planned

ULT

⁶ Then the [Pharisees](#) went out and immediately [began to plot](#) with the Herodians against him, as to how they might kill him.

UST

⁶ The [Pharisees](#) left the preaching place. [They](#) immediately [met](#) with some of the Jews who supported Herod Antipas, who ruled the district of Galilee. [Together they planned](#) how they could kill Jesus.

Mark 3:7

Connecting Statement:

A great crowd of people follows Jesus, and he heals many people.

the sea (ULT)

an area further along the Galilee lake (UST)

This refers to the Sea of Galilee.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [Galilee](#)
- [sea](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [apprentices](#)
- [Judea districts](#)
- [the Galilee](#)
- [Galilee lake](#)

ULT

⁷ Then [Jesus](#), with his [disciples](#), withdrew to the [sea](#), and a great crowd of people followed from [Galilee](#) and from [Judea](#)

UST

⁷ [Jesus](#) and his [apprentices](#) left that town and went to an area further along the [Galilee lake](#). A great crowd of people followed him. The people that followed him came from [the Galilee](#) and [Judea districts](#),

Mark 3:8

Idumea (ULT)

the district of Idumea (UST)

This is the region, previously known as Edom, which covered the southern half of the province of Judea.

about the things he was doing (ULT)

about what he was doing (UST)

This refers to the miracles Jesus was performing. Alternate translation: "the great miracles that Jesus was performing"

came to him (ULT)

came to him (UST)

"came to where Jesus was"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jordan](#)
- [Sidon](#)
- [Idumea](#)
- [Tyre](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jordan River](#)
- [Sidon](#)
- [district of Idumea](#)
- [the region around the cities of Tyre](#)
- [Jerusalem city](#)

ULT

⁸ and from [Jerusalem](#) and from [Idumea](#) and beyond the [Jordan](#) and around [Tyre](#) and [Sidon](#). When they heard about the things he was doing, a great crowd came to him.

UST

⁸ from [Jerusalem city](#), from the [district of Idumea](#), from the region on the east side of the [Jordan River](#), and from [the region around the cities of Tyre](#) and [Sidon](#). They all came to him because they had heard about what he was doing.

Mark 3:9

General Information:

Verse 9 tells what Jesus asked his disciples to do because of the large crowd of people around him. Verse 10 tells why such a large crowd was around Jesus. The information in these verses can be reordered to present the events in the order they happened, as in the UST. (See: [Order of Events](#))

he told his disciples to...a small boat...they would not press against him (ULT)

As the large crowd was pushing forward toward Jesus, he was in danger of being crushed by them. They would not crush him intentionally. It was just that there were so many people.

Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [disciple](#)

ULT

⁹ So he told his [disciples](#) to have a small boat ready for him because of the crowd, so that they would not press against him.

UST

⁹⁻¹⁰ Because he had healed many people, many other people who had various illnesses pushed forward in order to touch him. They believed that if only they touched him, it would make them well. So he told his disciples that they should get a small boat ready for him in order that the crowd would not crush him when they pushed forward to touch him.

Mark 3:10

For he healed many, so that...everyone who had afflictions...in order to touch him (ULT)

This tells why so many people were crowding around Jesus that he thought they might crush him. Alternate translation: "For, because Jesus had healed many people, everyone...to touch him" (See: [Connecting Words and Phrases](#))

For he healed many (ULT)

The word "many" refers to the large number of people Jesus had already healed. Alternate translation: "For he healed many people" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

everyone who had afflictions eagerly approached him in order to touch him (ULT)

They did this because they believed that touching Jesus would make them well. This can be expressed clearly. Alternate translation: "all the sick people pushed forward eagerly trying to touch him so that they might be healed" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [he healed](#)
- [afflictions](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [cure, cured, heal, healed, healing, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy](#)
- [afflict, affliction, distress](#)

ULT

¹⁰ For [he healed](#) many, so that everyone who had [afflictions](#) eagerly approached him in order to touch him.

UST

⁹⁻¹⁰ Because he had healed many people, many other people who had various illnesses pushed forward in order to touch him. They believed that if only they touched him, it would make them well. So he told his disciples that they should get a small boat ready for him in order that the crowd would not crush him when they pushed forward to touch him.

Mark 3:11

saw him (ULT)

saw Jesus (UST)

“saw Jesus”

they fell down before him and cried out and said (ULT)

Here “they” refers to the unclean spirits. It is they who are causing the people they possess to do things. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “they caused the people they were possessing to fall down before him and to cry out to him” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

they fell down before him (ULT)

they caused the people whom they controlled to fall down in front of Jesus (UST)

The unclean spirits did not fall down before Jesus because they loved him or wanted to worship him. They fell down before him because they were afraid of him.

You...are the Son of God (ULT)

You are the Son of God (UST)

Jesus has power over unclean spirits because he is the “Son of God.”

the Son of God (ULT)

the Son of God (UST)

This is an important title for Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of God
- Son of God
- unclean
- spirits
- unclean spirits
- cried out
- they fell down before

Translation Words - UST

- of God
- Son of God
- evil
- spirits
- evil spirits
- call out to him
- they caused the people whom they controlled to fall down in front of

ULT

¹¹ Whenever the [unclean spirits](#) saw him, [they fell down before](#) him and [cried out](#) and said, “You are the [Son of God](#).”

UST

¹¹ Whenever the [evil spirits](#) saw Jesus, [they caused the people whom they controlled to fall down in front of](#) Jesus and [call out to him](#), “You are the [Son of God](#)!”

Mark 3:12

he sternly rebuked them (ULT)

Jesus commanded the evil spirits strongly...they (UST)

“Jesus strictly ordered the unclean spirits”

they would not make him known (ULT)

must not tell anyone who he was (UST)

“not to reveal who he was”

Translation Words - ULT

- [known](#)
- [he...rebuked](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [tell anyone who...was](#)
- [Jesus commanded](#)

ULT

¹² But [he](#) sternly [rebuked](#) them so that they would not make him [known](#).

UST

¹² [Jesus commanded](#) the evil spirits strongly that they must not [tell anyone who](#) he [was](#).

Mark 3:13

General Information:

Jesus chooses the men he wants to be his apostles.

Translation Words - ULT

- called

Translation Words - UST

- he summoned

ULT

¹³ Then he went up on the mountain and [called](#) to himself those whom he wanted, and they came to him.

UST

¹³ Jesus went up into the hills. As he went, [he summoned](#) those that he wanted to go with him and they went with him.

Mark 3:14

so that they might be with him and so that he might send them to preach

“so that they would be with him and he would send them to proclaim the message”

Translation Words - ULT

- the twelve
- apostles
- he...named
- to preach
- he might send

Translation Words - UST

- twelve men
- sent ones
- He called them
- to preach
- him to send...out

ULT

¹⁴ He appointed [the twelve](#) (whom [he](#) also [named apostles](#)) so that they might be with him and so that [he might send](#) them [to preach](#),

UST

¹⁴ He appointed [twelve men](#) to be with him and for [him to send](#) them [out to preach](#). [He called them sent ones](#).

Mark 3:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [authority](#)
- [demons](#)
- [to cast out](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [power](#)
- [evil spirits](#)
- [in order that they might force...to come out from people](#)

ULT

¹⁵ and to have [authority to cast out](#) the [demons](#).

UST

¹⁵ He also gave them [power in order that they might force evil spirits to come out from people](#).

Mark 3:16

To Simon...he added...the name Peter (ULT)

Simon...Jesus gave him the new name Peter (UST)

The author begins to list the names of the twelve apostles. Simon is the first man listed.

Translation Words - ULT

- [twelve](#)
- [he appointed](#)
- [the name](#)
- [To Simon...Peter](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [twelve men](#)
- [he appointed](#)
- [the...name](#)
- [Simon...Peter](#)

ULT

¹⁶ Then [he appointed](#) the [twelve](#): [To Simon](#), he added [the name Peter](#);

UST

¹⁶ These were the [twelve men he appointed](#): [Simon](#) (and Jesus gave him the new [name Peter](#)).

Mark 3:17

to whom...he added (ULT)

to both of whom he added...new (UST)

The phrase "to whom" refers to both James son of Zebedee and his brother John.

the name Boanerges, that is, sons of thunder (ULT)

Jesus called them this because they were like thunder. Alternate translation: "the name Boanerges, which means men who are like thunder" or "the name Boanerges, which means thunder men" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- sons
- the name
- of Zebedee
- John
- James...the son of Zebedee
- James

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Men who are like
- the...name
- of Zebedee
- John
- James the son of Zebedee
- of James

ULT

¹⁷ [James the son of Zebedee](#), and [John](#) the [brother of James](#), to whom he added [the name](#) Boanerges, that is, [sons](#) of thunder;

UST

¹⁷ And along with Peter, Jesus also appointed [James the son of Zebedee](#), and [John](#) the [brother of James](#), to both of whom he added the new [name](#), '[Men who are like](#) Thunder' because of their fiery zeal;

Mark 3:18

Thaddaeus (ULT)

Thaddaeus (UST)

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Simon...the Zealot](#)
- [Andrew](#)
- [Bartholomew](#)
- [Philip](#)
- [James...the son of Alphaeus](#)
- [Thomas](#)
- [Matthew](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Simon the Zealot](#)
- [Andrew](#)
- [Bartholomew](#)
- [Philip](#)
- [James who was the son of Alphaeus](#)
- [Thomas](#)
- [Matthew](#)

ULT

¹⁸ and [Andrew](#), [Philip](#), [Bartholomew](#), [Matthew](#), [Thomas](#), [James the son of Alphaeus](#), Thaddaeus, [Simon the Zealot](#),

UST

¹⁸ and he appointed [Andrew](#), [Philip](#), [Bartholomew](#), [Matthew](#), [Thomas](#), and [James who was the son of Alphaeus](#); and he appointed Thaddaeus, [Simon the Zealot](#),

Mark 3:19

and...who...betrayed him (ULT)

and...who...betrayed him (UST)

“who would betray Jesus” The word “who” refers to Judas Iscariot.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judas Iscariot](#)
- [betrayed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Judas Iscariot](#)
- [betrayed](#)

ULT

¹⁹ and [Judas Iscariot](#), who also [betrayed](#) him.

UST

¹⁹ and [Judas Iscariot](#) (who later [betrayed](#) him).

Mark 3:20

Then he entered into a house (ULT)

"Then Jesus went to the house where he was staying."

they could not even eat bread (ULT)

The word "bread" represents food. Alternate translation: "Jesus and his disciples could not eat at all" or "they could not eat anything" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bread](#)
- [came together](#)
- [a house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bread](#)
- [gathered where he was staying...crowded around him](#)
- [a house](#)

ULT

²⁰ Then he entered into [a house](#), and the crowd [came together](#) again, so that they could not even eat [bread](#).

UST

²⁰ Jesus and his apprentices went to [a house](#). Again a crowd [gathered where he was staying](#). Many people [crowded around him](#). He and his apprentices did not even have time to eat.

Mark 3:21

they went out to seize him (ULT)

they went to take him home with them (UST)

Members of his family went to the house, so that they could take hold of him and force him to go home with them.

for they said (ULT)

because some people were saying (UST)

Possible meanings for the word "they" are 1) his relatives or 2) some people in the crowd.

He is out of his mind (ULT)

he was insane (UST)

Jesus' family uses this idiom to describe how they think he is acting. Alternate translation: "crazy" or "insane" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [He is out of his mind](#)
- [to seize](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [he was insane](#)
- [to take...home with them](#)

ULT

²¹ When his family heard about it, they went out [to seize](#) him, for they said, "[He is out of his mind](#)."

UST

²¹ When his relatives heard about this, they went [to take](#) him [home with them](#) because some people were saying that [he was insane](#).

Mark 3:22

By...the ruler of the demons he drives out demons (ULT)

"By the power of Beelzebul, who is the ruler of the demons, Jesus drives out demons"

Translation Words - ULT

- scribes
- demons
- demons
- by Beelzebul
- Jerusalem
- he drives out
- ruler

Translation Words - UST

- Some men who taught the Jewish laws
- evil spirits
- evil spirits
- Beelzebul...He
- Jerusalem city
- to force...out from people
- who rules

ULT

²² Then the [scribes](#) who came down from [Jerusalem](#) said, "He is possessed [by Beelzebul](#)" and "By the [ruler](#) of the [demons he drives out demons](#)."

UST

²² [Some men who taught the Jewish laws](#) came downhill from [Jerusalem city](#). They heard that Jesus was forcing evil spirits to come out of people. So they were telling people, "[Beelzebul, who rules the evil spirits](#), controls Jesus. [He is the one who gives Jesus the power to force evil spirits out from people!](#)"

Mark 3:23

Connecting Statement:

Jesus explains with a parable why it is foolish for people to think that Jesus is controlled by Satan. (See: [Parables](#))

Jesus called them to himself (ULT)

Jesus summoned those men over to himself (UST)

"Jesus called the people to come to him"

How can Satan cast out Satan (ULT)

How can Satan expel Satan (UST)

Jesus asked this rhetorical question in response to the scribes saying that he cast out demons by Beelzebul. This question can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Satan cannot cast out himself!" or "Satan does not go against his own evil spirits!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

²³ But [Jesus called](#) them [to himself](#) and said to them in [parables](#), "How can [Satan cast out Satan](#)?"

UST

²³ So [Jesus summoned](#) those men [over to himself](#). Jesus spoke to them in [parables](#) and said, "How can [Satan expel Satan](#)?"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus called...to himself](#)
- [parables](#)
- [Satan](#)
- [Satan](#)
- [cast out](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus summoned...over to himself](#)
- [parables](#)
- [Satan](#)
- [Satan](#)
- [expel](#)

Mark 3:24

If...a kingdom is divided against itself (ULT)

The word "kingdom" is a metonym for the people who live in the kingdom. Alternate translation: "If the people who live in a kingdom are divided against each other" (See: [Metonymy](#))

cannot stand (ULT)

will cease to be a united country (UST)

This phrase is a metaphor meaning that the people will no longer be united and they will fall. Alternate translation: "cannot endure" or "will fall"(See: [Metaphor](#) and [Litotes](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [a kingdom](#)
- [kingdom](#) (2)

Translation Words - UST

- [people who live in the same country](#)
- [country](#) (2)

ULT

²⁴ If [a kingdom](#) is divided against itself, that [kingdom](#) cannot stand.

UST

²⁴ If [people who live in the same country](#) are fighting against one another, their [country](#) will cease to be a united country.

Mark 3:25

a house (ULT)

people who live in the same house (UST)

This is a metonym for the people who live in a house. Alternate translation: “family” or “household” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a house
- house (2)

Translation Words - UST

- people who live in the same house
- they (2)

ULT

²⁵ If [a house](#) is divided against itself, that [house](#) will not be able to stand.

UST

²⁵ And if [people who live in the same house](#) fight each other, [they](#) will certainly not remain united as one family.

Mark 3:26

if Satan has risen up against himself and is divided (ULT)

The word “himself” is a reflexive pronoun that refers back to Satan, and it is also a metonym for his evil spirits. Alternate translation: “If Satan and his evil spirits were fighting one another” or “If Satan and his evil spirits have risen up against each other and are divided” (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#) and [Metonymy](#))

is divided, he is not able to stand (ULT)

This is a metaphor meaning he will fall and cannot endure. Alternate translation: “will cease to be united” or “cannot endure and has come to an end” or “will fall and has come to an end” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Satan](#)
- [has risen up](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Satan and his evil spirits](#)
- [were fighting](#)

ULT

²⁶ And if [Satan has risen up](#) against himself and is divided, he is not able to stand, but has come to an end.

UST

²⁶ Similarly, if [Satan and his evil spirits were fighting](#) one another, instead of remaining strong, he would become powerless.

Mark 3:27

he will plunder (ULT)

will he be able to steal the things (UST)

to steal a person's valuables and possessions

Translation Words - ULT

- tying up
- can
- belongings
- of a strong man
- strong man
- house
- house (2)

Translation Words - UST

- he...ties up
- can
- possessions
- a strong man...him
- strong man
- house
- in...house (2)

ULT

²⁷ But no one [can](#) enter into the [house of a strong man](#) and steal his [belongings](#) without [tying up](#) the [strong man](#) first, and then he will plunder his [house](#).

UST

²⁷ No one [can](#) go into the [house](#) of a [strong man](#) and take his [possessions](#) away from [him](#) unless [he](#) first [ties up](#) the [strong man](#). Only then will he be able to steal the things in that man's [house](#)."

Mark 3:28

Truly I say to you (ULT)

Jesus also said, "Consider this carefully (UST)

This indicates that the statement that follows is especially true and important.

of the sons of men (ULT)

People...them (UST)

"those who have been born of man." This expression is used to emphasize peoples' humanity. Alternate translation: "people"

they may speak (ULT)

they may speak evil about God (UST)

speak

Translation Words - ULT

- sins
- sons
- will be forgiven
- Truly
- blasphemies
- they may speak

Translation Words - UST

- may sin in many ways
- People...them
- God can still forgive
- Jesus also said, "Consider this carefully
- they may speak evil about God
- they may speak evil about God

ULT

²⁸ Truly I say to you, all [sins](#) of the [sons](#) of men [will be forgiven](#), even whatever [blasphemies they may speak](#),

UST

²⁸ Jesus also said, "Consider this [carefully](#)! [People may sin in many ways](#) and [they may speak evil about God](#). [God can still forgive them](#),

Mark 3:29

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- ever
- of...eternal
- an...sin
- Holy
- Holy Spirit
- forgiveness
- guilty
- blasphemes

Translation Words - UST

- eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever
- eternally
- of sin
- Holy
- Holy Spirit
- God will...forgive them
- guilty
- speaks evil words

ULT

²⁹ but whoever [blasphemes](#) against the [Holy Spirit](#) will not [ever](#) have [forgiveness](#), but is [guilty](#) of an [eternal sin](#)”—

UST

²⁹ but if anyone [speaks evil words](#) about the [Holy Spirit](#), [God will](#) never [forgive them](#). That person is [eternally guilty of sin](#).”

Mark 3:30

they were saying (ULT)

they were saying (UST)

“the people were saying”

He has an unclean spirit (ULT)

An evil spirit is controlling him (UST)

This is an idiom that means to be possessed by an unclean spirit.

Alternate translation: “is possessed by an unclean spirit” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [unclean](#)
- [an...spirit](#)
- [an unclean spirit](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [evil](#)
- [An...spirit](#)
- [An evil spirit](#)

ULT

³⁰ because they were saying, “He has [an unclean spirit](#).”

UST

³⁰ Jesus told them this because they were saying, “[An evil spirit](#) is controlling him!”

Mark 3:31

Then his mother and his brothers came

"Then Jesus' mother and brothers came"

**They sent for him, summoning him (ULT)
they sent someone inside in order to call him outside (UST)**

"They sent someone inside to tell him that they were outside and to have him come out to them"

Translation Words - ULT

- [summoning](#)
- [brothers](#)
- [They sent](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [in order to call...outside](#)
- [younger siblings](#)
- [they sent someone](#)

ULT

³¹ Then his mother and his [brothers](#) came and stood outside. [They sent](#) for him, [summoning](#) him.

UST

³¹ Jesus' mother and [younger siblings](#) arrived. While they stood outside, [they sent someone](#) inside [in order to call](#) him [outside](#).

Mark 3:32

looking for you (ULT)

They want to see you (UST)

“are asking for you”

Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [looking](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [younger siblings](#)
- [They want to see](#)

ULT

³² A crowd was sitting around him and they said to him, “Look! Your mother and your [brothers](#) are outside [looking](#) for you.”

UST

³² A crowd was sitting around Jesus. One of them said to him, “Your mother and [younger siblings](#) are outside. [They want to see](#) you.”

Mark 3:33

Who are my mother and my brothers (ULT)

Jesus uses this question to teach the people. Alternate translation: "I will tell you who are really my mother and brothers" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [siblings](#)

ULT

³³ He answered them and said, "Who are my mother and my [brothers](#)?"

UST

³³ Jesus asked them, "Who is my mother? Who are my [siblings](#)?"

Mark 3:34

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [siblings](#)

ULT

³⁴ Then he looked around at those who were sitting in a circle around him and said, "See, here are my mother and my [brothers](#)!

UST

³⁴ After he looked around at those who sat with him, he said, "Look here! You are my mother and my [siblings](#).

Mark 3:35

whoever...does...that person...is (ULT)

“those who do...they are”

that person is my brother, and sister, and mother (ULT)

This is a metaphor that means Jesus' disciples belong to Jesus' spiritual family. This is more important than belonging to his physical family. Alternate translation: “that person is like a brother, sister, or mother to me” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [of God](#)
- [will of God](#)
- [sister](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [God](#)
- [what...God...wants](#)
- [my sister](#)

ULT

³⁵ For whoever does the [will of God](#), that person is my [brother](#), and [sister](#), and mother.”

UST

³⁵ Those who do [what God wants](#) are my [brother](#), [my sister](#), or my mother!”

Mark 4

Mark 4 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Mark 4:3-10 forms one parable. The parable is explained in 4:14-23.

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 4:12, which are words from the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

Parables

The parables were short stories that Jesus told so that people would easily understand the lesson he was trying to teach them. He also told the stories so that those who did not want to believe in him would not understand the truth.

Mark 4:1

Connecting Statement:

As Jesus taught from a boat at the seaside, he told them the parable of the soils. (See: [Parables](#))

the sea (ULT)

the Galilee lake (UST)

This is the Sea of Galilee.

Translation Words - ULT

- [sea](#)
- [sea](#)
- [sea](#) (2)
- [to teach](#)
- [gathered](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Galilee lake](#)
- [water](#)
- [water](#) (2)
- [to teach people](#)
- [gathered](#)

ULT

¹ Again he began [to teach](#) beside the [sea](#), and a large crowd [gathered](#) around him. Therefore he stepped into a boat on the [sea](#) and sat down in it. The whole crowd was on the shore beside the [sea](#).

UST

¹ Another time Jesus began [to teach people](#) alongside the [Galilee lake](#). As he was teaching, a very large crowd [gathered](#) around him. He got into a boat and pushed out onto the [water](#). Then he sat down in the boat so that he could speak to the crowd better. At the same time, the crowd was on the shore close to the [water](#).

Mark 4:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [parables](#)
- [He taught](#)
- [teaching](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [parables](#)
- [he taught](#)
- [was teaching...this](#)

ULT

² [He taught](#) them many things in [parables](#), and in his [teaching](#), he said to them,

UST

² Then [he taught](#) them many [parables](#). While he [was teaching](#) them, he told them [this](#):

Mark 4:3

Listen! Behold...the farmer (ULT)

"Pay attention! A farmer"

to sow his seed (ULT)

to sow some seeds (UST)

All of the seeds that the farmer sowed are spoken of here as if they are one seed. "his seeds"

Translation Words - ULT

- [farmer](#)
- [to sow his seed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to sow some seeds](#)
- [to sow some seeds](#)

ULT

³ "Listen! Behold, the [farmer](#) went out [to sow his seed](#)."

UST

³ "Listen to this: A man went out to his field [to sow some seeds](#)."

Mark 4:4

as he sowed, some seed fell beside the road (ULT)

"As he threw seed over the soil." In different cultures people sow seeds differently. In this parable the seeds were sown by throwing the seeds over the land that was prepared for growing.

some seed...devoured it (ULT)

All of the seeds that the farmer sowed are spoken of here as if they are one seed. "some seeds...devoured them"

Translation Words - ULT

- [he sowed](#)
- [devoured](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [he was scattering them over the soil](#)
- [ate](#)

ULT

⁴ It happened that as [he sowed](#), some seed fell beside the road, and the birds came and [devoured](#) it.

UST

⁴ As [he was scattering them over the soil](#), some of the seeds fell on the path. Then some birds came and [ate](#) those seeds.

Mark 4:5

Other seed...it did not have...it sprang up...the...did not have (ULT)

Other seeds...was not...the seeds sprouted...ground...on top of the rock...it was not deep (UST)

All of the seeds that the farmer sowed are spoken of here as if they are one seed. "Other seeds...they did not have...they sprang...they did not have"

it sprang up (ULT)

the seeds sprouted (UST)

"the seed that landed on the rocky soil began to grow quickly"

soil (ULT)

soil (UST)

This refers to the loose dirt on the ground in which you can plant seeds.

ULT

⁵ Other seed fell on the rocky ground, where it did not have much soil. Immediately it sprang up, because it did not have deep soil.

UST

⁵ Other seeds fell on ground where there was not much soil on top of the rock. Very soon the seeds sprouted because the sun warmed the moist soil quickly where it was not deep.

Mark 4:6

the plants were scorched (ULT)

they became scorched (UST)

This refers to the young plants. This may be stated in active form.
Alternate translation: "it scorched the young plants" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

because they had no root, they dried up (ULT)

"because the young plants had no roots, they dried up"

ULT

⁶ But when the sun rose, the plants were scorched, and because they had no root, they dried up.

UST

⁶ But after the sun shone on those young plants, they became scorched. Then they withered because they did not have deep roots.

Mark 4:7

Other seed...choked it...it did not produce (ULT)
other seeds...The seeds...crowded out the good plants...
the plants produced no (UST)

All of the seeds that the farmer sowed are spoken of here as if they are one seed. See how you translated this in [Mark 4:3](#). "Other seeds... choked them...they did not produce"

Translation Words - ULT

- [a crop](#)
- [thorn plants](#)
- [thorn plants](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [grain](#)
- [ground that contained roots of thorny plants](#)
- [thorny plants also](#)

ULT

⁷ Other seed fell among the [thorn plants](#). The [thorn plants](#) grew up and choked it, and it did not produce [a crop](#).

UST

⁷ As he sowed, other seeds fell on [ground that contained roots of thorny plants](#). The seeds grew, but the [thorny plants also](#) grew up and crowded out the good plants. So the plants produced no [grain](#).

Mark 4:8**increasing and yielding thirty, and sixty, and a hundred times (ULT)**

The amount of grain produced by each plant is being compared to the single seed from which it grew. Ellipsis is used here to shorten the phrases but they can be written out. Alternate translation: "Some plants bore thirty times as much as the seed that the man had planted, some produced sixty times as much grain, and some produced a hundred times as much grain" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

thirty...sixty...a hundred times (ULT)
thirty times as much as the seed that the man had planted...Some bore sixty times as much...Some bore one hundred times as much (UST)

"30...60...100." These may be written as numerals. (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [good](#)
- [a crop](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [good](#)
- [plenty of grain](#)

ULT

⁸ Other seed fell into the [good](#) soil and it produced [a crop](#) growing up and increasing and yielding thirty, and sixty, and a hundred times."

UST

⁸ But as he sowed, other seeds fell on [good](#) soil. As a result, they sprouted, they grew well, and then they produced [plenty of grain](#). Some plants bore thirty times as much as the seed that the man had planted. Some bore sixty times as much. Some bore one hundred times as much."

Mark 4:9

Whoever has ears to hear, let him hear (ULT)
If you want to understand this, you should consider carefully what I have just said (UST)

Jesus is emphasizing that what he has just said is important and may take some effort to understand and put into practice. The phrase "has ears" here is a metonym for the willingness to understand and obey. Alternate translation: "Whoever is willing to listen, listen" or "Whoever is willing to understand, let him understand and obey" (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

⁹ Then he said, "Whoever has ears to hear, let him hear!"

UST

⁹ Then Jesus said, "If you want to understand this, you should consider carefully what I have just said."

Whoever has...let him hear (ULT)
If you want to understand this...you should consider carefully what I have just said (UST)

Since Jesus is speaking directly to his audience, you may prefer to use the second person here. Alternate translation: "If you are willing to listen, listen" or "If you are willing to understand, then understand and obey" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Mark 4:10

When...Jesus was alone (ULT)

This does not mean that Jesus was completely alone; rather, that the crowds were gone and Jesus was only with the twelve and some of his other close followers.

Translation Words - ULT

- [twelve](#)
- [parables](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [twelve apprentices](#)
- [parables](#)

ULT

¹⁰ When Jesus was alone, those who were close to him with the [twelve](#) asked him about the [parables](#).

UST

¹⁰ Later, when only the [twelve apprentices](#) and other close followers were with him, they asked him about the [parables](#).

Mark 4:11

To you...is given (ULT)

To you...I will explain the message about how...reveals (UST)

This can be stated in active form. "God has given you" or "I have given you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

to those...who are outside (ULT)

"but to those who are not among you." This refers to all the other people who were not among the twelve or Jesus' other close followers.

everything is in parables (ULT)

It can be stated that Jesus gives the parables to the people. Alternate translation: "I have spoken everything in parables" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of God
- parables
- kingdom of God
- mystery
- kingdom

Translation Words - UST

- God
- parables
- God...himself as king
- I will explain the message about how...reveals
- himself as king

ULT

¹¹ So he said to them, "To you is given the [mystery](#) of the [kingdom of God](#). But to those who are outside, everything is in [parables](#),

UST

¹¹ He said to them, "To you [I will explain the message about how God reveals himself as king](#), but to the others I will speak in [parables](#)."

Mark 4:12

when they look...when they hear (ULT)

When they see what I am doing...When they hear what I say (UST)

It is assumed that Jesus is speaking about the people looking at what he shows them and hearing what he tells them. Alternate translation: "when they look at what I am doing...when they hear what I am saying" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

they look, but do not see (ULT)

Jesus speaks of people understanding what they see as actually seeing. Alternate translation: "they look and do not understand" (See: [Metaphor](#))

they would...turn (ULT)

they would be sorry that they had sinned and decide to stop sinning (UST)

"turn to God." Here "turn" is a metaphor for "repent." Alternate translation: "they would repent" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [be forgiven](#)
- [they would...turn](#)
- [understand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God would forgive](#)
- [they would be sorry that they had sinned and decide to stop sinning](#)
- [they will...understand](#)

ULT

¹² so that when they look, they look, but do not see, and when they hear, they hear, but do not [understand](#), so that [they would](#) not [turn](#) and [be forgiven](#)."

UST

¹² When they see what I am doing, they will not learn. When they hear what I say, [they will](#) not [understand](#). If they learned or understood, [they would be sorry that they had sinned and decide to stop sinning](#), and [God would forgive](#) them."

Mark 4:13

Connecting Statement:

Jesus explains the parable of the soils to his followers and then tells them about using a lamp to show that hidden things will become known.

Then he said to them (ULT)

He also said to them (UST)

"Then Jesus said to his disciples"

Do you not understand this parable? How then will you understand any of the parables (ULT)

Do you not understand this parable? How then will you understand when I teach you other parables (UST)

Jesus used these questions to show how sad he was that his disciples could not understand his parable. Alternate translation: "If you cannot understand this parable, think about how hard it will be for you to understand all the other parables." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [parable](#)
- [parables](#)
- [you...understand](#)
- [will you understand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [parable](#)
- [parables](#)
- [Do you...understand](#)
- [will you understand](#)

ULT

¹³ Then he said to them, "Do you not [understand](#) this [parable](#)? How then [will you understand](#) any of the [parables](#)?"

UST

¹³ He also said to them, "[Do you](#) not [understand](#) this [parable](#)? How then [will you understand](#) when I teach you other [parables](#)?"

Mark 4:14

The farmer (ULT)

the man who sows seeds represents (UST)

“The farmer who sows his seed represents”

the word (ULT)

God’s message (UST)

The “word” represents God’s message. Sowing the message represents teaching it. Alternate translation: “the one who teaches people God’s message” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- farmer
- sows

Translation Words - UST

- who sows seeds
- someone who teaches...to others

ULT

¹⁴ The [farmer](#) [sows](#) the word.

UST

¹⁴ In the parable that I told you, the man [who sows seeds](#) represents [someone who teaches](#) God’s message [to others](#).

Mark 4:15

These are the ones beside the road (ULT)

"Some people are like the seeds that fall beside road" or "Some people are like the path where some of the seeds fell"

the road (ULT)

the path (UST)

"the path"

when they hear it (ULT)

When they hear (UST)

Here "it" refers to "the word" or "God's message."

Translation Words - ULT

- [word](#)
- [word](#)
- [Satan](#)
- [was sown](#)
- [that was sown](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God's message](#)
- [what...have heard](#)
- [Satan](#)
- [some of the seeds fell](#)
- [what...have heard](#)

ULT

¹⁵ These are the ones beside the road, where the [word was sown](#), but when they hear it, [Satan](#) immediately comes and takes away the [word that was sown](#) in them.

UST

¹⁵ Some people are like the path where [some of the seeds fell](#). When they hear [God's message](#), [Satan](#) comes at once and causes them to forget [what](#) they [have heard](#).

Mark 4:16

these...are...the ones that (ULT)

Some people are like...the ground where the soil was not very deep over the rock (UST)

“And some people are like the seeds.” Jesus begins to explain how some people are like the seeds that fell on the rocky soil. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [word](#)
- [receive](#)
- [are sown](#)
- [joy](#)
- [In the same manner](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God's message](#)
- [they...accept](#)
- [the ground where the soil was not very deep over the rock](#)
- [joy](#)
- [the ground where the soil was not very deep over the rock](#)

ULT

¹⁶ [In the same manner](#), these are the ones that [are sown](#) on rocky ground, who, when they hear the [word](#), immediately [receive](#) it with [joy](#).

UST

¹⁶ Some people are like [the ground where the soil was not very deep over the rock](#). When they hear [God's message](#), [they](#) immediately [accept](#) it with [joy](#).

Mark 4:17

they have no root in themselves (ULT)
the message does not grow deep...They are like the plants that did not have deep roots (UST)

This is a comparison to the young plants that have very shallow roots. This metaphor means that the people were first excited when they received the word, but they were not strongly devoted to it. Alternate translation: "And they are like the young plants that have no roots" (See: [Metaphor](#))

no...root (ULT)
not...not...the message does...grow deep...They are like the plants that did...have deep roots (UST)

This is an exaggeration to emphasize how shallow the roots were. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

tribulation or persecution comes because of the word (ULT)

When others treat them badly...or cause them to suffer because they believed God's message (UST)

It may be helpful to explain that tribulation comes because people believed God's message. Alternate translation: "tribulation or persecution comes because they believed God's message" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

they stumble (ULT)
those people who are suffering...stop believing God's message (UST)

In this parable, "stumble" means "stop believing God's message" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [word](#)
- [temporary](#)
- [persecution](#)
- [tribulation](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [message](#)
- [they believe it for only a short time](#)
- [cause them to suffer](#)
- [When others treat them badly](#)

ULT

¹⁷ But they have no root in themselves, but are [temporary](#). Then [tribulation](#) or [persecution](#) comes because of the [word](#), and immediately they stumble.

UST

¹⁷ But, because the message does not grow deep, [they believe it for only a short time](#). They are like the plants that did not have deep roots. [When others treat them badly](#) or [cause them to suffer](#) because they believed God's [message](#), those people who are suffering soon stop believing God's message.

Mark 4:18

Others...are the ones that were sown among the thorns (ULT)

Some people are like the soil that has thorny weeds in it (UST)

Jesus begins to explain how some people are like the seeds that fell among the thorns. Alternate translation: "And other people are like the seeds that were sown among the thorns" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [word](#)
- [that were sown](#)
- [thorns](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God's message](#)
- [the soil that has thorny weeds in it](#)
- [the soil that has thorny weeds in it](#)

ULT

¹⁸ Others are the ones [that were sown](#) among the [thorns](#). These are the ones who hear the [word](#),

UST

¹⁸ Some people are like [the soil that has thorny weeds in it](#). Those people hear [God's message](#),

Mark 4:19

the cares of this age (ULT)

they only worry about what they have (UST)

“the worries in this life” or “the concerns about this present life”

of this...the...deceitfulness...of riches (ULT)

they desire to be...rich...they only worry about what they have (UST)

“the desires for riches”

enter in and choke the word (ULT)

they want to own many other things...and they forget God’s message (UST)

As Jesus continues to talk about people who are like the seeds that fell among the thorns, he explains what the desires and worries do to the word in their lives. Alternate translation: “enter in and choke God’s message in their lives like thorns choke young plants” (See: [Metaphor](#))

it becomes unfruitful (ULT)

they do not do the things that God wants them to do (UST)

“the word does not produce a crop in them”

Translation Words - ULT

- [word](#)
- [unfruitful](#)
- [desires](#)
- [deceitfulness](#)
- [age](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God’s message](#)
- [they do not do the things that God wants them to do](#)
- [they want to own many other things](#)
- [they desire to be](#)
- [they only worry about what they have](#)

ULT

¹⁹ but the cares of this [age](#), the [deceitfulness](#) of riches, and the [desires](#) of other things enter in and choke the [word](#), and it becomes [unfruitful](#).

UST

¹⁹ but [they desire to be](#) rich and [they want to own many other things](#). So [they only worry about what they have](#) and they forget [God’s message](#) and [they do not do the things that God wants them to do](#).

Mark 4:20

these are the ones that were sown in the good soil (ULT)

Jesus begins to explain how some people are like the seeds that were sown in good soil. Alternate translation: "like the seeds that were sown in the good soil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

yields thirty, one yields sixty, and another yields a hundred times (ULT)

This refers to the grain that the plants produce. Alternate translation: "some produce thirty grains, some produce sixty grains, and some produce a hundred grains" or "some produce 30 times the grain that was sown, some produce 60 times the grain that was sown, and some produce 100 times the grain that was sown" (See: [Ellipsis](#) or [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [word](#)
- [good](#)
- [receive it](#)
- [were sown](#)
- [produce fruit](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God's message](#)
- [good](#)
- [they accept it and they believe it](#)
- [plant, planted, implanted, replanted, transplanted, sow](#)
- [they do the things that God wants them to do. They are like the good plants that produced](#)

ULT

²⁰ But these are the ones that [were sown](#) in the [good](#) soil, who hear the [word](#) and [receive it](#), and [produce fruit](#)—one yields thirty, one yields sixty, and another yields a hundred times."

UST

²⁰ But some people are like the [good](#) soil. They hear [God's message](#) and [they accept it and they believe it](#), and [they do the things that God wants them to do](#). [They are like the good plants that produced](#) thirty, sixty, or one hundred grains."

Mark 4:21

Jesus also said to them (ULT)

"Jesus said to the crowd"

The lamp is not brought in order to put it under a basket, or under the bed, is it (ULT)

This question may be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You certainly do not bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under a bed!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [lamp](#)
- [a basket](#)
- [lampstand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [an oil lamp...it](#)
- [something over it to cover its light](#)
- [a lampstand](#)

ULT

²¹ Jesus also said to them, "The [lamp](#) is not brought in order to put it under [a basket](#), or under the bed, is it? Is it not so that it might be put on the [lampstand](#)?"

UST

²¹ He told them another parable: "People certainly do not light [an oil lamp](#) and then bring [it](#) in the house in order to put [something over it to cover its light](#). Instead, they put it on [a lampstand](#) so that the light will shine.

Mark 4:22

For nothing is hidden except so that it will be revealed...it will come to light (ULT)

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “For everything that is hidden will be made known, and everything that is secret will come out into to open” (See: [Litotes](#))

nothing...is hidden...and nothing has happened in secret (ULT)

“there is nothing that is hidden...there is nothing that is secret” Both of the phrases have the same meaning. Jesus is emphasizing that everything that is secret will be made known. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [it will be revealed](#)
- [light](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [everyone will know them](#)
- [full light](#)

ULT

²² For nothing is hidden except so that [it will be revealed](#), and nothing has happened in secret except so that it will come to [light](#).

UST

²² Similarly, things that were hidden—one day [everyone will know them](#), and the things that have happened in secret—one day everyone will see them in [full light](#).

Mark 4:23

If anyone has ears to hear, let him hear (ULT)
If you want to understand this, you should consider carefully what you have just heard (UST)

Jesus is emphasizing that what he has just said is important and may take some effort to understand and put into practice. The phrase "ears to hear" here is a metonym for the willingness to understand and obey. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Mark 4:9](#). Alternate translation: "If anyone is willing to listen, listen" or "If anyone is willing to understand, let him understand and obey" (See: [Metonymy](#))

If anyone...let him hear (ULT)
If you want to understand this...you should consider carefully what you have just heard (UST)

Since Jesus is speaking directly to his audience, you may prefer to use the second person here. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Mark 4:9](#). Alternate translation: "If you are willing to listen, listen" or "If you are willing to understand, then understand and obey" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

ULT

²³ If anyone has ears to hear, let him hear!"

UST

²³ If you want to understand this, you should consider carefully what you have just heard."

Mark 4:24

he said to them (ULT)

"Jesus said to the crowd"

for that measure you use (ULT)

to the same degree that you consider what I say (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) Jesus is talking about a literal measure and giving generously to others or 2) this is a metaphor in which Jesus speaks of "understanding" as if it were "measuring." (See: [Metaphor](#))

it will be measured to you, and more will be added to you (ULT)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will measure that amount for you, and he will add it to you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

²⁴ Then he said to them, "Pay attention to what you hear, for that measure you use it will be measured to you, and more will be added to you.

UST

²⁴ "Consider carefully what you hear me say to you, for God will let you understand to the same degree that you consider what I say. He will let you understand even more than that.

Mark 4:25

to him will be given more...even that which he has will be taken from him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “to him God will give more...from him God will take away” or “God will give more to him...God will take away from him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

²⁵ For whoever has, to him will be given more, and whoever does not have, even that which he has will be taken away from him”

UST

²⁵ For if person has some understanding, he will receive even more. But if a person does not have understanding, even what little he has, he will lose.”

Mark 4:26

Connecting Statement:

Jesus then tells the people parables to explain the kingdom of God, which he later explains to his disciples. (See: [Parables](#))

like...a man...who sows his seed (ULT)

When...a man who has scattered seed (UST)

Jesus likens the kingdom of God to a farmer who sows his seed.

Alternate translation: "like a farmer who sows his seed" (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of God
- kingdom of God
- who sows
- seed
- a man
- kingdom

Translation Words - UST

- God
- God...begins to show himself as king
- who has scattered
- seed
- it is like
- begins to show himself as king

ULT

²⁶ He also said, "The [kingdom of God](#) is like [a man who sows](#) his [seed](#) on the ground.

UST

²⁶ Jesus also said, "When [God begins to show himself as king](#), [it is like](#) a man [who has scattered seed](#) on the ground.

Mark 4:27

He sleeps and gets up, night and day

This is something that the man habitually does. Alternate translation: "He sleeps each night and gets up each day" or "He sleeps each night and gets up the next day"

though he does not know how (ULT) in a way that he did not understand (UST)

"though the man does not know how the seed sprouts and grows"

Translation Words - ULT

- seed
- He sleeps
- gets up
- day
- does...know

Translation Words - UST

- seeds
- he slept
- rose up
- each day without worrying about the seeds
- did...understand

ULT

²⁷ [He sleeps](#) and [gets up](#), night and [day](#), and the [seed](#) sprouts and grows, though he does not [know](#) how.

UST

²⁷ Afterwards [he slept](#) each night and [rose up each day without worrying about the seeds](#). During that time the [seeds](#) sprouted and grew in a way that he did not [understand](#).

Mark 4:28

the blade (ULT)

the stalks appeared (UST)

the stalk or sprout

the ear (ULT)

the heads appeared (UST)

the head on the stalk or the part of the plant that holds the fruit

Translation Words - ULT

- [soil](#)
- [grain](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [ground](#)
- [kernels](#)

ULT

²⁸ The [soil](#) produces fruit by itself: First the blade, then the ear, then the mature [grain](#) in the ear.

UST

²⁸ The [ground](#) produced the crop on its own. First the stalks appeared. Then the heads appeared. Then the full [kernels](#) in the heads appeared.

Mark 4:29**he immediately sends in the sickle (ULT)****As soon as...he sent people to harvest it (UST)**

Here “the sickle” is a metonym that stands for the farmer or the people whom the farmer sends out to harvest the grain. Alternate translation: “he immediately goes into the field with a sickle to harvest the grain” or “he immediately sends people with sickles into the field to harvest the grain” (See: [Metonymy](#))

sickle (ULT)**to harvest it (UST)**

a curved blade or a sharp hook used to cut grain

because the harvest has come (ULT)**because it was time to harvest the grain (UST)**

Here the phrase “has come” is an idiom for the grain being ripe for harvest. Alternate translation: “because the grain is ready to be harvested” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [crop](#)
- [he...sends in](#)
- [harvest](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [grain](#)
- [he sent people](#)
- [to harvest the grain](#)

ULT

²⁹ And when the [crop](#) is ripe, [he](#) immediately [sends in](#) the sickle because the [harvest](#) has come.”

UST

²⁹ As soon as the [grain](#) was ripe [he sent people](#) to harvest it because it was time [to harvest the grain](#).”

Mark 4:30

To what can we compare the kingdom of God, or in what parable can we present it (ULT)

Jesus asked this question to cause his hearers to think about what the kingdom of God is. Alternate translation: "With this parable I can explain what the kingdom of God is like." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of God
- parable
- kingdom of God
- can we compare
- kingdom

Translation Words - UST

- God
- parable
- When...God...begins to show himself as king
- is it like
- When...begins to show himself as king

ULT

³⁰ Again he said, "To what [can we compare](#) the [kingdom of God](#), or in what [parable](#) can we present it?

UST

³⁰ Jesus told them another parable. He said, "[When God begins to show himself as king](#), what [is it like](#)? What [parable](#) can I use to describe it?

Mark 4:31

when it is sown (ULT)

when we plant them (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “when someone sows it” or “when someone plants it”

Translation Words - ULT

- it is sown
- seeds
- soil
- earth (2)
- It is like
- a...seed

Translation Words - UST

- we plant them
- of seeds
- we plant them
- earth, earthen, earthly (2)
- It is like...You know what happens to
- seeds...seeds...seeds

ULT

³¹ [It is like](#) a mustard [seed](#) which, when [it is sown](#) in the [soil](#), is the smallest of all the [seeds](#) that are on the [earth](#).

UST

³¹ [It is like](#) mustard [seeds](#). [You know what happens to](#) mustard [seeds](#) when [we plant them](#). Though mustard [seeds](#) are among the smallest [of seeds](#), they become large plants.

Mark 4:32

it forms large branches (ULT)

They put out big branches (UST)

The mustard tree is described as causing its branches to grow large.
Alternate translation: "with large branches" (See: [Personification](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sky](#)
- [shade](#)
- [it is sown](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [birds](#)
- [shade](#)
- [they are planted](#)

ULT

³² Yet, when [it is sown](#), it grows and becomes greater than all the garden plants, and it forms large branches, so that the birds of the [sky](#) can make their nests in its [shade](#)."

UST

³² After [they are planted](#), they grow up and become larger than the other garden plants. They put out big branches so that [birds](#) are able to make nests in their [shade](#)."

Mark 4:33

he spoke the word to them (ULT)
when he talked to the people about God's message (UST)

"Word" here is a synecdoche for "the message of God." The word "them" refers to the crowds. Alternate translation: "he taught the message of God to them" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

as they were able to hear (ULT)
If they were able to understand some, he kept telling them more (UST)

"and if they were able to understand some, he kept telling them more"

Translation Words - ULT

- [word](#)
- [parables](#)
- [with...like this](#)
- [as](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [about God's message](#)
- [parables](#)
- [Jesus used](#)
- [If](#)

ULT

³³ So with many [parables like this](#) he spoke the [word](#) to them, [as](#) they were able to hear,

UST

³³ [Jesus used](#) many [parables](#) when he talked to the people [about God's message](#). [If](#) they were able to understand some, he kept telling them more.

Mark 4:34

when he was alone (ULT)

when he was alone with them (UST)

This means that he was away from the crowds, but his disciples were still with him.

he explained everything (ULT)

he explained all the parables (UST)

Here "everything" is an exaggeration. He explained all his parables.
Alternate translation: "he explained all his parables" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [a parable](#)
- [disciples](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [He always used parables when he spoke to them](#)
- [apprentices](#)

ULT

³⁴ and he did not speak to them without [a parable](#). But when he was alone, he explained everything to his own [disciples](#).

UST

³⁴ [He always used parables when he spoke to them](#). But he explained all the parables to his own [apprentices](#) when he was alone with them.

Mark 4:35

Connecting Statement:

As Jesus and his disciples take a boat to escape the crowds of people, a great storm arises. His disciples are afraid when they see that even the wind and the sea obey Jesus.

he said...to them (ULT)

Jesus said to his apprentices (UST)

"Jesus said to his disciples"

the other side (ULT)

the other side of the lake (UST)

"the other side of the Sea of Galilee" or "the other side of the sea"

Translation Words - ULT

- day

Translation Words - UST

- day

ULT

³⁵ On that [day](#), when evening had come, he said to them, "Let us go over to the other side."

UST

³⁵ On that same [day](#), when the sun was setting, Jesus said to his apprentices, "Let us cross over to the other side of the lake."

Mark 4:36

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [just as](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [already](#)

ULT

³⁶ So they left the crowd, taking Jesus with them, [just as](#) he was, in the boat. There also were other boats with him.

UST

³⁶ Jesus was [already](#) in the boat, so they left the crowd of people and sailed away. Other people also went along with them in their boats.

Mark 4:37

a violent windstorm arose (ULT)

A strong wind came up (UST)

Here “arose” is an idiom for “began.” Alternate translation: “a violent windstorm began” (See: [Idiom](#))

the boat was already full of water (ULT)

The boat...nearly full of water (UST)

It may be helpful to state that the boat was filling up with water. Alternate translation: “the boat was in danger of being filled with water” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

ULT

³⁷ Then a violent windstorm arose and the waves were breaking into the boat so that the boat was already full of water.

UST

³⁷ A strong wind came up and the waves started coming into the boat! The boat was soon nearly full of water!

Mark 4:38

the stern (ULT)

the back part of the boat (UST)

This is at the very back of the boat. "the stern of the boat"

they woke him up (ULT)

they woke him up (UST)

The word "they" refers to the disciples. Compare a similar idea in the next verse, verse 39, "He got up." "He" refers to Jesus.

do you not care that we are perishing (ULT)

Are you not concerned that we are about to die (UST)

The disciples asked this question to convey their fear. This question can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "you need to pay attention to what is happening; we are all about to die!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

we are perishing (ULT)

we are about to die (UST)

The word "we" includes the disciples and Jesus. (See: [Inclusive and Exclusive "We"](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [we are perishing](#)
- [asleep](#)
- [Teacher](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [we are about to die](#)
- [He was sleeping](#)
- [Teacher](#)

ULT

38 But Jesus himself was in the stern, [asleep](#) on the cushion. So they woke him up and said to him, "[Teacher](#), do you not care that [we are perishing](#)?"

UST

38 Jesus was in the back part of the boat. [He was sleeping](#) with his head on a cushion. So they woke him up and said to him, "[Teacher](#)! Are you not concerned that [we are about to die](#)?"

Mark 4:39

Silence! Be still (ULT)

Be quiet! Be still (UST)

These two phrases are similar and used to emphasize what Jesus wanted the wind and the sea to do. (See: [Doublet](#))

a great calm (ULT)

the lake became very calm (UST)

“a great stillness over the sea” or “a great calm over the sea”

Translation Words - ULT

- [sea](#)
- [rebuked](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [lake](#)
- [and rebuked](#)

ULT

³⁹ Then he got up, [rebuked](#) the wind, and said to the [sea](#), “Silence! Be still!” Then the wind ceased, and there was a great calm.

UST

³⁹ So Jesus got up [and rebuked](#) the wind and he spoke to the [lake](#), “Be quiet! Be still!” The wind stopped blowing and then the lake became very calm.

Mark 4:40

Then he said to them (ULT)

"And Jesus said to his disciples"

Why are you afraid? Do you still not have faith (ULT)
Why are you afraid? Do you not yet believe that I can protect you (UST)

Jesus asks these questions to make his disciples consider why they are afraid when he is with them. These questions can be written as statements. Alternate translation: "You should not be afraid. You need to have more faith." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [afraid](#)
- [faith](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [afraid](#)
- [believe that I can protect you](#)

ULT

⁴⁰ Then he said to them, "Why are you [afraid](#)? Do you still not have [faith](#)?"

UST

⁴⁰ He said to the apprentices, "Why are you [afraid](#)? Do you not yet [believe that I can protect you](#)?"

Mark 4:41

Who then is this, for even the wind and the sea obey him (ULT)

The disciples ask this question in amazement at what Jesus did. This question can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "This man is not like ordinary men; even the wind and the sea obey him!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [they were filled](#)
- [with...fear](#)
- [they were filled with...fear](#)
- [sea](#)
- [obey](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [They were terrified](#)
- [They were terrified](#)
- [They were terrified](#)
- [waves](#)
- [obey](#)

ULT

⁴¹ Then [they were filled with](#) great [fear](#) and said to one another, "Who then is this, for even the wind and the [sea obey](#) him?"

UST

⁴¹ [They were terrified](#). They said to one another, "Who is this man? Even the wind and the [waves obey](#) him!"

Mark 5

Mark 5 General Notes

Possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“Talitha, koum”

The words “Talitha, koum” (Mark 5:41) are from the Aramaic language. Mark writes them the way they sound and then translates them. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

Mark 5:1

Connecting Statement:

After Jesus calms the great storm, he heals a man who has many demons, but the local people in Gerasa are not glad about his healing, and they beg Jesus to leave.

they came (ULT)

Jesus and his apprentices arrived (UST)

The word “They” refers to Jesus and his disciples.

of the sea (ULT)

of the Galilee lake (UST)

This refers to the Sea of Galilee.

of the Gerasenes (ULT)

People called the Gerasenes (UST)

This name refers to the people who live in Gerasa. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sea](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Galilee lake](#)

ULT

¹ Then they came to the other side of the [sea](#), to the region of the Gerasenes.

UST

¹ Jesus and his apprentices arrived on the other side of the [Galilee lake](#). People called the Gerasenes lived near the place where they landed.

Mark 5:2

with an unclean spirit (ULT)

Evil spirits controlled the man (UST)

This is an idiom meaning that the man is “controlled” or “possessed” by the unclean spirit. Alternate translation: “controlled by an unclean spirit” or “that an unclean spirit possessed” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [unclean](#)
- [an...spirit](#)
- [an unclean spirit](#)
- [tombs](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Evil](#)
- [spirits](#)
- [Evil spirits](#)
- [tombs in a cemetery](#)

ULT

² When Jesus was getting out of the boat, immediately a man with [an unclean spirit](#) came to meet him out of the [tombs](#).

UST

² When Jesus stepped out of the boat, a man came out from the [tombs in a cemetery](#). [Evil spirits](#) controlled the man.

Mark 5:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [restrain](#)
- [could](#)
- [tombs](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to restrain...restrain](#)
- [They could](#)
- [tombs](#)

ULT

³ The man lived in the [tombs](#). No one [could restrain](#) him anymore, not even with a chain.

UST

³ The man was coming out of the cemetery because he lived in [tombs](#). The people knew him and at times they tried [to restrain](#) him. [They could](#) not [restrain](#) him, not even with chains.

Mark 5:4

he...often...had...been bound (ULT)

This can be written in active form. Alternate translation: "People had bound him many times" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the shackles had been shattered (ULT)

He was so strong that (UST)

This can be written in active form. Alternate translation: "he shattered his shackles" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

with shackles (ULT)

shackles (UST)

pieces of metal that people wrap around the arms and legs of prisoners and attach with chains to objects that do not move so the prisoners cannot move

No one...was strong enough to subdue him (ULT)

no one was able to subdue him (UST)

The man was so strong that no one could subdue him. Alternate translation: "He was so strong that no one was strong enough to subdue him" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

he...to subdue (ULT)

"control him"

Translation Words - ULT

- [had...been bound](#)
- [was strong enough](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [they used](#)
- [was able](#)

ULT

⁴ For he had often [been bound](#) with shackles and chains, but the chains had been torn apart by him and the shackles had been shattered. No one [was strong enough](#) to subdue him.

UST

⁴ Whenever [they used](#) chains and shackles, the man would break them apart. He was so strong that no one [was able](#) to subdue him.

Mark 5:5

cut himself with sharp stones (ULT)

cut himself with sharp stones (UST)

Often times when a person is possessed by a demon, the demon will cause the person to do self-destructive things, such as cutting himself.

Translation Words - ULT

- he cried out
- tombs
- day

Translation Words - UST

- scream out loud
- caves in the cemetery
- Day

ULT

⁵ Throughout every night and [day](#) in the [tombs](#) and in the mountains, [he cried out](#) and cut himself with sharp stones.

UST

⁵ [Day](#) and night the man would spend his time in the [caves in the cemetery](#) and in the hills. He would [scream out loud](#) and cut himself with sharp stones.

Mark 5:6

When he saw Jesus from a distance (ULT)

When he saw Jesus in the distance getting out of the boat (UST)

When the man first saw Jesus, Jesus would have been getting out of the boat. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

bowed down before (ULT)

knelt (UST)

This means that he knelt down before Jesus out of reverence and respect, not out of worship.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [bowed down before](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [knelt](#)

ULT

⁶ When he saw [Jesus](#) from a distance, he ran to him and [bowed down before](#) him.

UST

⁶ When he saw [Jesus](#) in the distance getting out of the boat, he ran over to him and [knelt](#) before him.

Mark 5:7

General Information:

The information in these two verses may be reordered to present the events in the order that they happened, as in the UST. (See: [Order of Events](#))

he cried out (ULT)

"The unclean spirit cried out"

What do I have to do with you, Jesus, Son of the Most High God (ULT)

The unclean spirit asks this question out of fear. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Leave me alone, Jesus, Son of the Most High God! There is no reason for you to interfere with me." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Jesus...do not torment me (ULT)

Jesus has the power to torment unclean spirits.

Son of the Most High God (ULT)

This is an important title for Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

I beg you by God himself (ULT)

Here the unclean spirit is swearing by God as he makes a request of Jesus. Consider how this type of request is made in your language. Alternate translation: "I beg you before God" or "I swear by God himself and beg you"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [Most High](#)
- [of...God](#)
- [God](#)
- [Son of...God](#)
- [with a...voice](#)
- [do...torment](#)
- [he cried out](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
- [Most High](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [Son of God, the Son](#)
- [voice](#)
- [torment, tormented, tormentors](#)
- [cry, cry out, outcry](#)

ULT

⁷ Then [he cried out with a](#) loud [voice](#), saying, "What do I have to do with you, [Jesus, Son of the Most High God](#)? I beg you by [God](#) himself, do not [torment](#) me."

UST

⁷⁻⁸ Jesus had been saying to the evil spirit, "You evil spirit, come out of this man!" But the demon did not leave quickly. It shouted very loudly, "Jesus, I know that you are the Son of God, so we have nothing in common. Leave me alone! In God's name, I beg you. Do not torture me!"

Mark 5:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [unclean](#)
- [you...spirit](#)
- [you...unclean...spirit](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [clean, wash](#)
- [spirit, spiritual](#)
- [demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit](#)

ULT

⁸ For he had been saying to him, "Come out of the man, you [unclean spirit](#)."

UST

⁷⁻⁸ Jesus had been saying to the evil spirit, "You evil spirit, come out of this man!" But the demon did not leave quickly. It shouted very loudly, "Jesus, I know that you are the Son of God, so we have nothing in common. Leave me alone! In God's name, I beg you. Do not torture me!"

Mark 5:9

Jesus asked him (ULT)

Jesus asked him (UST)

"And Jesus asked the unclean spirit"

He answered...him, "My name is Legion, for we are many (ULT)

He replied, "My name is Mob because there are many of us evil spirits in this man (UST)

One spirit was speaking for many here. He spoke of them as if they were a legion, a Roman army unit of about 6,000 soldiers. Alternate translation: "And the spirit said to him, 'Call us an army, for many of us are inside the man.'" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)
- [name](#) (2)

Translation Words - UST

- [name](#)
- [name is](#) (2)

ULT

⁹ Then Jesus asked him, "What is your [name](#)?" He answered him, "My [name](#) is Legion, for we are many."

UST

⁹ Jesus asked him, "What is your [name](#)?" He replied, "My [name is](#) Mob because there are many of us evil spirits in this man."

Mark 5:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [he begged](#)
- [he would...send](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the evil spirits...asking...fervently](#)
- [he...send](#)

ULT

¹⁰ Then [he begged](#) Jesus repeatedly that [he would](#) not [send](#) them out of the region.

UST

¹⁰ Then [the evil spirits](#) kept [asking](#) Jesus [fervently](#) that [he](#) not [send](#) them out of the region.

Mark 5:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- of pigs

Translation Words - UST

- of pigs

ULT

¹¹ Now a great herd [of pigs](#) was there feeding on the hill,

UST

¹¹ At the same time, a large herd [of pigs](#) was grazing nearby on the hillside.

Mark 5:12

they begged him (ULT)

the evil spirits pleaded with Jesus (UST)

“the unclean spirits begged Jesus”

Translation Words - ULT

- pigs
- they begged
- Send

Translation Words - UST

- pigs
- the evil spirits pleaded
- Allow...to go

ULT

¹² and [they begged](#) him, saying, “[Send](#) us into the [pigs](#), so that we may enter into them.”

UST

¹² So [the evil spirits pleaded](#) with Jesus, “[Allow](#) us [to go](#) to the [pigs](#) in order that we might enter them!”

Mark 5:13

he allowed them (ULT)

Jesus permitted them to do that (UST)

It may be helpful to state clearly what Jesus allowed them to do.
Alternate translation: "Jesus allowed the unclean spirits to do what they asked permission to do" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

So...into...about two thousand pigs...the sea...drowned in the sea (ULT)

You can make this a separate sentence: "into the sea. There were about two thousand pigs, and they drowned in the sea"

about two thousand pigs (ULT)

which numbered about two thousand (UST)

"about 2,000 pigs" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [unclean](#)
- [spirits](#)
- [unclean spirits](#)
- [sea](#)
- [sea](#)
- [pigs](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [evil](#)
- [spirits](#)
- [evil spirits](#)
- [lake](#)
- [where](#)
- [pigs](#)

ULT

¹³ So he allowed them, and the [unclean spirits](#) came out and entered into the [pigs](#). Then the herd—about two thousand pigs—rushed down the steep hill into the [sea](#), and drowned in the [sea](#).

UST

¹³ Jesus permitted them to do that. So the [evil spirits](#) left the man and entered the [pigs](#). The herd, which numbered about two thousand, rushed down the steep hill into the [lake](#), [where](#) they drowned.

Mark 5:14

in the city and in the countryside (ULT)

It can be stated clearly that the men gave their report to the people who were in the city and countryside. Alternate translation: “to people in the city and in the countryside” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [reported this](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [reported...what had happened](#)

ULT

14 Then those who were feeding the pigs ran away and [reported this](#) in the city and in the countryside, and so people went out to see what it was that had happened.

UST

14 The men who were tending the pigs ran and [reported](#) in the town and the countryside [what had happened](#). Many people went to see for themselves what had happened.

Mark 5:15

Jesus...Legion (ULT)

This was the name of the many demons that were in the man. See how you translated this in [Mark 5:9](#).

in his right mind (ULT) mentally sound (UST)

This is an idiom meaning that he is thinking clearly. Alternate translation: “of a normal mind” or “thinking clearly” (See: [Idiom](#))

they were afraid (ULT) They were afraid when they saw all this (UST)

The word “they” refers to the group of people who went out to see what had happened.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [they were afraid](#)
- [demon-possessed man](#)
- [the one who had been possessed by](#)
- [in his right mind](#)
- [clothed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [They were afraid when they saw all this](#)
- [man whom evil spirits had previously controlled](#)
- [possess, possessed, possession, dispossess](#)
- [mentally sound](#)
- [with clothes on](#)

ULT

15 Then they came to [Jesus](#) and they saw the [demon-possessed man](#), [the one who had been possessed by](#) the Legion, sitting there, [clothed](#) and [in his right mind](#); and [they were afraid](#).

UST

15 They came to the place where [Jesus](#) was. Then they saw the [man whom evil spirits had previously controlled](#). He was sitting there [with clothes on](#) and [mentally sound](#). [They were afraid when they saw all this](#).

Mark 5:16

Those who had seen what happened (ULT)

The people who had seen the events...about what had happened (UST)

"The people who had witnessed what had happened"

Translation Words - ULT

- [demon-possessed man](#)
- [pigs](#)
- [told](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [man whom the evil spirits previously controlled](#)
- [pigs](#)
- [told](#)

ULT

¹⁶ Those who had seen what happened to the [demon-possessed man](#) [told](#) them about it, and about the [pigs](#).

UST

¹⁶ The people who had seen the events [told](#) those who had come from the town and from the countryside about what had happened to the [man whom the evil spirits previously controlled](#). They also described what had happened to the [pigs](#).

Mark 5:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [to beg](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the people pleaded](#)

ULT

¹⁷ Then they started [to beg](#) Jesus to depart from their region.

UST

¹⁷ Then [the people pleaded](#) with Jesus to leave their region.

Mark 5:18

the demon-possessed man (ULT)
the man whom the evil spirits previously controlled (UST)

Though the man is no longer demon-possessed, he is still described in this way. Alternate translation: "the man who had been demon-possessed"

Translation Words - ULT

- the demon-possessed man
- begged

Translation Words - UST

- the man whom the evil spirits previously controlled
- begged

ULT

¹⁸ When he was getting into the boat, [the demon-possessed man](#) [begged](#) him that he might be with him.

UST

¹⁸ As Jesus got in the boat to leave, [the man whom the evil spirits previously controlled](#) [begged](#) Jesus, "Please let me go with you!"

Mark 5:19

But Jesus did not permit him (ULT)

But Jesus did not let him go with him (UST)

What Jesus did not allow the man to do can be stated clearly.

Alternate translation: "But he did not allow the man to come with them" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- he has shown...mercy
- tell
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- tell them how he has been so kind
- tell
- home

ULT

¹⁹ But Jesus did not permit him, but said to him, "Go to your [house](#) and to your people and [tell](#) them how much the [Lord](#) has done for you, and how [he has shown](#) you [mercy](#)."

UST

¹⁹ But Jesus did not let him go with him. Instead, he said to him, "Go [home](#) to your family and [tell](#) them how much the [Lord](#) has done for you, and [tell them how he has been so kind](#) to you."

Mark 5:20

the Decapolis (ULT)

the Ten Towns in that district (UST)

This is the name of a region that means Ten Cities. It is located to the southeast of the Sea of Galilee. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

everyone was amazed (ULT)

All the people who heard what the man said were amazed (UST)

It may be helpful to state why the people were amazed. Alternate translation: "all the people who heard what the man said were amazed" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [to proclaim](#)
- [was amazed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [He told people](#)
- [were amazed](#)

ULT

²⁰ So he went away and began [to proclaim](#) in the Decapolis how much [Jesus](#) had done for him, and everyone [was amazed](#).

UST

²⁰ So the man went and traveled around the Ten Towns in that district. [He told people](#) how much [Jesus](#) had done for him. All the people who heard what the man said [were amazed](#).

Mark 5:21

Connecting Statement:

After healing the demon-possessed man in region of the Gerasenes, Jesus and his disciples return across the lake to Capernaum where the one of the rulers of the synagogue asks Jesus to heal his daughter.

the other side (ULT)

the other side of the Galilee lake (UST)

It may be helpful to add information to this phrase. Alternate translation: "the other side of the sea" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

beside the sea (ULT)

on the shore (UST)

"on the seashore" or "on the shore"

the sea (ULT)

the shore (UST)

This is the Sea of Galilee.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [sea](#)
- [gathered](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [shore](#)
- [When he arrived...gathered](#)

ULT

²¹ Now when [Jesus](#) had crossed over again to the other side, in the boat, a great crowd [gathered](#) around him, as he was beside the [sea](#).

UST

²¹ Once more [Jesus](#) crossed over to the other side of the Galilee lake in a boat. [When he arrived](#), a large crowd [gathered](#) around Jesus while he was standing on the [shore](#).

Mark 5:22

Jairus (ULT) was Jairus (UST)

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [named](#)
- [he fell](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [whose name](#)
- [he knelt](#)

ULT

²² Then, see, one of the leaders of the synagogue, [named](#) Jairus, came, and when he saw him, [he fell](#) at his feet.

UST

²² One of the men who presided over a Jewish preaching place, [whose name](#) was Jairus, came there. When he saw Jesus, [he knelt](#) at his feet.

Mark 5:23

lay your hands (ULT)

place your hands (UST)

“Laying on hands” refers to a prophet or teacher placing his hand on someone and imparting either healing or a blessing. In this case, Jarius is asking Jesus to heal his daughter.

so that she may be healed and live (ULT)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “and heal her and make her live” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [live](#)
- [hands](#)
- [she may be healed](#)
- [He begged](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [make her live](#)
- [hands](#)
- [Heal her](#)
- [he pleaded](#)

ULT

²³ [He begged](#) him repeatedly, saying, “My little daughter is near the end. Come in order to lay your [hands](#) on her so that [she may be healed](#) and [live](#).”

UST

²³ Then [he pleaded](#) with Jesus earnestly, “My daughter is sick and nearly dead! Please come to my house and place your [hands](#) on her. [Heal her](#) and [make her live](#)!”

Mark 5:24

So Jesus went with him (ULT)

So Jesus and his apprentices went with him (UST)

“So Jesus went with Jairus.” Jesus’ disciples also went with him.
Alternate translation: “So Jesus and the disciples went with Jairus”
(See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

pressed close around him (ULT)

many pushed in close to Jesus (UST)

This means they crowded around Jesus and pressed themselves together to be closer to Jesus.

ULT

²⁴ So Jesus went with him, and a great crowd followed him and pressed close around him.

UST

²⁴ So Jesus and his apprentices went with him. A large crowd followed and many pushed in close to Jesus.

Mark 5:25

Connecting Statement:

While Jesus is on his way to heal the man's little 12-year-old girl, a woman who has been sick for 12 years interrupts by touching Jesus for her healing.

Now a woman was there (ULT)

"Now" indicates that this woman is being introduced to the story. Consider how new people are introduced into a story in your language. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

with a flow of blood for twelve years (ULT)

who had a bleeding disorder. She had been bleeding every day for twelve years (UST)

The woman did not have an open wound; rather, her monthly flow of blood would not stop. Your language may have a polite way to refer to this condition. (See: [Euphemism](#))

for twelve years (ULT)

She had been bleeding every day for twelve years (UST)

"for 12 years" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of blood](#)
- [years](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [a bleeding disorder](#)
- [She had been bleeding every day for twelve years](#)

ULT

²⁵ Now a woman was there with a flow [of blood](#) for twelve [years](#).

UST

²⁵ There was a woman in the crowd who had [a bleeding disorder](#). [She had been bleeding every day for twelve years](#).

Mark 5:26

she became worse (ULT)

"her sickness got worse" or "her bleeding increased"

Translation Words - ULT

- was...helped
- She had suffered

Translation Words - UST

- after all they did to her...instead of better
- She had suffered

ULT

²⁶ [She had suffered](#) much from many doctors, and had spent everything that she had, and was not [helped](#), but instead she became worse.

UST

²⁶ [She had suffered](#) much over the years while doctors treated her. She had spent all her money to pay the doctors and [after all they did to her](#), she got worse [instead of better](#).

Mark 5:27

the reports about Jesus (ULT)

She had heard reports about Jesus of how he healed people.
 Alternate translation: “that Jesus healed people” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Jesus...cloak (ULT)

outer garment or coat

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [cloak](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [clothe](#), [clothed](#), [clothes](#), [clothing](#), [unclothed](#), [garments](#)

ULT

²⁷ When she had heard the reports about [Jesus](#), she came up behind him in the crowd and touched his [cloak](#).

UST

²⁷ When she heard that [Jesus](#) healed people, she came to where he was and pushed in the crowd close behind Jesus.

Mark 5:28

I will be healed (ULT)

it will heal me." So she touched Jesus' clothes (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "it will heal me" or "his power will heal me" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- I will be healed
- clothes

Translation Words - UST

- it will heal me." So she touched Jesus' clothes
- clothes

ULT

²⁸ For she said, "If I touch just his [clothes](#), [I will be healed](#)."

UST

²⁸ She was thinking, "If I touch him or even if I touch his [clothes](#), [it will heal me](#)." So she touched Jesus' clothes.

Mark 5:29

she was healed from the disease (ULT)

she had been cured of her illness (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the sickness had left her” or “she was no longer sick” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [body](#)
- [flow of blood](#)
- [she was healed](#)
- [disease](#)
- [she felt](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [herself](#)
- [bleeding](#)
- [she had been cured](#)
- [illness](#)
- [she sensed](#)

ULT

²⁹ Immediately her [flow of blood](#) dried up, and [she felt](#) in her [body](#) that [she was healed](#) from the [disease](#).

UST

²⁹ At once her [bleeding](#) stopped. At the same time, [she sensed](#) within [herself](#) that [she had been cured](#) of her [illness](#).

Mark 5:30

that power had gone out from him (ULT)

When the woman touched Jesus, Jesus felt his power healing her. Jesus himself did not lose any of his power to heal people when he healed her. Alternate translation: "that his healing power had healed the woman"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [power](#)
- [He turned around](#)
- [clothes](#)
- [realized](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [power](#)
- [So he turned around...and then](#)
- [clothes](#)
- [sensed](#)

ULT

³⁰ [Jesus](#) immediately [realized](#) in himself that [power](#) had gone out from him. [He turned around](#) in the crowd and said, "Who touched my [clothes](#)?"

UST

³⁰ [Jesus](#) also immediately [sensed](#) within himself that his [power](#) had healed someone. [So he turned around](#) in the crowd [and then](#) he asked, "Who touched my [clothes](#)?"

Mark 5:31

this crowd pressed in on you (ULT)
many people are crowding close to you (UST)

This means they crowded around Jesus and pressed themselves together to be closer to Jesus. See how you translated this in [Mark 5:24](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [apprentices](#)

ULT

³¹ Then his [disciples](#) said to him, "You see this crowd pressed in on you, and you say, 'Who touched me?'"

UST

³¹ His [apprentices](#) replied, "You can see that many people are crowding close to you! Probably many people touched you! So why do you ask, 'Who touched me?'"

Mark 5:32

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

³² But Jesus looked around to see who had done it.

UST

³² But Jesus kept looking around in order to see the one who had done it.

Mark 5:33

fell down before him (ULT)

She knelt before him (UST)

“knelt down before him.” She knelt down before Jesus as an act of honor and submission.

told him the whole truth (ULT)

told him what she had done (UST)

The phrase “the whole truth” refers to how she had touched him and became well. Alternate translation: “told him the whole truth about how she had touched him” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [afraid](#)
- [truth](#)
- [trembling](#)
- [knowing](#)
- [fell down before](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [was very afraid](#)
- [what she had done](#)
- [trembling](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)
- [She knelt before](#)

ULT

³³ Then the woman, [knowing](#) what had happened to her, [afraid](#) and [trembling](#), came and [fell down before](#) him and told him the whole [truth](#).

UST

³³ The woman [was very afraid](#) and [trembling](#). [She knelt before](#) him and told him [what she had done](#).

Mark 5:34

Daughter (ULT)

Daughter (UST)

Jesus was using this term figuratively to refer to the woman as a believer.

your faith (ULT)

“your faith in me”

Translation Words - ULT

- faith
- has healed
- disease
- peace

Translation Words - UST

- faith
- I have now healed
- disease
- with peace in your heart, because I promise that

ULT

³⁴ But he said to her, “Daughter, your [faith has healed](#) you. Go in [peace](#) and be healed from your [disease](#).”

UST

³⁴ He said to her, “Daughter, because you have believed that I could heal you, [I have now healed](#) you. You may go home [with peace in your heart, because I promise that](#) you will not be sick with this [disease](#) anymore.”

Mark 5:35

While he was still speaking (ULT)

While Jesus was still speaking to that woman (UST)

“While Jesus was speaking”

some people came from the synagogue leader’s house (ULT)

some people arrived who had come from Jairus’ house (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) these people had come from Jairus’ house or 2) Jairus had previously given these people orders to go see Jesus or 3) these people had been sent by the man who was presiding as the synagogue leader in Jairus’ absence.

the synagogue leader’s house (ULT)

Jairus’ house (UST)

The “leader of the synagogue” is Jairus.

saying (ULT)

They said to Jairus (UST)

“synagogue, saying to Jairus”

Why trouble the teacher any longer (ULT)

So there is no need to bother the teacher any longer, to bring him to your house (UST)

This question can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: “It is useless to bother the teacher any longer.” or “There no need to bother the teacher any longer.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

the teacher (ULT)

the teacher (UST)

This refers to Jesus.

Translation Words - ULT

- [is dead](#)
- [trouble](#)
- [teacher](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [has now died](#)
- [to bother...to bring him to your house](#)
- [teacher](#)

ULT

³⁵ While he was still speaking, some people came from the synagogue leader’s house, saying, “Your daughter [is dead](#). Why [trouble](#) the [teacher](#) any longer?”

UST

³⁵ While Jesus was still speaking to that woman, some people arrived who had come from Jairus’ house. They said to Jairus, “Your daughter [has now died](#). So there is no need [to bother](#) the [teacher](#) any longer, [to bring him to your house!](#)”

Mark 5:36

General Information:

The information in verses 37 and 38 may be reordered to present the events in the order that they happened, as in the UST. (See: [Order of Events](#) and [Verse Bridges](#))

Only believe (ULT)

Just keep believing that she will live (UST)

If necessary, you can state what Jesus is commanding Jairus to believe. Alternate translation: "Just believe I can make you daughter live"

Translation Words - ULT

- [But...Jesus](#)
- [fear](#)
- [believe](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [Do...think that the situation is hopeless](#)
- [keep believing that she will live](#)

ULT

³⁶ [But](#) when [Jesus](#) overheard the message they spoke, he said to the leader of the synagogue, "Do not [fear](#). Only [believe](#)."

UST

³⁶ But when [Jesus](#) heard what these men said, he said to Jairus, "Do not [think that the situation is hopeless](#)! Just [keep believing that she will live](#)!"

Mark 5:37

He...did not...permit (ULT)

he allowed...He did not allow (UST)

Jesus did not permit

to accompany him (ULT)

to go with him to the house...to go with him (UST)

"to come with him." It may be helpful to state where they were going.

Alternate translation: "to accompany him to Jairus' house" (See:

[Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Peter
- John
- James
- of James

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Peter
- John
- James
- James (son of Zebedee)

ULT

³⁷ He did not permit anyone to accompany him, except [Peter](#), [James](#), and [John](#), the [brother of James](#).

UST

³⁷ Then he allowed only his three closest apprentices, [Peter](#), [James](#), and [John](#), to go with him to the house. He did not allow any other people to go with him.

Mark 5:38

he saw (ULT)

Jesus saw that (UST)

Jesus saw

Translation Words - ULT

- people weeping
- house

Translation Words - UST

- They were weeping
- house...there

ULT

³⁸ They came to the [house](#) of the leader of the synagogue and he saw a commotion, and [people weeping](#) and wailing loudly.

UST

³⁸ After they arrived near Jairus' [house](#), Jesus saw that the people [there](#) were in turmoil. [They were weeping](#) and wailing loudly.

Mark 5:39

he said to them (ULT)

he said to them (UST)

"Jesus said to the people who were weeping"

Why are you upset and weeping (ULT)

Why are you so upset and crying (UST)

Jesus asked this question to help them see their lack of faith. This may be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "This is not a time to be upset and crying." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

The child is not dead but sleeps (ULT)

The child is not dead, but only sleeping (UST)

Jesus uses the common word for sleep, and so should the translation.

Translation Words - ULT

- [child](#)
- [is...dead](#)
- [sleeps](#)
- [weeping](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [child](#)
- [is...dead](#)
- [only sleeping](#)
- [crying](#)

ULT

³⁹ When he entered, he said to them, "Why are you upset and [weeping](#)? The [child](#) is not [dead](#) but [sleeps](#)."

UST

³⁹ He entered the house and then he said to them, "Why are you so upset and [crying](#)? The [child](#) is not [dead](#), but [only sleeping](#)."

Mark 5:40**they laughed at him (ULT)****The people laughed at him, because they knew that she was dead (UST)**

Jesus used the common word for sleep (verse 39). The reader should understand that the people who hear Jesus laugh at him because they truly do know the difference between a dead person and a sleeping person and they think he does not.

put them all outside (ULT)**sent all the other people outside the house. Then (UST)**

“sent all the other people outside the house”

at him...those who were with (ULT)**at him...the three apprentices who were with (UST)**

This refers to Peter, James, and John.

he went in where the child was (ULT)**He went into the room where the child was lying (UST)**

It may be helpful to state where the child is. Alternate translation: “went into the room where the child was lying” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the child](#)
- [child](#)
- [father](#)
- [put...outside](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [child's](#)
- [child](#)
- [father](#)
- [sent...outside the house. Then](#)

ULT

⁴⁰ Then they laughed at him. But he [put](#) them all [outside](#) and took along the [father](#) of [the child](#), the mother, and those who were with him, and he went in where the [child](#) was.

UST

⁴⁰ The people laughed at him, because they knew that she was dead. He [sent](#) all the other people [outside the house](#). [Then](#) he took the [child's father](#) and mother and the three apprentices who were with him. He went into the room where the [child](#) was lying.

Mark 5:41

Talitha, koum (ULT)

Talitha koum (UST)

This is an Aramaic sentence, which Jesus spoke to the little girl in her language. Write these words as is with your alphabet. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [child](#)
- [hand](#)
- [translated](#)
- [get up](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [child's](#)
- [hand](#)
- [means](#)
- [get up](#)

ULT

⁴¹ Then he took the [hand](#) of the [child](#) and said to her, "Talitha, koum!" which is [translated](#): "Little girl, I say to you, [get up](#)."

UST

⁴¹ He took hold of the [child's hand](#) and said to her in her own language, "Talitha koum!" That [means](#), "Little girl, [get up](#)!"

Mark 5:42

she was...twelve years of age (ULT)

she was...twelve years old (UST)

“she was 12 years old” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [years of age](#)
- [with...amazement](#)
- [got up](#)
- [walked](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [years old](#)
- [amazed](#)
- [got up](#)
- [walked around](#)

ULT

⁴² Immediately the little girl [got up](#) and [walked](#) (for she was twelve [years of age](#)). They were immediately astonished with great [amazement](#).

UST

⁴² At once the girl [got up](#) and [walked around](#). (It was not surprising that she could walk, because she was twelve [years old](#).) When this happened, all who were present were greatly [amazed](#).

Mark 5:43

he strictly ordered them that no one should know about this...also (ULT)

This can be stated as a direct quote. Alternate translation: "He ordered them strictly, 'No one should know about this!' Then" or "He ordered them strictly, 'Do not tell anyone about what I have done!' Then" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

he strictly ordered them (ULT) Jesus ordered them strictly (UST)

"He strongly commanded them"

He also told them to give her something to eat (ULT) Then he told them to give the girl something to eat (UST)

This can be stated as a direct quote. Alternate translation: "And he told them, 'Give her something to eat.'" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [he...ordered](#)
- [should know](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus ordered](#)
- [Do...tell](#)

ULT

⁴³ Then [he](#) strictly [ordered](#) them that no one [should know](#) about this. He also told them to give her something to eat.

UST

⁴³ [Jesus ordered](#) them strictly, "Do not [tell](#) anyone about what I have done!" Then he told them to give the girl something to eat.

Mark 6

Mark 6 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

“Anointed with oil”

In the ancient Near East, people would try to heal sick people by putting olive oil on them.

Mark 6:1

Connecting Statement:

Jesus returns to his hometown, where he is not accepted.

his hometown (ULT)

his hometown, Nazareth (UST)

This refers to the town of Nazareth, where Jesus grew up and where his family lived. This does not mean that he owned land there.

Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [apprentices](#)

ULT

¹ Now Jesus went out from there and came to his hometown, and his [disciples](#) followed him.

UST

¹ Jesus left Capernaum city and went to his hometown, Nazareth. His [apprentices](#) went with him.

Mark 6:2

What is this wisdom that has been given to him?

This question, which contains passive construction, can be asked in active form. Alternate translation: "What is this wisdom that he has gained?"

that are being done by his hands (ULT)

This phrase emphasizes that Jesus himself does the miracles. Alternate translation: "that he himself works"

Translation Words - ULT

- [synagogue](#)
- [what are...miracles](#)
- [wisdom](#)
- [the Sabbath](#)
- [hands](#)
- [to teach](#)
- [and they were amazed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jewish preaching place](#)
- [power to perform miracles](#)
- [wisdom](#)
- [the Jewish day of rest](#)
- [hand](#)
- [taught the people](#)
- [were amazed](#)

ULT

² When [the Sabbath](#) came, he began [to teach](#) in the [synagogue](#). Many people heard him [and they were amazed](#), saying, "Where did he get these things? What is this [wisdom](#) that has been given to him? And [what are](#) these [miracles](#) that are being done by his [hands](#)?"

UST

² On [the Jewish day of rest](#), he entered the [Jewish preaching place](#) and [taught the people](#). Many who were listening to him [were amazed](#). They wondered where he gained all his [wisdom](#) and the [power to perform miracles](#).

Mark 6:3

Is this not the carpenter, the son of Mary and the brother of James and Joses and Judas and Simon? Are his sisters not here with us (ULT)

These questions can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "He is just an ordinary carpenter! We know him and his family. We know Mary his mother. We know his younger brothers James, Joses, Judas and Simon. And his younger sisters also live here with us." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [of Mary](#)
- [sisters](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [his younger brothers](#)
- [We know Mary his mother](#)
- [We know Mary his mother](#)
- [younger sisters](#)

ULT

³ "Is this not the carpenter, the [son of Mary](#) and [the brother](#) of James and Joses and Judas and Simon? Are his [sisters](#) not here with us?" They took offense at him.

UST

³ They said, "He is just an ordinary carpenter! We know him and his family! [We know Mary his mother!](#) We know [his younger brothers](#) James, Joses, Judas and Simon! And his [younger sisters](#) also live here with us!" So they resented him.

Mark 6:4

to them (ULT)

to them (UST)

“to the crowd”

A prophet is...not...without honor, except (ULT)

It is certainly true that people honor me and other prophets in other places, but not (UST)

This sentence uses a double negative to create emphasis of the positive equivalent. Alternate translation: “A prophet is always honored, except” or “The only place a prophet is not honored is” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [A prophet](#)
- [house](#)
- [relatives](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [It is certainly true that people honor me and other prophets in other places](#)
- [the people who live in...houses](#)
- [our relatives](#)

ULT

⁴ Then [Jesus](#) said to them, “[A prophet](#) is not without honor, except in his hometown and among his own [relatives](#) and in his own [house](#).”

UST

⁴ [Jesus](#) said to them, “[It is certainly true that people honor me and other prophets in other places](#), but not in our hometowns! Even [our relatives](#) and [the people who live in](#) our own [houses](#) do not honor us!”

Mark 6:5

to lay his hands on a few sick people (ULT)

Prophets and teachers would put their hands on people in order to heal them or bless them. In this case, Jesus was healing people.

Translation Words - ULT

- mighty work
- hands
- and heal them

Translation Words - UST

- miracle
- hand
- he healed

ULT

⁵ So he was unable to do any [mighty work](#) there, except to lay his [hands](#) on a few sick people [and heal them](#).

UST

⁵ So, although [he healed](#) a few sick people there, he was not able to perform any other [miracle](#).

Mark 6:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [unbelief](#)
- [teaching](#)
- [he was amazed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [unbelief](#)
- [and taught them](#)
- [He was amazed](#)

ULT

⁶ And [he was amazed](#) at their [unbelief](#).
Then he went around the villages
[teaching](#).

UST

⁶ [He was amazed](#) by their [unbelief](#), but
he went through their villages [and](#)
[taught them](#).

Mark 6:7

General Information:

Jesus' instructions in verses 8 and 9 can be reordered to separate what he told the disciples to do from what he told them not to do, as in the UST. (See: [Verse Bridges](#))

Connecting Statement:

Jesus sends his disciples out in sets of two to preach and to heal.

he called the twelve (ULT)

he called the twelve apprentices together (UST)

Here the word "called" means that he summoned the twelve to come to him.

two by two (ULT)

two by two (UST)

"2 by 2" or "in pairs" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [he called](#)
- [twelve](#)
- [unclean](#)
- [authority](#)
- [spirits](#)
- [unclean spirits](#)
- [to send...out](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [he called...together](#)
- [twelve apprentices](#)
- [to force evil spirits out from people](#)
- [power](#)
- [to force evil spirits out from people](#)
- [to force evil spirits out from people](#)
- [to send...out...to teach people in various towns](#)

ULT

⁷ Then [he called](#) the [twelve](#) and began [to send](#) them [out](#) two by two, and he gave them [authority](#) over the [unclean spirits](#),

UST

⁷ One day [he called](#) the [twelve apprentices together](#), and then he told them that he was going [to send](#) them [out](#) two by two [to teach people in various towns](#). He gave them [power to force evil spirits out from people](#).

Mark 6:8

no bread (ULT)

Here “bread” is a synecdoche for food in general. Alternate translation: “no food” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [instructed](#)
- [bread](#)
- [a staff](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [bread](#)
- [staff](#), [clubs](#)

ULT

⁸ and [instructed](#) them that they should take nothing for their journey, except only [a staff](#)—no [bread](#), no bag, and no money in their belts—

UST

⁸⁻⁹ He also instructed them to wear sandals and to take along a walking stick when they were traveling. He told them not to take food, nor a bag in which to put supplies, nor any money for their journey. He also did not allow them to take an extra tunic.

Mark 6:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- sandals
- tunics
- to wear

Translation Words - UST

- sandal
- tunic
- clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments

ULT

⁹ but to wear [sandals](#), and not [to wear](#) two [tunics](#).

UST

⁸⁻⁹ He also instructed them to wear sandals and to take along a walking stick when they were traveling. He told them not to take food, nor a bag in which to put supplies, nor any money for their journey. He also did not allow them to take an extra tunic.

Mark 6:10

He...said to them (ULT)

He...instructed them (UST)

"Jesus said to the twelve"

remain...until you go away from there (ULT)

Here "remain" represents daily going back to that house to eat and sleep there. Alternate translation: "eat and sleep in that house until you leave that place" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [a house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [his house...his house](#)

ULT

¹⁰ He also said to them, "Whenever you enter into [a house](#), remain there until you go away from there.

UST

¹⁰ He also instructed them, "After you enter a town, if someone invites you to stay in [his house](#), go into [his house](#). Eat and sleep in that same home until you leave that town.

Mark 6:11

as a testimony against them (ULT)

By doing that, you will be testifying that they did not welcome you (UST)

“as a testimony against them.” It may be helpful to explain how this action was a testimony to them. “as a testimony to them. By doing that, you will be testifying that they did not welcome you” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [a testimony](#)
- [receive](#)
- [dust](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [you will be testifying that](#)
- [the people do...welcome](#)
- [dust](#)

ULT

¹¹ Any place that does not [receive](#) you or listen to you, when you depart from there, shake off the [dust](#) that is under your feet as [a testimony](#) against them.”

UST

¹¹ Wherever [the people do](#) not [welcome](#) you and wherever the people do not listen to you, shake off the [dust](#) from your feet as you leave that place. By doing that, [you will be testifying that](#) they did not welcome you.”

Mark 6:12

they went out (ULT)

the disciples went out to various towns (UST)

The word “They” refers to the twelve and does not include Jesus. Also, it may be helpful to state that they went out to various towns. Alternate translation: “They went out to various towns” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

people should repent (ULT)

people should be sorry that they have sinned, and decide to stop it, so that God may forgive them (UST)

Here “turn away from” is a metaphor that means to stop doing something. Alternate translation: “stop sinning” or “repent of their sins” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [people should repent](#)
- [and proclaimed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [people should be sorry that they have sinned, and decide to stop it, so that God may forgive them](#)
- [they were preaching](#)

ULT

¹² So they went out [and proclaimed](#) that [people should repent](#).

UST

¹² So after the disciples went out to various towns, [they were preaching](#) that [people should be sorry that they have sinned, and decide to stop it, so that God may forgive them](#).

Mark 6:13

They cast out many...demons (ULT)

They were...forcing many evil spirits out from people (UST)

It may be helpful to state that they cast the demons out of people.
Alternate translation: "They cast many demons out of people" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [anointed](#)
- [demons](#)
- [They cast out](#)
- [healed them](#)
- [with oil](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [they were anointing](#)
- [evil spirits](#)
- [They were...forcing...out from people](#)
- [healing them](#)
- [with olive oil](#)

ULT

¹³ [They cast out](#) many [demons](#), and [anointed](#) many sick people [with oil](#) and [healed them](#).

UST

¹³ [They were](#) also [forcing](#) many [evil spirits out from people](#), and [they were anointing](#) many sick people [with olive oil](#) and [healing them](#).

Mark 6:14

Connecting Statement:

When Herod hears about Jesus' miracles, he worries, thinking that someone has raised John the Baptist from the dead. (Herod had caused John the Baptist to be killed.)

King Herod heard this (ULT)

King Herod Antipas heard about what Jesus was doing (UST)

The word "this" refers to everything that Jesus and his disciples had been doing in various towns, including casting out demons and healing people.

Some were saying...John the Baptist has been raised (ULT)

Some people were saying about Jesus, "He must be John the Baptizer! He has risen (UST)

Some people were saying that Jesus was John the Baptist. This can be stated more clearly. Alternate translation: "Some were saying, 'He is John the Baptist who has been'" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

John...the Baptist has been raised (ULT)

John the Baptizer! He has risen (UST)

"Raised" here is an idiom for "caused to live again." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "John the Baptist has been caused to live again" or "God has caused John the Baptist to live again" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Baptist
- miraculous powers
- name
- Herod
- John...the Baptist
- the dead
- King
- has been raised

Translation Words - UST

- Baptizer
- God's power
- name
- Herod Antipas
- John the Baptizer! He
- the dead
- King
- has risen

ULT

¹⁴ Now [King Herod](#) heard this, for Jesus' [name](#) had become well known. Some were saying, "[John the Baptist has been raised](#) from [the dead](#), and that is why [miraculous powers](#) are at work in him."

UST

¹⁴ Now [King Herod Antipas](#) heard about what Jesus was doing, because many people were talking about it. Some people were saying about Jesus, "He must be [John the Baptizer! He has risen](#) from [the dead](#)! That is why he has [God's power](#) to perform these miracles!"

Mark 6:15

But others said, "He is Elijah (ULT)

It may be helpful to state why some people thought he was Elijah. Alternate translation: "Some others said, 'He is Elijah, whom God promised to send back again.'" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [He is a prophet](#)
- [former prophets](#)
- [Elijah](#)
- [like](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [No, he is a different prophet](#)
- [prophets who lived long ago](#)
- [the ancient prophet Elijah, whom God promised to send back again](#)
- [like](#)

ULT

¹⁵ But others said, "He is [Elijah](#)." And others said, "[He is a prophet, like](#) one of the [former prophets](#)."

UST

¹⁵ Others were saying about Jesus, "He is [the ancient prophet Elijah, whom God promised to send back again](#)." Others were saying about Jesus, "[No, he is a different prophet, like](#) one of the other [prophets who lived long ago](#)."

Mark 6:16

General Information:

In verse 17 the author begins to give background information about Herod and why he beheaded John the Baptist. (See: [Background Information](#))

whom...I beheaded (ULT)

The man performing those miracles must be...I commanded my soldiers to cut...his head (UST)

Here Herod uses the word "I" to refer to himself. The word "I" is a metonym for Herod's soldiers. Alternate translation: "whom I commanded my soldiers to behead" (See: [Metonymy](#))

has been raised (ULT)

off...has become alive again (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "has become alive again" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Herod](#)
- [John](#)
- [has been raised](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [King Herod Antipas himself](#)
- [John](#)
- [off...has become alive again](#)

ULT

¹⁶ But when [Herod](#) heard this he said, "[John](#), whom I beheaded—he [has been raised](#)."

UST

¹⁶ Having heard what the people were saying, [King Herod Antipas himself](#) said, "The man performing those miracles must be [John](#)! I commanded my soldiers to cut [off](#) his head, but he [has become alive again](#)!"

Mark 6:17

Herod...sent to have John arrested and he had him bound in prison (ULT)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Herod sent his soldiers to arrest John and had them bind him in prison” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

sent to have (ULT)

“ordered to have”

on account of Herodias (ULT) Herodias, although she (UST)

“because of Herodias”

the wife of his brother Philip (ULT) was the wife of his brother, Philip (UST)

“the wife of his brother Philip.” Herod’s brother Philip is not the same Philip who was an evangelist in the book of Acts or the Philip who was one of Jesus’ twelve disciples. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

because he had married her (ULT)

“because Herod had married her”

Translation Words - ULT

- [he had...bound](#)
- [brother](#)
- [Herod](#)
- [John](#)
- [Herodias](#)
- [prison](#)
- [sent to have](#)
- [arrested](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bind, bond, bound](#)
- [of...brother](#)
- [Herod](#)
- [John \(the Baptist\)](#)
- [Herodias...she](#)
- [prison, prisoner, imprison](#)
- [send, sent, send out](#)
- [seize, seizure](#)

ULT

¹⁷ For [Herod](#) himself [sent to have John arrested](#) and [he had](#) him [bound](#) in [prison](#) on account of [Herodias](#) (the wife of his [brother](#) Philip), because he had married her.

UST

¹⁷ What happened was this—some time before, [Herod](#) had taken and married [Herodias](#), although [she](#) was the wife of his [brother](#), Philip.

Mark 6:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- of...brother
- to Herod
- John
- It is...lawful

Translation Words - UST

- of...brother
- Herod
- John
- God's law does not permit...while he is still alive

ULT

¹⁸ For [John](#) had said [to Herod](#), "[It is](#) not [lawful](#) for you to have the wife of your [brother](#)."

UST

¹⁸ After that, [John](#) kept telling [Herod](#), "[God's law does not permit](#) you to marry the wife of your [brother while he is still alive](#)." Then, because Herodias urged him to put John in prison, Herod himself sent soldiers to John. They arrested John and put him in prison.

Mark 6:19

**wanted to kill him, but she could not (ULT)
she wanted someone to execute him. But she could not
do that because while John was in prison, Herod kept
John safe from her (UST)**

Herodias is the subject of this phrase and "she" is a metonym as she wants someone else to execute John. Alternate translation: "she wanted someone to kill him, but she could not have him killed" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [But Herodias](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Herodias](#)

ULT

¹⁹ [But Herodias](#) held this against him and wanted to kill him, but she could not,

UST

¹⁹ But because [Herodias](#) wanted to get further revenge on John, she wanted someone to execute him. But she could not do that because while John was in prison, Herod kept John safe from her.

Mark 6:20

for Herod feared John; he knew that (ULT)

These two clauses can be linked differently to show more clearly why Herod feared John. Alternate translation: “for Herod feared John because he knew” (See: [Connecting Words and Phrases](#))

he knew that he was a righteous...man (ULT) because he knew that he was a righteous man (UST)

“Herod knew that John was a righteous”

Listening...to him (ULT) Herod listened to him (UST)

“Listening to John”

Translation Words - ULT

- feared
- righteous
- holy
- for Herod
- John
- he knew that

Translation Words - UST

- he respected
- righteous
- who devoted himself to God
- Herod
- John
- because he knew that

ULT

²⁰ [for Herod feared John](#); [he knew that](#) he was a [righteous](#) and [holy](#) man, and he kept him safe. Listening to him made him greatly upset, yet he heard him gladly.

UST

²⁰ [Herod](#) did this because [he respected John](#), [because he knew that](#) he was a [righteous](#) man [who devoted himself to God](#). Whenever Herod listened to him, he became very disturbed and did not know what he should do with him, but he liked to listen to him.

Mark 6:21

Connecting Statement:

The author continues to give background information about Herod and the beheading of John the Baptist. (See: [Background Information](#))

prepared his birthday dinner...for...officials...of Galilee (ULT)

on his birthday, he invited...most important government officials...to eat and celebrate with him... in the district of Galilee (UST)

Here the word "he" refers to Herod and is a metonym for his servant whom he would have commanded to prepare a meal. Alternate translation: "he had a dinner made for his officials...of Galilee" or "he invited his officials...of Galilee to eat and celebrate with him"

dinner (ULT)

he invited...to eat and celebrate with him (UST)

a formal meal or banquet

Translation Words - ULT

- [Herod](#)
- [of Galilee](#)
- [dinner](#)
- [commanders](#)
- [the opportunity](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Herod](#)
- [district of Galilee](#)
- [he invited...to eat and celebrate with him](#)
- [most important army leaders](#)
- [day](#)

ULT

²¹ Then [the opportunity](#) came when [Herod](#) prepared his birthday [dinner](#) for his officials, and for his [commanders](#), and for the leaders [of Galilee](#).

UST

²¹ But Herodias was able to eventually have someone execute John. One [day](#) when they honored [Herod](#) on his birthday, [he invited](#) the most important government officials, the [most important army leaders](#), and the most important men in the [district of Galilee to eat and celebrate with him](#).

Mark 6:22

of Herodias herself (ULT)

Herodias (UST)

The word “herself” is a reflexive pronoun used to emphasize that it was significant that it was Herodias’ own daughter who danced at the dinner. (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

came in (ULT)

came into the room (UST)

“came into the room”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Herod](#)
- [of Herodias](#)
- [king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [King Herod](#)
- [Herodias](#)
- [he](#)

ULT

²² Then the daughter [of Herodias](#) herself came in and danced for them, and she pleased [Herod](#) and those reclining at table with him. The [king](#) said to the girl, “Ask me whatever you want and I will give it to you.”

UST

²² While they were eating, [Herodias](#)’ daughter came into the room and danced for the king and his guests. She pleased [King Herod](#) and his guests so much that [he](#) said to her, “Ask me for whatever you wish and I will give it to you!”

Mark 6:23

Whatever...you ask of me...of my kingdom (ULT)

"I will give you up to half of what I own and rule, if you ask for it"

Translation Words - ULT

- of...kingdom
- He swore

Translation Words - UST

- own and rule
- He...promised

ULT

²³ [He swore](#) to her, "Whatever you ask of me, I will give you, up to half of my [kingdom](#)."

UST

²³ [He](#) also [promised](#) to her, "Whatever you ask, I will give it to you! I will give you up to half of what I [own and rule](#), if you ask for it."

Mark 6:24

she went out (ULT)

The girl left the room and went to...She told her what the king had said, and (UST)

"went out of the room"

Translation Words - ULT

- Baptist
- of John the Baptist
- head

Translation Words - UST

- Baptizer
- of John the Baptizer
- head

ULT

²⁴ So she went out and said to her mother, "What should I ask?" She said, "The [head of John the Baptist](#)."

UST

²⁴ The girl left the room and went to her mother. She told her what the king had said, and asked her, "What should I ask for?" Her mother replied, "Ask the king to give you the [head of John the Baptizer](#)!"

Mark 6:25

a platter (ULT)

a platter (UST)

“on a board” or “on a large wooden dish”

Translation Words - ULT

- Baptist
- of John the Baptist
- head
- king

Translation Words - UST

- Baptizer
- of John the Baptizer
- head...it
- king

ULT

²⁵ She immediately came back with haste to the [king](#), and demanded, saying, “I desire that you give me at once, the [head of John the Baptist](#) on a platter.”

UST

²⁵ The girl quickly entered the room again. She went to the [king](#) and she said, “I want you to command someone to cut off the [head of John the Baptizer](#) and bring [it](#) to me at once on a platter!”

Mark 6:26

because of his oath and because of those reclining at table with him (ULT)

because he had promised that he would give her anything she asked for, and his guests had heard him promise (UST)

The content of the oath, and the relationship between the oath and the dinner guests can be stated clearly. Alternate translation:

“because his dinner guests had heard him make the oath that he would give her anything she asked for” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [king](#)
- [oath](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [king](#)
- [he had promised that he would give her anything she asked for](#)

ULT

²⁶ Although the [king](#) became deeply grieved, he did not want to refuse her because of his [oath](#) and because of those reclining at table with him.

UST

²⁶ The [king](#) became very distressed when he heard what she asked for because he knew John was a very righteous man. But he could not refuse what she requested because [he had promised that he would give her anything she asked for](#), and his guests had heard him promise.

Mark 6:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- commanding him
- prison
- head
- sent
- king

Translation Words - UST

- ordered
- prison
- head...it
- to go and cut off...and
- king

ULT

²⁷ So the [king](#) immediately [sent](#) an executioner, [commanding him](#) to bring John's [head](#). So he went and beheaded him in the [prison](#).

UST

²⁷ So the [king](#) at once [ordered](#) someone [to go and cut off](#) John's [head and](#) bring [it](#) to the girl. That man went to the [prison](#) and cut off John's head.

Mark 6:28

on a platter (ULT)

on a platter (UST)

“on a tray”

Translation Words - ULT

- head

Translation Words - UST

- it...it

ULT

²⁸ He brought his [head](#) on a platter and gave it to the girl, and the girl gave it to her mother.

UST

²⁸ He put [it](#) on a platter, brought [it](#) back, and gave it to the girl. The girl took it to her mother.

Mark 6:29

When...his disciples...heard of this (ULT)

After John's apprentices heard what happened (UST)

"When John's disciples"

Translation Words - ULT

- [body](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [a tomb](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [body](#)
- [apprentices](#)
- [they buried it](#)

ULT

²⁹ When his [disciples](#) heard of this, they came and took his [body](#) and placed it in [a tomb](#).

UST

²⁹ After John's [apprentices](#) heard what happened, they went to the prison and took John's [body](#); then [they buried it](#).

Mark 6:30

Connecting Statement:

After the disciples return from preaching and healing, they go somewhere to be alone, but there are many people who come to hear Jesus teach. When it becomes late, he feeds the people and then sends everyone away while he prays alone.

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- apostles
- they had taught
- gathered together
- told

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- twelve sent ones
- they had taught to people
- returned...from the places to which they had gone
- They reported

ULT

³⁰ Then the [apostles gathered together](#) with [Jesus](#) and [told](#) him all that they had done and what [they had taught](#).

UST

³⁰ The [twelve sent ones returned](#) to [Jesus from the places to which they had gone](#). [They reported](#) to him what they had done and what [they had taught to people](#).

Mark 6:31

a deserted place (ULT)

a place where no people are living (UST)

a place where there are no people

many were coming and going

This means that people were continually coming to the apostles and then going away from them.

not even...they did...have time (ULT)

not...to eat or do anything else...Jesus and his apprentices did...have time (UST)

The word "they" refers to the apostles.

Translation Words - ULT

- [deserted](#)
- [they did...have time](#)
- [rest](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [where no people are living](#)
- [Jesus and his apprentices did...have time](#)
- [in order that we can be alone...rest](#)

ULT

³¹ Then he said to them, "Come away by yourselves to a [deserted](#) place and [rest](#) a while." For many were coming and going, and [they did](#) not even [have time](#) to eat.

UST

³¹ He said to them, "Come with me to a place [where no people are living](#), [in order that we can be alone](#) and [rest](#) a little while!" He said this because many people were continually coming to them and going away again, with the result that [Jesus and his apprentices did](#) not [have time](#) to eat or do anything else.

Mark 6:32

So they went away (ULT)

So they went away (UST)

Here the word “they” includes both the apostles and Jesus.

Translation Words - ULT

- [deserted](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [where no people were living](#)

ULT

³² So they went away in the boat to a [deserted](#) place by themselves.

UST

³² So they went away by themselves in a boat to a place [where no people were living](#).

Mark 6:33

people saw them leaving (ULT)

saw them leaving...saw where they were going (UST)

“the people saw Jesus and the apostles leaving”

on foot (ULT)

The people are going on foot by land, which contrasts with how the disciples went by boat.

Translation Words - ULT

- [recognized them](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [recognized that they were Jesus and the apprentices](#)

ULT

³³ But people saw them leaving, and many [recognized them](#). So they ran there together on foot from all the towns, and they arrived before them.

UST

³³ But many people saw them leaving. They also [recognized that they were Jesus and the apprentices](#), and they saw where they were going. So they ran ahead on land from all the nearby towns to the place where Jesus and his apprentices were going. They actually arrived there before Jesus and the apprentices.

Mark 6:34

he saw a great crowd (ULT)

Jesus saw this great crowd (UST)

"Jesus saw a great crowd"

they were like sheep not having a shepherd (ULT)

they were confused, like sheep that do not have a shepherd (UST)

Jesus compares the people to sheep who are confused when they do not have their shepherd to lead them. (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [he had compassion](#)
- [to teach](#)
- [a shepherd](#)
- [sheep](#)
- [like](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [He felt compassion](#)
- [he taught](#)
- [a shepherd](#)
- [sheep](#)
- [like](#)

ULT

³⁴ When they came ashore, he saw a great crowd and [he had compassion](#) on them because they were [like sheep](#) not having [a shepherd](#). So he began [to teach](#) them many things.

UST

³⁴ As Jesus and his apprentices got out of the boat, Jesus saw this great crowd. [He felt compassion](#) for them because they were confused, [like sheep](#) that do not have [a shepherd](#). So [he taught](#) them many things.

Mark 6:35

When the hour was already late (ULT)

This means it was late in the day. Alternate translation: "When it was getting late" or "Late in the afternoon" (See: [Idiom](#))

This place is...deserted (ULT)

This is a place where no one lives (UST)

This refers to a place where there are no people. See how you translated this in [Mark 6:31](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [deserted](#)
- [the hour](#)
- [the hour](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [apprentices](#)
- [where no one lives](#)
- [Late in the afternoon](#)
- [it is very late](#)

ULT

³⁵ When [the hour](#) was already late, his [disciples](#) came to him and said, "This place is [deserted](#), and [the hour](#) is already late.

UST

³⁵ [Late in the afternoon](#) the [apprentices](#) came to him and said, "This is a place [where no one lives](#), and [it is very late](#).

Mark 6:36

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

³⁶ Send them away so that they may go into the nearby countryside and villages to buy something to eat for themselves.”

UST

³⁶ So send the people away in order that they may go to the surrounding places where people live and to villages in order that they can buy for themselves something to eat!”

Mark 6:37

But he answered and said to them (ULT)

"But Jesus answered and said to his disciples"

Should we go and buy two hundred denarii worth of bread and give it to them to eat (ULT)

The disciples ask this question to say that there is no way they could afford to buy enough food for this crowd. Alternate translation: "We could not buy enough bread to feed this crowd, even if we had two hundred denarii!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

two hundred denarii worth (ULT) as much money as a man earns by working 200 days (UST)

"200 denarii." The singular form of the word "denarii" is "denarius." A denarius was a Roman silver coin worth one day's wages. (See: [Biblical Money](#) and [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of bread](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [enough bread](#)

ULT

37 But he answered and said to them, "You give them something to eat." They said to him, "Should we go and buy two hundred denarii worth [of bread](#) and give it to them to eat?"

UST

37 But he replied to them, "No, you yourselves give them something to eat!" They replied to him, "We could not buy [enough bread](#) to feed this crowd, even if we had as much money as a man earns by working 200 days!

Mark 6:38

loaves (ULT)

loaves of bread (UST)

lumps of bread dough that have been shaped and baked

Translation Words - ULT

- loaves
- When they found out

Translation Words - UST

- loaves of bread
- They went and found out and then

ULT

³⁸ So he said to them, "How many [loaves](#) do you have? Go and see." [When they found out](#), they said, "Five loaves and two fish."

UST

³⁸ But he replied to them, "How many [loaves of bread](#) do you have? Go and find out!" [They went and found out and then](#) they told him, "We have only five flat loaves and two cooked fish!"

Mark 6:39

the green grass (ULT)

the green grass (UST)

Describe the grass with the color word used in your language for healthy grass, which may or may not be the color green.

Translation Words - ULT

- [he commanded](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [He instructed](#)

ULT

³⁹ Then [he commanded](#) all the people to recline in groups on the green grass.

UST

³⁹ [He instructed](#) the apprentices to tell all the people to sit down on the green grass.

Mark 6:40

in groups...of hundreds and of fifties (ULT)

in groups...There were fifty people in some groups and one hundred people in other groups (UST)

This refers to the number of people in each of the groups. Alternate translation: "about fifty people in some groups and about a hundred people in other groups" (See: [Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

⁴⁰ So they reclined in groups of hundreds and of fifties.

UST

⁴⁰ So the people sat in groups. There were fifty people in some groups and one hundred people in other groups.

Mark 6:41

and looking up to heaven (ULT)

He looked up toward heaven and (UST)

This means that he looked up toward the sky, which is associated with the place where God lives.

he blessed (ULT)

thanked God for them (UST)

“he spoke a blessing” or “he gave thanks”

Then...the...two fish...He...divided...among them all (ULT)

“he divided the two fish so that everyone could have some”

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [he blessed](#)
- [to...disciples](#)
- [loaves](#)
- [loaves](#) (2)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven](#)
- [thanked God for them](#)
- [apprentices](#)
- [flat loaves](#)
- [loaves and fish](#) (2)

ULT

⁴¹ Then he took the five [loaves](#) and the two fish, and looking up to [heaven he blessed](#) and broke the [loaves](#) and gave them to his [disciples](#) that they might set them before the people. He also divided the two fish among them all.

UST

⁴¹ Jesus took the five [flat loaves](#) and the two fish. He looked up toward [heaven](#) and [thanked God for them](#). Then he broke the [loaves and fish](#) into pieces and kept giving them to the [apprentices](#) in order that they would distribute them to the people.

Mark 6:42

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

⁴² They all ate until they were satisfied.

UST

⁴² Everyone ate this food until they all had enough to eat!

Mark 6:43

they took up (ULT)

The apprentices...collected (UST)

Possible meaning are 1) "The disciples took up" or 2) "The people took up."

twelve baskets full of broken pieces (ULT)

twelve baskets full of pieces of bread...that were left over (UST)

"twelve baskets full of broken pieces of bread"

twelve baskets (ULT)

twelve baskets (UST)

"12 baskets" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [baskets](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [baskets](#)

ULT

⁴³ Then they took up twelve [baskets](#) full of broken pieces, and of the fish.

UST

⁴³ The apprentices then collected twelve [baskets](#) full of pieces of bread and of the fish that were left over.

Mark 6:44

five thousand men (ULT)
about five thousand men...They did not even count the women and children (UST)

"5,000 men" (See: [Numbers](#))

There were...five thousand men who ate the loaves (ULT)
There were about five thousand men who ate the bread and fish. They did not even count the women and children (UST)

The number of women and children was not counted. If it would not be understood that women and children were present, it can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "And there were five thousand men who ate the loaves. They did not even count the women and children" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

⁴⁴ There were five thousand men who ate the [loaves](#).

UST

⁴⁴ There were about five thousand men who ate the [bread and fish](#). They did not even count the women and children.

Translation Words - ULT

- [loaves](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bread and fish](#)

Mark 6:45

to the other side (ULT) which was further around the Galilee lake (UST)

This refers to the Sea of Galilee. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "to the other side of the Sea of Galilee" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Bethsaida (ULT) Bethsaida town (UST)

This is a town on the northern shore of the Sea of Galilee. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [apprentices](#)

ULT

⁴⁵ Immediately he made his [disciples](#) get into the boat and go ahead of him to the other side, to Bethsaida, while he sent the crowd away.

UST

⁴⁵ Right away Jesus told his [apprentices](#) to get into the boat and then go ahead of him to Bethsaida town, which was further around the Galilee lake. He stayed and dismissed the many people who were there.

Mark 6:46

When...they...were gone (ULT)

After he said goodbye...to the people (UST)

“When the people had left”

Translation Words - ULT

- [to pray](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [in order to pray](#)

ULT

⁴⁶ When they were gone, he went to the mountain [to pray](#).

UST

⁴⁶ After he said goodbye to the people, he went up into the hills [in order to pray](#).

Mark 6:47

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [sea](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [lake](#)

ULT

⁴⁷ When evening came, the boat was in the middle of the [sea](#), and he was alone on the land.

UST

⁴⁷ When it was evening, the apprentices' boat was in the middle of the [lake](#), and Jesus was by himself on the land.

Mark 6:48

Connecting Statement:

A storm arises while the disciples are trying to cross the lake. Seeing Jesus walking on the water terrifies them. They do not understand how Jesus can calm the storm.

the fourth watch (ULT)
early in the morning, when it was still dark (UST)

This is the time between 3 a.m. and sunrise. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sea](#)
- [watch](#)
- [walking](#)
- [He saw](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [water](#)
- [early in the morning, when it was still dark](#)
- [by walking](#)
- [He saw that](#)

ULT

⁴⁸ [He saw](#) them straining against the oars, for the wind was against them. About the fourth [watch](#) of the night he came to them, [walking](#) on the [sea](#), and he wanted to pass by them.

UST

⁴⁸ [He saw that](#) the wind was blowing against them as they rowed. As a result, they were having great difficulty. He approached them [early in the morning, when it was still dark, by walking](#) on the [water](#). He intended to walk by them.

Mark 6:49

a ghost (ULT)

a ghost (UST)

the spirit of a dead person or some other kind of spirit

Translation Words - ULT

- a ghost
- sea
- cried out
- walking

Translation Words - UST

- a ghost
- water
- They screamed
- walking

ULT

⁴⁹ But when they saw him [walking](#) on the [sea](#), they thought that he was [a ghost](#) and [cried out](#),

UST

⁴⁹ They saw him [walking](#) on the [water](#), but they thought that he was [a ghost](#). [They screamed](#)

Mark 6:50

Take courage...Do not fear (ULT)

Be calm...Do not be afraid (UST)

These two sentences are similar in meaning, emphasizing to his disciples that they did not need to be afraid. They can be combined into one if necessary. Alternate translation: "Do not fear me!" (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- fear
- were terrified
- Take courage

Translation Words - UST

- Do...be afraid
- were terrified
- Be calm

ULT

⁵⁰ because they all saw him and [were terrified](#). But immediately he spoke with them and said to them, "[Take courage](#)! It is I! Do not [fear](#)!"

UST

⁵⁰ because they all [were terrified](#) when they saw him. But he spoke to them. He said to them, "[Be calm](#)! Do not [be afraid](#), because it is I!"

Mark 6:51

They were...completely...amazed (ULT)

They were completely amazed about what he had done (UST)

If you need to be more specific, it can stated what they were amazed by. Alternate translation: "They were completely amazed at what he had done" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [were...amazed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [They were...amazed about what he had done](#)

ULT

⁵¹ Then he got into the boat with them, and the wind ceased blowing. They were completely [amazed](#).

UST

⁵¹ He got into the boat and sat down with them and the wind stopped blowing. [They were](#) completely [amazed about what he had done](#).

Mark 6:52

about the loaves (ULT)

Here the phrase “the loaves” refers to when Jesus multiplied the loaves of bread. Alternate translation: “what it meant when Jesus multiplied the loaves of bread” or “what it meant when Jesus caused the few loaves to become many” (See: [Metonymy](#))

their hearts were hardened (ULT)

Having a hard heart represents being too stubborn to understand. Alternate translation: “they were too stubborn to understand” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [hearts](#)
- [loaves](#)
- [they had...understood](#)
- [hardened](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [as they should have](#)
- [the bread and the fish](#)
- [they did...understand how powerful he was](#)
- [as they should have](#)

ULT

⁵² For [they had](#) not [understood](#) about the [loaves](#). Instead, their [hearts](#) were [hardened](#).

UST

⁵² Although they had seen Jesus multiply [the bread and the fish](#), [they did](#) not [understand how powerful he was](#), [as they should have](#).

Mark 6:53

Connecting Statement:

When Jesus and his disciples arrive at Gennesaret in their boat, people see him and bring people for him to heal. This happens wherever they go.

Gennesaret (ULT)

Gennesaret town (UST)

This is the name of the region to the northwest of the Sea of Galilee.
(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁵³ When they had crossed over to the land, they came to Gennesaret and anchored there.

UST

⁵³ After they went further around the Galilee lake in a boat, they came to shore at Gennesaret town. Then they fastened the boat there.

Mark 6:54

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the people recognized

Translation Words - UST

- the people there recognized

ULT

⁵⁴ When they got out of the boat, [the people recognized](#) him immediately,

UST

⁵⁴ As soon as they got out of the boat, [the people there recognized](#) Jesus.

Mark 6:55

and they ran throughout...whole region (ULT)
So they ran throughout the whole district in order to tell others that Jesus was there (UST)

It may be helpful to state why they ran through the region. Alternate translation: "they ran throughout the whole district in order to tell others that Jesus was there" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

and they ran throughout...they heard (ULT)
So they ran throughout...in order to tell others that Jesus was there...they heard people say (UST)

The word "they" refers to the people who recognized Jesus, not to the disciples.

those who were sick (ULT)
those who were sick (UST)

This phrase refers to people. Alternate translation: "the sick people" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

ULT

⁵⁵ and they ran throughout that whole region and began to carry on their mats those who were sick to wherever they heard that he was.

UST

⁵⁵ So they ran throughout the whole district in order to tell others that Jesus was there. Then the people placed those who were sick on stretchers and carried them to any place where they heard people say that Jesus was.

Mark 6:56

wherever he entered (ULT)

whatever...where he went (UST)

“Wherever Jesus entered”

they were putting (ULT)

they would bring (UST)

Here “they” refers to the people. It does not refer to Jesus’ disciples.

the sick (ULT)

those who were sick (UST)

This phrase refers to people. Alternate translation: “the sick people”
(See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

were begging him (ULT)

the sick people would beg Jesus (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) “The sick begged him” or 2) “The people begged him.”

touch (ULT)

let them touch (UST)

The word “them” refers to the sick.

the edge of his garment

“the hem of his robe” or “the edge of his clothes”

wherever...as many as (ULT)

whatever...in order that Jesus might heal them. All those who touched (UST)

“all those who”

Translation Words - ULT

- [were healed](#)
- [were begging](#)
- [garment](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [were healed](#)
- [the sick people would beg](#)
- [of...clothes](#)

ULT

⁵⁶ And wherever he entered into villages, or into cities, or into the countryside, they were putting the sick in the marketplaces and [were begging](#) him that they might only touch the edge of his [garment](#), and as many as touched him [were healed](#).

UST

⁵⁶ In whatever village, town or place in the countryside where he went, they would bring to the marketplaces those who were sick. Then [the sick people would beg](#) Jesus to let them touch him or even the edge of his [clothes](#) in order that Jesus might heal them. All those who touched him or his robe [were healed](#).

Mark 7

Mark 7 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 7:6-7, which are words from the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

Hand washing

The Pharisees washed many things that were not dirty because they were trying to make God think that they were good. They washed their hands before they ate, even when their hands were not dirty. and even though the law of Moses did not say that they had to do it. Jesus told them that they were wrong and that people make God happy by thinking and doing the right things. (See: [law of Moses](#), [God's law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [the law](#) and [clean](#), [wash](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“Ephphatha”

This is an Aramaic word. Mark wrote it the way it sounds using Greek letters and then explained what it means. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

Mark 7:1

Connecting Statement:

Jesus rebukes the Pharisees and scribes.

gathered around him (ULT)
gathered around Jesus (UST)

“gathered around Jesus”

Translation Words - ULT

- [scribes](#)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [gathered](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [men who teach the Jewish laws](#)
- [some Pharisees](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [gathered](#)

ULT

¹ Now the [Pharisees](#) and some of the [scribes](#) who had come from [Jerusalem](#) [gathered](#) around him.

UST

¹ One day [some Pharisees](#) and some [men who teach the Jewish laws](#) who had come from [Jerusalem](#) [gathered](#) around Jesus.

Mark 7:2

General Information:

In verses 3 and 4, the author gives background information about the Pharisees' washing traditions in order to show why the Pharisees were bothered that Jesus' disciples did not wash their hands before eating. This information can be reordered in order to make it easier to understand, as in the UST. (See: [Background Information](#) and [Verse Bridges](#))

they saw (ULT)

The Pharisees saw that (UST)

"The Pharisees and the scribes saw"

that is, unwashed (ULT)

The word "unwashed" explains why the disciples' hands were defiled. It can be expressed in active form. Alternate translation: "that is, with hands that they had not washed" or "that is, that they had not washed their hands" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of...disciples](#)
- [hands](#)
- [bread](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [apprentices](#)
- [hand](#)
- [often ate](#)

ULT

² And they saw that some of his [disciples](#) ate [bread](#) with defiled [hands](#), that is, unwashed.

UST

² The Pharisees saw that his [apprentices](#) [often ate](#) without washing their hands first.

Mark 7:3

of the elders (ULT)

their ancestors taught (UST)

Jewish elders were leaders in their communities and were also judges for the people.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jews](#)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [hands](#)
- [tradition](#)
- [because they hold to](#)
- [elders](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [other Jews](#)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [their hands](#)
- [their traditions that](#)
- [strictly observe](#)
- [their ancestors taught](#)

ULT

³ (For the [Pharisees](#) and all the [Jews](#) do not eat unless they wash their [hands](#) ceremonially, [because they hold to](#) the [tradition](#) of the [elders](#).)

UST

³ The [Pharisees](#) and all of the [other Jews](#) [strictly observe their traditions that their ancestors taught](#). For example, they refuse to eat until they first wash [their hands](#) with a special ritual,

Mark 7:4

copper vessels (ULT)

the things they bought (UST)

“copper kettles” or “metal containers”

Translation Words - ULT

- they received

Translation Words - UST

- because some person or thing unacceptable to God might have touched them or

ULT

⁴ When they come from the marketplace, they do not eat unless they wash, and there are many other things which [they received](#) to observe: the washing of cups, and pots, and copper vessels.)

UST

⁴ especially after they return from buying things in the marketplace. They think that God will be angry with them if they do not do that, [because some person or thing unacceptable to God might have touched them or](#) the things they bought.

Mark 7:5

Why do your disciples not walk according to the tradition of the elders, but they eat their bread with unwashed hands (ULT)

"Walk in" here is a metaphor for "obey." The Pharisees and scribes asked this question to challenge Jesus' authority. This can be written as two statements. Alternate translation: "Your disciples disobey the traditions of our elders! They should wash their hands using our rituals." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Metaphor](#))

bread (ULT)

food (UST)

This is a synecdoche, representing food in general. Alternate translation: "food" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [scribes](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [hands](#)
- [bread](#)
- [tradition](#)
- [elders](#)
- [walk](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [men who taught the Jewish laws](#)
- [some of...apprentices...apprentices](#)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [their hands](#)
- [food](#)
- [traditions](#)
- [elders](#)
- [disobey](#)

ULT

⁵ The [Pharisees](#) and the [scribes](#) asked Jesus, "Why do your [disciples](#) not [walk](#) according to the [tradition](#) of the [elders](#), but they eat their [bread](#) with unwashed [hands](#)?"

UST

⁵ That day, those [Pharisees](#) and [men who taught the Jewish laws](#) saw that [some of](#) his [apprentices](#) were eating food with hands that they had not washed using the special ritual. So they questioned Jesus and said, "Your [apprentices disobey](#) the [traditions](#) of our [elders](#)! Why do they eat [food](#) if they have not washed [their hands](#) using our ritual!"

Mark 7:6

General Information:

Here Jesus quotes the prophet Isaiah, who had written scripture many years earlier.

with their lips (ULT) speak as if (UST)

Here “lips” is a metonym for speaking. Alternate translation: “by what they say” (See: [Metonymy](#))

but their heart is far from me (ULT)

Here “heart” refers to a person’s thoughts or emotions. This is a way of saying the people are not truly devoted to God. Alternate translation: “but they do not really love me” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [prophesied](#)
- [but...heart](#)
- [honors](#)
- [hypocrites](#)
- [Isaiah](#)
- [people](#)
- [As](#)
- [it is written](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [rebuked...and his words describe](#)
- [they really do not think about honoring me at all](#)
- [they honor](#)
- [who only pretend to be good](#)
- [Isaiah](#)
- [your ancestors...people](#)
- [like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if](#)
- [He wrote these words that God said](#)

ULT

⁶ But he answered and said to them, “[Isaiah prophesied](#) well about you [hypocrites](#). [As it is written](#), ‘This [people honors](#) me with their lips, [but](#) their [heart](#) is far from me.’

UST

⁶ Jesus said to them, “[Isaiah rebuked your ancestors, and his words describe](#) very well you people [who only pretend to be good! He wrote these words that God said](#): ‘These [people](#) speak as if [they honor](#) me, but [they really do not think about honoring me at all](#).’

Mark 7:7

They worship me in vain (ULT)

“They offer me useless worship” or “They worship me in vain”

Translation Words - ULT

- [commandments](#)
- [They worship](#)
- [teaching](#)
- [in vain](#)
- [as doctrines](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [only what people say](#)
- [to worship](#)
- [because they teach](#)
- [It is useless for them](#)
- [as if I myself had commanded them](#)

ULT

⁷ [They worship](#) me [in vain](#), [teaching](#) [commandments](#) of men [as doctrines](#).'

UST

⁷ [It is useless for them to worship](#) me, [because they teach only what people say as if I myself had commanded them](#).'

Mark 7:8

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to rebuke the scribes and Pharisees.

You abandon (ULT)

You, like your ancestors, refuse to do (UST)

refuse to obey

and hold fast to (ULT)

Instead, you follow only (UST)

"hold strongly to" or "only keep"

Translation Words - ULT

- [commandment](#)
- [of God](#)
- [tradition](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [what...has commanded](#)
- [God](#)
- [traditions](#)

ULT

⁸ You abandon the [commandment of God](#) and hold fast to the [tradition](#) of men."

UST

⁸ You, like your ancestors, refuse to do [what God has commanded](#). Instead, you follow only the [traditions](#) that others have taught."

Mark 7:9

How well you reject the commandment of God...you may keep your tradition (ULT)

You think that you are clever in refusing to do what God commanded...you can obey your own traditions (UST)

Jesus uses this ironic statement to rebuke his listeners for forsaking God's commandment. Alternate translation: "You think you have done well in how you have rejected the commandment of God so you may keep your own traditions, but what you have done is not good at all" (See: [Irony](#))

How well you reject the commandment of God...you may keep your tradition (ULT)

You think that you are clever in refusing to do what God commanded...you can obey your own traditions (UST)

"How skillfully you reject"

Translation Words - ULT

- [commandment](#)
- [of God](#)
- [tradition](#)
- [you may keep](#)
- [you reject](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [what...commanded](#)
- [God](#)
- [own traditions](#)
- [you can obey](#)
- [in refusing to do](#)

ULT

⁹ He also said to them, "How well [you reject](#) the [commandment of God](#) so that [you may keep](#) your [tradition](#)!

UST

⁹ Jesus also said to them, "You think that you are clever [in refusing to do what God commanded](#) just so that [you can obey](#) your [own traditions](#)!

Mark 7:10

father...He who speaks evil (ULT)

fathers...a person who speaks evil (UST)

"who curses"

will surely die (ULT)

The authorities must execute (UST)

"must be put to death"

He who speaks evil of his father or mother will surely die (ULT)

The authorities must execute a person who speaks evil about his father or mother (UST)

This may be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The authorities must execute a person who speaks evil about his father or mother" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Honor](#)
- [He who speaks evil](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [father](#)
- [of his father](#) (2)
- [will surely die](#)
- [will surely die](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Honor](#)
- [a person who speaks evil](#)
- [our ancestor Moses...He](#)
- [fathers](#)
- [about his father](#) (2)
- [The authorities must execute](#)
- [The authorities must execute](#)

ULT

¹⁰ For [Moses](#) said, '[Honor](#) your [father](#) and your mother,' and, '[He who speaks evil of his father](#) or mother [will surely die](#).'

UST

¹⁰ For example, [our ancestor Moses](#) wrote God's command, '[Honor](#) your [fathers](#) and your mothers'. [He](#) also wrote, '[The authorities must execute a person who speaks evil about his father](#) or mother.'

Mark 7:11

If...Whatever you would have profited from me is Corban"" (that is, 'Given to God (ULT)

The tradition of the scribes said that once money or other things were promised to the temple, they could not be used for any other purpose.

is Corban (ULT)

it is all right if people give their things to God...I have now promised to give to God (UST)

"Corban" here is a Hebrew word that refers to things that people promise to give to God. Translators normally transliterate it using the target language alphabet. Some translators translate its meaning, and then leave out Mark's explanation of the meaning that follows. Alternate translation: "is a gift to God" or "belongs to God" (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

Given to God (ULT)

it is all right if people give their things to God...I have now promised to give to God (UST)

This phrase explains the meaning of the Hebrew word "Corban." It can be stated in active form. Mark explained the meaning so that his non-Jewish readers could understand what Jesus said. Alternate translation: "I have given it to God" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [father](#)
- [you would have profited](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to their parents...to their parents](#)
- [giving them...was going to give to you to provide for you...So I cannot any longer help you](#)

ULT

¹¹ But you say, 'If a man says to his [father](#) or mother, "Whatever [you would have profited](#) from me is Corban"" (that is, 'Given to God'),

UST

¹¹ But you teach people that it is all right if people give their things to God instead of [giving them to their parents](#). You allow them to say [to their parents](#), 'What I [was going to give to you to provide for you](#), I have now promised to give to God. [So I cannot any longer help you!](#)'

Mark 7:12

General Information:

In verses 11 and 12, Jesus shows how the Pharisees teach people that they do not have to obey God's commandment to honor their parents. In verse 11 Jesus tells what the Pharisees allow people to say about their possessions, and in verse 12 he tells how that shows the Pharisees' attitude toward people helping their parents. This information can be reordered to first tell about the Pharisees' attitude toward people helping their parents and then tell how that attitude is shown in what the Pharisees allow people to say about their possessions. (See: [Verse Bridges](#))

ULT

12 you no longer permit him to do anything for his [father](#) or his mother.

UST

12 As a result, you are actually telling people that they no longer have to help [their parents](#)!

you no longer permit him to do anything for his father or his mother (ULT)

As a result, you are actually telling people that they no longer have to help their parents (UST)

By doing this, the Pharisees are allowing people not to provide for their parents, if they promise to give to God what they would have given to them. You can order these words before the words that begin with "Whatever help" in verse 11: "You no longer permit a person to do anything for his father or his mother after he says, 'Whatever help you would have received from me is Corban.' (Corban means 'Given to God.')" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [father](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [their parents](#)

Mark 7:13

You are making...void (ULT)
you disregard (UST)

canceled or done away with

you do many similar things (ULT)
you do many other things like that (UST)

"you are doing many other things similar to this"

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- word of God
- by...tradition

Translation Words - UST

- God
- what...God...commanded
- own things

ULT

¹³ You are making the [word of God](#) void by your [tradition](#) which you have handed down. And you do many similar things."

UST

¹³ In this way you disregard [what God commanded](#)! You teach your [own things](#) to others and tell them that they should obey them! And you do many other things like that."

Mark 7:14

Connecting Statement:

Jesus tells a parable to the crowd to help them understand what he has been saying to the scribes and Pharisees. (See: [Parables](#))

he called (ULT)

Jesus...summoned...to come closer (UST)

"Jesus called"

Listen to me, all of you, and understand (ULT)

The words "Listen" and "understand" are related. Jesus uses them together to emphasize that his hearers should pay close attention to what he is saying. (See: [Doublet](#))

understand (ULT)

Try to understand what I am about to tell you (UST)

It may be helpful to state what Jesus is telling them to understand. Alternate translation: "try to understand what I am about to tell you" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [he called](#)
- [understand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus...summoned...to come closer](#)
- [Try to understand what I am about to tell you](#)

ULT

¹⁴ Then [he called](#) the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and [understand](#)."

UST

¹⁴ Then [Jesus](#) again [summoned](#) the crowd [to come closer](#). Then he said to them, "All of you people listen to me! [Try to understand what I am about to tell you](#)."

Mark 7:15

nothing...from outside the man (ULT)

Nothing...that people eat (UST)

Jesus is speaking about what a person eats. This is in contrast to "what come out of the person." Alternate translation: "nothing from outside a person that he can eat" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the things that come out of the man (ULT)

that which comes from people's inner beings (UST)

This refers to the things a person does or says. This is in contrast to "what is outside a person that enters into him." Alternate translation: "It is what comes out of a person that he says or does" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- defile
- that defile

Translation Words - UST

- causes God to consider them to be defiled
- that causes God to consider them to be defiled

ULT

¹⁵ There is nothing from outside the man that can [defile](#) him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things [that defile](#) the man."

UST

¹⁵ Nothing that people eat [causes God to consider them to be defiled](#). On the contrary, it is that which comes from people's inner beings [that causes God to consider them to be defiled](#)."

Mark 7:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

16^[1] [If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.]

UST

16^[1] [Every one of you should think carefully about what you heard me say.]

Mark 7:17

Connecting Statement:

The disciples still do not understand what Jesus has just said to the scribes, Pharisees, and crowds. Jesus explains his meaning more thoroughly to them.

Now (ULT)

After (UST)

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Jesus is now away from the crowd, in a house with his disciples.

Translation Words - ULT

- [parable](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [the house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [parable that he had just spoken](#)
- [apprentices. They](#)
- [a house](#)

ULT

17 Now when Jesus left the crowd and entered into [the house](#), his [disciples](#) asked him about the [parable](#).

UST

17 After Jesus had left the crowd, he entered [a house](#) with his [apprentices](#). [They](#) questioned him about the [parable that he had just spoken](#).

Mark 7:18

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to teach his disciples by asking a question.

Are you also so without understanding (ULT) **Did you not understand what it means (UST)**

Jesus uses this question to express his disappointment that they do not understand. This can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "After all I have said and done, I would expect you to understand." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [without understanding](#)
- [to defile](#)
- [Do you...see](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Did you not understand what it means](#)
- [God to consider...unacceptable to him](#)
- [You ought to understand](#)

ULT

18 He said to them, "Are you also so [without understanding](#)? [Do you](#) not [see](#) that everything that enters into the man from outside is not able [to defile](#) him,

UST

18 He replied to them, "[Did you not understand what it means](#)? [You ought to understand](#) that nothing that enters us from outside can cause [God to consider](#) us [unacceptable to him](#)."

Mark 7:19

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes asking the question he is using to teach his disciples.

because...passes out into the latrine (ULT)
Instead...afterwards the refuse passes out of our bodies (UST)

This is the end of the question that begins with the words “Do you not see” in verse 18. Jesus uses this question to teach his disciples something they should already know. It can be expressed as a statement. “You should already understand that whatever enters into a person from outside cannot defile him, because it cannot go into his heart, but it goes into his stomach and then passes out into the latrine.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

it does not go into his heart (ULT)
Instead...of entering and ruining our minds (UST)

Here “heart” is a metonym for a person’s inner being or mind. Here Jesus means that food does not affect a person’s character. Alternate translation: “it cannot go into his inner being” or “it cannot go into his mind” (See: [Metonymy](#))

it does not go (ULT)
Instead...of entering and ruining (UST)

Here “it” refers to what goes into a person; that is, what a person eats.

Therefore, all foods are clean (ULT)
By saying this, Jesus was declaring that people can eat any food without causing God to consider them unacceptable to him (UST)

It may be helpful to explain clearly what this phrase means. Alternate translation: “all foods clean, meaning that people can eat any food without God considering the eater defiled” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [Therefore...are clean](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [our minds](#)
- [without causing God to consider them unacceptable to him](#)

ULT

¹⁹ because it does not go into his [heart](#), but into his stomach, and then passes out into the latrine?” ([Therefore](#), all foods [are clean](#).)

UST

¹⁹ Instead of entering and ruining [our minds](#), it goes into our stomachs, and afterwards the refuse passes out of our bodies.” By saying this, Jesus was declaring that people can eat any food [without causing God to consider them unacceptable to him](#).

Mark 7:20

he said (ULT)

He...said (UST)

"Jesus said"

That which...comes out of the man, that defiles the man (ULT)

It is the thoughts and actions that come from within people that cause God to consider them unacceptable to him (UST)

"What defiles a person is what comes out of him"

Translation Words - ULT

- [defiles](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [cause God to consider...unacceptable to him](#)

ULT

²⁰ But he said, "That which comes out of the man, that [defiles](#) the man.

UST

²⁰ He also said, "It is the thoughts and actions that come from within people that [cause God to consider](#) them [unacceptable to him](#).

Mark 7:21

out of the heart...proceed evil thoughts (ULT)
innermost being...that causes them to think things
that are evil (UST)

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's inner being or mind.
 Alternate translation: "out of the inner being, come evil thoughts" or
 "out of the mind, come evil thoughts" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [evil](#)
- [sexual immorality](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [innermost being](#)
- [that are evil](#)
- [they act immorally](#)

ULT

²¹ For from within the man, out of the [heart](#), proceed [evil](#) thoughts, [sexual immorality](#), theft, murder,

UST

²¹ Specifically, it is people's [innermost being](#) that causes them to think things [that are evil](#); [they act immorally](#), they steal things, they commit murder.

Mark 7:22

sensuality (ULT)

They act indecently (UST)

not controlling one's lustful desires

Translation Words - ULT

- folly
- adultery
- wickedness
- envy
- slander
- coveting
- pride
- deceit

Translation Words - UST

- and they act foolishly
- They commit adultery
- they act maliciously
- they envy people
- they speak evil about others
- they are greedy
- they are proud
- they deceive people

ULT

²² adultery, coveting, wickedness, deceit, sensuality, envy, slander, pride, folly.

UST

²² They commit adultery, they are greedy, they act maliciously, they deceive people. They act indecently, they envy people, they speak evil about others, they are proud, and they act foolishly.

Mark 7:23

come from within (ULT)

People think these thoughts...and then they do these evil actions (UST)

Here the word "within" describes a person's heart. Alternate translation: "come from within a person's heart" or "come from within a person's thoughts" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [evils](#)
- [they defile](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [People think these thoughts](#)
- [that is what causes God to consider...unacceptable to him](#)

ULT

²³ All these [evils](#) come from within, and [they defile](#) the man."

UST

²³ [People think these thoughts](#) and then they do these evil actions, and [that is what causes God to consider](#) them [unacceptable to him](#)."

Mark 7:24

Connecting Statement:

When Jesus goes away to Tyre, he heals the daughter of a Gentile woman who has extraordinary faith.

Translation Words - ULT

- Sidon
- of Tyre
- he got up
- a house
- to know it

Translation Words - UST

- Sidon
- Tyre
- raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up
- a certain house
- to know it

ULT

²⁴ Then [he got up](#) from there and went away to the region [of Tyre](#) and [Sidon](#). He entered into [a house](#), not wanting anyone [to know it](#), but he could not be hidden.

UST

²⁴ After Jesus and his apprentices left Galilee, they went to the region around the cities of [Tyre](#) and [Sidon](#). While he stayed at [a certain house](#), he did not want anyone [to know it](#), but people soon found out that he was there.

Mark 7:25

had...an unclean spirit (ULT)

had...within her...an evil spirit (UST)

This is an idiom meaning that she was possessed by the unclean spirit. Alternate translation: “was possessed by an unclean spirit” (See: [Idiom](#))

and fell down (ULT)

knelt (UST)

“knelt.” This is an act of honor and submission.

Translation Words - ULT

- [unclean](#)
- [an...spirit](#)
- [an unclean spirit](#)
- [and fell down](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [evil](#)
- [an...spirit](#)
- [an evil spirit](#)
- [knelt](#)

ULT

²⁵ But as soon as a woman whose little daughter had [an unclean spirit](#) heard about him, she came [and fell down](#) at his feet.

UST

²⁵ A certain woman, whose daughter had [an evil spirit](#) within her, heard about Jesus. At once she came to him and [knelt](#) at his feet.

Mark 7:26

Now the woman was a Greek, a Syrophoenician by descent (ULT)

Now this woman was not a Jew. Her ancestors were not Jews. She herself had been born in the area around the region of Phoenicia, in the district of Syria (UST)

The word “Now” marks a break in the main story line, as this sentence gives us background information about the woman. (See: [Background Information](#))

a Syrophoenician (ULT)

She herself had been born in the area around the region of Phoenicia, in the district of Syria (UST)

This is the name of the woman’s nationality. She was born in the Phoenician region in Syria. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [a Greek](#)
- [demon](#)
- [cast out](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [not a Jew...were not Jews](#)
- [evil spirit](#)
- [he force](#)

ULT

²⁶ Now the woman was [a Greek](#), a Syrophoenician by descent. She begged him to [cast out](#) the [demon](#) from her daughter.

UST

²⁶ Now this woman was [not a Jew](#). Her ancestors [were not Jews](#). She herself had been born in the area around the region of Phoenicia, in the district of Syria. She pled with Jesus that [he force](#) the [evil spirit](#) out from her daughter.

Mark 7:27

Let the children first be fed. For it is not right...to throw it to the dogs (ULT)

First let the children eat all they want, because it is not good...throw it to the little dogs (UST)

Here Jesus speaks about the Jews as if they are children and the Gentiles as if they are dogs. Alternate translation: "Let the children of Israel first be fed. For it is not right to take the children's bread and throw it to the Gentiles, who are like dogs" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Let the children first be fed (ULT)

First let the children eat all they want (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "We must first feed the children of Israel" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

bread (ULT)

food (UST)

This refers to food in general. Alternate translation: "food" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

to the dogs (ULT)

to the little dogs (UST)

This refers to small dogs kept as pets.

Translation Words - ULT

- [children](#)
- [children's](#)
- [right](#)
- [bread](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [children](#)
- [children](#)
- [good](#)
- [food](#)

ULT

²⁷ He said to her, "Let the [children](#) first be fed. For it is not [right](#) to take the [children's bread](#) and to throw it to the dogs."

UST

²⁷ He said to the woman, "First let the [children](#) eat all they want, because it is not [good](#) for someone to take the [food](#) the mother has prepared for the [children](#) and then throw it to the little dogs."

Mark 7:28

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- children

Translation Words - UST

- Sir
- children drop

ULT

²⁸ But she answered and said to him, "Yes, [Lord](#), even the dogs under the table eat from the crumbs of the [children](#)."

UST

²⁸ She replied to him, "[Sir](#), what you say is correct, but even the house dogs, who lie under the table, eat the crumbs that the [children drop](#)."

Mark 7:29

go (ULT)

go home (UST)

Jesus was implying that she no longer needed to stay to ask him to help her daughter. He would do it. Alternate translation: “you may go now” or “you may go home in peace” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

The demon has gone out of your daughter (ULT)

Jesus has caused the unclean spirit to leave the woman’s daughter. This can be expressed clearly. Alternate translation: “I have caused the evil spirit to leave your daughter” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [demon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [evil spirit](#)

ULT

²⁹ Then he said to her, “Because of this word, go! The [demon](#) has gone out of your daughter.”

UST

²⁹ Jesus said to her, “Because of what you have said, go home. I have caused the [evil spirit](#) to leave your daughter.”

Mark 7:30

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [demon](#)
- [child](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [evil spirit](#)
- [child](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

³⁰ She went back to her [house](#) and found the [child](#) lying on the bed, and the [demon](#) was gone.

UST

³⁰ The woman returned to her [house](#) and saw that her [child](#) was lying quietly on the bed and that the [evil spirit](#) had left.

Mark 7:31

Connecting Statement:

After healing people in Tyre, Jesus goes to the Sea of Galilee. There he heals a deaf man, which amazes the people.

he went out again from the region of Tyre (ULT)

"left the region of Tyre"

the region...up into (ULT)

the region around...then toward the east through (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) "in the region" as Jesus is at the sea in the region of the Decapolis or 2) "through the region" as Jesus went through the region of the Decapolis to get to the sea.

of the Decapolis (ULT)

the Ten Towns (UST)

This is the name of a region that means Ten Cities. It is located to the southeast of the Sea of Galilee. See how you translated this in [Mark 5:20](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Sidon](#)
- [of Galilee](#)
- [Sea of Galilee](#)
- [of Tyre](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Sidon](#)
- [of Galilee](#)
- [Sea of Galilee](#)
- [Tyre](#)

ULT

³¹ Then he went out again from the region [of Tyre](#), and went through [Sidon](#) to the [Sea of Galilee](#) up into the region of the Decapolis.

UST

³¹ Jesus and his apprentices left the region around [Tyre](#) and went north through [Sidon](#), then toward the east through the area of the Ten Towns, and then south to the towns near the [Sea of Galilee](#).

Mark 7:32

They brought (ULT)
people brought (UST)

“And people brought”

someone who was deaf (ULT)
a man who was deaf (UST)

“who was not able to hear”

they begged him that he would lay his hand on him (ULT)

Prophets and teachers would put their hands on people in order to heal them or bless them. In this case, people are begging Jesus to heal a man. Alternate translation: “they begged Jesus to put his hand on the man to heal him” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [they begged](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [hands](#)
- [They begged](#)

ULT

³² They brought to him someone who was deaf and had difficulty speaking, and [they begged](#) him that he would lay his [hand](#) on him.

UST

³² There, people brought to him a man who was deaf and could not talk. [They begged](#) Jesus to lay his [hands](#) on him in order to heal him.

Mark 7:33

After taking...him...aside (ULT)

Jesus took him away (UST)

“Jesus took the man”

he put his fingers into his ears

Jesus is putting his own fingers in the man’s ears.

his...after spitting, he touched...tongue (ULT)

his...he spat on his fingers, he touched...tongue with his fingers (UST)

Jesus spits and then touches the man’s tongue.

after spitting (ULT)

he spat on his fingers (UST)

It may be helpful to state that Jesus spit on his fingers. Alternate translation: “after spitting on his fingers” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [tongue](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [tongue](#)

ULT

³³ After taking him aside from the crowd by himself, he put his fingers into his ears, and after spitting, he touched his [tongue](#).

UST

³³ So Jesus took him away from the crowd in order that the two of them could be alone. Then he put one of his fingers into each of the man’s ears. After he spat on his fingers, he touched the man’s [tongue](#) with his fingers.

Mark 7:34**he looked up to heaven (ULT)****he looked up toward heaven (UST)**

This means that he looked up toward the sky, which is associated with the place where God lives.

Ephphatha (ULT)**Ephphatha (UST)**

Here the author refers to something by an Aramaic word. This word should be copied as is into your language using your alphabet. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

with a deep sigh (ULT)**he sighed (UST)**

This means that he groaned or that he let out a long deep breath that could be heard. It probably shows Jesus' sympathy for the man.

said to him (ULT)**in his own language he said to the man's ears (UST)**

"said to the man"

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [with a deep sigh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven](#)
- [he sighed](#)

ULT

³⁴ Then he looked up to [heaven with a deep sigh](#), and said to him, "Ephphatha!" (that is, "Be opened!").

UST

³⁴ Then he looked up toward [heaven](#), [he sighed](#) and then in his own language he said to the man's ears, "Ephphatha," which means, "Be opened!"

Mark 7:35

his ears were opened (ULT)
the man could hear plainly (UST)

This means he was able to hear. Alternate translation: "his ears were opened and he was able to hear" or "he was able to hear"

the band of his tongue was released (ULT)
what was causing him to be unable to speak was healed (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Jesus took away what prevented his tongue from speaking" or "Jesus loosened his tongue" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [band](#)
- [of...tongue](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [what was causing him to be unable to speak](#)
- [what was causing him to be unable to speak](#)

ULT

³⁵ And his ears were opened, and the [band](#) of his [tongue](#) was released, and he began speaking plainly.

UST

³⁵ At once the man could hear plainly. He also began to speak clearly because [what was causing him to be unable to speak](#) was healed.

Mark 7:36

the more...he ordered them (ULT)

The refers to him ordering them not to tell anyone about what he had done. Alternate translation: "the more he ordered them not to tell anyone" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

the more abundantly (ULT) all the more (UST)

"the more widely" or "the more"

Translation Words - ULT

- [they proclaimed it](#)
- [Jesus ordered](#)
- [ordered](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [they kept talking about it](#)
- [Jesus told](#)
- [he ordered...repeatedly not to tell anyone about it](#)

ULT

³⁶ [Jesus ordered](#) them to tell no one. But the more he [ordered](#) them, the more abundantly [they proclaimed it](#).

UST

³⁶ [Jesus told](#) the people not to tell anyone what he had done. But, although [he ordered](#) them and others [repeatedly not to tell anyone about it](#), [they kept talking about it](#) all the more.

Mark 7:37

They were...extremely...astonished (ULT)

People who heard about it were utterly amazed (UST)

“were utterly amazed” or “were exceedingly astonished” or “were astonished beyond all measure”

the deaf...the mute (ULT)

deaf people...he enables those who cannot speak (UST)

These refer to people. Alternate translation: “deaf people...mute people” or “people who cannot hear...people who cannot speak” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [well](#)
- [They were...astonished](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [is wonderful](#)
- [People who heard about it were...amazed](#)

ULT

³⁷ [They were](#) extremely [astonished](#), saying, “He has done all things [well](#). He even makes the deaf hear and the mute speak.”

7:16 ^[1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16.

UST

³⁷ [People who heard about it were](#) utterly [amazed](#) and were saying, “Everything he has done [is wonderful](#)! Besides doing other amazing things, he enables deaf people to hear! And he enables those who cannot speak to speak!”

7:16 ^[1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16.

Mark 8

Mark 8 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Bread

When Jesus worked a miracle and provided bread for a large crowd of people, they probably thought about when God miraculously provided food for the people of Israel when they were in the wilderness.

Yeast is the ingredient that causes bread to become larger before it is baked. In this chapter, Jesus uses yeast as a metaphor for things that change the way people think, speak, and act. (See: [Metaphor](#))

“Adulterous generation”

When Jesus called the people an “adulterous generation,” he was telling them that they were not faithful to God. (See: [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [unfaithful](#), [unfaithfulness](#), [trustworthy](#) and [people of God](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Rhetorical Questions

Jesus used many rhetorical questions as a way of both teaching the disciples ([Mark 8:17-21](#)) and scolding the people (Mark 8:12). (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. Jesus uses a paradox when he says, “Whoever wants to save his life will lose it, and whoever loses his life for my sake will find it” ([Mark 8:35-37](#)).

Mark 8:1

Connecting Statement:

A great, hungry crowd is with Jesus. He feeds them using only seven loaves and a few fish before Jesus and his disciples get in a boat to go to another place.

In those days (ULT)

During those days (UST)

This phrase is used to introduce a new event in the story. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus called
- disciples
- days

Translation Words - UST

- So Jesus called...to come close to him
- apprentices
- days

ULT

¹ In those [days](#), there was again a great crowd, and they did not have anything to eat. [Jesus called](#) his [disciples](#) and said to them,

UST

¹ During those [days](#), a large crowd of people gathered again. After they had been there for two days, they had no food to eat. [So Jesus called](#) his [apprentices to come close to him](#), and then he said to them,

Mark 8:2

they continue to be with me already for three days and do not have anything to eat (ULT)

“this is this third day these people have been with me, and they have nothing to eat”

Translation Words - ULT

- I have compassion
- for...days

Translation Words - UST

- so now I am very concerned
- the...day

ULT

² “[I have compassion](#) on the crowd, because they continue to be with me already for three [days](#) and do not have anything to eat.

UST

² “This is the third [day](#) that these people have been with me, and they have nothing left to eat, [so now I am very concerned](#) for them.

Mark 8:3

they may faint (ULT)

some of them will faint (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) literal, "they may lose consciousness temporarily" or 2) hyperbolic exaggeration, "they may become weak." (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [home](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [home](#)

ULT

³ If I send them away to their [home](#) without eating, they may faint on the way, and some of them have come from far way."

UST

³ If I send them [home](#) while they are still hungry, some of them will faint on the way home. Some of them have come from far away."

Mark 8:4

Where can anyone get enough bread to satisfy these people here in this deserted place (ULT)

The disciples are expressing surprise that Jesus would expect them to be able to find enough food. Alternate translation: "This place is so deserted that there is no place here for us to get enough loaves of bread to satisfy these people!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

enough bread (ULT) food (UST)

Loaves of bread are lumps of dough that have been shaped and baked.

Translation Words - ULT

- [can...get](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [this deserted place](#)
- [enough bread](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [possibly](#)
- [apprentices](#)
- [No one lives in this place](#)
- [food](#)

ULT

⁴ His [disciples](#) answered him, "Where can anyone [get enough bread](#) to satisfy these people here in [this deserted place](#)?"

UST

⁴ His [apprentices](#) knew that he was suggesting that they give the people something to eat, so one of them replied, "We cannot [possibly](#) find [food](#) to satisfy this crowd. [No one lives in this place](#)!"

Mark 8:5

he asked them (ULT)

Jesus asked them (UST)

"Jesus asked his disciples"

Translation Words - ULT

- [loaves](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [loaves of bread](#)

ULT

⁵ So he asked them, "How many [loaves](#) do you have?" They said, "Seven."

UST

⁵ Jesus asked them, "How many [loaves of bread](#) do you have?" They replied, "We have seven flat loaves."

Mark 8:6

he commanded the crowd to recline on the ground (ULT)

Jesus commanded the crowd, "Sit down on the ground (UST)

This can be written as a direct quote. "Jesus commanded the crowd, 'Sit down on the ground'" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

to recline (ULT)

Sit down (UST)

Use your language's word for how people customarily eat when there is no table, whether sitting or lying down.

Translation Words - ULT

- [he commanded](#)
- [to...disciples](#)
- [loaves](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus commanded](#)
- [to...apprentices](#)
- [loaves](#)

ULT

⁶ Then [he commanded](#) the crowd to recline on the ground. He took the seven [loaves](#), gave thanks, and broke them. He gave them to his [disciples](#) so that they might serve them, so they served the crowd.

UST

⁶ [Jesus commanded](#) the crowd, "Sit down on the ground!" After they sat down, he took the seven [loaves](#), thanked God for them, broke them into pieces, and gave them to his [apprentices](#) to distribute to the people.

Mark 8:7

They also had (ULT)

They had also found that they had (UST)

Here the word "they" is used to refer to Jesus and his disciples.

after he gave thanks for them (ULT)

after he thanked God for these (UST)

"Jesus gave thanks for the fish"

Translation Words - ULT

- [after he gave thanks](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [after he thanked God](#)

ULT

⁷ They also had a few small fish, and [after he gave thanks](#) for them, he told them to serve these as well.

UST

⁷ They had also found that they had a few small fish. So [after he thanked God](#) for these, he told his apprentices, "Distribute these also." After they distributed the fish to the crowd,

Mark 8:8

They ate (ULT)

the people ate this food (UST)

“The people ate”

they picked up (ULT)

His apprentices collected...and filled (UST)

“the disciples picked up”

seven baskets of the remaining broken pieces (ULT)

the pieces of food that were left over...seven large baskets (UST)

This refers to the broken pieces of fish and bread that were left over after the people ate. Alternate translation: “the remaining broken pieces of bread and fish, which filled seven large baskets” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [baskets](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [large baskets](#)

ULT

⁸ They ate and were satisfied, and they picked up seven [baskets](#) of the remaining broken pieces.

UST

⁸ the people ate this food, and they had plenty to satisfy themselves. His apprentices collected the pieces of food that were left over and filled seven [large baskets](#).

Mark 8:9

Then he sent them away (ULT)

Then Jesus dismissed the crowd (UST)

It may be helpful to clarify when he sent them away. Alternate translation: "After they ate, Jesus sent them away" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

⁹ There were about four thousand people. Then he sent them away.

UST

⁹ His apprentices estimated that there were about four thousand people who ate on that day. Then Jesus dismissed the crowd.

Mark 8:10

and they went into the region of Dalmanutha (ULT)
and they went around the Galilee lake to the district of Dalmanutha (UST)

It may be helpful to clarify how they got to Dalmanutha. Alternate translation: “they sailed around the Sea of Galilee to the region of Dalmanutha” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

of Dalmanutha (ULT)
of Dalmanutha (UST)

This is the name of a place on the northwestern shore of the Sea of Galilee. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [apprentices](#)

ULT

¹⁰ Immediately he got into the boat with his [disciples](#), and they went into the region of Dalmanutha.

UST

¹⁰ Immediately after that, he got into the boat along with his [apprentices](#), and they went around the Galilee lake to the district of Dalmanutha.

Mark 8:11

Connecting Statement:

In Dalmanutha, Jesus refuses to give the Pharisees a sign before he and his disciples get in a boat and leave.

They sought from him (ULT)

"They asked him for"

a sign from heaven (ULT)

a miracle (UST)

They wanted a sign that would prove that Jesus' power and authority were from God. Possible meanings are 1) The word "heaven" is a metonym for God. Alternate translation: "a sign from God" or 2) the word "heaven" refers to the sky. Alternate translation: "a sign from the sky" (See: [Metonymy](#))

to test him (ULT)

to show that God had sent him (UST)

The Pharisees tried to test Jesus to make him prove that he was from God. Some information can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "to prove that God had sent him" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [a sign](#)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [to test](#)
- [They sought](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [a miracle](#)
- [a miracle](#)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [to show that God had sent](#)
- [and insisting that...perform](#)

ULT

¹¹ Then the [Pharisees](#) came out and began to argue with him. [They sought](#) from him [a sign](#) from [heaven](#), [to test](#) him.

UST

¹¹ Then some [Pharisees](#) came to Jesus. They began arguing with him [and insisting that](#) he [perform a miracle to show that God had sent](#) him.

Mark 8:12

He sighed deeply...in his spirit (ULT)

Jesus sighed deeply within himself (UST)

This means that he groaned or that he let out a long deep breath that could be heard. It probably shows Jesus' deep sadness that the Pharisees refused to believe him. See how you translated this in [Mark 7:34](#).

in his spirit (ULT)

within himself (UST)

"in himself"

Why does this generation seek for a sign (ULT)

Jesus is scolding them. This question may be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "This generation should not seek a sign." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

this generation (ULT)

When Jesus speaks of "this generation," he is referring to the people who lived at that time. There Pharisees are included in this group. Alternate translation: "you and the people of this generation" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

no...will be given...sign (ULT)

will not do...a miracle (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will not give a sign" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a sign
- sign (2)
- Truly
- in...spirit
- seek for
- generation
- to...generation
- He sighed deeply

Translation Words - UST

- a miracle
- a miracle (2)
- amen, truly
- within himself
- are you asking me to perform
- generation
- I...for you
- Jesus sighed deeply

ULT

¹² [He sighed deeply](#) in his [spirit](#) and said, "Why does this [generation seek for a sign](#)? [Truly](#) I say to you, no [sign](#) will be given to this [generation](#)."

UST

¹² [Jesus sighed deeply within himself](#), and then he said, "Why [are you asking me to perform a miracle](#)? I will not do [a miracle for you](#)!"

Mark 8:13

he left them, got into a boat again (ULT)

he left them. He got into the boat again, along with his apprentices (UST)

Jesus' disciples went with him. Some information can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "he left them, got into a boat again with his disciples" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

to the other side (ULT)

further around the Galilee lake (UST)

This describes the Sea of Galilee, which can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "to the other side of the sea" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

13 Then he left them, got into a boat again, and went away to the other side.

UST

13 Then he left them. He got into the boat again, along with his apprentices, and they went further around the Galilee lake.

Mark 8:14

Connecting Statement:

While Jesus and his disciples are in a boat, they have a discussion about the lack of understanding among the Pharisees and Herod, though they had seen many signs.

Now (ULT)

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the author tells background information about the disciples forgetting to bring bread. (See: [Background Information](#))

except for one loaf (ULT)

only one flat loaf of bread (UST)

The negative phrase “no more” is used to emphasize how small an amount of bread they had. Alternate translation: “only one loaf” (See: [Litotes](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bread](#)
- [loaf](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [enough food](#)
- [flat loaf of bread](#)

ULT

14 Now they had forgotten to bring [bread](#), and except for one [loaf](#), they did not have any with them in the boat.

UST

14 His apprentices had forgotten to bring along [enough food](#). Specifically, they had only one [flat loaf of bread](#) with them in the boat.

Mark 8:15

Keep watch and be on guard (ULT)

Be careful! Beware (UST)

These two terms have a common meaning and are repeated here for emphasis. They can be combined. Alternate translation: "Keep watch" (See: [Doublet](#))

the yeast of the Pharisees and the yeast of Herod (ULT)

Here Jesus is speaking to his disciples in a metaphor they do not understand. Jesus is comparing the Pharisees' and Herod's teachings to yeast, but you should not explain this when you translate it because the disciples themselves did not understand it. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Pharisees](#)
- [of Herod](#)
- [yeast](#)
- [yeast \(2\)](#)
- [Jesus warned](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Pharisees](#)
- [of Herod](#)
- [yeast](#)
- [yeast, leaven, unleavened \(2\)](#)
- [Jesus warned](#)

ULT

¹⁵ Then [Jesus warned](#) them, saying, "Keep watch and be on guard against the [yeast](#) of the [Pharisees](#) and the [yeast of Herod](#)."

UST

¹⁵ As they were going, [Jesus warned](#) them and said, "Be careful! Beware of the [yeast](#) of the [Pharisees](#) and [of Herod](#)!"

Mark 8:16

It is because we do not have bread (ULT)
He must have said that because we have no bread (UST)

In this statement, it may be helpful to state that "it" refers to what Jesus had said. Alternate translation: "He must have said that because we have no bread" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

we do not have bread (ULT)
we have no bread (UST)

The word "no" is an exaggeration. The disciples did have one loaf of bread ([Mark 8:14](#)), but that was not much different from having no bread at all. Alternate translation: "very little bread" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bread](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bread](#)

ULT

16 So the disciples reasoned with each other, "It is because we do not have [bread](#)."

UST

16 The apprentices misunderstood him. So they said to one another, "He must have said that because we have no [bread](#)."

Mark 8:17

Why are you reasoning that you do not have bread (ULT)

Why are you talking about not having enough bread (UST)

Here Jesus is mildly rebuking his disciples because they should have understood what he had been talking about. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not be thinking that I am talking about actual bread." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Do you not yet perceive, nor understand (ULT)
You should understand what I have said by now (UST)

These questions have the same meaning and are used together to emphasize that they do not understand. This can be written as one question or as a statement. Alternate translation: "Do you not yet understand?" or "You should perceive and understand by now the things I say and do." (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

Have your hearts become hardened (ULT)
You are not thinking (UST)

Here "hearts" is a metonym for a person's mind. The phrase "hearts become so dull" is a metaphor for not being able or willing to understand something. Jesus uses a question to scold the disciples. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Your thinking has become so dull!" or "You are so slow to understand what I mean!" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- hearts
- bread
- Do you...perceive
- understand
- become hardened
- being aware of this

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus...he
- You are not thinking
- enough bread
- You should understand what I have said by now
- You should understand what I have said by now
- You are not thinking
- knew what they were discussing among themselves. So

ULT

¹⁷ And [being aware of this](#), [Jesus](#) said to them, "Why are you reasoning that you do not have [bread](#)? [Do you](#) not yet [perceive](#), nor [understand](#)? Have your [hearts become hardened](#)?"

UST

¹⁷ [Jesus knew what they were discussing among themselves. So he](#) said to them, "Why are you talking about not having [enough bread](#)? [You should understand what I have said by now!](#) [You are not thinking!](#)"

Mark 8:18

Having eyes, do you not see? And having ears, do you not hear? And do you not remember (ULT)

Jesus continues to mildly rebuke his disciples. These questions can be written as statements. Alternate translation: "You have eyes, but you do not understand what you see. You have ears, but you do not understand what you hear. You should remember." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

¹⁸ Having eyes, do you not see? And having ears, do you not hear? And do you not remember?

UST

¹⁸ You have eyes, but you do not understand what you see! You have ears, but you do not understand what I say!" Then he asked, "Do you not remember what happened

Mark 8:19

the five thousand (ULT)

the five thousand people? Not only was everyone satisfied, but there was food left over (UST)

This refers to the 5,000 people Jesus fed. Alternate translation: “the 5,000 people” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Numbers](#))

how many baskets full of broken pieces did you take up (ULT)

It may be helpful to state when they collected the baskets of pieces. Alternate translation: “how many baskets full of broken pieces of bread did you collect after everyone finished eating” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [loaves](#)
- [baskets](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [loaves](#)
- [baskets](#)

ULT

¹⁹ When I broke the five [loaves](#) among the five thousand, how many [baskets](#) full of broken pieces did you take up?” They said to him, “Twelve.”

UST

¹⁹ when I broke only five [loaves](#) and fed the five thousand people? Not only was everyone satisfied, but there was food left over! How many [baskets](#) of pieces of bread that were left over did you collect?” They replied, “We collected twelve baskets full.”

Mark 8:20

the four thousand (ULT)
the four thousand people, again when everyone had plenty to eat (UST)

This refers to the 4,000 people Jesus fed. Alternate translation: "the 4,000 people" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Numbers](#))

how many basketfuls of broken pieces did you take up (ULT)
how many large baskets of pieces of bread that were left over did you collect (UST)

It may be helpful to state when they collected these. Alternate translation: "how many baskets full of broken pieces of bread did you collect after everyone finished eating" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [basketfuls](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [large baskets](#)

ULT

²⁰ "When I broke the seven loaves among the four thousand, how many [basketfuls](#) of broken pieces did you take up?" They said to him, "Seven."

UST

²⁰ Then he asked, "When I broke the seven loaves in order to feed the four thousand people, again when everyone had plenty to eat, how many [large baskets](#) of pieces of bread that were left over did you collect?" They replied, "We collected seven large baskets full."

Mark 8:21

How do you not yet understand (ULT)

I am disappointed that you do not understand yet that you should never worry that you do not have enough food (UST)

Jesus is mildly rebuking his disciples for not understanding. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should understand by now the things I say and do." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [you...understand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [I am disappointed that you do not understand yet that you should never worry that you do not have enough food](#)

ULT

²¹ Then he said to them, "How do you not yet [understand?](#)"

UST

²¹ Then he said to them, "[I am disappointed that you do not understand yet that you should never worry that you do not have enough food!](#)"

Mark 8:22

Connecting Statement:

When Jesus and his disciples get out of their boat at Bethsaida, Jesus heals a blind man.

Bethsaida (ULT)

Bethsaida town (UST)

This is a town on the northern shore of the Sea of Galilee. See how you translated the name of this town in [Mark 6:45](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

that he would touch him (ULT)

It may be helpful to state why they wanted Jesus to touch the man. Alternate translation: “to touch him in order to heal him” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [begged](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [begged](#)

ULT

²² Then they came to Bethsaida. People brought to him a blind man and [begged](#) him that he would touch him.

UST

²² They arrived in the boat at Bethsaida town. People brought a blind man to Jesus and [begged](#) him touch the man in order to heal him.

Mark 8:23

**When he had spit...on his eyes...asking him (ULT)
he spat into the man's eyes...and then asked him (UST)**

"When Jesus had spit on the man's eyes...Jesus asked the man"

Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [hands](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)
- [hands](#)

ULT

²³ Taking hold of the [hand](#) of the blind man, Jesus led him out of the village. When he had spit on his eyes, he laid his [hands](#) on him, asking him, "Do you see anything?"

UST

²³ Jesus took the [hand](#) of the blind man and led him outside the town. Then he spat into the man's eyes, he put his [hands](#) on the man and then asked him, "Do you see anything?"

Mark 8:24

He looked up (ULT)

The man looked up (UST)

“The man looked up”

I see men who look like walking trees (ULT)

The man sees men walking around, yet they are not clear to him, so he compares them to trees. Alternate translation: “Yes, I see people! They are walking around, but I cannot see them clearly. They look like trees” (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [walking](#)
- [like](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [They are walking around](#)
- [like](#)

ULT

²⁴ He looked up, and said, “I see men who look [like walking](#) trees.”

UST

²⁴ The man looked up and then he said, “Yes, I see people! [They are walking around](#), but I cannot see them clearly. They look [like](#) trees!”

Mark 8:25

Then he again laid (ULT)

Then Jesus again touched (UST)

“Then Jesus again”

and the man looked intently and was restored (ULT)

The phrase “his sight was restored” can be written in active form.
Alternate translation: “restoring the man’s sight, and then the man opened his eyes” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [hands](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus...touched](#)

ULT

²⁵ Then he again laid his [hands](#) upon his eyes, and the man looked intently and was restored, and he saw everything clearly.

UST

²⁵ Then [Jesus](#) again [touched](#) the eyes of the blind man. The man looked intently, and at that moment he was completely healed! He could see everything clearly.

Mark 8:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus sent...away](#)
- [home](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [he sent](#)
- [home](#)

ULT

²⁶ Then [Jesus sent](#) him [away](#) to his [home](#), saying, "Do not enter into the town."

UST

²⁶ Jesus said to him, "Do not go into the town!" Then [he sent](#) the man to his [home](#).

Mark 8:27

Connecting Statement:

Jesus and his disciples talk on their way to the villages of Caesarea Philippi about who Jesus is and what will happen to him.

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- disciples
- disciples
- of Caesarea

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- apprentices
- them
- Caesarea...town

ULT

²⁷ Then [Jesus](#) and his [disciples](#) went out into the villages [of Caesarea](#) Philippi. On the way he asked his [disciples](#) saying to them, "Who do the people say that I am?"

UST

²⁷ [Jesus](#) and his [apprentices](#) left Bethsaida town and went to the villages near [Caesarea](#) Philippi [town](#). On the way he questioned [them](#), "Who do people say that I am?"

Mark 8:28

They answered him, saying (ULT)

"They answered him, saying,"

John...the Baptist (ULT)

you are John the Baptizer (UST)

The disciples answer that this was who some people said Jesus was. This can be shown more clearly. Alternate translation: "Some people say that you are John the Baptist" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Others say...Others say (ULT)

Others say that you are...Others say that you are (UST)

The word "others" refers to other people. This refers to their responses to Jesus' question. Alternate translation: "Other people say you are...other people say you are" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [prophets](#)
- [John...the Baptist](#)
- [Elijah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [other former prophets](#)
- [you are John the Baptizer](#)
- [the prophet Elijah](#)

ULT

²⁸ They answered him, saying, "[John the Baptist](#). Others say, '[Elijah](#),' and others, 'One of the [prophets](#).'"

UST

²⁸ They replied, "Some people say that [you are John the Baptizer](#). Others say that you are [the prophet Elijah](#). And others say that you are one of the [other former prophets](#)."

Mark 8:29

He...asked them (ULT)

He asked them (UST)

"Jesus asked his disciples"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Christ](#)
- [Peter](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Messiah](#)
- [Peter](#)

ULT

²⁹ He asked them, "But who do you say that I am?" [Peter](#) answered and said to him, "You are the [Christ](#)."

UST

²⁹ He asked them, "What about you? Who do you say that I am?" [Peter](#) replied to him, "We believe that you are the [Messiah](#)!"

Mark 8:30

Jesus warned them that they should tell no one about him (ULT)

Jesus warned them strongly that they should not tell anyone yet that he was the Messiah (UST)

Jesus did not want them to tell anyone that he was the Christ. This can be made more explicit. Also, this can also be written as a direct quote. Alternate translation: "Jesus warned them not to tell anyone that he is the Christ" or "Jesus warned them, 'Do not tell anyone that I am the Christ'" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

ULT

³⁰ Then Jesus warned them that they should tell no one about him.

UST

³⁰ Then Jesus warned them strongly that they should not tell anyone yet that he was the Messiah.

Mark 8:31

the Son of Man (ULT)

he, the Son of Man (UST)

This is an important title for Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

be rejected by the elders...and rise up after three days (ULT)

He would be rejected by the elders...But on the third day after he died, he would become alive again (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that the elders and the chief priests and the scribes would reject him, and that men would kill him, and that after three days he would rise up" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- scribes
- Son of Man
- chief priests
- to teach
- elders
- rise up
- suffer
- be rejected
- days

Translation Words - UST

- men who teach the Jewish laws
- Son of Man
- chief priests
- to teach
- elders
- he would become alive again
- suffer
- He would be rejected
- the...day after he died

ULT

³¹ Then he began [to teach](#) them that the [Son of Man](#) must [suffer](#) many things, and [be rejected](#) by the [elders](#) and the [chief priests](#) and the [scribes](#), and be killed, and [rise up](#) after three [days](#).

UST

³¹ Then Jesus began [to teach](#) them that he, the [Son of Man](#), would certainly [suffer](#) very much. [He would be rejected](#) by the [elders](#), the [chief priests](#), and the [men who teach the Jewish laws](#). He would even be killed. But on the third [day after he died](#), [he would become alive again](#).

Mark 8:32

He spoke this message...clearly (ULT)

He said this to them clearly (UST)

“He said this in a way that was easy to understand”

and began to rebuke him (ULT)

and started to scold him for talking this way (UST)

Peter rebuked Jesus for saying the things he said would happen to the Son of Man. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation:

“began to rebuke him for saying these things” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Peter](#)
- [to rebuke](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Peter](#)
- [to scold...for talking this way](#)

ULT

³² He spoke this message clearly. Then [Peter](#) took him aside and began [to rebuke](#) him.

UST

³² He said this to them clearly. But [Peter](#) took Jesus aside and started [to scold](#) him [for talking this way](#).

Mark 8:33

Connecting Statement:

After rebuking Peter for his not wanting Jesus to die and rise, Jesus tells both his disciples and the crowd how to follow him.

Get behind me, Satan! For you are not setting your mind (ULT)

Jesus means that Peter is acting like Satan because Peter is trying to prevent Jesus from accomplishing what God sent him to do.

Alternate translation: "Get behind me, because you are acting like Satan! You are not setting" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Get behind me (ULT)

Stop thinking like that (UST)

"Get away from me"

Translation Words - ULT

- of God
- disciples
- Satan
- Peter
- turned
- you are...setting your mind
- and rebuked

Translation Words - UST

- what God wants me to do
- at...apprentices
- Satan is causing you to talk like that
- Peter
- turned around
- wanting...you are wanting me to do
- Then he rebuked

ULT

33 But Jesus [turned](#) and looked at his [disciples and rebuked Peter](#) and said, "Get behind me, [Satan](#)! For [you are](#) not [setting your mind](#) on the things [of God](#), but on the things of men."

UST

33 Jesus [turned around](#) and looked at his [apprentices](#). [Then he rebuked Peter](#), saying, "Stop thinking like that! [Satan is causing you to talk like that](#)! Instead of [wanting what God wants me to do](#), [you are wanting me to do](#) only what people would want me to do."

Mark 8:34

to follow after me (ULT)

to be my apprentice (UST)

Following Jesus here represents being one of his disciples. Alternate translation: “be my disciple” or “be one of my disciples” (See: [Metaphor](#))

he must deny himself (ULT)

you must not do only what makes you live easily (UST)

“must not give in to his own desires” or “must forsake his own desires”

take up...his cross, and follow me (ULT)

You must be willing to suffer pain like criminals who are forced to carry crosses to the places where they will be crucified. That is what anyone who wants to be my apprentice must do (UST)

“carry his cross and follow me.” The cross represents suffering and death. Taking up the cross represents being willing to suffer and die.

Alternate translation: “must obey me even to the point of suffering and dying” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

follow me (ULT)

That is what anyone who wants to be my apprentice must do (UST)

Following Jesus here represents obeying him. Alternate translation: “obey me” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [he called](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [cross](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [he called...together...so that they might listen to him](#)
- [apprentices](#)
- [You must be willing to suffer pain like criminals who are forced to carry crosses to the places where they will be crucified](#)

ULT

³⁴ Then [he called](#) the crowd along with his [disciples](#), and he said to them, “If anyone wants to follow after me, he must deny himself, take up his [cross](#), and follow me.

UST

³⁴ Then [he called](#) the crowd [together](#) along with his [apprentices so that they might listen to him](#). He told them, “If any one of you wants to be my apprentice, you must not do only what makes you live easily. [You must be willing to suffer pain like criminals who are forced to carry crosses to the places where they will be crucified](#). That is what anyone who wants to be my apprentice must do.

Mark 8:35

For whoever wants (ULT)

"For anyone who wants"

soul (ULT)

lives (UST)

This refers to both physical life and spiritual life.

for my sake and for the gospel (ULT)
because they are my apprentices and because they tell
others the good news (UST)

"because of me and because of the gospel." Jesus is talking about people who lose their lives because they follow Jesus and the gospel. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "because he follows me and tells others the gospel" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- to save
- will save
- soul
- soul (2)
- will lose
- loses (2)
- gospel

Translation Words - UST

- to save...by denying that they belong to me
- will live forever with me
- lives
- are killed (2)
- will lose
- are killed (2)
- because they tell others the good news

ULT

³⁵ For whoever wants [to save](#) his [soul](#) [will lose](#) it, but whoever [loses](#) his [soul](#) for my sake and for the [gospel](#), [will save](#) it.

UST

³⁵ You must do that, because those who try [to save](#) their [lives by denying that they belong to me](#) [will lose](#) their lives. Those who [are killed](#) because they are my apprentices and [because they tell others the good news](#) [will live forever with me](#).

Mark 8:36

For what does it profit a man to gain the whole world and to forfeit his soul (ULT)

People might get everything they want in this world, but they are really gaining nothing if they do not gain eternal life (UST)

This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Even if a person gains the whole world, it will not benefit him if he forfeits his life." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

to gain the whole world and to forfeit his soul (ULT)
might get everything they want in this world...if they do not gain eternal life (UST)

This can also be expressed as a condition starting with the word "if." Alternate translation: "if he gains the whole world and then forfeits his life"

to gain the whole world (ULT)
might get everything they want in this world (UST)

The words "the whole world" are an exaggeration for great riches. Alternate translation: "to gain everything he ever wanted" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

to forfeit (ULT)
they do not gain (UST)

To forfeit something is to lose it or to have another person take it away.

Translation Words - ULT

- [world](#)
- [soul](#)
- [does it profit](#)
- [to gain](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [world](#)
- [eternal life](#)
- [they are really gaining](#)
- [might get](#)

ULT

³⁶ For what [does it profit](#) a man [to gain](#) the whole [world](#) and to forfeit his [soul](#)?

UST

³⁶ People [might get](#) everything they want in this [world](#), but [they are really gaining](#) nothing if they do not gain [eternal life](#)!

Mark 8:37

**For what can a man give in exchange for his soul (ULT)
Think carefully about the fact that there is absolutely
nothing that people can give to God that would enable
them to gain eternal life (UST)**

This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "There is nothing a person can give in exchange for his life." or "No one can give anything in exchange for his life." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**what...can a man give (ULT)
there is absolutely nothing that...people can give to
God (UST)**

If in your language "giving" requires someone to receive what is given, "God" can be stated as the receiver.
Alternate translation: "What can a person give to God"

Translation Words - ULT

- [soul](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [eternal life](#)

ULT

37 For what can a man give in exchange for his [soul](#)?

UST

37 Think carefully about the fact that there is absolutely nothing that people can give to God that would enable them to gain [eternal life](#)!

Mark 8:38

is ashamed of me and my words (ULT)
refuse to say that they belong to me, and who reject what I say (UST)

“ashamed of me and my message”

in this adulterous and sinful generation (ULT)
in these days when many people have turned away from God and are very sinful (UST)

Jesus speaks of this generation as “adulterous,” meaning that they are unfaithful in their relationship with God. Alternate translation: “in this generation of people who have committed adultery against God and are very sinful” or “in this generation of people who are unfaithful to God and are very sinful” (See: [Metaphor](#))

the Son of Man (ULT)
I, the Son of Man (UST)

This is an important title for Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

when he comes (ULT)
when I come back (UST)

“when he comes back”

in...generation...of Man...glory...of...his...Father (ULT)
in...days...of Man...glory...my Father (UST)

When Jesus returns he will have the same glory as his Father.

with the holy angels

“accompanied by the holy angels”

Translation Words - ULT

- [sinful](#)
- [angels](#)
- [holy](#)
- [glory](#)
- [of...Father](#)
- [Son of Man](#)
- [adulterous](#)
- [is ashamed](#)
- [will...be ashamed](#)
- [generation](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [are very sinful](#)

ULT

³⁸ For if anyone [is ashamed](#) of me and my words in this [adulterous](#) and [sinful generation](#), the [Son of Man](#) will also [be ashamed](#) of him when he comes in the [glory](#) of his [Father](#) with the [holy angels](#).”

UST

³⁸ And think about this: Those who [refuse to say that they belong](#) to me, and who reject what I say in these [days when many people have turned away from God](#) and [are very sinful](#), I, the [Son of Man](#), [will also refuse to say that](#) they [belong to me](#) when I come back with the [holy angels](#) and have the [glory](#) that my [Father](#) has!”

- angels
- holy
- glory
- Father
- Son of Man
- when many people have turned away from God
- refuse to say that they belong
- will also refuse to say that...belong to me
- days

Mark 9

Mark 9 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

“transfigured”

Scripture often speaks of God’s glory as a great, brilliant light. When people see this light, they are afraid. Mark says in this chapter that Jesus’ clothing shone with this glorious light so that his followers could see that Jesus truly was God’s Son. At the same time, God told them that Jesus was his Son. (See: [glory](#), [glorious](#), [glorify](#) and [fear](#), [afraid](#), [dread](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Hyperbole

Jesus said things that he did not expect his followers to understand literally. When he said, “If your hand causes you to stumble, cut it off” (Mark 9:43), he was exaggerating so they would know that they should stay away from anything that caused them to sin, even if it was something they loved or thought they needed.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Elijah and Moses

Elijah and Moses suddenly appear to Jesus, James, John, and Peter, and then they disappear. All four of them saw Elijah and Moses, and because Elijah and Moses spoke with Jesus, the reader should understand that Elijah and Moses appeared physically.

“Son of Man”

Jesus refers to himself as the “Son of Man” in this chapter (Mark 9:31). Your language may not allow people to speak of themselves as if they were speaking about someone else. (See: [Son of Man](#), [son of man](#) and [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. Jesus uses a paradox when he says, “If anyone wants to be first, he must be last of all and servant of all” (Mark 9:35).

Mark 9:1

Connecting Statement:

Jesus has just been talking to the people and his disciples about following him. Six days later, Jesus goes with three of his disciples up a mountain where his appearance temporarily changes to what he will look like one day in the kingdom of God.

he said to them (ULT)

He...said to his apprentices (UST)

"Jesus said to his disciples"

the kingdom of God come with power (ULT)

God show himself with great power as king...him do this (UST)

The kingdom of God coming represents God showing himself as king. Alternate translation: "God show himself with great power as king" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of God
- power
- Truly
- kingdom of God
- death
- kingdom

Translation Words - UST

- God show himself...as king...him do this
- great power
- Listen carefully
- God show himself...as king...him do this
- before you die
- God show himself...as king...him do this

ULT

¹ And he said to them, "[Truly](#) I say to you, there are some of you who are standing here who will not taste [death](#) before they see the [kingdom of God](#) come with [power](#)."

UST

¹ He also said to his apprentices, "[Listen carefully!](#) Some of you who are here now will see [God show himself](#) with [great power as king](#). You will see [him do this before you die!](#)"

Mark 9:2

alone by themselves (ULT)

While they were alone up there (UST)

The author uses the reflexive pronoun “themselves” here to emphasize that they were alone and that only Jesus, Peter, James, and John went up the mountain. (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

he was transfigured before them (ULT)

he appeared very different to them (UST)

When they looked at him, his appearance was different from what it had been.

he was transfigured (ULT)

he appeared very different (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “his appearance had changed” or “he appeared very different” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

before them (ULT)

to them (UST)

“in front of them” or “so they could clearly him”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [John](#)
- [James](#)
- [days](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [James' brother John](#)
- [James](#)
- [days](#)

ULT

² Six [days](#) later, [Jesus](#) took [Peter](#) and [James](#) and [John](#) and led them up on a high mountain, alone by themselves. Then he was transfigured before them.

UST

² Six [days](#) later [Jesus](#) took [Peter](#), [James](#) and [James' brother John](#) and led them up a high mountain. While they were alone up there, he appeared very different to them.

Mark 9:3

radiantly (ULT)

dazzling white...whiter (UST)

“shining” or “glowing.” Jesus’ garments were so white they were emitting or giving off light.

extremely (ULT)

dazzling white...whiter (UST)

as much as possible or more than most

as no bleacher on earth could bleach them (ULT)

Bleaching describes the process of making natural white wool even whiter by using chemicals like bleach or ammonia. Alternate translation: “whiter than any person on earth could whiten them”

Translation Words - ULT

- could
- earth
- garments

Translation Words - UST

- could make them by bleaching them
- earth
- clothes...They

ULT

³ His [garments](#) became radiantly, extremely white, as no bleacher on [earth](#) [could](#) bleach them.

UST

³ His [clothes](#) became dazzling white. [They](#) were whiter than anyone on [earth](#) [could make them by bleaching them](#).

Mark 9:4

appeared...Elijah with Moses (ULT)

Two prophets who had lived long ago...appeared...

Moses and Elijah (UST)

It may be helpful to state who these men are. Alternate translation: "two prophets who had lived long ago, Elijah and Moses, appeared" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

they were talking with (ULT)

the two of them began talking with (UST)

The word "they" refers to Elijah and Moses.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Elijah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Elijah](#)

ULT

⁴ Then [Elijah](#) with [Moses](#) appeared to them, and they were talking with [Jesus](#).

UST

⁴ Two prophets who had lived long ago, [Moses](#) and [Elijah](#), appeared to them. Then the two of them began talking with [Jesus](#).

Mark 9:5

Peter spoke to Jesus and said (ULT)

"Peter said to Jesus." Here the word "answered" is used to introduce Peter into the conversation. Peter was not answering a question.

it is good for us to be here (ULT)

It is not clear whether "us" refers only to Peter, James, and John, or if it refers to everyone there, including Jesus, Elijah, and Moses. If you can translate so that both options are possible, do so. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#) and [Inclusive and Exclusive "We"](#))

shelters (ULT)

shelters (UST)

simple, temporary places in which to sit or sleep

Translation Words - ULT

- [to Jesus](#)
- [Rabbi](#)
- [good](#)
- [shelters](#)
- [for Moses](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [for Elijah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
- [Teacher](#)
- [wonderful](#)
- [shelters](#)
- [for Moses](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [for Elijah](#)

ULT

⁵ So [Peter](#) spoke [to Jesus](#) and said, "[Rabbi](#), it is [good](#) for us to be here, and so let us make three [shelters](#), one for you, one [for Moses](#), and one [for Elijah](#)."

UST

⁵ After a short time, [Peter](#) said, "[Teacher](#), it is [wonderful](#) to be here! So allow us to make three [shelters](#). One will be for you, one will be [for Moses](#), and one will be [for Elijah](#)!"

Mark 9:6

For he did not know what to say, for they were terrified (ULT)

This parenthetical sentence tells background information about Peter, James, and John. (See: [Background Information](#))

terrified...they were (ULT)

terrified...He and the other two apprentices were (UST)

“they were very frightened” or “they were very afraid”

Translation Words - ULT

- [he...know](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [he did...know](#)

ULT

⁶ (For [he](#) did not [know](#) what to say, for they were terrified.)

UST

⁶ He said this because he wanted to say something, but [he did](#) not [know](#) what to say. He and the other two apprentices were terrified.

Mark 9:7

came...and overshadowed (ULT)
appeared...that covered (UST)

“appeared and covered”

and a voice came out of the cloud (ULT)

Here “a voice came out” is a metonym for someone speaking. It can also be stated clearly who spoke. Alternate translation: “Then someone spoke from the cloud” or “Then God spoke from the cloud” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

This is my beloved Son. Listen to him

God the Father expresses his love for his “beloved Son,” the Son of God.

Son...beloved (ULT)

Son...He is the one whom I love (UST)

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [beloved](#)
- [a voice](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Son](#)
- [He is the one whom I love](#)
- [God spoke to them...saying](#)

ULT

⁷ Then a cloud came and overshadowed them, and [a voice](#) came out of the cloud, “This is my [beloved Son](#). Listen to him.”

UST

⁷ Then a shining cloud appeared that covered them. [God spoke to them](#) from the cloud [saying](#), “This is my [Son](#). [He is the one whom I love](#). Therefore, listen to him!”

Mark 9:8

when they looked around (ULT)

When the three apprentices looked around...and that there was (UST)

Here "they" refers to Peter, James, and John.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)

ULT

⁸ Suddenly, when they looked around, they no longer saw anyone with them, but only [Jesus](#).

UST

⁸ When the three apprentices looked around, they saw that suddenly [Jesus](#) was alone with them, and that there was no longer anyone else there.

Mark 9:9

he commanded them to...no one...until the Son of Man had risen from the dead (ULT)

Jesus told them that...not...anyone...He said...You may tell them after I, the Son of Man, rise from the dead after I die (UST)

This implies that he was permitting them to tell people about what they had seen only after he rose from being dead. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

had risen from the dead (ULT)
rise from the dead after I die (UST)

“risen from among the dead.” This speaks of becoming alive again. The phrase “the dead” refers to “dead people” and is a metonym for death. Alternate translation: “risen from death” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [he commanded](#)
- [Son of Man](#)
- [the dead](#)
- [had risen](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus told...He said](#)
- [Son of Man](#)
- [the dead](#)
- [rise...after I die](#)

ULT

⁹ As they were coming down from the mountain, [he commanded](#) them to tell no one what they had seen, until the [Son of Man had risen](#) from [the dead](#).

UST

⁹ While they were coming down the mountain, [Jesus told](#) them that they should not tell anyone yet what had just happened to him. [He said](#), “You may tell them after I, the [Son of Man](#), [rise](#) from [the dead after I die](#).”

Mark 9:10

rising from the dead (ULT)

he would rise from the dead (UST)

“to rise from among the dead.” This speaks of becoming alive again. The phrase “the dead” refers to “dead people” and is a metonym for death. Alternate translation: “rising from death” (See: [Metonymy](#))

So they kept the matter to themselves (ULT)

So they did not tell others about it for a long time (UST)

Here “kept the matter to themselves” is an idiom that means they did not tell anyone about what they had seen. Alternate translation: “So they did not tell anyone about what they had seen” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [rising from the dead](#)
- [rising from the dead](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the dead](#)
- [he would rise](#)

ULT

¹⁰ So they kept the matter to themselves, but they discussed among themselves what “[rising from the dead](#)” could mean.

UST

¹⁰ So they did not tell others about it for a long time. But they discussed among themselves what it meant when he said that [he would rise](#) from [the dead](#).

Mark 9:11

Connecting Statement:

Though Peter, James, and John wondered what Jesus might mean by “rising from the dead,” they asked him instead about Elijah’s coming.

they asked him (ULT)

The three apprentices had just seen Elijah, but Elijah had not done anything to prepare people to accept Jesus...they asked Jesus (UST)

The word “they” refers to Peter, James, and John.

the scribes say that Elijah must come first (ULT)

Prophecy foretold that Elijah would come again from heaven. Then the Messiah, who is the Son of Man, would come to rule and reign. The disciples are confused about how the Son of Man could die and rise again. Alternate translation: “Why do the scribes say that Elijah must come first before the Messiah comes?” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [scribes](#)
- [Elijah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [men who teach the Jewish laws](#)
- [Elijah](#)

ULT

11 Then they asked him, saying, “Why do the [scribes](#) say that [Elijah](#) must come first?”

UST

11 The three apprentices had just seen Elijah, but Elijah had not done anything to prepare people to accept Jesus. So they asked Jesus, “The [men who teach the Jewish laws](#) say that [Elijah](#) must come back to the earth before the Messiah comes to earth. But you have been here a long time and Elijah came just today. So is what they are teaching wrong?”

Mark 9:12

Elijah does come first to restore all things (ULT)

By saying this, Jesus affirms that Elijah would come first.

Why...is it written...be despised (ULT)

Jesus uses this question to remind his disciples that the scriptures also teach that the Son of Man must suffer and be despised. This may be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "But I also want you to consider what is written about the Son of Man. The scriptures say that he must suffer many things and be hated." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

be despised (ULT)

This may be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people would hate him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Son of Man](#)
- [Elijah](#)
- [he must suffer](#)
- [is it written](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [Elijah](#)
- [suffer, suffering](#)
- [it is written](#)

ULT

12 He said to them, "[Elijah](#) does come first to restore all things. Why then [is it written](#) of the [Son of Man](#) that [he must suffer](#) many things and be despised?"

UST

12-13 Jesus answered them, "It is true that God promised to send Elijah to come first to put everything as it should be. But Elijah has already come, and our leaders treated him very badly, just like they wanted to do, as prophets long ago had said they would. But there is much written in the scriptures about me, the Son of Man. The scriptures say that I will suffer much and that people will reject me."

Mark 9:13

they did whatever they wanted to him (ULT)

It may be helpful to state what people did to Elijah. Alternate translation: "our leaders treated him very badly, just as they wanted to do" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Elijah](#)
- [just as](#)
- [it is written](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Elijah](#)
- [like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if](#)
- [it is written](#)

ULT

13 But I say to you that [Elijah](#) has indeed come, and they did whatever they wanted to him, [just as it is written](#) about him."

UST

12-13 Jesus answered them, "It is true that God promised to send Elijah to come first to put everything as it should be. But Elijah has already come, and our leaders treated him very badly, just like they wanted to do, as prophets long ago had said they would. But there is much written in the scriptures about me, the Son of Man. The scriptures say that I will suffer much and that people will reject me."

Mark 9:14

Connecting Statement:

When Peter, James, John, and Jesus came down from the mountain, they found the scribes arguing with the other disciples.

When they came...to the disciples (ULT)
Jesus and those three apprentices arrived where the other apprentices were (UST)

Jesus, Peter, James, and John returned to the other disciples who had not gone with them up the mountain.

they saw a great crowd around them (ULT)
They saw a large crowd around the other apprentices (UST)

"Jesus and those three disciples saw a great crowd around the other disciples"

to...scribes were arguing...them (ULT)
where...were...some men who taught the Jewish laws arguing...them (UST)

The scribes were arguing with the disciples who had not gone with Jesus.

Translation Words - ULT

- [scribes](#)
- [disciples](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [some men who taught the Jewish laws](#)
- [other apprentices](#)

ULT

14 When they came to the [disciples](#), they saw a great crowd around them and [scribes](#) were arguing with them.

UST

14 Then Jesus and those three apprentices arrived where the [other apprentices](#) were. They saw a large crowd around the other apprentices and [some men who taught the Jewish laws](#) arguing with them.

Mark 9:15

they were amazed (ULT) was very surprised (UST)

It may be helpful to state why they were amazed. Alternate translation: "was amazed that Jesus had come" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- they were amazed

Translation Words - UST

- was very surprised

ULT

¹⁵ Immediately, when the whole crowd saw Jesus, [they were amazed](#), and they ran up to him and greeted him.

UST

¹⁵ The crowd [was very surprised](#) to see him come. So they ran to him and greeted him.

Mark 9:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

16 He asked his disciples, "What are you arguing with them about?"

UST

16 He asked them, "What are you arguing about?"

Mark 9:17

Connecting Statement:

To explain what the scribes and other disciples were arguing about, a father of a demon-possessed man tells Jesus that he has asked the disciples to send the demon out of his son, but they could not. Jesus then casts the demon out of the boy. Later the disciples ask why they were not able to send the demon away.

He has a spirit (ULT)

There is an evil spirit in him (UST)

This means the boy is possessed by an unclean spirit. "He has an unclean spirit" or "He is possessed by an unclean spirit" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [a spirit](#)
- [Teacher](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [an evil spirit](#)
- [Teacher](#)

ULT

17 Someone in the crowd answered him, "[Teacher](#), I brought my [son](#) to you. He has [a spirit](#) that makes him mute.

UST

17 A man in the crowd answered him, "[Teacher](#), I brought my [son](#) here in order that you would heal him. There is [an evil spirit](#) in him that makes him unable to talk.

Mark 9:18**he foams at the mouth (ULT)****He foams at the mouth (UST)**

A convulsion, or seizure, can cause a person to have trouble breathing or swallowing. This causes white foam to come out of the mouth. If your language has a way to describe that, you could use it. Alternate translation: "bubbles come out of his mouth"

he becomes rigid (ULT)**he becomes stiff (UST)**

"he becomes stiff" or "his body becomes rigid"

they could not (ULT)**they were not able to do it (UST)**

This refers to the disciples not being about to drive the spirit out of the boy. Alternate translation: "they could not drive it out of him" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [drive...out](#)
- [they could](#)
- [it seizes](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [apprentices](#)
- [to expel](#)
- [they were...able to do it](#)
- [the spirit begins to control](#)

ULT

¹⁸ Whenever [it seizes](#) him, it throws him down, and he foams at the mouth, grinds his teeth, and he becomes rigid. I asked your [disciples](#) to [drive](#) it [out](#), but [they could](#) not."

UST

¹⁸ Whenever [the spirit begins to control](#) him, it throws him down. He foams at the mouth, he grinds his teeth together, and he becomes stiff. I asked your [apprentices to expel](#) the spirit, but [they were](#) not [able to do it](#)."

Mark 9:19

he...answered them (ULT)

Jesus...replied...to those people (UST)

Though it was the boy's father who made a request of Jesus, Jesus responds to the whole crowd. This can be made clear. Alternate translation: "Jesus responded to the crowd" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

You unbelieving generation (ULT)

You faithless people (UST)

"You unbelieving generation." Jesus calls the crowd this, as he begins to respond to them.

how long will I be with you...will I bear with you (ULT)

I have been with you a long time, and you still cannot do what I do...You...test my patience (UST)

Jesus uses these questions to express his frustration. Both questions have the same meaning. They can be written as statements. Alternate translation: "I have become weary by your unbelief!" or "Your unbelief tires me! I wonder how long I must bear with you." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Parallelism](#))

will I bear with you (ULT)

You...test my patience (UST)

"endure you" or "put up with you"

Bring him to me (ULT)

Bring the boy to me (UST)

"Bring the boy to me"

Translation Words - ULT

- [unbelieving](#)
- [will I bear](#)
- [generation](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [faithless](#)
- [test my patience](#)
- [people](#)

ULT

¹⁹ Then he answered them and said, "You [unbelieving generation](#), how long will I be with you? How long [will I bear](#) with you? Bring him to me."

UST

¹⁹ Jesus replied by saying to those people, "You [faithless people](#)! I have been with you a long time, and you still cannot do what I do! You [test my patience](#)! Bring the boy to me."

Mark 9:20

the spirit (ULT)

the evil spirit (UST)

This refers to the unclean spirit. See how you translated this in [Mark 9:17](#).

him...it...threw...into a convulsion (ULT)

Jesus...it shook...severely (UST)

This is a condition where a person has no control over his body, and his body shakes violently.

Translation Words - ULT

- [spirit](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [evil spirit](#)

ULT

²⁰ So they brought the boy to him. When the [spirit](#) saw Jesus, it immediately threw him into a convulsion, and the boy fell on the ground, rolled around, and foamed at the mouth.

UST

²⁰ So they brought the boy to Jesus. As soon as the [evil spirit](#) saw Jesus, it shook the boy severely, and the boy fell on the ground. He rolled around and foamed at the mouth.

Mark 9:21

Since childhood (ULT)

This started to happen when he was a child (UST)

"Since he was a small child." It may be helpful to state this as a full sentence. Alternate translation: "He has been like this since he was a small child" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [childhood](#)
- [father](#)
- [How long](#)
- [like](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [he was a child](#)
- [father](#)
- [How long](#)
- [like](#)

ULT

²¹ Jesus asked his [father](#), "[How long](#) has he been [like](#) this?" The father said, "Since [childhood](#)."

UST

²¹ Jesus asked the boy's [father](#), "[How long](#) has he been [like](#) this?" He replied, "This started to happen when [he was a child](#)."

Mark 9:22

have compassion (ULT)

Pity...and (UST)

“have compassion”

Translation Words - ULT

- have compassion
- destroy
- you are able to do
- the waters
- the fire

Translation Words - UST

- Pity...and
- to kill
- you can
- the water
- fire

ULT

²² It has often both thrown him into [the fire](#) and into [the waters](#) in order to [destroy](#) him. But if [you are able to do](#) anything, [have compassion](#) on us and help us.”

UST

²² The spirit does not only do this, but he also often throws him into the [fire](#) or into [the water](#) in order [to kill](#) him. [Pity](#) us [and](#) help us, if [you can](#)!”

Mark 9:23

If...you are able (ULT)

Of course...I can (UST)

Jesus repeated what the man had said to him. Alternate translation: "Do you say to me 'If you are able?'" or "Why do you say 'If you are able?'" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

If...you are able (ULT)

Of course...I can (UST)

Jesus used this question to rebuke the man's doubt. It can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not say to me, 'If you are able.'" or "You ask me if I am able. Of course I am able." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

All things are possible for the one who believes (ULT)

God can do anything for people who believe in him (UST)

"God can do anything for people who believe in him"

for the one who believes (ULT)

for people who believe in him (UST)

"for the person" or "for anyone"

for the one who believes (ULT)

for people who believe in him (UST)

This refers to belief in God. Alternate translation: "believes in God"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [you are able](#)
- [are possible](#)
- [for the one who believes](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [I can](#)
- [God can do](#)
- [for people who believe in him](#)

ULT

²³ Then [Jesus](#) said to him, "'If [you are able](#)? All things [are possible for the one who believes](#)."

UST

²³ [Jesus](#) exclaimed to him, "Of course [I can](#)! [God can do](#) anything [for people who believe in him](#)!"

Mark 9:24

Help my unbelief (ULT)

Help me to believe more strongly (UST)

The man is asking Jesus to help him overcome his unbelief and increase his faith. Alternate translation: "Help me when I do not believe" or "Help me have more faith"

Translation Words - ULT

- I believe
- unbelief
- child
- father
- cried out

Translation Words - UST

- I believe that you can help me, but I do not believe strongly
- to believe more strongly
- child's
- father
- shouted

ULT

²⁴ Immediately the [father](#) of the [child](#) [cried out](#) and said, "[I believe](#)! Help my [unbelief](#)!"

UST

²⁴ Immediately the [child's father](#) [shouted](#), "[I believe that you can help me, but I do not believe strongly](#). Help me [to believe more strongly](#)!"

Mark 9:25

the crowd was running to them (ULT)

the crowd was growing (UST)

This means that more people were running toward where Jesus was and that the crowd there was growing larger.

You mute and deaf spirit (ULT)

The words “mute” and “deaf” can be explained. Alternate translation: “You unclean spirit, you who are causing the boy to be unable to speak and unable to hear”

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- command
- unclean
- spirit
- You...spirit
- unclean spirit
- he rebuked
- was running to them

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- command
- evil
- spirit
- You evil spirit, you who are causing this boy to be
- evil spirit
- He rebuked
- was growing

ULT

²⁵ Now when [Jesus](#) saw that the crowd [was running to them](#), [he rebuked](#) the [unclean spirit](#), saying to it, “You mute and deaf [spirit](#), I [command](#) you, come out of him, and never enter into him again.”

UST

²⁵ [Jesus](#) saw that the crowd [was growing](#). [He rebuked](#) the [evil spirit](#): “[You evil spirit, you who are causing this boy to be](#) deaf and unable to talk! I [command](#) you to come out of him and never enter him again!”

Mark 9:26

It cried out (ULT)

The evil spirit shouted (UST)

"The unclean spirit cried out"

convulsed the boy greatly (ULT)

shook the boy violently (UST)

"shook the boy violently"

and then came out (ULT)

then it left the boy (UST)

It is implied that the spirit came out of the boy. Alternate translation: "came out of the boy" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

The boy became...like a dead person (ULT)

The boy did not move. He seemed like a dead body (UST)

The boy's appearance is compared to that of a dead person. Alternate translation: "The boy appeared dead" or "The boy looked like a dead person" (See: [Simile](#))

so that many (ULT)

So most of the people there (UST)

"so that many people"

Translation Words - ULT

- [a dead person](#)
- [He is dead](#)
- [It cried out](#)
- [like](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [a dead body](#)
- [He is dead](#)
- [The evil spirit shouted](#)
- [like](#)

ULT

²⁶ [It cried out](#) and convulsed the boy greatly and then came out. The boy became [like a dead person](#), so that many said, "[He is dead](#)."

UST

²⁶ [The evil spirit shouted](#) and shook the boy violently; then it left the boy. The boy did not move. He seemed [like a dead body](#). So most of the people there said, "[He is dead!](#)"

Mark 9:27

took him by his hand (ULT)

took him by the hand (UST)

This means that Jesus grasped the boy's hand with his own hand.
Alternate translation: "grasped the boy by the hand" (See: [Idiom](#))

and lifted him up (ULT)

and helped him get up (UST)

"helped him get up"

Translation Words - ULT

- [But Jesus](#)
- [hand](#)
- [and lifted...up](#)
- [the boy stood up](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [hand](#)
- [and helped...get up](#)
- [the boy stood up](#)

ULT

²⁷ [But Jesus](#) took him by his [hand and lifted](#) him [up](#), and [the boy stood up](#).

UST

²⁷ However, [Jesus](#) took him by the [hand and helped](#) him [get up](#). Then [the boy stood up](#).

Mark 9:28

privately (ULT)

alone (UST)

This means they were alone.

cast it out (ULT)

to force the evil spirit out (UST)

“cast the unclean spirit out.” This refers to casting the spirit out of the boy. Alternate translation: “cast the unclean spirit out of the boy” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [could](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [cast...out](#)
- [a house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [were...able](#)
- [they](#)
- [to force...out](#)
- [a house](#)

ULT

²⁸ Then when Jesus went into [a house](#), his [disciples](#) asked him privately, “Why [could](#) we not [cast](#) it [out](#)?”

UST

²⁸ Later, when Jesus and his apprentices were alone in [a house](#), [they](#) asked him, “Why were we not [able to force](#) the evil spirit [out](#)?”

Mark 9:29

This kind cannot come out except by prayer and fasting (ULT)

The words “cannot” and “except” are both negative words. In some languages it is more natural to use a positive statement. Alternate translation: “This kind can be cast out only by prayer” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

This kind (ULT) this kind of evil spirit (UST)

This describes unclean spirits. Alternate translation: “This kind of unclean spirit” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [prayer](#)
- [kind](#)
- [fasting](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [praying that God will give you the power to do it](#)
- [kind of evil spirit](#)
- [abstaining from food](#)

ULT

²⁹ He said to them, “This [kind](#) cannot come out except by [prayer](#) and [fasting](#).”
[1]

UST

²⁹ He said to them, “You can force this [kind of evil spirit](#) out only by [abstaining from food](#) and [praying that God will give you the power to do it](#). There is no other way that you can expel them.”

Mark 9:30

Connecting Statement:

After he heals the demon-possessed boy, Jesus and his disciples leave the house where they are staying. He takes time to teach his disciples alone.

They went out from there (ULT)

After Jesus and his apprentices left that region (UST)

"Jesus and his disciples left that region"

and passed through (ULT)

they traveled through (UST)

"traveled through" or "passed by"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Galilee](#)
- [to know it](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Galilee district](#)
- [to know where he was](#)

ULT

³⁰ They went out from there and passed through [Galilee](#), but he did not want anyone [to know it](#),

UST

³⁰ After Jesus and his apprentices left that region, they traveled through [Galilee district](#). Jesus did not want anyone else [to know where he was](#).

Mark 9:31

for he was teaching his disciples (ULT)

Jesus was teaching his disciples privately, away from the crowd. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "for he was teaching his disciples privately" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

The...Son of Man will be delivered (ULT)

Some day my enemies will arrest me, the Son of Man, and I will be put (UST)

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "Someone will deliver the Son of Man" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

The...Son of Man (ULT)

the Son of Man (UST)

Here Jesus refers to himself as the Son of Man. This is an important title for Jesus. "I, the Son of Man," (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

into the hands of men (ULT)

into the hands of other men (UST)

Here "hands" is a metonym for control. Alternate translation: "into the control of men" or "so that men will be able to control him" (See: [Metonymy](#))

when he has been killed, he will rise again after three days (ULT)

on the third day after I die, I will become alive again (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "After they have put him to death and three days have passed, he" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [Son of Man](#)
- [the hands](#)
- [he was teaching](#)
- [will be delivered](#)
- [he will rise again](#)
- [days](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [apprentices](#)
- [Son of Man](#)
- [the hands](#)
- [He wanted to have time to teach](#)
- [Some day my enemies will arrest me...and I will be put](#)
- [I will become alive again](#)
- [the...day](#)

ULT

³¹ for [he was teaching](#) his [disciples](#) and saying to them, "The [Son of Man will be delivered](#) into [the hands](#) of men, and they will kill him. And when he has been killed, [he will rise again](#) after three [days](#)."

UST

³¹ [He wanted to have time to teach](#) his [apprentices](#). He was telling them, "[Some day my enemies will arrest me](#), the [Son of Man](#), [and I will be put](#) into [the hands](#) of other men. Those men will kill me. But on the third [day](#) after I die, [I will become alive again](#)!"

Mark 9:32

they were afraid to ask him (ULT)

they were afraid to ask him what he meant (UST)

They were afraid to ask Jesus what his statement meant. Alternate translation: "they were afraid to ask him what it meant" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [they were afraid](#)
- [did not understand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [they were afraid](#)
- [did not understand](#)

ULT

³² But they [did not understand](#) this statement, and [they were afraid](#) to ask him.

UST

³² They [did not understand](#) what he was telling them, and [they were afraid](#) to ask him what he meant.

Mark 9:33

Connecting Statement:

When they come to Capernaum, Jesus teaches his disciples about being humble servants. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

they came to (ULT)

Jesus and his apprentices returned to (UST)

“they arrived at.” The word “they” refers to Jesus and his disciples.

were you discussing (ULT)

were you talking about (UST)

“were you discussing with one another”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Capernaum](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Capernaum town](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

³³ Then they came to [Capernaum](#). When he was in the [house](#), he asked them, “What were you discussing on the way?”

UST

³³ Then Jesus and his apprentices returned to [Capernaum town](#). When they were in the [house](#), he asked them, “What were you talking about while we were traveling on the road?”

Mark 9:34

they...were silent (ULT)

They were silent because they were ashamed to tell Jesus what they had been discussing. Alternate translation: “they were silent because they were ashamed” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

about who was the greatest (ULT)

about which one of them was the most important (UST)

Here “the greatest” refers to “the greatest” among the disciples. Alternate translation: “who was the greatest among them” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

³⁴ But they were silent. For they had been arguing with one another on the way about who was the greatest.

UST

³⁴ But they did not reply. They were ashamed to reply because, while they were traveling, they had been arguing with each other about which one of them was the most important.

Mark 9:35

If anyone wants to be first, he must be last of all (ULT)
If anyone wants God to consider him to be the most important person of all, he must consider himself to be the least important person of all (UST)

Here the words “first” and “last” are opposites of one another. Jesus speaks of being the “most important” as being “first” and of being the “least important” as being “last.” Alternate translation: “If anyone wants God to consider him to be the most important person of all, he must consider himself to be the least important of all” (See: [Metaphor](#))

of all (ULT)

of all (UST)

“of all people...of all people”

Translation Words - ULT

- [he called...together](#)
- [twelve](#)
- [servant](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [he called...to come close to him](#)
- [twelve apprentices](#)
- [he must serve](#)

ULT

³⁵ So sitting down, [he called](#) the [twelve together](#) and he said to them, “If anyone wants to be first, he must be last of all and [servant](#) of all.”

UST

³⁵ He sat down, [he called](#) the [twelve apprentices to come close to him](#) and then said to them, “If anyone wants God to consider him to be the most important person of all, he must consider himself to be the least important person of all, and [he must serve](#) everyone else.”

Mark 9:36

in their midst (ULT)
among them (UST)

“among them.” The word “their” refers to the crowd.

him...He took...in his arms (ULT)
him...He took...in his arms (UST)

This means that he hugged the child or picked him up and placed him on his lap.

Translation Words - ULT

- [a little child](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [a child](#)

ULT

³⁶ Then he took [a little child](#) and placed him in their midst. He took him in his arms and said to them,

UST

³⁶ Then he took [a child](#) and placed him among them. He took the child in his arms and then he said to them,

Mark 9:37

one of these little children (ULT)

"a child like this"

in my name (ULT)

because they love me (UST)

This means to do something because of love for Jesus. Alternate translation: "because he loves me" or "for my sake" (See: [Idiom](#))

the one who sent me (ULT)

God, who sent me (UST)

This refers to God, who has sent him to earth. Alternate translation: "God, who has sent me" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)
- [of these little children](#)
- [receives](#)
- [receives](#)
- [receives](#)
- [receive](#) (2)
- [the one who sent](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [they love](#)
- [a child](#)
- [welcome](#)
- [God considers that they are welcoming](#)
- [It is also true that they are also](#)
- [welcoming](#) (2)
- [God, who sent](#)

ULT

37 "Whoever [receives](#) one [of these little children](#) in my [name](#) [receives](#) me; and whoever [receives](#) me, does not [receive](#) me but [the one who sent](#) me."

UST

37 "Those who [welcome a child](#) like this one because [they love](#) me, [God](#) [considers that they are welcoming](#) me. [It is also true that they are also welcoming God, who sent](#) me."

Mark 9:38

John said to him (ULT)

John said to Jesus (UST)

"John said to Jesus"

driving out demons (ULT)

who was forcing evil spirits out of people (UST)

"sending away demons." This refers to casting demons out of people.

Alternate translation: "driving demons out of people" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

in your name (ULT)

He claimed that he had authority from you to do that (UST)

Here "name" is associated with Jesus' authority and power. Alternate translation: "by the authority of your name" or "by the power of your name" (See: [Metonymy](#))

he does not follow us (ULT)

he was not one of the apprentices (UST)

This means that he is not among their group of disciples. Alternate translation: "he is not one of us" or "he does not walk with us" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)
- [demons](#)
- [John](#)
- [driving out](#)
- [Teacher](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [He claimed that he had authority from you to do that](#)
- [evil spirits](#)
- [John](#)
- [who was forcing...out of people](#)
- [Teacher](#)

ULT

³⁸ [John](#) said to him, "[Teacher](#), we saw someone [driving out demons](#) in your [name](#) and we stopped him, because he does not follow us."

UST

³⁸ [John](#) said to Jesus, "[Teacher](#), we saw someone [who was forcing evil spirits out of people](#). [He claimed that he had authority from you to do that](#). So we told him to stop doing it because he was not one of the apprentices."

Mark 9:39

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- But Jesus
- a mighty work
- name
- say anything bad about

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- a mighty deed
- authority
- will say bad things about

ULT

³⁹ [But Jesus](#) said, "Do not stop him, for there is no one who will do [a mighty work](#) in my [name](#) and can soon afterwards [say anything bad about](#) me.

UST

³⁹ [Jesus](#) said, "Do not tell him to stop doing that. For no one [will say bad things about](#) me soon after performing [a mighty deed](#) with my [authority](#).

Mark 9:40

is not against us (ULT)
who are not opposing us (UST)

“is not opposing us”

us is for (ULT)
us are trying to achieve the same goals that we are (UST)

It can be explained clearly what this means. Alternate translation: “is trying to achieve the same goals that we are”

ULT

⁴⁰ For he who is not against us is for us.

UST

⁴⁰ Those who are not opposing us are trying to achieve the same goals that we are.

Mark 9:41

gives you a cup of water to drink in the name that you are of Christ (ULT)

Jesus speaks about giving someone a cup of water as an example of how one person may help another. This is a metaphor for helping someone in any way. (See: [Metaphor](#))

he will...not...lose (ULT)

God will...reward (UST)

This negative sentence emphasizes the positive meaning. In some languages, it is more natural to use a positive statement. Alternate translation: "definitely receive" (See: [Litotes](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [he will...lose](#)
- [truly](#)
- [the name](#)
- [of Christ](#)
- [of water](#)
- [reward](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God will...reward](#)
- [certainly](#)
- [you follow](#)
- [me, the Messiah](#)
- [of water](#)
- [God will...reward](#)

ULT

⁴¹ For whoever gives you a cup [of water](#) to drink in [the name](#) that you are [of Christ](#), [truly](#) I say to you, [he will](#) not [lose](#) his [reward](#).

UST

⁴¹ [God will certainly reward](#) those who help you in any way, even if they simply give you a cup [of water](#) to drink because [you follow me, the Messiah!](#)"

Mark 9:42

a...millstone (ULT)

a...stone (UST)

a large, round stone used for grinding grain into flour

Translation Words - ULT

- [who believe](#)
- [better](#)
- [causes...to stumble](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [who believes](#)
- [better](#)
- [cause someone...to sin, God will severely punish you](#)

ULT

⁴² And whoever [causes](#) one of these little ones [who believe](#) in me [to stumble](#), it would be [better](#) for him instead if a large millstone was put around his neck and he was thrown into the sea.

UST

⁴² Jesus also said, "But if you [cause someone who believes](#) in me [to sin](#), [God will severely punish you](#), even if that person is socially unimportant like this little child. If someone tied a heavy stone around your neck and threw you into the sea, it would be [better](#) for you than if God punished you for causing a person who believes in me to sin.

Mark 9:43

If...your hand causes you to stumble (ULT)
if you are wanting to use one of your hands to sin, do not use it (UST)

Here "hand" is a metonym for desiring to do something sinful that you would do with your hand. Alternate translation: "If you want to do something sinful with one of your hands" (See: [Metonymy](#))

to enter into life maimed (ULT)
live eternally, even though you lack one of your hands while you are here on earth (UST)

"to be maimed and then to enter into life" or "to be maimed before entering into life"

to enter into life (ULT)
live eternally (UST)

Dying and then beginning to live eternally is spoken of as entering into life. Alternate translation: "to enter into eternal life" or "to die and begin to live forever" (See: [Metaphor](#))

maimed (ULT)
even though you lack one of your hands while you are here on earth (UST)

missing a body part as a result of having it removed or being injured. Here it refers to missing a hand. Alternate translation: "without a hand" or "missing a hand"

into the unquenchable fire

"where the fire cannot be put out"

Translation Words - ULT

- [life](#)
- [hell](#)
- [better](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hands](#)
- [fire](#)
- [causes...to stumble](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [live eternally](#)
- [hell](#)
- [good that](#)
- [hands](#)
- [hand](#)
- [fires](#)
- [are wanting to use...to sin, do not use it](#)

ULT

⁴³ If your [hand causes](#) you [to stumble](#), cut it off. It is [better](#) for you to enter into [life](#) maimed than to have two [hands](#) and to go into [hell](#), into the unquenchable [fire](#).

UST

⁴³ So if you [are wanting to use](#) one of your [hands to sin, do not use it](#)! Even if you have to cut your hand off and throw it away to avoid sinning, do it! It is [good that](#) you [live eternally](#), even though you lack one of your hands while you are here on earth. But it is not good that you sin and as a result God throws your whole body into [hell](#). There the [fires](#) never go out!

Mark 9:44

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

44^[2] [where their worm does not die,
and the fire is not put out.]

UST

44^[1] [where worms never stop feeding
on them, and the fire that burns them
never goes out.]

Mark 9:45**if your foot causes you to stumble (ULT)**

If you are wanting to use one of your feet to sin, do not use it...you (UST)

Here the word "foot" is a metonym for desiring to do something sinful that you would do with your feet, such as going to a place you should not go to. Alternate translation: "If you want to do something sinful with one of your feet" (See: [Metonymy](#))

to enter into life lame (ULT)

live eternally, even though you lack one of your feet while you are here on earth (UST)

"to be lame and then to enter into life" or "to be lame before entering into life"

to enter into life (ULT)

live eternally (UST)

Dying and then beginning to live eternally is spoken of as entering into life. Alternate translation: "to enter into eternal life" or "to die and begin to live forever" (See: [Metaphor](#))

lame (ULT)

even though you lack one of your feet while you are here on earth (UST)

"unable to walk easily." Here it refers not being able to walk well because of missing a foot. Alternate translation: "without a foot" or "missing a foot"

and be thrown into hell (ULT)

that you sin and as a result for God to throw your whole body into hell (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for God to throw you into hell" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [life](#)
- [hell](#)
- [better](#)
- [causes...to stumble](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [live eternally](#)
- [hell](#)
- [good that](#)
- [to sin](#)

ULT

⁴⁵ And if your foot [causes](#) you [to stumble](#), cut it off. It is [better](#) for you to enter into [life](#) lame than to have your two feet and be thrown into [hell](#).

UST

⁴⁵ If you are wanting to use one of your feet [to sin](#), do not use it! Even if you have to cut off your foot to avoid sinning, do it! It is [good that](#) you [live eternally](#), even though you lack one of your feet while you are here on earth. But it is not good that you sin and as a result for God to throw your whole body into [hell](#).

Mark 9:46

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

46^[3] [where their worm does not die,
and the fire is not put out.]

UST

46^[2] [where their worm does not die,
and the fire is not put out.]

Mark 9:47

if your eye causes you to stumble, tear it out (ULT)
If because of what you see you are tempted to sin, stop looking at those things! Even if you have to gouge out your eye and throw it away to avoid sinning, do it (UST)

Here the word "eye" is a metonym for either 1) desiring to sin by looking at something. Alternate translation: "If you want to do something sinful by looking at something, tear your eye out" or 2) Desiring to sin because of what you have looked at. Alternate translation: "If you want to do something sinful because of what you look at, tear your eye out" (See: [Metonymy](#))

to enter into the kingdom of God with one eye than to have two eyes (ULT)

This refers to the state of a person's physical body when he dies. A person does not take his physical body with him into eternity. Alternate translation: "to enter into the kingdom of God after having lived on earth with only one eye than to have lived on earth with two eyes" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

and to be thrown into hell (ULT)
him to throw you...into hell (UST)

This can be stated in the active form. Alternate translation: "for God to throw you into hell" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of God
- hell
- kingdom of God
- better
- tear...out
- causes...to stumble
- kingdom

Translation Words - UST

- and for God to agree to rule over you
- hell
- and for God to agree to rule over you
- better
- Even if you have to gouge out...and throw...away to avoid sinning, do it
- are tempted to sin, stop looking at those things
- and for God to agree to rule over you

ULT

⁴⁷ And if your eye [causes](#) you [to stumble](#), [tear](#) it [out](#). It is [better](#) for you to enter into the [kingdom of God](#) with one eye than to have two eyes and to be thrown into [hell](#),

UST

⁴⁷ If because of what you see you [are tempted to sin](#), [stop looking at those things](#)! [Even if you have to gouge out your eye and throw it away to avoid sinning, do it](#)! It is [better](#) to have only one eye [and for God to agree to rule over you](#), than him to throw you with two eyes into [hell](#).

Mark 9:48

where their worm does not die (ULT)
In that place worms feed on the people there forever (UST)

The meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "where worms that eat people there do not die" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- is...put out
- die
- fire

Translation Words - UST

- are...put out
- feed on the people there forever
- fires

ULT

⁴⁸ where their worm does not [die](#), and the [fire](#) is not [put out](#).

UST

⁴⁸ In that place worms [feed on the people there forever](#) and the [fires](#) are never [put out](#)."

Mark 9:49

everyone...will be salted with fire (ULT)
everyone...God will put fire on...just like people put salt on their food (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will salt everyone with fire" or "Just as salt purifies a sacrifice, God will purify everyone by allowing them to suffer" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

⁴⁹ For everyone will be salted [with fire](#).

UST

⁴⁹ "For [God will put fire on](#) everyone, just like people put salt on their food.

will be salted with fire (ULT)
God will put fire on...just like people put salt on their food (UST)

Here "fire" is a metaphor for suffering, and putting salt on people is a metaphor for purifying them. So "will be salted with fire" is a metaphor for being purified through suffering. Alternate translation: "will be made pure in the fire of suffering" or "will suffer in order to be purified as a sacrifice is purified with salt" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [with fire](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God will put fire on](#)

Mark 9:50

becomes unsalty (ULT)

becomes flavorless (UST)

“its salty taste”

with what will you season it (ULT)

you cannot make it taste salty again (UST)

This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: “you cannot make it salty again.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

will you season (ULT)

make...taste salty again (UST)

“taste salty again”

Have salt in yourselves (ULT)

We are to be like salt that adds flavor to food (UST)

Jesus speaks of doing good things for one another as if good things were salt that people possess. Alternate translation: “Do good to each other, like salt adds flavor to food” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [is good](#)
- [be at peace](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [is useful to put on food](#)
- [live in peace](#)

ULT

⁵⁰ Salt [is good](#), but if the salt becomes unsalty, with what will you season it? Have salt in yourselves, and [be at peace](#) with one another.”

9:29 ^[1] Some manuscripts do not include, *and fasting* but the best manuscripts include it.

9:44 ^[2] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 44.

9:46 ^[3] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 46.

UST

⁵⁰ Salt [is useful to put on food](#), but you cannot make it taste salty again if it becomes flavorless. We are to be like salt that adds flavor to food. And [live in peace](#) with one another.”

9:44 ^[1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 44.

9:46 ^[2] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 46.

Mark 10

Mark 10 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set quotations from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. The ULT does this with the quoted material in 10:7-8.

Special concepts in this chapter

Jesus' teaching about divorce

The Pharisees wanted to find a way to make Jesus say that it is good to break the law of Moses, so they asked him about divorce. Jesus tells how God originally designed marriage to show that the Pharisees taught wrongly about divorce.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

Metaphors are pictures of visible objects that speakers use to explain invisible truths. When Jesus spoke of “the cup which I will drink,” he was speaking of the pain he would suffer on the cross as if it were a bitter, poisonous liquid in a cup.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. Jesus uses a paradox when he says, “Whoever wishes to become great among you must be your servant” (Mark 10:43).

Mark 10:1

Connecting Statement:

After Jesus and his disciples leave Capernaum, Jesus reminds the Pharisees, as well as his disciples, what God really expects in marriage and divorce.

Jesus left that place (ULT)

Jesus left that place with his apprentices (UST)

Jesus' disciples were traveling with him. They were leaving Capernaum. Alternate translation: "Jesus and his disciples left Capernaum" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Then...to the area beyond the Jordan River (ULT)

"and to the land on the other side of the Jordan River" or "and to the area east of the Jordan River"

again. He was teaching them (ULT)

again, he taught them (UST)

The word "them" refers to the crowds.

he was accustomed to do (ULT)

he customarily did (UST)

"was his custom" or "he usually did"

Translation Words - ULT

- [of Judea](#)
- [Jordan River](#)
- [He was teaching](#)
- [Jesus left](#)
- [as](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of Judea](#)
- [Jordan River](#)
- [he taught](#)
- [Jesus left...with his apprentices](#)
- [as](#)

ULT

¹ Then [Jesus left](#) that place and went to the region [of Judea](#) and to the area beyond the [Jordan River](#), and the crowds came to him again. [He was teaching](#) them again, [as](#) he was accustomed to do.

UST

¹ [Jesus left](#) that place [with his apprentices](#), and they went through the district [of Judea](#) and on across to the east side of the [Jordan River](#). When crowds of people gathered around him again, [he taught](#) them again, [as](#) he customarily did.

Mark 10:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Pharisees
- to test
- Is it lawful

Translation Words - UST

- some Pharisees
- They asked that in order to be able to criticize...no matter whether he answered "yes" or "no"
- Does our law permit

ULT

² Then [Pharisees](#) came to him [to test](#) him and asked him, "[Is it lawful](#) for a husband to divorce his wife?"

UST

² While he was teaching them, [some Pharisees](#) approached him and asked him, "[Does our law permit](#) a man to divorce his wife?" [They asked that in order to be able to criticize him no matter whether he answered "yes" or "no."](#)

Mark 10:3

What did Moses command you (ULT)

What did Moses command your ancestors about this (UST)

Moses gave the law to their ancestors, which they now were also supposed to follow. Alternate translation: "What did Moses command your ancestors about this"

Translation Words - ULT

- [did...command](#)
- [Moses](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [did...command...about this](#)
- [Moses](#)

ULT

³ He answered and said to them, "What did [Moses command](#) you?"

UST

³ He answered them, "What did [Moses command](#) your ancestors [about this](#)?"

Mark 10:4

a certificate of divorce (ULT) divorce papers (UST)

This was a paper saying that the woman was no longer his wife.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [of divorce](#)
- [to send her away](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Moses](#)
- [divorce papers](#)
- [he may send her away](#)

ULT

⁴ They said, "[Moses](#) allowed a man to write a certificate [of divorce](#) and then [to send her away](#)."

UST

⁴ One of them replied, "[Moses](#) permitted that a man may write out [divorce papers](#) so that [he may send her away](#)."

Mark 10:5

But Jesus said to them...He wrote this commandment to you (ULT)

In some languages speakers do not interrupt a quote to say who is speaking. Rather they say who is speaking at the beginning or end of the complete quote. Alternate translation: "Jesus said to them, 'It was because...this law.'" (See: [Quotations and Quote Margins](#))

because of your hard hearts that he wrote you this law

Long before this time, Moses wrote this law for the Jews and their descendants because they had hard hearts. The Jews of Jesus' time also had hard hearts, so Jesus included them by using the words "your" and "you." Alternate translation: "because your ancestors and you had hard hearts that he wrote this law"

your hardness of heart (ULT)

Your ancestors stubbornly wanted to be able to send their wives away (UST)

Here "hearts" is a metonym for a person's inner being or mind. The phrase "hard hearts" is a metaphor for "stubbornness." Alternate translation: "your stubbornness" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [commandment](#)
- [He wrote](#)
- [hardness of heart](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [law](#)
- [That is why Moses wrote](#)
- [Your ancestors stubbornly wanted to be able to send their wives away](#)

ULT

⁵ But [Jesus](#) said to them, "[He wrote](#) this [commandment](#) to you because of your [hardness of heart](#)."

UST

⁵ [Jesus](#) said to them, "[Your ancestors stubbornly wanted to be able to send their wives away](#). [That is why Moses wrote](#) that [law](#)."

Mark 10:6

God made them (ULT)

God made them (UST)

“God made people”

Translation Words - ULT

- of creation

Translation Words - UST

- God first created people

ULT

⁶ But from the beginning [of creation](#),
'God made them male and female.'

UST

⁶ But when [God first created people](#), it
says, 'God made them male and female.'

Mark 10:7

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to quote what God said in the book of Genesis.

For this reason (ULT)

That explains why God said (UST)

“Therefore” or “Because of this”

Translation Words - ULT

- [father](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [his parents](#)

ULT

⁷ 'For this reason a man will leave his [father](#) and mother, ^[1]

UST

⁷ That explains why God said, 'When a man marries, he must leave [his parents](#) and join with his wife.'

Mark 10:8

the two...one flesh (ULT)

Jesus finishes quoting what God said in the book of Genesis.

they are no longer two, but one flesh (ULT)
They will no longer be like two people, but like one (UST)

This is a metaphor to illustrate their close union as husband and wife. Alternate translation: “the two people are like one person” or “they are no longer two, but together they are one body” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [flesh](#)
- [flesh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [person](#)
- [like one](#)

ULT

⁸ and the two will become one [flesh](#).’ So they are no longer two, but one [flesh](#).

UST

⁸ They will become like one [person](#). They will no longer be like two people, but [like one](#).’

Mark 10:9

Therefore what God has joined together, let man not separate (ULT)

The phrase “what God has joined together” refers to any married couple. Alternate translation: “Therefore since God has joined together husband and wife, let no one tear them apart” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)

ULT

⁹ Therefore what [God](#) has joined together, let man not separate.”

UST

⁹ Because that is true, a man must not separate from his wife. [God](#) has joined them together and he wishes them to stay together!”

Mark 10:10

When they were in (ULT)

When Jesus and his apprentices were alone in (UST)

“When Jesus and his disciples were”

they were in the house (ULT)

in a house (UST)

Jesus’ disciples were speaking to him privately. Alternate translation: “were alone in the house” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

asked him...about this (ULT)

asked him...about this (UST)

The word “this” refers to the conversation that Jesus had just had with the Pharisees about divorce.

Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [they](#)
- [a house](#)

ULT

¹⁰ When they were in the [house](#), the [disciples](#) asked him again about this.

UST

¹⁰ When Jesus and his apprentices were alone in [a house](#), [they](#) asked him again about this.

Mark 10:11

Whoever (ULT)

God considers that any man (UST)

“Anyone who”

commits adultery against her (ULT)

Here “her” refers to the first woman he was married to.

Translation Words - ULT

- [commits adultery](#)
- [divorces](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [is committing adultery](#)
- [who divorces](#)

ULT

¹¹ So he said to them, “Whoever [divorces](#) his wife and marries another woman [commits adultery](#) against her.

UST

¹¹ He said to them, “God considers that any man [who divorces](#) his wife and marries another woman [is committing adultery](#).

Mark 10:12**she commits adultery (ULT)
to be committing adultery (UST)**

In this situation she commits adultery again her previous husband.
Alternate translation: "she commits adultery against him" or "she commits adultery against the first man" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [she commits adultery](#)
- [divorces](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to be committing adultery](#)
- [who divorces](#)

ULT

¹² And if she [divorces](#) her husband and marries another man, [she commits adultery.](#)"

UST

¹² God also considers a woman [who divorces](#) her husband and marries another man [to be committing adultery.](#)"

Mark 10:13

Connecting Statement:

When the disciples rebuke the people for bringing their little children to Jesus, he blesses the children and reminds the disciples that people must be as humble as a child to enter the kingdom of God.

Then they brought (ULT)

Now people were bringing (UST)

“Now people were bringing.” This is the next event in the story. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

he might touch them (ULT)

he would touch and bless them (UST)

This means that Jesus would touch them with his hands and bless them. Alternate translation: “he might touch them with his hands and bless them” or “he might lay his hands on them and bless them” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

rebuked them (ULT)

scolded those people (UST)

“rebuked the people”

Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [little children](#)
- [rebuked](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [his apprentices](#)
- [children](#)
- [scolded](#)

ULT

¹³ Then they brought [little children](#) to him so that he might touch them, but the [disciples rebuked](#) them.

UST

¹³ Now people were bringing [children](#) to Jesus so that he would touch and bless them. But [his apprentices scolded](#) those people.

Mark 10:14

when...noticed it...Jesus (ULT)

When...saw that...Jesus...he (UST)

The word "it" refers to the disciples rebuking the people who were bringing the children to Jesus.

he was very displeased (ULT)

became angry (UST)

"became angry"

Permit the little children to come to me, and do not forbid them (ULT)

These two clauses have similar meanings, repeated for emphasis. In some languages it is more natural to emphasize this in another way. Alternate translation: "Be sure to allow the little children to come to me" (See: [Parallelism](#))

do not forbid (ULT)

Do not forbid (UST)

This is a double negative. In some languages it is more natural to use a positive statement. Alternate translation: "allow" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

for the kingdom of God belongs to those who are like them (ULT)

The kingdom belonging to people represents the kingdom including them. Alternate translation: "the kingdom of God includes people who are like them" or "because only people like them are members of the kingdom of God" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [God](#)
- [kingdom of God](#)
- [little children](#)
- [like them](#)
- [kingdom](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus...he](#)
- [God](#)
- [over whom...God...will agree to rule](#)
- [children](#)
- [who have qualities like children](#)
- [over whom...will agree to rule](#)

ULT

¹⁴ But when [Jesus](#) noticed it, he was very displeased and said to them, "Permit the [little children](#) to come to me, and do not forbid them, for the [kingdom](#) of [God](#) belongs to those who are [like them](#)."

UST

¹⁴ When [Jesus](#) saw that, [he](#) became angry. He said to his apprentices, "Allow the [children](#) to come to me! Do not forbid them! It is people [who have qualities like children over whom God will agree to rule](#)."

Mark 10:15

whoever will not receive...not...a little child will definitely not enter into it (ULT)

“if anyone will not receive...child, he will definitely not enter it”

as a little child (ULT)

in the same manner as children would (UST)

Jesus is comparing how people must receive the kingdom of God to how little children would receive it. Alternate translation: “in the same manner as a child would” (See: [Simile](#))

will not receive the kingdom of God (ULT)

who do not welcome God as their king (UST)

“will not accept God as their king”

not...will definitely not enter into it (ULT)

not...God will certainly not agree to rule over them (UST)

The word “it” refers to the kingdom of God.

Translation Words - ULT

- of God
- Truly
- kingdom of God
- a little child
- will...receive
- as
- kingdom

Translation Words - UST

- God as their king
- Note this
- God as their king
- children
- who do...welcome
- in the same manner as...would
- God as their king

ULT

¹⁵ [Truly](#) I say to you, whoever will not [receive](#) the [kingdom of God as a little child](#) will definitely not enter into it.”

UST

¹⁵ [Note this](#): Those [who do](#) not [welcome God as their king in the same manner as children would](#), God will certainly not agree to rule over them.”

Mark 10:16

he took the children into his arms (ULT)
he embraced the children (UST)

“he hugged the children”

Translation Words - ULT

- [and blessed them](#)
- [hands](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and called on God to do good to them](#)
- [hands](#)

ULT

16 Then he took the children into his arms [and blessed them](#) as he placed his [hands](#) on them.

UST

16 Then he embraced the children. He also put his [hands](#) on them [and called on God to do good to them](#).

Mark 10:17

in order to inherit eternal life (ULT)

Here the man speaks of “receiving” as if it were “inheriting.” This metaphor is used to emphasize the importance of receiving. Also, “inherit” here does not mean that someone has to die first. Alternate translation: to receive eternal life” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [life](#)
- [eternal](#)
- [inherit](#)
- [Good](#)
- [Teacher](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [life](#)
- [eternal](#)
- [to have](#)
- [Good](#)
- [teacher](#)

ULT

17 When he started on his journey, a man ran up to him and knelt before him, and asked him, “[Good Teacher](#), what must I do in order to [inherit eternal life](#)?”

UST

17 As Jesus was starting to travel again with his apprentices, a man ran up to him. He knelt before Jesus and asked him, “[Good teacher](#), what must I do [to have eternal life](#)?”

Mark 10:18

Why do you call me good (ULT)

Why do you call me good (UST)

Jesus asks this question to remind the man that no man is good the way God is good. Alternate translation: "You do not understand what you are saying when you call me good." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Jesus...is good except...God...alone (ULT)

"good. Only God is good"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [you call](#)
- [God](#)
- [good](#)
- [is good](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [do you call](#)
- [God](#)
- [good](#)
- [is good](#)

ULT

¹⁸ [Jesus](#) said to him, "Why do [you call](#) me [good](#)? No one [is good](#) except [God](#) alone.

UST

¹⁸ [Jesus](#) said to him, "Why [do you call](#) me [good](#)? Only [God is good](#)!"

Mark 10:19

Do not...testify falsely (ULT)

not...do...lie about others (UST)

“do not testify falsely against anyone” or “do not lie about someone in court”

Translation Words - ULT

- [commandments](#)
- [honor](#)
- [commit adultery](#)
- [father](#)
- [testify falsely](#)
- [You know](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [commandments of Moses](#)
- [and honor](#)
- [do...commit adultery](#)
- [father](#)
- [do...lie about others](#)
- [you know](#)

ULT

¹⁹ [You know](#) the [commandments](#): ‘Do not kill, do not [commit adultery](#), do not steal, do not [testify falsely](#), do not defraud, [honor](#) your [father](#) and mother’.”

UST

¹⁹ But to answer your question, [you know](#) the [commandments of Moses](#): ‘Do not murder anyone, do not [commit adultery](#), do not steal, do not [lie about others](#), do not cheat anyone, [and honor](#) your [father](#) and mother’.”

Mark 10:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- I have obeyed
- Teacher

Translation Words - UST

- I have obeyed
- Teacher

ULT

²⁰ But the man said to him, "[Teacher](#), all these things [I have obeyed](#) from my youth."

UST

²⁰ The man said to him, "[Teacher](#), [I have obeyed](#) all those commandments ever since I was young."

Mark 10:21

One thing you lack (ULT)

There is one thing that you have not yet done (UST)

“There is one thing you are missing.” Here “lack” is a metaphor for needing to do something. Alternate translation: “One thing you need to do” or “There is one thing you have not yet done” or (See: [Metaphor](#))

give it to the poor

Here the word “it” refers to the things he sells and is a metonym for the money he receives when he sells them. Alternate translation: “give the money to the poor” (See: [Metonymy](#))

to the poor (ULT)

to poor people (UST)

This refers to poor people. Alternate translation: “poor people” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

treasure (ULT)

riches (UST)

wealth, valuable things

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [Then Jesus](#)
- [and loved](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [and loved](#)

ULT

²¹ [Then Jesus](#) looked at him [and loved](#) him. So he said to him, “One thing you lack. Go, sell all that you have, and give it to the poor, and you will have treasure in [heaven](#). Then come, follow me.”

UST

²¹ [Jesus](#) looked at him [and loved](#) him. He said to him, “There is one thing that you have not yet done. You must go home, sell all that you possess, and then give the money to poor people. As a result, you will have riches in [heaven](#). After you have done what I have told you, come and follow me!”

Mark 10:22

one who had many possessions (ULT)
very rich (UST)

“owned many things”

Translation Words - ULT

- [possessions](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [very rich](#)

ULT

²² But he became very sad at this statement, and went away grieving, because he was one who had many [possessions](#).

UST

²² The man became disappointed when he heard Jesus' instructions. He went away sad, because he was [very rich](#).

Mark 10:23

How difficult it is (ULT)

It is very difficult (UST)

"It is very difficult"

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- of God
- to...disciples
- kingdom of God
- kingdom

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus...he
- for God
- to...apprentices
- for God...to rule over them
- to rule over them

ULT

²³ Then [Jesus](#) looked around and said to his [disciples](#), "How difficult it is for those who have riches to enter into the [kingdom of God](#)!"

UST

²³ [Jesus](#) looked around at the people. Then [he](#) exclaimed to his [apprentices](#), "It is very difficult for people who are wealthy to agree [for God to rule over them](#)."

Mark 10:24

The...But Jesus answered and said to them again (ULT)

"Jesus said to his disciples again"

Children, how (ULT)

My dear friends...very difficult (UST)

"My children, how." Jesus is teaching them as a father would teach his children. Alternate translation: "My friends, how" (See: [Metaphor](#))

how hard it is (ULT)

it is very difficult (UST)

"it is very hard"

Translation Words - ULT

- [But Jesus](#)
- [of God](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [kingdom of God](#)
- [Children](#)
- [were astonished](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [hard](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [for God](#)
- [apprentices](#)
- [for God...to rule over them](#)
- [My dear friends](#)
- [were confused](#)
- [to rule over them](#)
- [very difficult](#)

ULT

²⁴ The [disciples were astonished](#) at his words. [But Jesus](#) answered and said to them again, "[Children](#), how [hard](#) it is to enter into the [kingdom of God](#)!"

UST

²⁴ The [apprentices were confused](#) by what he said. [Jesus](#) said again, "[My dear friends](#), it is [very difficult](#) for anyone to agree [for God to rule over them](#)."

Mark 10:25

It is easier...to enter into the kingdom of God (ULT)
In fact, it would be easier...to accept God to rule over them (UST)

Jesus uses an exaggeration to emphasize how very difficult it is for rich people to get into the kingdom of God. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

It is easier for a camel (ULT)
In fact, it would be easier for a very large animal like a camel (UST)

This speaks of an impossible situation. If you cannot state this in this way in your language, it can be written as a hypothetical situation. Alternate translation: "It would be easier for a camel" (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

the eye of a needle (ULT)
the eye of a needle (UST)

"the hole of a needle." This refers to the small hole in the end of a sewing needle that thread passes through.

Translation Words - ULT

- of God
- kingdom of God
- for a camel
- kingdom

Translation Words - UST

- to accept God to rule over them
- to accept God to rule over them
- for a very large animal like a camel
- to accept God to rule over them

ULT

²⁵ It is easier [for a camel](#) to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich person to enter into the [kingdom of God](#)."

UST

²⁵ In fact, it would be easier [for a very large animal like a camel](#) to enter through the eye of a needle than for rich people [to accept God to rule over them](#)."

Mark 10:26

They were greatly astonished (ULT)

"The disciples were"

Then who can be saved (ULT)

If that is so, then no one will be saved (UST)

This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "If that is so, then no one will be saved!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [be saved](#)
- [were...astonished](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [be saved](#)
- [were...astonished](#)

ULT

²⁶ They were greatly [astonished](#), saying to each other, "Then who can [be saved](#)?"

UST

²⁶ The apprentices were very [astonished](#). So they said to each other, "If that is so, then no one will [be saved](#)!"

Mark 10:27

With people it is impossible, but not with God (ULT)

The understood information may be supplied. Alternate translation: "It is impossible for people to save themselves, but God can save them" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#) (2)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#) (2)

ULT

²⁷ [Jesus](#) looked at them and said, "With people it is impossible, but not with [God](#). For all things are possible with [God](#)."

UST

²⁷ [Jesus](#) looked at them and then he said, "Yes, it is impossible for people to save themselves! But [God](#) certainly can save them, because [God](#) can do anything!"

Mark 10:28

Look, we have left everything and have followed you (ULT)

Look, we have left behind everything and followed you (UST)

Here the word "Look" is used to draw attention to the words that come next. Similar emphasis can be expressed in other ways.
Alternate translation: "We have left everything and have followed you"

have left everything (ULT)

have left behind everything (UST)

"have left everything behind"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Peter](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Peter](#)

ULT

²⁸ [Peter](#) began to speak to him, "Look, we have left everything and have followed you."

UST

²⁸ [Peter](#) said, "Look, we have left behind everything and followed you."

Mark 10:29

or...lands (ULT)

“or plots of ground” or “or the land that he owns”

for my sake (ULT)

for me (UST)

“for my cause” or “for me”

for the gospel (ULT)

for the good news (UST)

“to proclaim the gospel”

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- brothers
- Truly
- gospel
- children
- father
- sisters
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- their brothers
- I want you to know this
- good news
- their children
- their father
- their sisters
- their houses

ULT

²⁹ [Jesus](#) said, “[Truly](#) I say to you, there is no one who has left [house](#), or [brothers](#), or [sisters](#), or mother, or [father](#), or [children](#), or lands, for my sake, and for the [gospel](#),

UST

²⁹ [Jesus](#) replied, “[I want you to know this](#): Those who have left [their houses](#), [their brothers](#), [their sisters](#), [their father](#), their mother, [their children](#), or their plots of ground for me and for the [good news](#),

Mark 10:30

who will not receive (ULT)

Jesus finishes a sentence that begins with the words “there is no one who has left” (verse 29). The whole sentence can be stated positively. “everyone who has left house, or brothers, or sisters, or mother, or father, or children, or lands, for my sake, and for the gospel, will receive” (See: [Double Negatives](#) and [Litotes](#))

in this time (ULT)

in...this life (UST)

“this life” or “this present age”

brothers, and sisters, and mothers, and children

Like the list in verse 29, this describes the family in general. The word “fathers” is missing in verse 30, but it does not significantly change the meaning.

with persecutions, and in the age to come, eternal life (ULT)

This can be reworded so that the ideas in the abstract noun “persecution” are expressed with the verb “persecute.” Because the sentence is so long and complicated, “will receive” can be repeated. Alternate translation: “and even though people persecute them, in the world to come, they will receive eternal life” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

in the age to come

“in the future world” or “in the future

Translation Words - ULT

- [life](#)
- [eternal](#)
- [brothers](#)
- [children](#)
- [will...receive](#)
- [time](#)
- [persecutions](#)
- [sisters](#)
- [age](#)
- [houses](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [they will have...life](#)
- [eternal](#)
- [people as dear as brothers](#)
- [children](#)
- [they will receive](#)
- [life](#)

ULT

³⁰ who will not [receive](#) a hundred times as much now in this [time](#): [houses](#), and [brothers](#), and [sisters](#), and mothers, and [children](#), and lands, with [persecutions](#), and in the [age](#) to come, [eternal life](#).

UST

³⁰ [they will receive](#) in this [life](#) a hundred times as much as they left behind. [That will include houses](#) and [people as dear as brothers](#) and [sisters](#) and mothers and [children](#), and plots of ground. Furthermore, although [people will persecute them here on earth because they believe in me](#), in the [future age](#) [they will have eternal life](#).

- people will persecute them here on earth because they believe in me
- sisters
- future age
- That will include houses

Mark 10:31

who are first will be last, and the last first (ULT)
who now consider themselves to be very important will
be unimportant at that future time, and many who
now consider themselves to be unimportant will be
very important at that future time (UST)

Here the words “first” and “last” are opposites of one another. Jesus speaks of being the “important” as being “first” and of being the “unimportant” as being “last.” Alternate translation: “are important will be unimportant, and those who are unimportant will be important” (See: [Metaphor](#))

the last first (ULT)
many who now consider themselves to be unimportant
will be very important at that future time (UST)

The phrase “the last” refers to people who are “last.” Also, the understood verb in this clause may be supplied. Alternate translation: “those who are last will be first” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

ULT

³¹ But many who are first will be last, and the last first.”

UST

³¹ But I warn you all: Many who now consider themselves to be very important will be unimportant at that future time, and many who now consider themselves to be unimportant will be very important at that future time!”

Mark 10:32

They were on the road...Jesus was going ahead of them (ULT)

Some days later as they continued to travel, Jesus and his apprentices were walking on the road...Jesus was walking ahead of them (UST)

"Jesus and his disciples were walking on the road...and Jesus was in front of his disciples"

those who...were following behind (ULT)
the other people...and...who were with them (UST)

"those who were following behind them." Some people were walking behind Jesus and his disciples.

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- were afraid
- twelve
- Jerusalem
- The disciples were amazed

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- were afraid
- twelve apprentices
- Jerusalem city
- The apprentices were astonished

ULT

³² They were on the road, going up to [Jerusalem](#), and [Jesus](#) was going ahead of them. [The disciples were amazed](#), and those who were following behind [were afraid](#). Then Jesus took the [twelve](#) aside again and began to tell them what was going to happen to him.

UST

³² Some days later as they continued to travel, Jesus and his apprentices were walking on the road that leads up to [Jerusalem city](#). [Jesus](#) was walking ahead of them. [The apprentices were astonished](#) and the other people who were with them [were afraid](#). Along the way he took the [twelve apprentices](#) to a place by themselves. Then he began to tell them again about what was going to happen to him;

Mark 10:33

See (ULT)

Listen carefully (UST)

“Look” or “Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

the Son of Man will be delivered (ULT) will arrest me, the Son of Man (UST)

Jesus is speaking about himself. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “I, the Son of Man, will” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the Son of Man will be delivered to the (ULT) the...will arrest me, the Son of Man (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “someone will deliver the Son of Man to” or “they will hand the Son of Man over to” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

They will condemn (ULT)

They will declare that (UST)

The word “They” refers to the chief priests and the scribes.

to the...him...deliver...Gentiles (ULT) the...I...they will take...Roman authorities (UST)

“put him under the control of the Gentiles”

Translation Words - ULT

- [They will condemn](#)
- [the scribes](#)
- [Gentiles](#)
- [Son of Man](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [will be delivered](#)
- [deliver](#)
- [to death](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [They will declare that](#)
- [the men who teach the laws](#)
- [Roman authorities](#)
- [Son of Man](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [Jerusalem. There](#)
- [will arrest](#)
- [they will take](#)

ULT

³³ “See, we are going up to [Jerusalem](#), and the [Son of Man will be delivered](#) to the [chief priests](#) and [the scribes](#). [They will condemn](#) him [to death](#) and [deliver](#) him to the [Gentiles](#).

UST

³³ he said, “Listen carefully! We are going up to [Jerusalem](#). [There](#) the [chief priests](#) and [the men who teach the laws](#) [will arrest](#) me, the [Son of Man](#). [They will declare that](#) I [must die](#). Then [they will take](#) me to the [Roman authorities](#).

- must die

Mark 10:34

They will mock (ULT)

Their men will ridicule (UST)

“People will mock”

kill him (ULT)

they will kill me (UST)

“kill him”

he will rise (ULT)

I will become alive again (UST)

This refers to rising from the dead. Alternate translation: “he will rise from being dead” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [They will mock](#)
- [he will rise](#)
- [days](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Their men will ridicule](#)
- [I will become alive again](#)
- [the...day after that](#)

ULT

³⁴ [They will mock](#) him, spit on him, whip him, and kill him, but after three [days](#) [he will rise](#).”

UST

³⁴ [Their men will ridicule](#) me and spit on me. They will whip me, and then they will kill me. But on the third [day after that](#), [I will become alive again](#)!”

Mark 10:35

we desire...we ask...for us (ULT)

we...will ask...for us (UST)

These words refer only to James and John. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sons](#)
- [of Zebedee](#)
- [John](#)
- [James](#)
- [Teacher](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [two sons](#)
- [of Zebedee](#)
- [John](#)
- [James](#)
- [Teacher](#)

ULT

³⁵ Then [James](#) and [John](#), the [sons of Zebedee](#), came up to him, saying to him, "[Teacher](#), we desire that you to do for us whatever we ask you."

UST

³⁵ Along the way, [James](#) and [John](#), who were the [two sons of Zebedee](#), approached Jesus and said to him, "[Teacher](#), please do for us what we will ask you to do!"

Mark 10:36

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

³⁶ So he said to them, "What do you want me to do for you?"

UST

³⁶ He said to them, "What do you want me to do for you?"

Mark 10:37

in your glory (ULT)

When you rule in your kingdom (UST)

“when you are glorified.” The phrase “in your glory” refers to when Jesus is glorified and rules over his kingdom. Alternate translation: “when you rule in your kingdom” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [glory](#)
- [right hand](#)
- [left hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [rule in your kingdom](#)
- [right side](#)
- [left side](#)

ULT

³⁷ They said to him, “Grant to us that we might sit in your [glory](#), one at your [right hand](#) and one at your [left hand](#).”

UST

³⁷ They said to him, “When you [rule in your kingdom](#), let one of us sit at your [right side](#) and one sit at your [left side](#).”

Mark 10:38

You do not know (ULT)

You do not understand (UST)

“You do not understand”

to drink the cup which I will drink (ULT)

you endure suffering like I am about to suffer (UST)

Here “cup” refers to what Jesus must suffer. Suffering is often referred to as drinking from a cup. Alternate translation: “drink the cup of suffering that I will drink” or “drink from the cup of suffering that I will drink from” (See: [Metaphor](#))

to be baptized with the baptism with which I will be baptized (ULT)

Here “baptism” and being baptized represent suffering. Just as water covers a person during baptism, suffering will overwhelm Jesus. Alternate translation: “endure the baptism of suffering which I will suffer” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [But Jesus](#)
- [baptism](#)
- [will be baptized](#)
- [to be baptized](#)
- [You...know](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [kind of death](#)
- [am about to die](#)
- [Can you die](#)
- [You do...understand](#)

ULT

³⁸ [But Jesus](#) replied to them, “You do not [know](#) what you are asking. Are you able to drink the cup which I will drink or [to be baptized](#) with the [baptism](#) with which I [will be baptized](#)?”

UST

³⁸ But [Jesus](#) said to them, “[You do](#) not [understand](#) what you are asking for.” Then he asked them, “Can you endure suffering like I am about to suffer? [Can you die](#) the [kind of death](#) I [am about to die](#)?”

Mark 10:39

We are able (ULT)

Yes, we are able to do that (UST)

They respond this way, meaning that they are able to drink the same cup and endure the same baptism. (See: [Ellipsis](#))

you will drink (ULT)

will suffer (UST)

“you will drink as well”

Translation Words - ULT

- [So Jesus](#)
- [baptism](#)
- [am baptized](#)
- [you will be baptized](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [to kill you](#)
- [they will kill](#)
- [you will endure others](#)

ULT

³⁹ They said to him, “We are able.” [So Jesus](#) said to them, “The cup that I will drink, you will drink, and with the [baptism](#) with which I [am baptized](#), [you will be baptized](#).”

UST

³⁹ They said to him, “Yes, we are able to do that!” Then [Jesus](#) said to them, “It is true that you will endure suffering like I will suffer, and [you will endure others to kill you](#) as [they will kill](#) me.”

Mark 10:40

But to sit at my right hand...is not mine to give (ULT)

"But I am not the one who allows people to sit at my right hand or my left hand"

but it is for those for whom it has been prepared (ULT)

"but those places are for those for whom they have been prepared."
The word "it" refers to the places to his right hand and to his left hand.

it has been prepared (ULT)

whom he chooses in advance (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has prepared it" or "God has prepared them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [right hand](#)
- [my left hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [next](#)
- [hand](#)

ULT

⁴⁰ But to sit at my [right hand](#) or at [my left hand](#) is not mine to give, but it is for those for whom it has been prepared."

UST

⁴⁰ But I am not the one who chooses who will sit [next](#) to me. God will give those places to the ones whom he chooses in advance."

Mark 10:41

When...heard about this (ULT) later heard (UST)

The word "this" refers to James and John asking to sit at Jesus' right and left hands.

Translation Words - ULT

- [John](#)
- [James](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [John](#)
- [James](#)

ULT

⁴¹ When the other ten disciples heard about this, they began to be very angry with [James](#) and [John](#).

UST

⁴¹ The other ten apprentices later heard about what [James](#) and [John](#) had requested. So they said they were unhappy with the two apprentices.

Mark 10:42

Jesus called them to himself (ULT)

Jesus called them all together (UST)

"Jesus called his disciples"

those who are considered rulers of the Gentiles (ULT)

kings and others who rule over people (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) people in general consider these people the rulers of the Gentiles. Alternate translation: "those whom people consider to be the rulers of the Gentiles" or 2) the Gentiles consider these people their rulers. Alternate translation: "those whom the Gentiles think of as their rulers" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

dominate (ULT)

enjoy showing that they are powerful (UST)

have control or power over

exercise authority over (ULT)

enjoy commanding (UST)

"flaunt their authority." This means that they show or use their authority in an overbearing way.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [called...to himself](#)
- [dominate](#)
- [Gentiles](#)
- [exercise authority over](#)
- [rulers](#)
- [You know](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [called...all together](#)
- [enjoy showing that they are powerful](#)
- [people](#)
- [enjoy commanding](#)
- [kings and others who rule over](#)
- [You know](#)

ULT

⁴² Then [Jesus called](#) them [to himself](#) and said to them, "[You know](#) that those who are considered [rulers](#) of the [Gentiles](#) [dominate](#) them, and their high officials [exercise authority over](#) them.

UST

⁴² Then [Jesus called](#) them [all together](#) and said, "[You know](#) that [kings and others who rule over people](#) [enjoy showing that they are powerful](#). You also know that their officials [enjoy commanding](#) others.

Mark 10:43

But it shall not be this way among you (ULT)

This refers back to the previous verse about the Gentile rulers. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "But do not be like them" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

to become great (ULT)

God to consider them great must become (UST)

"be highly respected"

Translation Words - ULT

- [servant](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [like servants](#)

ULT

⁴³ But it shall not be this way among you. Instead, whoever wishes to become great among you must be your [servant](#),

UST

⁴³ But do not be like them! On the contrary, all those among you who want God to consider them great must become [like servants](#) to the rest of you.

Mark 10:44

to be first (ULT)

God to consider him to be the most important (UST)

This is a metaphor for being the most important. Alternate translation: "to be the most important" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the slave](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [a slave](#)

ULT

⁴⁴ and whoever wishes to be first among you must be [the slave](#) of all.

UST

⁴⁴ Furthermore, if anyone among you wants God to consider him to be the most important, he must act like [a slave](#) for the rest of you.

Mark 10:45

For...the Son of Man did not come to be served (ULT)

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "For the Son of Man did not come to have people serve him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

to be served, but to serve (ULT)

to be served. On the contrary, I came to serve others (UST)

"to be served by people, but to serve people"

for many (ULT)

many people...for them (UST)

"for many people"

Translation Words - ULT

- [life](#)
- [to be served](#)
- [to serve](#)
- [as a ransom](#)
- [Son of Man](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [life](#)
- [to be served](#)
- [I came to serve others](#)
- [to free](#)
- [Son of Man](#)

ULT

⁴⁵ For even the [Son of Man](#) did not come [to be served](#), but [to serve](#), and to give his [life as a ransom](#) for many."

UST

⁴⁵ I, the [Son of Man](#), did not come [to be served](#). On the contrary, [I came to serve others](#) and [to free](#) many people by giving my [life](#) for them."

Mark 10:46

Connecting Statement:

As Jesus and his disciples continue walking toward Jerusalem, Jesus heals blind Bartimaeus, who then walks with them.

**the son of Timaeus, Bartimaeus, a blind beggar (ULT)
a blind man who habitually begged for money...His
name was Bartimaeus, and his father's name was
Timaeus (UST)**

"a blind beggar named Bartimaeus, the son of Timaeus." Bartimaeus is the name of a man. Timaeus is his father's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [Jericho](#)
- [Jericho](#)
- [beggar](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and his father's name was](#)
- [disciple](#)
- [Jericho town](#)
- [Jericho](#)
- [who habitually begged for money](#)

ULT

⁴⁶ Then they came to [Jericho](#). As he was going out from [Jericho](#) with his [disciples](#) and a great crowd, the [son](#) of Timaeus, Bartimaeus, a blind [beggar](#), was sitting by the road.

UST

⁴⁶ On the way to Jerusalem, Jesus and his apprentices came to [Jericho town](#). Then, while they were leaving [Jericho](#) along with a great crowd, a blind man [who habitually begged for money](#) was sitting beside the road. His name was Bartimaeus, [and his father's name was](#) Timaeus.

Mark 10:47**When he heard...that...Jesus...it was (ULT)****When he heard people say that Jesus...was passing by (UST)**

Bartimaeus heard people saying that it was Jesus. Alternate translation: "When he heard people saying that it was Jesus" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Son of David (ULT)**You who are the Messiah descended from King David (UST)**

Jesus is called the Son of David because he is a descendant of King David. Alternate translation: "You who are the Messiah descended from King David" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [Son](#)
- [have mercy on](#)
- [Nazarene](#)
- [of David](#)
- [to shout](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [You who are the Messiah descended from King David](#)
- [be merciful](#)
- [from Nazareth](#)
- [You who are the Messiah descended from King David](#)
- [he shouted](#)

ULT

⁴⁷ When he heard that it was [Jesus](#) the [Nazarene](#), he began [to shout](#) and to say, "[Jesus](#), [Son of David](#), [have mercy on me](#)!"

UST

⁴⁷ When he heard people say that [Jesus from Nazareth](#) was passing by, [he shouted](#), "[Jesus! You who are the Messiah descended from King David, be merciful to me](#)!"

Mark 10:48

rebuked...Many (ULT)

people scolded...Many (UST)

“Many people rebuked”

much more (ULT)

even more (UST)

“even more”

Translation Words - ULT

- Son
- have mercy on
- of David
- cried out
- rebuked

Translation Words - UST

- You who are the Messiah descended from King David
- be merciful
- You who are the Messiah descended from King David
- shouted
- people scolded

ULT

⁴⁸ Many [rebuked](#) the blind man in order to silence him. But he [cried out](#) much more, “[Son of David](#), [have mercy on me](#)!”

UST

⁴⁸ Many [people scolded](#) him and told him that he should be quiet. But he [shouted](#) even more, “[You who are the Messiah descended from King David](#), [be merciful](#) to me!”

Mark 10:49

and commanded him to be called (ULT)
and said, "Call him to come over here (UST)

This can be translated in active form or as a direct quote. Alternate translation: "commanded others to call him" or "commanded them, 'Call him to come over here.'" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

they called (ULT)
They called (UST)

The word "They" refers to the crowd.

Take courage (ULT)
cheer up (UST)

"Have courage" or "Do not be afraid"

He is calling you (ULT)
Jesus is calling you! So (UST)

"Jesus is calling for you"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [to be called](#)
- [they called](#)
- [He is calling](#)
- [and commanded](#)
- [Take courage](#)
- [Get up](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [Call...to come over here](#)
- [They called](#)
- [Jesus is calling...So](#)
- [and said](#)
- [cheer up](#)
- [and get up and come](#)

ULT

⁴⁹ Then [Jesus](#) stopped [and commanded](#) him [to be called](#). So [they called](#) the blind man, saying to him, "[Take courage! Get up! He is calling](#) you."

UST

⁴⁹ [Jesus](#) stopped [and said](#), "[Call](#) him [to come over here!](#)" [They called](#) the blind man, saying, "[Jesus is calling](#) you! [So cheer up and get up and come!](#)"

Mark 10:50

sprang up (ULT)
as he jumped up (UST)

“jumped up”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [sprang up](#)
- [coat](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [as he jumped up](#)
- [cloak](#)

ULT

⁵⁰ He threw aside his [coat](#), [sprang up](#), and came to [Jesus](#).

UST

⁵⁰ He threw aside his [cloak as he jumped up](#), and he came to [Jesus](#).

Mark 10:51

answered him (ULT)

asked him (UST)

“answered the blind man”

I want to receive my sight (ULT)

I want to be able to see again (UST)

“to be able to see”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)

ULT

⁵¹ Then [Jesus](#) answered him and said, “What do you want me to do for you?” The blind man said to him, “Rabbi, I want to receive my sight.”

UST

⁵¹ [Jesus](#) asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” The blind man said to him, “Teacher, I want to be able to see again!”

Mark 10:52

Your faith has healed you (ULT)

I am healing you because you believed in me. So (UST)

This phrase is written this way to place emphasis on the man's faith. Jesus heals the man because he believes that Jesus can heal him. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "I am healing you because you believed in me" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

to him...he followed (ULT)

to him...he went with (UST)

"he followed Jesus"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Then Jesus](#)
- [faith](#)
- [has healed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [because...believed in me. So](#)
- [I am healing](#)

ULT

⁵² [Then Jesus](#) said to him, "Go. Your [faith has healed](#) you." Immediately he received his sight, and he followed him on the road.

10:7 ^[1] Some manuscripts add, *and be united with his wife*, but the best manuscripts do not.

UST

⁵² [Jesus](#) said to him, "[I am healing](#) you [because](#) you [believed in me. So](#) you may go!" He could see immediately. And he went with Jesus along the road.

Mark 11

Mark 11 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 11:9-10, 17, which are words from the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

The donkey and the colt

Jesus rode into Jerusalem on an animal. In this way he was like a king who came into a city after he had won an important battle. Also, the kings of Israel in the Old Testament rode on a donkeys. Other kings rode on horses. So Jesus was showing that he was the king of Israel and that he was not like other kings.

Matthew, Mark, Luke, and John all wrote about this event. Matthew and Mark wrote that the disciples brought Jesus a donkey. John wrote that Jesus found a donkey. Luke wrote that they brought him a colt. Only Matthew wrote that there were both a donkey and a colt. No one knows for sure whether Jesus rode the donkey or the colt. It is best to translate each of these accounts as it appears in the ULT without trying to make them all say exactly the same thing. (See: Matthew 21:1-7 and Mark 11:1-7 and Luke 19:29-36 and John 12:14-15)

Mark 11:1

Now as they came to Jerusalem...Bethphage and Bethany, at the Mount of Olives

“When Jesus and his disciples came near to Jerusalem, they came to Bethphage and Bethany near the Mount of Olives” They have come to Bethphage and Bethany in the vicinity of Jerusalem.

Bethphage (ULT)

Bethphage (UST)

This is the name of a village. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of...disciples](#)
- [Mount of Olives](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Bethany](#)
- [Jesus sent out](#)
- [of Olives](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of...apprentices](#)
- [Mount of Olives](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Bethany villages](#)
- [Then Jesus called](#)
- [of Olives](#)

ULT

¹ Now when they came to [Jerusalem](#), to Bethphage and [Bethany](#), at the [Mount of Olives](#), [Jesus sent out](#) two of his [disciples](#)

UST

¹ When Jesus and his apprentices came near to [Jerusalem](#), they came to Bethphage and [Bethany villages](#) near the [Mount of Olives](#). [Then Jesus called](#) two of his [apprentices](#)

Mark 11:2

the...opposite...us (ULT)

that...just ahead...of us (UST)

“ahead of us”

a colt (ULT)

a young donkey (UST)

This refers to a young donkey that is large enough to carry a man.

on which no one has yet sat (ULT)

that no one has ever ridden (UST)

This can be written in active form. Alternate translation: “that no one has ever ridden” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

² and said to them, “Go into the village opposite us. As soon as you enter it, you will find a colt tied there, on which no one has yet sat. Untie it and bring it to me.

UST

² and said to them, “Go to that village just ahead of us. As soon as you enter it, you will see a young donkey tied up that no one has ever ridden. Untie it and bring it to me.

Mark 11:3

Why are you doing this (ULT)

Why are you doing that (UST)

It can be written clearly what the word "this" refers to. Alternate translation: "Why are you untying and taking the colt" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

has need of it (ULT)

needs to use it (UST)

"needs it"

they will immediately send it back here (ULT)

He will send it back here with someone as soon as he no longer needs it (UST)

Jesus will send it back promptly when he is finished using it. Alternate translation: "will immediately send it back when he no longer needs it" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord](#)
- [they will...send](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Lord](#)
- [He will send...with someone](#)

ULT

³ If anyone says to you, 'Why are you doing this?' you should say, 'The [Lord](#) has need of it and [they will](#) immediately [send](#) it back here.'

UST

³ If anyone says to you, 'Why are you doing that?' say, 'The [Lord](#) needs to use it. [He will send](#) it back here [with someone](#) as soon as he no longer needs it.'

Mark 11:4

they went away (ULT)

the two apprentices went (UST)

“The two disciples went”

a colt (ULT)

a young donkey (UST)

This refers to a young donkey that is large enough to carry a man.
See how you translated this in [Mark 11:2](#).

ULT

⁴ So they went away and found a colt tied at a door outside by the street, and they untied it.

UST

⁴ So the two apprentices went and found a young donkey. It was tied close to the door of a house, which was beside the street. Then they untied it.

Mark 11:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

⁵ Then some of the people who were standing there said to them, "What are you doing, untying that colt?"

UST

⁵ Some of the people who were there said to them, "Why are you untying that donkey?"

Mark 11:6

they...spoke (ULT)

They...told (UST)

“They responded”

as Jesus had told them (ULT)

what Jesus had said (UST)

“as Jesus had told them to respond.” This refers to how Jesus had told them to respond to people’s questions about taking the colt.

the people gave them permission (ULT)

the people permitted them to take the donkey (UST)

This means that they allowed them to continue doing what they were doing. Alternate translation: “let them take the donkey with them” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [had told them](#)
- [as](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [had said](#)
- [what](#)

ULT

⁶ So they spoke to them [as Jesus had told them](#), and the people gave them permission.

UST

⁶ They told them [what Jesus had said](#). So the people permitted them to take the donkey.

Mark 11:7

Then...threw their cloaks on it...Jesus sat on it (ULT)

"laid their cloaks on its back so Jesus could ride it." It is easier to ride a colt or a horse when there is a blanket or something similar on its back. In this case, the disciples threw their cloaks on it.

cloaks (ULT)

cloaks (UST)

"coats" or "robes"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [cloaks](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [cloaks](#)

ULT

⁷ Then the two disciples brought the colt to [Jesus](#) and threw their [cloaks](#) on it, and Jesus sat on it.

UST

⁷ The two apprentices brought the donkey to [Jesus](#) and put their [cloaks](#) on it to make something for him to sit on.

Mark 11:8

Many people...spread their garments on the road (ULT)
Many people spread their cloaks on the road in front of him...and spread...along the road (UST)

It was a tradition to lay garments on the road in front of important people to honor them. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "Many people spread their garments on the road to honor him" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

and others spread branches they had cut from the fields (ULT)

It was a tradition to lay palm branches on the road in front of an important people to honor them. Alternate translation: "others spread branches on the road that they had cut from the fields, also to honor him" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [garments](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [cloaks](#)

ULT

⁸ Many people spread their [garments](#) on the road, and others spread branches they had cut from the fields.

UST

⁸ Many people spread their [cloaks](#) on the road in front of him. Others cut branches from palm trees in nearby fields and spread them along the road.

Mark 11:9

those who went before him...those who followed (ULT)
The people...behind him (UST)

“who followed him”

Hosanna (ULT)
Praise God (UST)

This word means “save us,” but people also shouted it joyfully when they wanted to praise God. You can translate it according to how it was used, or you can write “Hosanna” using your language’s way of spelling that word. Alternate translation: “Praise God” (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

Blessed is the one who comes (ULT)
and “May God bless this one who comes (UST)

This is referring to Jesus. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “Blessed are you, the one” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

in the name of the Lord (ULT)
with his authority (UST)

This is a metonym for the Lord’s authority. Alternate translation: “the authority of the Lord” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Blessed is (ULT)
and “May God bless (UST)

“May God bless”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Blessed is](#)
- [of the Lord](#)
- [the name](#)
- [shouted](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and “May God bless](#)
- [his](#)
- [authority](#)
- [were all shouting](#)

ULT

⁹ Both those who went before him and those who followed [shouted](#), “Hosanna! [Blessed is](#) the one who comes in [the name of the Lord](#).”

UST

⁹ The people who were going in front of him and behind him [were all shouting](#), “Praise God!” [and “May God bless](#) this one who comes with [his authority](#).”

Mark 11:10

Blessed is the coming kingdom of our father David (ULT)

May you be blessed when you rule like our ancestor King David ruled (UST)

“Blessed is our father David’s coming kingdom.” This refers to Jesus coming and ruling as king. The word “blessed” can be translated as an active verb. Alternate translation: “Blessed be the coming of your kingdom” or “May God bless you as you rule your coming kingdom” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

of our father David (ULT)

like our ancestor King David ruled (UST)

Here David’s descendant who will rule is referred to as David himself. Alternate translation: “of the greatest descendant of our father David” or “that David’s greatest descendant will rule” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Hosanna in the highest (ULT)

and “Praise God who is in the highest heaven (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) “Praise God who is in heaven” or 2) “Let those who are in heaven shout ‘Hosanna.’”

the highest (ULT)

the highest heaven (UST)

Here heaven is spoken of as “the highest.” Alternate translation: “the highest heaven” or “heaven” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Blessed is](#)
- [David](#)
- [of...father](#)
- [highest](#)
- [kingdom](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [May you be blessed](#)
- [King David](#)
- [like...ancestor...ruled](#)
- [highest heaven](#)
- [when you rule](#)

ULT

¹⁰ [Blessed is](#) the coming [kingdom](#) of our [father David](#)! Hosanna in the [highest](#)!”

UST

¹⁰ They also shouted, “[May you be blessed when you rule like](#) our [ancestor King David ruled](#)!” and “Praise God who is in the [highest heaven](#)!”

Mark 11:11

The hour was already late (ULT)

because it was already late in the afternoon (UST)

“because it was late in the day”

into...so he went out...Bethany with the twelve (ULT)

“he and his twelve disciples left Jerusalem and went to Bethany”

Translation Words - ULT

- [twelve](#)
- [temple](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Bethany](#)
- [hour](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [twelve apprentices](#)
- [temple courtyard](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Bethany](#)
- [because it was already late in the afternoon](#)

ULT

¹¹ Then Jesus entered into [Jerusalem](#), into the [temple](#), and looked around at everything. The [hour](#) was already late, so he went out to [Bethany](#) with the [twelve](#).

UST

¹¹ Jesus entered [Jerusalem](#) with them, and then he went into the [temple courtyard](#). After he looked around at everything there, he left the city [because it was already late in the afternoon](#). He returned to [Bethany](#) with the [twelve apprentices](#).

Mark 11:12

when they returned from Bethany (ULT)

“while they were going back to Jerusalem from Bethany”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Bethany](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Bethany](#)

ULT

¹² Now the next day, when they returned from [Bethany](#), he was hungry.

UST

¹² The next day, as Jesus and his apprentices were leaving [Bethany](#), he felt hungry.

Mark 11:13

Connecting Statement:

This happens while Jesus and his disciples are walking to Jerusalem.

to see if...he could find any fruit on it (ULT)

to see if...he could find any figs on it (UST)

“if there was any fruit on it”

he found nothing except leaves (ULT)

This means that he did not find any figs. Alternate translation: “he found only leaves and no figs on the tree” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Litotes](#))

the...season (ULT)

the...season (UST)

“the time of year”

Translation Words - ULT

- [season](#)
- [a fig tree](#)
- [for figs](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [season](#)
- [a fig tree](#)
- [for figs to appear](#)

ULT

¹³ Seeing from far away [a fig tree](#) that had leaves, he went to see if he could find any fruit on it. But when he came to it, he found nothing except leaves, for it was not the [season for figs](#).

UST

¹³ He saw in the distance [a fig tree](#) with all its leaves, so he went to it to see if he could find any figs on it. But when he came to it, he found no fruit on it, because it was not yet the [season for figs to appear](#).

Mark 11:14

and spoke to it, "No one will ever eat fruit from you again (ULT)

Jesus speaks to the fig tree and curses it. He speaks to it so that his disciples hear him. (See: [Apostrophe](#))

**and spoke to it (ULT)
He said to the tree (UST)**

"He spoke to the tree"

his disciples heard it (ULT)

The word "it" refers to Jesus speaking to the fig tree.

Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [fruit](#)
- [ever](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [apprentices](#)
- [fruit](#), [fruitful](#), [unfruitful](#)
- [ever](#)

ULT

¹⁴ Then he answered and spoke to it, "No one will [ever](#) eat [fruit](#) from you again." And his [disciples](#) heard it.

UST

¹⁴ He said to the tree, "No one will [ever](#) eat from you again." And his [apprentices](#) heard this.

Mark 11:15

they came (ULT)

Jesus and his apprentices went back (UST)

“Jesus and his disciples came”

and began to cast out those who were selling and those who were buying in the temple (ULT)
people who were selling and buying animals for sacrifices. He chased those people from the temple courtyard (UST)

Jesus is driving these people out of the temple. This can be written clearly. Alternate translation: “began to drive the sellers and buyers out of the temple” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

those who were selling and those who were buying

“the people who were buying and selling”

Translation Words - ULT

- temple
- temple
- Jerusalem
- to cast out
- pigeons

Translation Words - UST

- temple courtyard
- temple courtyard
- Jerusalem
- He chased
- pigeons for sacrifice

ULT

¹⁵ Then they came to [Jerusalem](#), and he entered into the [temple](#) and began [to cast out](#) those who were selling and those who were buying in the [temple](#). He also overturned the tables of the money changers and the seats of those who sold [pigeons](#),

UST

¹⁵ Jesus and his apprentices went back into [Jerusalem](#) and entered the [temple courtyard](#). He saw people who were selling and buying animals for sacrifices. [He chased](#) those people from the [temple courtyard](#). He also overturned the tables of those who were selling temple tax money in exchange for Roman coins. And he overturned the seats of the men who were selling [pigeons for sacrifice](#).

Mark 11:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [temple](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [temple area](#)

ULT

¹⁶ and he did not permit that anyone carry merchandise through the [temple](#).

UST

¹⁶ He would not allow anyone who was carrying anything to sell to go through the [temple area](#).

Mark 11:17

General Information:

God had said earlier in his word, through the prophet Isaiah, that his temple would be a house of prayer for all the nations.

Is it not written, 'My house will be called a house of prayer for all the nations' (ULT)

Jesus is rebuking the Jewish leaders for their misuse of the temple. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "It is written in the scriptures that God said, 'I want my house to be called a house where people from all nations may pray.'" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

But you have made it a den of robbers (ULT) but you bandits have made it like a cave where robbers hide (UST)

Jesus compares the people to robbers and the temple to a robbers' den. Alternate translation: "But you are like robbers who have made my house into a robbers' den" (See: [Metaphor](#))

a den of robbers (ULT) like a cave where robbers hide (UST)

"a cave where robbers hide"

Translation Words - ULT

- will be called
- of prayer
- he taught
- of robbers
- nations
- Is it...written
- house
- a house

Translation Words - UST

- I want...to be
- where people...can pray
- as he taught those people
- where robbers hide
- nations
- It is written in the scriptures
- house
- a house

ULT

17 Then [he taught](#) them and said, "[Is it not written](#), 'My [house will be called a house of prayer](#) for all the [nations](#)?' But you have made it a den [of robbers](#)."

UST

17 Then [as he taught those people](#), he said to them, "[It is written in the scriptures](#) that God said, '[I want my house to be a house where people](#) from all [nations can pray](#),' but you bandits have made it like a cave [where robbers hide](#)."

Mark 11:18

they looked for a way (ULT)

They were planning how (UST)

“they were seeking a way”

Translation Words - ULT

- scribes
- they feared
- to kill
- chief priests
- teaching
- was amazed
- they looked for

Translation Words - UST

- men who taught the Jewish laws
- they feared
- they might kill
- chief priests
- what...was teaching
- was amazed
- They were planning

ULT

¹⁸ The [chief priests](#) and the [scribes](#) heard this, and [they looked for](#) a way [to kill](#) him. For [they feared](#) him because the entire crowd [was amazed](#) at his [teaching](#).

UST

¹⁸ The [chief priests](#) and the [men who taught the Jewish laws](#) later heard about what he had done. [They were planning](#) how [they might kill](#) him, but [they feared](#) him because they realized that the crowd [was amazed](#) at [what](#) he [was teaching](#).

Mark 11:19

When...evening came (ULT)

Every evening (UST)

"In the evening"

they departed from the city (ULT)

Jesus and his apprentices would leave the city (UST)

"Jesus and his disciples left the city"

ULT

¹⁹ When evening came, they departed from the city.

UST

¹⁹ Every evening Jesus and his apprentices would leave the city.

Mark 11:20

Connecting Statement:

Jesus uses the example of the fig tree to remind the disciples to have faith in God.

As they walked by (ULT)
while they were going along the road toward Jerusalem (UST)

“were walking along the road”

the fig tree withered away from its roots (ULT)
the fig tree that Jesus had cursed had withered completely (UST)

Translate this statement to clarify that the tree died. Alternate translation: “the fig tree withered away down to its roots and died” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

withered away (ULT)
had withered (UST)

“dried up”

Translation Words - ULT

- [fig tree](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [fig tree that Jesus had cursed](#)

ULT

²⁰ As they walked by in the morning, they saw the [fig tree](#) withered away from its roots.

UST

²⁰ The next morning while they were going along the road toward Jerusalem, they saw that the [fig tree that Jesus had cursed](#) had withered completely.

Mark 11:21**Peter...remembered (ULT)****Peter remembered what Jesus had said to the fig tree (UST)**

It may be helpful to state what Peter remembered. Alternate translation: "Peter remembered what Jesus had said to the fig tree" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Rabbi](#)
- [you cursed](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [fig tree](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Teacher](#)
- [you cursed](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [fig tree](#)

ULT

²¹ [Peter](#) remembered and said to him, "[Rabbi](#), look! The [fig tree](#) that [you cursed](#) has withered away."

UST

²¹ [Peter](#) remembered what Jesus had said to the fig tree and he said to Jesus, "[Teacher](#), look! The [fig tree](#) that [you cursed](#) has withered!"

Mark 11:22

Jesus...answered...and said to them (ULT)

"Jesus replied to his disciples"

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- in God
- faith

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- God
- You must trust that...will do whatever you ask him to do

ULT

²² [Jesus](#) answered and said to them,
"Have [faith in God](#)."

UST

²² [Jesus](#) replied, "[You must trust that God will do whatever you ask him to do!](#)"

Mark 11:23

Truly I say to you (ULT)

Also note this (UST)

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

whoever says (ULT)

If anyone says (UST)

"if anyone says"

does not doubt in his heart but believes (ULT)

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's mind or inner being.
Alternate translation: "if he truly believes in his heart" or "if he does not doubt but believes" (See: [Metonymy](#))

it will be done for him (ULT)

God will do it for him (UST)

"God will make happen"

Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [Truly](#)
- [believes](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [Also note this](#)
- [if he believes](#)

ULT

²³ [Truly](#) I say to you that whoever says to this mountain, 'Get up and cast yourself into the sea,' and does not doubt in his [heart](#) but [believes](#) that what he said will happen, it will be done for him.

UST

²³ [Also note this](#): If anyone says to this mountain, 'Be raised up and thrown into the sea!' and if he does not doubt that it will happen, that is, [if he believes](#) that it will happen, God will do it for him.

Mark 11:24

Therefore I say to you (ULT)

So I tell you (UST)

“So I tell you” (See: [Connecting Words and Phrases](#))

it will be yours (ULT)

God will do it for you (UST)

It is understood that this will happen because God will provide what you ask for. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “God will give it to you” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [believe](#)
- [you pray](#)
- [you have received it](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [believe](#)
- [whenever you ask God](#)
- [you will receive it](#)

ULT

²⁴ Therefore I say to you: Everything [you pray](#) and ask for, [believe](#) that [you have received it](#), and it will be yours.

UST

²⁴ So I tell you, [whenever you ask God](#) for something when you pray, [believe](#) that [you will receive it](#), and, if you do, God will do it for you.

Mark 11:25

When...you stand and pray (ULT)

It is common in Hebrew culture to stand when praying to God.
Alternate translation: "When you pray"

whatever you have against anyone (ULT) if you have a grudge against people because they have harmed you (UST)

"whatever grudge you have against anyone." Here the word "whatever" refers to any grudge you hold against someone for sinning against you or any anger you have against someone.

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [trespasses](#)
- [you must forgive](#)
- [will...forgive](#)
- [Father](#)
- [and pray](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven](#)
- [sins](#)
- [forgive them](#)
- [will likewise forgive](#)
- [Father](#)
- [you are praying](#)

ULT

²⁵ When you stand [and pray](#), [you must forgive](#) whatever you have against anyone, so that your [Father](#) who is in [heaven](#) will also [forgive](#) you your [trespasses](#)."

UST

²⁵ Now, I tell you this also: Whenever [you are praying](#), if you have a grudge against people because they have harmed you, [forgive them](#), so that your [Father](#) in [heaven](#) [will likewise forgive](#) your [sins](#)."

Mark 11:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

²⁶^[1] [But if you do not forgive, neither will your Father who is in heaven forgive your trespasses.]

UST

²⁶^[1] [But if you do not forgive, neither will your Father who is in heaven forgive your sins.]

Mark 11:27

Connecting Statement:

The next day when Jesus returns to temple, he gives the chief priests, scribes, and elders an answer to their question about his casting the money changers out of the temple area, by asking them another question, which they were not willing to answer.

they came...to (ULT)

Jesus and his apprentices arrived...in (UST)

"Jesus and his disciples came to"

As Jesus was walking...in...the temple (ULT)
in the temple courtyard...While Jesus was walking there (UST)

This means that Jesus was walking around inside of the temple; he was not walking into the temple.

Translation Words - ULT

- scribes
- chief priests
- temple
- Jerusalem
- elders
- As...was walking

Translation Words - UST

- some men who taught the Jewish laws
- chief priests
- temple courtyard
- Jerusalem
- elders
- While...was walking there

ULT

²⁷ Then they came to [Jerusalem](#) again. As Jesus [was walking](#) in the [temple](#), the [chief priests](#), the [scribes](#), and the [elders](#) came to him.

UST

²⁷ Jesus and his apprentices arrived in the [temple courtyard](#) in [Jerusalem](#) again. [While](#) Jesus [was walking there](#), a group consisting of [chief priests](#), [some men who taught the Jewish laws](#), and [elders](#) came to him.

Mark 11:28

They said...to him (ULT)

They said to him (UST)

The word "They" refers to the chief priests, the scribes, and the elders.

By what authority do you do these things, and who gave you this authority that you should do them (ULT)

Possible meanings: 1) Both of these questions have the same meaning and are asked together to strongly question Jesus' authority and so can be combined. Alternate translation: "Who gave you authority to do these things?" 2) They are two separate questions, the first asking about the nature of the authority and the second about who gave it to him. (See: [Parallelism](#))

you do these things (ULT)

are you doing these things (UST)

The words "these things" refer to Jesus turning over the sellers' tables in the temple and speaking against what the chief priests and scribes taught. Alternate translation: "things like those you did here yesterday" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [authority](#)
- [authority](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [authority](#)
- [authorized](#)

ULT

²⁸ They said to him, "By what [authority](#) do you do these things, and who gave you this [authority](#) that you should do them?"

UST

²⁸ They said to him, "By what [authority](#) are you doing these things? Who [authorized](#) you to do things like those you did here yesterday?"

Mark 11:29

Answer...me (ULT)

If you answer me (UST)

"Answer me"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [authority](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [who authorized me](#)

ULT

²⁹ [Jesus](#) said to them, "I also will ask you one question. Answer me, and I will tell you by what [authority](#) I do these things.

UST

²⁹ [Jesus](#) said to them, "I will ask you one question. If you answer me, I will tell you [who authorized me](#) to do those things.

Mark 11:30

The baptism of John

"The baptism that John performed"

was it from heaven or from men

"was it authorized by heaven or by men"

from heaven (ULT)

God who authorized (UST)

Here "heaven" refers to God. Alternate translation: "from God" (See: [Metonymy](#))

from...men (ULT)

God who authorized...was it people who authorized him (UST)

"from people"

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [baptism](#)
- [of John](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God who authorized](#)
- [John to baptize those who came to him](#)
- [John to baptize those who came to him](#)

ULT

³⁰ The [baptism of John](#), was it from [heaven](#) or from men? Answer me."

UST

³⁰ Was it [God who authorized John to baptize those who came to him](#)? Or was it people who authorized him?"

Mark 11:31

If we say, 'From heaven (ULT)

If we say that it was God who authorized him (UST)

This refers to the source of the baptism of John. Alternate translation: "If we say, 'It was from heaven,'" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

From heaven (ULT)

it was God who authorized him (UST)

Here "heaven" refers to God. See how you translated this in [Mark 11:30](#). Alternate translation: "From God" (See: [Metonymy](#))

did you not believe him (ULT)

The word "him" refers to John the Baptist.

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [did you...believe](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [it was God who authorized him](#)
- [have believed](#)

ULT

³¹ They discussed between themselves, saying, "What should we say? If we say, 'From [heaven](#),' he will say, 'Why then [did you](#) not [believe](#) him?' ^[2]

UST

³¹ They debated among themselves as to what they should answer. They said to each other, "If we say that [it was God who authorized him](#), he will say to us, 'Then you should [have believed](#) what John said!'

Mark 11:32

But if we say, 'From men (ULT)

On the other hand, if we say that it was people who authorized John, then what will happen to us (UST)

This refers to the source of the baptism of John. Alternate translation: "But if we say, 'It was from men,'" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

From men (ULT)

it was people who authorized John (UST)

"From people"

But if we say, 'From men...was (ULT)

On the other hand, if we say that it was people who authorized John, then what will happen to us...was (UST)

The religious leaders imply that they will suffer from the people if they give this answer. Alternate translation: "But if we say, 'From men,' that would not be good." or "But we do not want to say that it was from men." (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

They were afraid of the people (ULT)

They were afraid to say that about John...the people (UST)

The author, Mark, explains why the religious leaders did not want to say that John's baptism was from men. This can be stated clearly. "They said this to each other because they were afraid of the people" or "They did not want to say that John's baptism was from men because they were afraid of the people" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [They were afraid](#)
- [a prophet](#)
- [John](#)
- [people](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [They were afraid to say that about John](#)
- [a prophet whom God had sent](#)
- [John](#)
- [people](#)

ULT

³² But if we say, 'From men,'...." [They were afraid](#) of the [people](#), for everyone considered that [John](#) really was [a prophet](#).

UST

³² On the other hand, if we say that it was people who authorized John, then what will happen to us?" [They were afraid to say that about John](#), because they knew that the [people](#) would be very angry with them. They knew that all the people truly believed that [John](#) was [a prophet whom God had sent](#).

Mark 11:33

We do not know (ULT)

We do not know from whom John received his authority (UST)

This refers to the baptism of John. This understood information may be supplied. Alternate translation: "We do not know where the baptism of John came from" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [authority](#)
- [We...know](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [who authorized me](#)
- [We do...know from whom John received his authority](#)

ULT

³³ Then they answered [Jesus](#) and said, "We do not [know](#)." Then [Jesus](#) said to them, "Neither will I tell you by what [authority](#) I do these things."

11:26 ^[1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 26 (See: Mt. 6:15).

11:31 ^[2] Some manuscripts do not include, *What should we say?*, but the best manuscripts include it.

UST

³³ So they answered [Jesus](#), "[We do](#) not [know from whom John received his authority](#)." Then [Jesus](#) said to them, "Because you did not answer my question, I will not tell you [who authorized me](#) to do those things here yesterday."

11:26 ^[1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 26 (See: Mt. 6:15).

Mark 12

Mark 12 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 12:10-11, 36, which are words from the Old Testament.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Hypothetical Situations

Hypothetical situations are situations that have not actually happened. People describe these situations so they learn what their hearers think is good and bad or right and wrong. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

Mark 12:1

Connecting Statement:

Jesus speaks this parable against the chief priests, the scribes, and the elders. (See: [Parables](#))

Then Jesus began to speak to them in parables (ULT)

Then Jesus began to tell the Jewish leaders a parable.

He said (UST)

The word “them” here refers to the chief priests, the scribes, and the elders to whom Jesus had been talking in the previous chapter.

put a hedge around it

He put a barrier around the vineyard. It could have been a row of shrubs, a fence, or a stone wall.

dug a pit for a winepress (ULT)

He made a stone tank to collect the grape juice (UST)

This means that he carved a pit on the rock, which would be the bottom part of the winepress used for collecting the squeezed grape juice. Alternate translation: “carved a pit into rock for the winepress” or “he made a vat to collect the juice from the winepress” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

leased the vineyard to vine growers (ULT)

He leased the vineyard to some farmers to cultivate it (UST)

The owner still owned the vineyard, but he allowed the vine growers to take care of it. When the grapes became ripe, they were to give some of them to the owner and keep the rest.

Translation Words - ULT

- [parables](#)
- [to vine growers](#)
- [a pit for a winepress](#)
- [a vineyard](#)
- [a watchtower](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [a parable](#)
- [to some farmers to cultivate it](#)
- [a stone tank to collect the grape juice](#)
- [a vineyard](#)
- [a tower for someone to sit in to guard his vineyard](#)

ULT

¹ Then Jesus began to speak to them in [parables](#): “A man planted [a vineyard](#), put a hedge around it, and dug [a pit for a winepress](#). He built [a watchtower](#) and then leased the vineyard [to vine growers](#). Then he went away on a journey.

UST

¹ Then Jesus began to tell the Jewish leaders [a parable](#). He said, “A certain man planted [a vineyard](#). He built a fence around it. He made [a stone tank to collect the grape juice](#). He also built [a tower for someone to sit in to guard his vineyard](#). He leased the vineyard [to some farmers to cultivate it](#), and then he went away to another country.

Mark 12:2

At the harvest time (ULT)

When the time came to harvest the grapes (UST)

This refers to the time of harvest. This can be made clear. Alternate translation: "When the time came to harvest the grapes" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [receive](#)
- [fruit](#)
- [harvest time](#)
- [he sent](#)
- [vineyard](#)
- [a servant](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [he wanted to receive](#)
- [his share of the grapes](#)
- [When the time came to harvest the grapes](#)
- [the owner of the vineyard sent](#)
- [that the vineyard had produced](#)
- [a servant](#)

ULT

² At the [harvest time](#), [he sent a servant](#) to the vine growers to [receive](#) from the vine growers some of the [fruit](#) of the [vineyard](#).

UST

² [When the time came to harvest the grapes](#), [the owner of the vineyard sent a servant](#) to the men who had taken a lease on his vineyard because [he wanted to receive](#) from them [his share of the grapes that the vineyard had produced](#).

Mark 12:3

But they took him (ULT)

But when the servant arrived, they grabbed him...the servant...him...him (UST)

"But the vine growers took the servant"

with nothing (ULT)

they did not give...any fruit (UST)

This means that they did not give him any of the fruit. Alternate translation: "without any grapes" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [with nothing](#)
- [sent him away](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [they did not give...any fruit](#)
- [they sent...away](#)

ULT

³ But they took him, beat him, and [sent him away with nothing](#).

UST

³ But when the servant arrived, they grabbed him and beat the servant, and [they did not give](#) him [any fruit](#). Then [they sent](#) him [away](#).

Mark 12:4

he sent to them (ULT)

the owner sent...to them (UST)

“the owner of the vineyard sent to the vine growers”

and they wounded him in the head (ULT)

But they beat that one on the head (UST)

This can be written more clearly. Alternate translation: “they beat that one on the head, and they hurt him terribly” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [treated him shamefully](#)
- [and they wounded...in the head](#)
- [he sent](#)
- [servant](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [they hurt him terribly, for which they should be ashamed](#)
- [they beat...on the head](#)
- [the owner sent](#)
- [servant](#)

ULT

⁴ Again [he sent](#) to them another [servant](#), [and they wounded](#) him [in the head](#) and [treated him shamefully](#).

UST

⁴ Later [the owner sent](#) another [servant](#) to them. But [they beat](#) that one [on the head](#) and [they hurt him terribly, for which they should be ashamed](#).

Mark 12:5

yet another...He sent many...others (ULT)
still another servant...many other servants whom he sent (UST)

These phrases refer to other servants. Alternate translation: “yet another servant...many other servants” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [He sent](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the owner sent](#)

ULT

⁵ [He sent](#) yet another, and this one they killed. He sent many others: they beat some, and they killed others.

UST

⁵ Later [the owner sent](#) still another servant. That man the farmers killed. They also mistreated many other servants whom he sent. Some they beat and some they killed.

Mark 12:6

a beloved son (ULT)

his son, whom he loved very much (UST)

It is implied that this is the owner's son. Alternate translation: "his beloved son" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [a...son](#)
- [son](#)
- [beloved](#)
- [He sent](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [his son](#)
- [him](#)
- [whom he loved very much](#)
- [So he sent](#)

ULT

⁶ He had still one more to send, a [beloved son](#). [He sent](#) him to them last of all, saying, 'They will respect my [son](#).'

UST

⁶ The owner still had one other person with him, [his son](#), [whom he loved very much](#). [So he sent](#) his son to them because he thought that they would respect [him](#).

Mark 12:7

the heir (ULT)
the owner's son, who will some day inherit the vineyard (UST)

This is the owner's heir, who would inherit the vineyard after his father died. Alternate translation: "the owner's heir" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the inheritance (ULT)
this vineyard (UST)

The tenants are referring to the vineyard as "the inheritance."
 Alternate translation: "this vineyard" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [inheritance](#)
- [heir](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [vineyard](#)
- [owner's son, who will some day inherit the vineyard](#)

ULT

⁷ But those vine growers said to one another, 'This is the [heir](#). Come, let us kill him, and the [inheritance](#) will be ours.'

UST

⁷ But when the farmers saw his son coming, they said to each other, 'Look! Here comes the [owner's son, who will some day inherit the vineyard](#)! So let us kill him in order that this [vineyard](#) will be ours!'

Mark 12:8

they seized him (ULT)

They seized the owner's son (UST)

"The vine growers seized the son"

Translation Words - ULT

- [threw...out](#)
- [vineyard](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [they threw](#)
- [vineyard](#)

ULT

⁸ So they seized him, killed him, and [threw](#) him [out](#) of the [vineyard](#).

UST

⁸ They seized the owner's son and killed him. Then [they threw](#) his body outside the [vineyard](#).

Mark 12:9

Therefore, what will the owner of the vineyard do (ULT)
So do you know what the owner of the vineyard will do (UST)

Jesus asks a question and then gives the answer to teach the people. The question may be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "So I will tell you what the owner of the vineyard will do." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Therefore (ULT)
So (UST)

Jesus has finished telling the parable and is now asking the people what they think will happen next. (See: [Connecting Words and Phrases](#))

destroy (ULT)
kill (UST)

kill

will give the vineyard to others (ULT)
he will arrange for other people to take care of it (UST)

The word "others" refers to other vine growers who will care for the vineyard. Alternate translation: "he will give the vineyard to vine growers to care for it" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- owner
- vineyard
- vineyard

Translation Words - UST

- owner
- vineyard
- he will arrange for other people to take care of it

ULT

⁹ Therefore, what will the [owner](#) of the [vineyard](#) do? He will come and destroy the vine growers and will give the [vineyard](#) to others.

UST

⁹ So do you know what the [owner](#) of the [vineyard](#) will do? He will come and kill those evil men who had taken a lease on his vineyard. Then [he will arrange for other people to take care of it](#).

Mark 12:10

General Information:

This scripture was written long before in God's word.

Have you not read this scripture (ULT)
Now think carefully about these words, which you have read in the scriptures (UST)

Jesus reminds the people of a scripture passage. He uses a rhetorical question here to rebuke them. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Surely you have read this scripture." or "You should remember this scripture." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

has become the cornerstone (ULT)
has become the most important stone in the building (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the Lord made into the cornerstone"

Translation Words - ULT

- [scripture](#)
- [the cornerstone](#)
- [the cornerstone](#)
- [rejected](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [scriptures](#)
- [the most important stone in the building](#)
- [the most important stone in the building](#)
- [refused to use](#)

ULT

¹⁰ Have you not read this [scripture](#)? The stone which the builders [rejected](#), this has become [the cornerstone](#).

UST

¹⁰ Now think carefully about these words, which you have read in the [scriptures](#): "The men who were building the building [refused to use](#) a certain stone. But the Lord has put that same stone in its proper place, and it has become [the most important stone in the building](#)!"

Mark 12:11

This was from the Lord (ULT)

The Lord has done this (UST)

“The Lord has done this”

it is marvelous in our eyes (ULT)

we marvel as we look at it (UST)

Here “in our eyes” stands for seeing, which is a metaphor for the people’s opinion. Alternate translation: “we have seen it and think that it is marvelous” or “we think that it is wonderful” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Lord](#)
- [marvelous](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The Lord has done](#)
- [we marvel](#)

ULT

¹¹ This was from [the Lord](#), and it is [marvelous](#) in our eyes.”

UST

¹¹ [The Lord has done](#) this, and [we marvel](#) as we look at it.”

Mark 12:12

they sought to arrest Jesus (ULT)

they wanted to arrest him...that (UST)

"They" refers to the chief priests, scribes, and elders. This group may be referred to as the "Jewish leaders."

they sought (ULT)

they wanted (UST)

"wanted"

but they feared the crowd (ULT)

But they were afraid of what the crowds of people would do (UST)

They were afraid of what the crowd would do to them if they arrested Jesus. This can be made clear. Alternate translation: "but they feared what the crowd would do if they arrested him" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

against them (ULT)

"to accuse them"

Translation Words - ULT

- they feared
- parable
- they sought
- to arrest
- they knew

Translation Words - UST

- they were afraid
- when he told this story about what those wicked people did...if they did
- they wanted
- to arrest...that
- the Jewish leaders realized

ULT

¹² Then [they sought to arrest](#) Jesus, but [they feared](#) the crowd, for [they knew](#) that he had spoken this [parable](#) against them. So they left him and went away.

UST

¹² Then [the Jewish leaders realized](#) that Jesus was accusing them [when he told this story about what those wicked people did](#). So [they wanted to arrest](#) him. But [they were afraid](#) of what the crowds of people would do [if they did that](#). So they left him and went away.

Mark 12:13

Connecting Statement:

In an effort to trap Jesus, some of the Pharisees and Herodians, and then the Sadducees, come to Jesus with questions.

Then they sent (ULT)

"Then the Jewish leaders sent"

of the...Herodians (ULT)

Pharisees...Herod Antipas (UST)

This was the name of an informal political party that supported Herod Antipas.

in order to trap him (ULT)

They wanted to trick Jesus; they wanted to make him say something wrong so they could show people that he taught wrong things so they could bring charges against him (UST)

Here the author describes tricking Jesus as "trapping him." Alternate translation: "to trick him" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Pharisees](#)
- [they sent](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Pharisees](#)
- [The Jewish leaders sent](#)

ULT

¹³ Then [they sent](#) some of the [Pharisees](#) and the Herodians to him in order to trap him with words.

UST

¹³ [The Jewish leaders sent](#) to Jesus some [Pharisees](#) and some members of the party that supported Herod Antipas. They wanted to trick Jesus; they wanted to make him say something wrong so they could show people that he taught wrong things so they could bring charges against him.

Mark 12:14

When they came...they said (ULT)

After they arrived, they said (UST)

Here "they" refers to those sent from among the Pharisees and the Herodians.

you...do not defer to anyone (ULT)

you are not concerned about what people say about you (UST)

This means that Jesus is not concerned. The negation can modify the verb instead. Alternate translation: "you do not care about people's opinions" or "you are not concerned with earning people's favor" (See: [Litotes](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of God
- truthful
- truth
- to Caesar
- you teach
- at...appearance
- Is it lawful
- taxes
- appearance
- Teacher
- we know

Translation Words - UST

- God
- you teach the truth
- truthfully
- to the Roman government
- you teach
- partial, partiality
- Is it right that
- taxes
- face, facial
- Teacher
- we know

ULT

¹⁴ When they came, they said to him, "[Teacher](#), [we know](#) that you are [truthful](#), and do not defer to anyone, for you do not look at people's [appearance](#). Instead, [you teach](#) the way [of God](#) according to [truth](#). [Is it lawful](#) to pay [taxes to Caesar](#) or not? Should we pay, or not pay?"

UST

¹⁴ After they arrived, they said to him, "[Teacher](#), [we know](#) that [you teach the truth](#). We also know that you are not concerned about what people say about you, even if an important person does not like what you say. Instead, [you teach truthfully](#) what [God](#) wants us to do. So tell us what you think about this matter: [Is it right that](#) we pay [taxes to the Roman government](#), or not? Should we pay the taxes, or should we not pay them?"

Mark 12:15

Jesus...knew their hypocrisy (ULT)

Jesus...knew that they did not really want to know what God wanted them to do (UST)

They were acting hypocritically. This can be explained more clearly. Alternate translation: "Jesus knew that they did not really want to know what God wanted them to do" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Why do you test me (ULT)

I know that you are just trying to make me say something wrong for which you can accuse me. But I will answer your question anyway (UST)

Jesus rebukes the Jewish leaders because they were trying to trick him. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "I know you are trying to make me say something wrong so you can accuse me." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

a denarius (ULT)

a coin (UST)

This coin was worth a day's wages. (See: [Biblical Money](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [hypocrisy](#)
- [you test](#)
- [knew](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [did not really want to know what God wanted them to do](#)
- [I know that you are just trying to make me say something wrong for which you can accuse me. But I will answer your question anyway](#)
- [knew that](#)

ULT

¹⁵ But Jesus [knew](#) their [hypocrisy](#) and said to them, "Why do [you test](#) me? Bring me a denarius so I can look at it."

UST

¹⁵ Jesus [knew that](#) they [did not really want to know what God wanted them to do](#). So he said to them, "[I know that you are just trying to make me say something wrong for which you can accuse me. But I will answer your question anyway](#)". Bring me a coin so that I might look at it."

Mark 12:16

So they brought one (ULT)

"The Pharisees and the Herodians brought a denarius"

likeness...Then...likeness...inscription (ULT)

"picture and name"

They...said to him, "Caesar's (ULT)

Here "Caesar's" refers to his likeness and inscription. Alternate translation: "They said, 'They are Caesar's likeness and inscription'" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Caesar's](#)
- [likeness](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [It is a picture and the name of Caesar](#)
- [picture](#)

ULT

¹⁶ So they brought one. Then he said to them, "Whose is this [likeness](#) and inscription?" They said to him, "[Caesar's](#)."

UST

¹⁶ After they had brought him a coin, he asked them, "Whose [picture](#) is on this coin? And whose name is on it?" They replied, "[It is a picture and the name of Caesar.](#)"

Mark 12:17

Give to Caesar the things of Caesar (ULT)

That is correct, so give to Caesar what belongs to him (UST)

Jesus is teaching that his people must respect the government by paying taxes. This figure of speech can be clarified by changing Caesar to Roman government. Alternate translation: "Give to the Roman government the things that belong to the Roman government" (See: [Metonymy](#))

and...to God (ULT)

and...give to God (UST)

The understood verb may be supplied. Alternate translation: "and give to God" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

They marveled...at him (ULT)

They were completely amazed by what he said (UST)

They were amazed at what Jesus had said. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "They marveled at him and at what he had said" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Then Jesus](#)
- [of God](#)
- [God](#)
- [of Caesar](#)
- [to Caesar](#)
- [They marveled](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [to him](#)
- [give to God](#)
- [him](#)
- [to Caesar](#)
- [They were completely amazed](#)

ULT

¹⁷ [Then Jesus](#) said to them, "Give [to Caesar](#) the things [of Caesar](#), and to [God](#) the things [of God](#)." [They marveled](#) at him.

UST

¹⁷ [Jesus](#) said to them, "That is correct, so give [to Caesar](#) what belongs to [him](#), and [give to God](#) what belongs [to him](#)." [They were completely amazed](#) by what he said.

Mark 12:18

who say there is no resurrection (ULT)

This phrase explains who the Sadducees were. This can be written more clearly. Alternate translation: "who say there is no resurrection from the dead" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [resurrection](#)
- [Sadducees](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [what other Jews believe, that people become alive again after they die](#)
- [Men who belong to the group of Sadducees...Some Sadducees](#)

ULT

¹⁸ Then [Sadducees](#), who say there is no [resurrection](#), came to him. They asked him, saying,

UST

¹⁸ [Men who belong to the group of Sadducees](#) deny [what other Jews believe, that people become alive again after they die](#). [Some Sadducees](#) came to Jesus and asked him,

Mark 12:19**Moses wrote for us, 'If a man's brother dies (ULT)
Moses wrote for us Jews that if a man's brother dies (UST)**

The Sadducees are quoting what Moses had written in the law. Moses' quote can be expressed as an indirect quote. Alternate translation: "Moses wrote for us that if a man's brother dies" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

**wrote for us (ULT)
wrote for us Jews (UST)**

"wrote for us Jews." The Sadducees were a group of Jews. Here they use the word "us" to refer to themselves and all Jews.

**brother...a wife...he should take his brother's wife (ULT)
brother...a wife...his brother should marry the (UST)**

"the man should marry his brother's wife"

**raise up offspring for his brother (ULT)
raise up a descendant for his brother (UST)**

"have a son for his brother." The man's first son would be considered to be the dead brother's son, and the son's descendants would be considered to be the dead brother's descendants. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "have a son who will be considered to be the dead brother's son" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- brother's (2)
- for...brother
- a child
- offspring
- Moses
- dies
- raise up
- Teacher
- wrote

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- brother (2)
- brother
- children
- a descendant
- Moses
- dies
- raise up

ULT

¹⁹ "Teacher, [Moses wrote](#) for us, 'If a man's [brother dies](#) and leaves a wife behind, but does not leave [a child](#), then he should take his [brother's](#) wife, and [raise up offspring](#) for his [brother](#).'

UST

¹⁹ "Teacher, [Moses wrote](#) for us Jews that if a man's [brother dies](#) and leaves a wife but no [children](#), his [brother](#) should marry the widow and [raise up a descendant](#) for his [brother](#)."

- [Teacher](#)
- [wrote](#)

Mark 12:20

There were seven brothers (ULT)

So here is an example. There were seven brothers in one family (UST)

The Sadducees talk about a situation that did not really happen because they want Jesus to tell them what he thinks is right and wrong. Alternate translation: "Suppose there were seven brothers" (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

the...first (ULT)

The oldest one (UST)

the first brother

the...first took a wife (ULT)

The oldest one married a woman (UST)

"the first married a woman." Here marrying a woman is spoken of as "taking" her.

Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [offspring](#)
- [died](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brothers in one family](#)
- [any children](#)
- [he later died](#)

ULT

²⁰ There were seven [brothers](#); the first took a wife and then [died](#), not leaving [offspring](#).

UST

²⁰ So here is an example. There were seven [brothers in one family](#). The oldest one married a woman, but he and his wife did not bear [any children](#). Then [he later died](#).

Mark 12:21

the second...the third (ULT)

The second brother...The third brother (UST)

These numbers refer to each of the brothers and can be expressed as such. Alternate translation: “the second brother...the third brother” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

the second took her (ULT)

The second brother...married that woman (UST)

“the second married her.” Here marrying a woman is spoken of as “taking” her.

the third likewise (ULT)

The third brother did like his other brothers did. But he also did not bear any children, and later died (UST)

It may be helpful to explain what “likewise” means. Alternate translation: “the third brother married her as his other brothers did, and he also died leaving no children” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [offspring](#)
- [died](#)
- [likewise](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [any children](#)
- [too...he...died](#)
- [did like his other brothers did. But he also did not bear any children, and later died](#)

ULT

²¹ Then the second took her and [died](#), not leaving [offspring](#), and the third [likewise](#).

UST

²¹ The second brother also married that woman, but he, [too](#), did not bear [any children](#). Then [he](#) later [died](#). The third brother [did like his other brothers did](#). [But he also did not bear any children, and later died](#).

Mark 12:22

The...seven (ULT)

all seven brothers married that woman one by one, but (UST)

This refers to all the brothers. Alternate translation: "The seven brothers" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

The...seven did not leave offspring (ULT)

all seven brothers married that woman one by one, but no one had any children (UST)

Each of the brothers married the woman and then died before he had any children with her. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "Eventually all seven brothers married that woman one by one, but none of them had any children with her, and one by one they died" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [offspring](#)
- [died](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [any children](#)
- [died](#)

ULT

²² The seven did not leave [offspring](#).
Last of all, the woman also [died](#).

UST

²² Eventually all seven brothers married that woman one by one, but no one had [any children](#), and one by one they died. Afterwards the woman [died](#), too.

Mark 12:23

In the resurrection, when they rise again, whose wife will she be (ULT)

The Sadducees are testing Jesus by asking this question. If your readers can only understand this as a request for information, this can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Now tell us whose wife she will be in the resurrection, when they all rise again." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [resurrection](#)
- [they rise again](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [resurrection](#)
- [people will become alive again after they die](#)

ULT

²³ In the [resurrection](#), when [they rise again](#), whose wife will she be? For all seven brothers had her as their wife."

UST

²³ Now on the day when [people will become alive again after they die](#), whose wife will that woman be? Keep in mind that she had been married to all seven brothers!"

Mark 12:24

Is this not the reason you are mistaken...the power of God (ULT)

You are certainly wrong...God's power to make people alive again (UST)

Jesus rebukes the Sadducees because they are mistaken about God's law. This may be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You are mistaken because...power of God." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

because you do not know the scriptures (ULT)

You do not know what the scriptures teach about this (UST)

This means that they do not understand what is written in the Old Testament scriptures.

the power of God (ULT)

God's power to make people alive again (UST)

"how powerful God is"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [of God](#)
- [scriptures](#)
- [power](#)
- [you are mistaken](#)
- [because you...know](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [God's](#)
- [what the scriptures teach about this](#)
- [power to make people alive again](#)
- [You are certainly wrong](#)
- [You do...know](#)

ULT

²⁴ [Jesus](#) said to them, "Is this not the reason [you are mistaken](#), [because you](#) do not [know](#) the [scriptures](#) nor the [power of God](#)?"

UST

²⁴ [Jesus](#) replied to them, "[You are certainly wrong](#). [You do not know what the scriptures teach about this](#). You also do not understand [God's power to make people alive again](#)."

Mark 12:25

For when...they rise (ULT)

Here the word "they" refers to the brothers and the woman from the example.

they rise (ULT)

people become alive again (UST)

Waking and getting up from sleep is a metaphor for becoming alive after having been dead. (See: [Metaphor](#))

from the dead (ULT)

people become alive again (UST)

From among all those who have died. This expression describes all dead people together in the underworld. To rise from among them speaks of becoming alive again.

they neither marry nor are given in marriage

"they do not marry, and they are not given in marriage"

are given in marriage (ULT)

women having husbands (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "and no one gives them in marriage" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

heaven (ULT)

heaven (UST)

This refers to the place where God lives.

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [angels](#)
- [the dead](#)
- [they rise](#)
- [like](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven](#)
- [the angels](#)
- [people become alive again](#)
- [people become alive again](#)
- [like](#)

ULT

²⁵ For when [they rise](#) from [the dead](#), they neither marry nor are given in marriage, but they are [like angels](#) in [heaven](#).

UST

²⁵ That woman will not be the wife of any of those brothers, because when [people become alive again](#), instead of men having wives and women having husbands, they will be [like the angels](#) in [heaven](#). Angels do not marry.

Mark 12:26

that are raised (ULT)

people becoming alive again after they die (UST)

This can be expressed with an active verb. Alternate translation: “who rise” or “who rise to live again” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the book of Moses (ULT)

the book that Moses wrote, he wrote about people who have died (UST)

“the book that Moses wrote”

the account about the bush (ULT)

When Moses was looking at the bush that was burning (UST)

This refers to the part of the Book of Moses that tells about when God spoke to Moses out of a bush that was burning but that did not burn up. Alternate translation: “the passage about the burning bush” or “the words about the fiery bush” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the account about the bush (ULT)

When Moses was looking at the bush that was burning (UST)

This refers to a shrub, a woody plant that is smaller than a tree.

how God spoke to him (ULT)

“about when God spoke to Moses”

God...I am...of Abraham...of Isaac...of Jacob (ULT)

God...I am...whom Abraham...worship...Isaac...Jacob (UST)

This means that Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob worship God. These men have died physically, but they are still alive spiritually and still worship God.

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [God](#) (2)
- [God](#) (3)
- [God](#) (4)
- [of Abraham](#)
- [of Isaac](#)
- [of Moses](#)
- [of Jacob](#)
- [dead](#)
- [are raised](#)

ULT

²⁶ But concerning the [dead](#) that [are raised](#), have you not read in the book [of Moses](#), in the account about the bush, how [God](#) spoke to him, saying, ‘I am the [God of Abraham](#) and the [God of Isaac](#) and the [God of Jacob](#)?’

UST

²⁶ But let me talk about [people becoming alive again after they die](#). In the book [that Moses wrote, he wrote about people who have died](#); I am sure that you have read it. When Moses was looking at the bush that was burning, [God](#) said to him, ‘I am the [God whom Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob worship](#).’

Translation Words - UST

- God
- God (2)
- God (3)
- God (4)
- whom Abraham...worship
- Isaac
- that Moses wrote, he wrote about people who have died
- Jacob
- people becoming alive again after they die
- people becoming alive again after they die

Mark 12:27**not...the God of the dead, but of the living (ULT)**

Here “the dead” refers to people who are dead, and “the living” refers to people who are alive. Also, the words “the God” can be stated clearly in the second phrase. Alternate translation: “not the God of dead people, but the God of living people” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

of the living (ULT)**It is living people who worship him (UST)**

This includes people who are alive physically and spiritually.

You are quite mistaken (ULT)**So when you say that dead people do not become alive again, you are very wrong (UST)**

It may be helpful to state what they are mistaken about. Alternate translation: “When you say that dead people do not rise again, you are quite mistaken” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

You are quite mistaken (ULT)**So when you say that dead people do not become alive again, you are very wrong (UST)**

“completely mistaken” or “very wrong”

Translation Words - ULT

- [of the living](#)
- [the God](#)
- [of the dead](#)
- [You are...mistaken](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [It is living people who worship him](#)
- [who worship God](#)
- [dead people](#)
- [So when you say that dead people do not become alive again, you are very wrong](#)

ULT

²⁷ He is not [the God of the dead](#), but [of the living](#). [You are](#) quite [mistaken](#).”

UST

²⁷ Now it is not [dead people who worship God](#). [It is living people who worship him](#). [So when you say that dead people do not become alive again, you are very wrong](#).”

Mark 12:28

he asked him (ULT)
and asked Jesus (UST)

"The scribe asked Jesus"

Translation Words - ULT

- [scribes](#)
- [commandment](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [A man who taught the Jewish laws](#)
- [commandment](#)

ULT

²⁸ Now one of the [scribes](#) came and heard them discussing this together. When he saw that Jesus answered them well, he asked him, "Which [commandment](#) is the first of all?"

UST

²⁸ [A man who taught the Jewish laws](#) heard their discussion. He knew that Jesus had answered the Sadducees' question very well. So he stepped forward and asked Jesus, "Which [commandment](#) is the most important?"

Mark 12:29

The first...is (ULT)

The most important commandment is this (UST)

“The most important” refers to the most important commandment.
Alternate translation: “The most important commandment is” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

Hear, Israel, the Lord our God, the Lord is one

“Listen, O Israel! The Lord our God is one Lord”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [the Lord](#)
- [the Lord](#) (2)
- [God](#)
- [Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [The Lord](#)
- [Lord](#) (2)
- [God](#)
- [O Israel](#)

ULT

²⁹ [Jesus](#) answered, “The first is, ‘Hear, [Israel](#), [the Lord](#) our [God](#), [the Lord](#) is one.

UST

²⁹ [Jesus](#) answered, “The most important commandment is this: ‘Listen, [O Israel](#)! [The Lord](#) our [God](#) is one [Lord](#).

Mark 12:30

with all your heart, with all your soul, with all your mind, and with all your strength (ULT)

Here “heart” and “soul” are metonyms for a person’s inner being. These four phrases are used together to mean “completely” or “earnestly.” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the Lord
- You must love
- God
- heart
- soul
- strength
- mind

Translation Words - UST

- the Lord
- You must love
- God
- that...want
- feel
- that...do
- that...think

ULT

³⁰ [You must love the Lord](#) your [God](#) with all your [heart](#), with all your [soul](#), with all your [mind](#), and with all your [strength](#).'

UST

³⁰ [You must love the Lord](#) your [God](#) in all that you [want](#) and [feel](#), in all that you [think](#), and in all that you [do](#)!'

Mark 12:31

You must love your neighbor as yourself (ULT)
You must love the people around you as much as you love yourself (UST)

Jesus uses this simile to compare how people are to love each other with the same love as they love themselves. Alternate translation: "love your neighbor as much as you love yourself" (See: [Simile](#))

than these (ULT)
than these two (UST)

Here the word "these" refers to the two commandments that Jesus had just told the people.

Translation Words - ULT

- [commandment](#)
- [You must love](#)
- [as](#)
- [neighbor](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [commandment](#)
- [You must love](#)
- [as much as](#)
- [people around](#)

ULT

³¹ The second commandment is this, ' [You must love](#) your [neighbor as](#) yourself.' There is no other greater [commandment](#) than these."

UST

³¹ The next most important commandment is: '[You must love](#) the [people around](#) you [as much as](#) you love yourself.' No other [commandment](#) is more important than these two!"

Mark 12:32

Good, Teacher (ULT)

Teacher, you have answered well (UST)

“Good answer, Teacher” or “Well said, Teacher”

God is one (ULT)

God is the only God (UST)

This means that there is only one God. Alternate translation: “there is only one God” (See: [Idiom](#))

there is no other (ULT)

there is no other (UST)

The word “God” is understood from the previous phrase. Alternate translation: “that there is no other God” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [scribe](#)
- [truly](#)
- [Teacher](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [man](#)
- [correctly](#)
- [Teacher](#)

ULT

³² The [scribe](#) said to him, “Good, [Teacher](#)! You have [truly](#) said that God is one, and there is no other besides him.

UST

³² The [man](#) said to Jesus, “[Teacher](#), you have answered well. You [correctly](#) said that God is the only God and that there is no other God.

Mark 12:33

with all the heart...with all the understanding...with all the strength (ULT)

in all that we want and feel...in all that we think...in all that we do (UST)

Here “heart” is a metonym for person’s thoughts, feelings, or inner being. These three phrases are used together to mean “completely” or “earnestly.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

to love one’s neighbor as oneself (ULT)

This simile compares how people are to love each other with the same love that they love themselves. Alternate translation: “to love your neighbor as much as you love yourself” (See: [Simile](#))

is even more than (ULT)

And you have also correctly said that doing these things pleases God (UST)

This idiom means that something is more important than something else. In this case, these two commandments are more pleasing to God than burnt offering and sacrifices. This may be written clearly.

Alternate translation: “is even more important than” or “is even more pleasing to God than” (See: [Idiom](#))

ULT

³³ [To love](#) him with all the [heart](#) and with all the [understanding](#) and with all the [strength](#), and [to love](#) one’s [neighbor as](#) oneself, is even more than all [burnt offerings](#) and [sacrifices](#).”

UST

³³ You have also said correctly that [we should love](#) God in all [that we want and feel](#), in all [that we think](#), and in all [that we do](#). And you have said correctly that [we must love people with whom we come in contact as much as we love ourselves](#). And you have also correctly said that doing these things pleases God more than [burning food or animals as an offering](#) or [giving other sacrifices](#).”

Translation Words - ULT

- [To love](#)
- [to love](#) (2)
- [heart](#)
- [sacrifices](#)
- [strength](#)
- [understanding](#)
- [as](#)
- [neighbor](#)
- [burnt offerings](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [we should love](#)
- [we must love](#) (2)
- [that we want and feel](#)
- [giving other sacrifices](#)
- [that we do](#)
- [that we think](#)
- [as much as we love](#)
- [people with whom we come in contact](#)
- [burning food or animals as an offering](#)

Mark 12:34

You are not far from the kingdom of God (ULT)

This can be stated in positive form. Here Jesus speaks of the man being ready to submit to God as king as being physically close to the kingdom of God, as if it were a physical place. Alternate translation: "You are close to submitting to God as king" (See: [Litotes](#) and [Metaphor](#))

no one...dared (ULT)

After that, the Jewish leaders...were afraid (UST)

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "everyone was afraid" (See: [Litotes](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [of God](#)
- [kingdom of God](#)
- [kingdom](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [point where God will agree to rule over you](#)
- [point where God will agree to rule over you](#)
- [point where God will agree to rule over you](#)

ULT

³⁴ When [Jesus](#) saw that he had answered wisely, he said to him, "You are not far from the [kingdom of God](#)." After that, no one any longer dared to ask Jesus questions.

UST

³⁴ [Jesus](#) realized that this man had answered wisely. So he said to him, "You are close to the [point where God will agree to rule over you](#)." After that, the Jewish leaders were afraid to ask him any more questions like that to try to trick him.

Mark 12:35

While Jesus was teaching in the temple courts...he asked...and said (ULT)

Some time has passed and Jesus is now in the temple. This is not part of the previous conversation. Alternate translation: "Later, while Jesus was teaching in the temple area, he said to the people" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

How do the scribes say that the Christ is the son of David (ULT)

How is it that those who teach the law say—and they are correct in saying—that the Messiah is a descendant of King David (UST)

Jesus uses this question to get the people to think deeply about the Psalm he is about to quote. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Consider why the scribes say the Christ is the son of David." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

the son of David (ULT) a descendant of King David (UST)

"a descendant of David"

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- scribes
- the son
- Christ
- temple courts
- of David
- While...was teaching

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- who teach the law
- a descendant
- Messiah
- temple area
- of King David
- while...was teaching

ULT

³⁵ [While Jesus was teaching](#) in the [temple courts](#), he asked and said, "How do the [scribes](#) say that the [Christ](#) is [the son of David](#)?"

UST

³⁵ Later, [while Jesus was teaching](#) in the [temple area](#), he said to the people, "How is it that those [who teach the law](#) say—and they are correct in saying—that the [Messiah](#) is [a descendant of King David](#)?"

Mark 12:36

David himself (ULT)

This word “himself” refers to David and is used to place emphasis on him and what he said. Alternate translation: “It was David who” (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

in the Holy Spirit (ULT)

This means that he was inspired by the Holy Spirit. That is, the Holy Spirit directed David in what he said. Alternate translation: “inspired by the Holy Spirit” (See: [Idiom](#))

said...The Lord said to my Lord (ULT) caused...to say about the Messiah...God said to my Lord (UST)

Here David calls God “The Lord” and calls the Christ “my Lord.” This can be written more clearly. Alternate translation: “said about the Christ, ‘The Lord God said to my Lord’” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Sit at my right hand (ULT)

Sit here beside me at my right hand, in the place where I will highly honor you above everyone else! Sit here (UST)

Jesus is quoting a psalm. Here God is speaking to the Christ. To sit at the “right hand of God” is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God. Alternate translation: “Sit in the place of honor beside me” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

until I make your enemies your footstool (ULT)

In this quote, God speaks of defeating enemies as making them into a footstool. Alternate translation: “until I completely defeat your enemies” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- to...Lord
- Holy
- Holy Spirit
- right hand
- David
- footstool
- enemies

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Lord
- Holy
- Holy Spirit
- beside me...my right hand, in the place where I will highly honor you above everyone else...here

ULT

³⁶ [David](#) himself, in the [Holy Spirit](#), said, ‘The [Lord](#) said to my [Lord](#), “Sit at my [right hand](#), until I make your [enemies](#) your [footstool](#).”’

UST

³⁶ The [Holy Spirit](#) caused [David](#) to say about the Messiah, ‘[God](#) said to my [Lord](#), “Sit here [beside me](#) at [my right hand](#), in the place where I will highly honor you above everyone else! Sit [here](#) while [I completely defeat your enemies](#)!”’

- David
- I completely defeat your enemies
- I completely defeat your enemies

Mark 12:37

calls him 'Lord (ULT)

he refers to the Messiah as 'Lord (UST)

Here the word "him" refers to the Christ.

so how can he be David's son (ULT)

But how—as the teachers of the law correctly say—can the Messiah also be a descendant of David (UST)

This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "so consider how the Christ can be a descendant of David" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [calls](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [son](#)
- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [he refers](#)
- [as 'Lord](#)
- [a descendant](#)
- [David](#)

ULT

³⁷ [David](#) himself [calls](#) him '[Lord](#),' so how can he be David's [son](#)?" The large crowd gladly listened to him.

UST

³⁷ In this Psalm of [David he refers](#) to the Messiah [as 'Lord](#).' But how—as the teachers of the law correctly say—can the Messiah also be [a descendant](#) of David?" Many people listened to him gladly as he taught these things.

Mark 12:38

greetings...the marketplaces...in (ULT)

They...like people to greet them respectfully in the marketplaces (UST)

The noun “greetings” can be expressed with the verb “greet.” These greetings showed that the people respected the scribes. Alternate translation: “to be greeted respectfully in the marketplaces” or “people to greet them respectfully in the marketplaces” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- scribes
- long robes
- teaching
- to walk

Translation Words - UST

- men who teach our laws
- they put on long robes
- While...was teaching the people
- and walk around in order to show people how important they are

ULT

³⁸ In his [teaching](#) Jesus said, “Beware of the [scribes](#), who like greetings in the marketplaces, and [to walk](#) in [long robes](#),

UST

³⁸ [While](#) Jesus [was teaching the people](#), he said to them, “Beware that you do not act like the [men who teach our laws](#). They like people to honor them, so [they put on long robes and walk around in order to show people how important they are](#). They also like people to greet them respectfully in the marketplaces.

Mark 12:39

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [synagogues](#)
- [feasts](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [synagogues](#)
- [festivals](#)

ULT

³⁹ and the chief seats in the [synagogues](#), and chief places at the [feasts](#).

UST

³⁹ They like to sit in the most important seats in the [synagogues](#). At [festivals](#), they like to sit in the seats where the most honored people sit.

Mark 12:40

They devour widows' houses (ULT)

They swindle the houses and property of widows by cheating them (UST)

Here Jesus describes the scribes' cheating of widows and stealing of their houses as "devouring" their houses. Alternate translation: "They also cheat widows in order to steal their houses from them" (See: [Metaphor](#))

widows' houses (ULT)

the houses and property of widows...them (UST)

The words "widows" and "houses" are synecdoches for helpless people and all of a person's important possessions, respectively. Alternate translation: "everything from helpless people" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

These men will receive greater condemnation (ULT)

God will certainly punish them severely (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will certainly punish them with greater condemnation" or "God will certainly punish them severely" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

will receive greater condemnation (ULT)

God will certainly punish...severely (UST)

The word "greater" implies a comparison. Here the comparison is to other men who are punished. Alternate translation: "will receive greater condemnation than other people" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [condemnation](#)
- [they pray...prayers](#)
- [will receive](#)
- [devour](#)
- [houses](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God will certainly punish...severely](#)
- [by praying...in public](#)
- [God will certainly punish...severely](#)
- [swindle...by cheating](#)
- [houses and property](#)

ULT

⁴⁰ They [devour](#) widows' [houses](#), and [they pray](#) long [prayers](#) for people to see. These men [will receive](#) greater [condemnation](#)."

UST

⁴⁰ They [swindle](#) the [houses and property](#) of widows [by cheating](#) them. Then they pretend that they are good [by praying](#) long prayers [in public](#). [God will certainly punish](#) them [severely](#)!"

Mark 12:41

Connecting Statement:

Still in the temple area, Jesus comments on the value of the widow's offering.

the temple offering box (ULT)

the boxes in which people put offerings (UST)

This box, which everyone could use, held temple offerings.

ULT

41 Then Jesus sat down across from the temple offering box; he was watching how the crowd dropped money into the box. Many rich people put in large amounts.

UST

41 Later, Jesus sat down in the temple area opposite the boxes in which people put offerings. As he was sitting there, he watched as they put money in one of the boxes. Many rich people put in large amounts of money.

Mark 12:42

two mites (ULT)

two small copper coins (UST)

“two small copper coins.” These were the least valuable coins available. (See: [Biblical Money](#))

are worth a penny (ULT)

had a very small value (UST)

“worth very little.” A penny is worth very little. Translate “penny” with the name of the smallest coin in your language if you have one that is worth very little.

ULT

⁴² Then a poor widow came and put in two mites, which are worth a penny.

UST

⁴² Then a poor widow came along and dropped in two small copper coins, which had a very small value.

Mark 12:43

General Information:

In verse 43 Jesus says that the widow put more money in the offering than the rich people put in, and in verse 44 he tells his reason for saying that. The information can be reordered so that Jesus tells his reason first and then says that the widow put in more, as in the UST. (See: [Verse Bridges](#))

He called (ULT)

"Jesus called"

Truly I say to you (ULT)

This indicates that the statement that follows is especially true and important. See how you translated this in [Mark 3:28](#).

than all...of them who contributed to (ULT)

"all the other people who put money into"

Translation Words - ULT

- [He called](#)
- [Truly](#)
- [disciples](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [call, call out](#)
- [amen, truly](#)
- [disciple](#)

ULT

⁴³ [He called](#) his [disciples](#) and said to them, "[Truly](#) I say to you, this poor widow has put in more than all of them who contributed to the offering box.

UST

⁴³⁻⁴⁴ Jesus gathered his disciples around him and said to them, "The truth is that those other people have a lot of money, but they gave only a small part of it. But this woman, who is very poor, has put in all the money that she had to pay for the things she needed for today. So this poor widow has put more money into the box than all the others!"

Mark 12:44

abundance (ULT)

much wealth, many valuable things

her poverty (ULT)

“lack” or “the little she had”

her...she had to live on (ULT)

“to survive on”

Translation Words - ULT

- [abundance](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [multiply](#), [multiplied](#), [multiplication](#)

ULT

⁴⁴ For all of them gave out of their [abundance](#). But this widow, out of her poverty, put in everything she had, all she had to live on. “

UST

⁴³⁻⁴⁴ Jesus gathered his disciples around him and said to them, “The truth is that those other people have a lot of money, but they gave only a small part of it. But this woman, who is very poor, has put in all the money that she had to pay for the things she needed for today. So this poor widow has put more money into the box than all the others!”

Mark 13

Mark 13 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 13:24-25, which are words from the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

The return of Christ

Jesus said much about what would happen before he returned ([Mark 13:6-37](#)). He told his followers that bad things would happen to the world and bad things would happen to them before he returned, but they needed to be ready for him to return at any time.

Mark 13:1

General Information:

As they leave the temple area, Jesus tells his disciples what will happen in the future to the wonderful temple that Herod the Great has built.

What wonderful stones and what wonderful buildings (ULT)

how marvelous these huge cut blocks of stone in the walls are and how wonderful these buildings are (UST)

The “stones” refer to the stones that the buildings were built with. Alternate translation: “the wonderful buildings and the wonderful stones that they are made of” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [temple](#)
- [Teacher](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of...apprentices](#)
- [temple area](#)
- [Teacher](#)

ULT

¹ As Jesus was walking away from the [temple](#), one of his [disciples](#) said to him, “[Teacher](#), look! What wonderful stones and what wonderful buildings!”

UST

¹ While Jesus was leaving the [temple area](#), one of his [apprentices](#) said to him, “[Teacher](#), look at how marvelous these huge cut blocks of stone in the walls are and how wonderful these buildings are!”

Mark 13:2

Do you see these great buildings? Not one...stone (ULT)

This question is used to draw attention to the buildings. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Look at these great buildings! Not one stone" or "You see these great buildings now, but not one stone" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Not one stone will be left here on another stone, which will not be thrown down (ULT)

They will be destroyed completely. No block of stone here in this temple area will remain on top of another block (UST)

It is implied that enemy soldiers will tear down the stones. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Not one stone will remain on top of another, for enemy soldiers will come and destroy these buildings" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)

ULT

² [Jesus](#) said to him, "Do you see these great buildings? Not one stone will be left here on another stone, which will not be thrown down."

UST

² [Jesus](#) said to him, "Yes, these buildings that you are looking at are wonderful, but I want to tell you something about them. They will be destroyed completely. No block of stone here in this temple area will remain on top of another block."

Mark 13:3

Connecting Statement:

In answer to the disciples' questions about the temple's destruction and what was going to happen, Jesus tells them what was going to take place in the future.

Now as he was sitting on the Mount of Olives opposite the temple...Peter (ULT)

After they arrived at the Mount of Olives across the valley from the temple, Jesus sat down...Peter (UST)

It can be expressed clearly that Jesus and his disciples had walked to the Mount of Olives. Alternate translation: "After arriving at the Mount of Olives, which is opposite the temple, Jesus sat down. Then Peter" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

privately (ULT)

When...were alone with him (UST)

when they were alone

Translation Words - ULT

- [temple](#)
- [Andrew](#)
- [Mount of Olives](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [John](#)
- [James](#)
- [of Olives](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [temple](#)
- [Andrew](#)
- [Mount of Olives](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [John](#)
- [James](#)
- [of Olives](#)

ULT

³ Now as he was sitting on the [Mount of Olives](#) opposite the [temple](#), [Peter](#), [James](#), [John](#), and [Andrew](#) asked him privately,

UST

³ After they arrived at the [Mount of Olives](#) across the valley from the [temple](#), Jesus sat down. When [Peter](#), [James](#), [John](#), and [Andrew](#) were alone with him, they asked him,

Mark 13:4

will these things happen...are about...to be fulfilled (ULT)

will these things that God has planned happen...are about...to take place (UST)

This refers to what Jesus had just said will happen to the stones of the temple. This can be made clear. Alternate translation: "these things happen to the buildings of the temple...are about to happen to the temple buildings" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

when...these things...all (ULT)

"that all these things"

Translation Words - ULT

- [sign](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [will happen to show us](#)

ULT

⁴ "Tell us, when will these things happen? What will be the [sign](#) when all these things are about to be fulfilled?"

UST

⁴ "Tell us, when will these things that God has planned happen? What [will happen to show us](#) these things are about to take place?"

Mark 13:5

to say to them (ULT)
replied...to them (UST)

“to his disciples”

leads you astray (ULT)
deceive you concerning what will happen (UST)

Here “leads you astray” is a metaphor for persuading someone to believe what is not true. Alternate translation: “deceives you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [So Jesus](#)
- [leads...astray](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [deceive...concerning what will happen](#)

ULT

⁵ [So Jesus](#) began to say to them, “Be careful that no one [leads](#) you [astray](#).”

UST

⁵ [Jesus](#) replied to them, “Beware that no one [deceive](#) you [concerning what will happen](#)!”

Mark 13:6

they will lead many astray (ULT)

They will deceive many people (UST)

Here “lead...astray” is a metaphor for persuading someone to believe what is not true. Alternate translation: “they will deceive many people” (See: [Metaphor](#))

in my name (ULT)

and say that I sent them (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) “claiming my authority” or 2) “claiming that God sent them.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

I...am he (ULT)

I am the Messiah (UST)

“I am the Christ”

Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)
- [they will lead...astray](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and say that I sent them](#)
- [They will deceive](#)

ULT

⁶ Many will come in my [name](#) and say, ‘I am he,’ and [they will lead](#) many [astray](#).

UST

⁶ Many people will come [and say that I sent them](#). They will say, ‘I am the Messiah!’ [They will deceive](#) many people.

Mark 13:7

you hear of wars and rumors of wars (ULT)
you hear the sound of soldiers fighting battles, or...you
hear news about wars that are far away (UST)

"hear of wars and reports about wars." Possible meanings are 1)
 "hear the sounds of wars close by and news of wars far away" or 2)
 "hear of wars that have started and reports about wars that are
 about to start"

but the end is not yet (ULT)
But when they do happen, do not think that God will
finish all that he has planned at that time (UST)

"but it is not yet the end" or "but the end will not happen until later"
 or "but the end will be later"

the end (ULT)
God will finish all that he has planned at that time (UST)

This probably refers to the end of the world. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

⁷ When you hear of wars and rumors of wars, do not worry; these things must happen, but the end is not yet.

UST

⁷ When you hear the sound of soldiers fighting battles, or when you hear news about wars that are far away, do not be troubled. These things will definitely happen. But when they do happen, do not think that God will finish all that he has planned at that time!

Mark 13:8

will rise...against (ULT)

will fight...Groups who live in various countries...each other (UST)

This idiom means to fight against one another. Alternate translation: "will fight against" (See: [Idiom](#))

kingdom against kingdom (ULT)

various kings and leaders will fight each other (UST)

The words "will rise" are understood from the previous phrase. Alternate translation: "kingdom will rise against kingdom" or "the people of one kingdom will fight against the people of another kingdom" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

These are the beginnings of birth pains (ULT)

Yet, when these things happen, people will have only just begun to suffer. These first things that they suffer will be like the first pains a woman suffers who is about to bear a child. They will suffer much more after that (UST)

Jesus speaks of these disasters as the beginnings of birth pains because more severe things will happen after them. Alternate translation: "These events will be like the first pains a woman suffers when she is about to bear a child" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [nation](#)
- [nation](#) (2)
- [will rise](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [famines](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Groups who live in various countries...each other](#)
- [Groups who live in various countries...each other](#) (2)
- [will fight](#)
- [various kings and leaders will fight each other](#)
- [various kings and leaders will fight each other](#)
- [famines](#)

ULT

⁸ For [nation will rise](#) against [nation](#), and [kingdom](#) against [kingdom](#), there will be earthquakes in many places, and there will be [famines](#). These are the beginnings of birth pains.

UST

⁸ [Groups who live in various countries will fight each other](#), and [various kings and leaders will fight each other](#). There will also be earthquakes in various places, and there will be [famines](#). Yet, when these things happen, people will have only just begun to suffer. These first things that they suffer will be like the first pains a woman suffers who is about to bear a child. They will suffer much more after that.

Mark 13:9

You must watch out for yourselves

“Be ready for what people will do to you”

They will deliver you up to councils (ULT)

They will arrest you...put you on trial before groups of leaders (UST)

“take you and put you under the control of councils”

you will be beaten (ULT)

People will beat you (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “people will beat you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

before...you will stand (ULT)

in the presence of...and...They will put you on trial (UST)

This means to be put on trial and judged. Alternate translation: “You will be put on trial before” or “You will be brought to trial and judged by” (See: [Idiom](#))

because of me (ULT)

“because of me” or “on account of me”

as a testimony to them (ULT)

As a result, you will be able to tell them about me (UST)

This means they will testify about Jesus. This can be made clear. Alternate translation: “and testify to them about me” or “and you will tell them about me” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [synagogues](#)
- [a testimony](#)
- [They will deliver...up](#)
- [kings](#)
- [governors](#)
- [councils](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [synagogues](#)
- [As a result, you will be able to tell...about me](#)
- [They will arrest](#)
- [high government authorities](#)
- [high government authorities](#)
- [put you on trial before groups of leaders](#)

ULT

⁹ You must watch out for yourselves. [They will deliver](#) you [up](#) to [councils](#) and to [synagogues](#), you will be beaten, and you will stand before [governors](#) and [kings](#) because of me, as [a testimony](#) to them.

UST

⁹ Be ready for what people will do to you at that time. [They will arrest](#) you and [put you on trial before groups of leaders](#). People will beat you in various [synagogues](#). They will put you on trial in the presence of [high government authorities](#). [As a result, you will be able to tell](#) them [about me](#).

Mark 13:10

But the gospel must first be proclaimed to all the nations (ULT)

Jesus is still speaking about things that must happen before the end comes. This can be made clear. Alternate translation: "But the gospel must first be proclaimed to all the nations before the end will come" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [gospel](#)
- [be proclaimed](#)
- [nations](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [good news](#)
- [proclaim](#)
- [people in all nations](#)

ULT

¹⁰ But the [gospel](#) must first [be proclaimed](#) to all the [nations](#).

UST

¹⁰ My followers must [proclaim](#) the [good news](#) to [people in all nations](#) before God finishes everything that he has planned.

Mark 13:11

and hand you over (ULT)

Here this means to put people under the control of the authorities.
Alternate translation: “give you over to the authorities” (See: [Idiom](#))

but the Holy Spirit (ULT)

It will be the Holy Spirit who will be speaking through you (UST)

The words “will speak” are understood from the previous phrase.
Alternate translation: “but the Holy Spirit will speak through you”
(See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Holy](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [hour](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Holy](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [time](#)

ULT

11 When they arrest you and hand you over, do not worry about what you should say. But whatever might be given to you in that [hour](#), speak that; for you will not be the ones who are speaking, but the [Holy Spirit](#).

UST

11 When people arrest you, do not worry about what you will say. Instead, say what God puts into your mind at that [time](#). Then it will not be just you who will be speaking. It will be the [Holy Spirit](#) who will be speaking through you.

Mark 13:12

Brother...will deliver up...brother to death (ULT)

"One brother will put another brother under the control of people who will kill him" or "Brothers will put their brothers under the control of people who will kill them." This will happen many times to many different people. Jesus is not speaking of just one person and his brother.

Brother...brother (ULT)

Some brothers and sisters...other brothers and sisters (UST)

This refers to both brothers and sisters. Alternate translation: "People...their siblings" (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

a father his child (ULT)

Some fathers will betray their children (UST)

The words "will deliver up to death" are understood from the previous phrase. This means that some fathers will betray their children, and this betrayal will cause their children to be killed. Alternate translation: "fathers will deliver up their children to death" or "fathers will betray their children, handing them over to be killed" (See: [Ellipsis](#) and [Idiom](#))

Children...will rise up...against their parents (ULT)

Some children will betray their parents (UST)

This means that children will oppose their parents and betray them. Alternate translation: "Children will oppose their parents" (See: [Idiom](#))

cause them to be put to death (ULT)

government officials will kill their parents (UST)

This means that the authorities will sentence the parents to be put to death. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "cause the authorities to sentence the parents to die" or "the authorities will kill the parents" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Brother
- brother
- his child
- Children
- a father
- death
- cause...to be put to death
- will rise up

Translation Words - UST

- Some brothers and sisters

ULT

¹² [Brother](#) will deliver up [brother](#) to [death](#), and [a father his child](#). [Children will rise up](#) against their parents and [cause](#) them [to be put to death](#).

UST

¹² [Some brothers and sisters](#) will betray [other brothers and sisters](#). [Some fathers will betray their children](#). [Some children will betray](#) their parents so that [government officials will kill](#) their parents.

- other brothers and sisters
- their children
- Some children
- Some fathers will betray
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- government officials will kill
- will betray

Mark 13:13

You will be...hated by everyone (ULT)

Most people will hate you (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Everyone will hate you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

because of my name (ULT)

because you believe in me (UST)

Jesus uses the metonym "my name" to refer to himself. Alternate translation: "because of me" or "because you believe in me" (See: [Metonymy](#))

whoever...endures to the end, that person will be saved (ULT)

This may be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whoever endures to the end, God will save that person" or "God will save whoever endures to the end" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

whoever...endures to the end (ULT)

Here "endures" represents continuing to be faithful to God even while suffering. Alternate translation: "whoever suffers and stays faithful to God to the end" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

to the end (ULT)

until your life is finished (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) "to the end of his life" or 2) "to the end of that time of trouble"

Translation Words - ULT

- will be saved
- name
- endures

Translation Words - UST

- will be saved
- you believe in me
- who continue to trust in me

ULT

¹³ You will be hated by everyone because of my [name](#). But whoever [endures](#) to the end, that person [will be saved](#).

UST

¹³ Most people will hate you because [you believe in me](#). But all you [who continue to trust in me](#) until your life is finished [will be saved](#).

Mark 13:14

the abomination of desolation (ULT)

the detestable thing will enter the temple. It will defile the temple and cause people to abandon it (UST)

This phrase is from the book of Daniel. His audience would have been familiar with this passage and the prophecy about the abomination entering the temple and defiling it. Alternate translation: “the shameful thing that defiles the things of God” (See: [Metaphor](#))

standing where it should not be (ULT)

Jesus’ audience would have known that this refers to the temple. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “standing in the temple, where it should not be standing” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

let the reader understand (ULT)

May everyone who is reading this pay attention to this warning (UST)

This is not Jesus speaking. Matthew added this to get the readers’ attention, so that they would listen to this warning. Alternate translation: “may everyone who is reading this pay attention to this warning” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [abomination](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [of desolation](#)
- [let...understand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [detestable thing will enter the temple](#)
- [of Judea](#)
- [It will defile the temple and cause people to abandon it](#)
- [May...pay attention to this warning](#)

ULT

¹⁴ But when you see the [abomination of desolation](#) standing where it should not be (let the reader [understand](#)), then let those who are in [Judea](#) flee to the mountains,

UST

¹⁴ During that time the [detestable thing will enter the temple. It will defile the temple and cause people to abandon it.](#) When you see it where it should not be, you should run away quickly! (May everyone who is reading this [pay attention to this warning!](#)) At that time those people who are in the district [of Judea](#) should flee to higher hills.

Mark 13:15

on the housetop (ULT) outside their houses (UST)

Housetops where Jesus lived were flat, and people could stand on them.

Translation Words - ULT

- of...house

Translation Words - UST

- houses

ULT

¹⁵ let the one who is on the housetop not go down nor go in to take anything out of his [house](#),

UST

¹⁵ Those people who are outside their houses should not enter their [houses](#) in order to get anything.

Mark 13:16

let...not go back (ULT)

should not return to their houses (UST)

This refers to returning to his house. This can be made explicit.
Alternate translation: "not return to his house" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

to get his cloak (ULT)

in order to get additional clothes (UST)

"to get his cloak"

Translation Words - ULT

- [let...go back](#)
- [cloak](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [should...return](#)
- [additional clothes](#)

ULT

¹⁶ and let the one who is in the field not [go back](#) to get his [cloak](#).

UST

¹⁶ Those who are working in a field should not [return](#) to their houses in order to get [additional clothes](#).

Mark 13:17

to those who are pregnant (ULT) for women who will be pregnant (UST)

This is a polite way to say that someone is pregnant. Alternate translation: “are pregnant” (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [woe](#)
- [to those who are pregnant](#)
- [days](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [I feel very sorry...because it will be very difficult for them to run away](#)
- [who will be pregnant](#)
- [days](#)

ULT

¹⁷ But [woe to those who are pregnant](#), and to those who are nursing infants in those [days](#)!

UST

¹⁷ [I feel very sorry](#) for women [who will be pregnant](#) and women who will be nursing their babies in those [days](#), [because it will be very difficult for them to run away](#)!

Mark 13:18

Pray...that (ULT)

“Pray that these times” or “Pray that these things”

in winter (ULT)

“the cold season” or “the cold, rainy season.” This refers to the time of year when it is cold and unpleasant and difficult to travel.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Pray](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [pray](#), [prayer](#)

ULT

18 [Pray](#) that it might not occur in winter.

UST

18-19 In those days people will suffer very severely. People have never suffered like that since the time when God first created the world until now; and people will not suffer that way again. So pray that this painful time will not happen in winter, when it will be hard to travel.

Mark 13:19

such as has not been (ULT)

“greater than there has ever been.” This describes how great and terrible the tribulation will be. There has never been a tribulation as terrible as this one will be.

not...that will...never...be...again (ULT)

“and greater than there will ever be again” or “and after that tribulation, there will never again be a tribulation like it”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- tribulation
- in...days
- of creation
- created

Translation Words - UST

- God
- tribulation, distresses, trouble
- day
- create, created, creation, creator
- create, created, creation, creator

ULT

19 For there will be in those [days](#) [tribulation](#), such as has not been, from the beginning [of creation](#) which [God](#) [created](#), until now, and that will never be again.

UST

18-19 In those days people will suffer very severely. People have never suffered like that since the time when God first created the world until now; and people will not suffer that way again. So pray that this painful time will not happen in winter, when it will be hard to travel.

Mark 13:20

had...shortened...the days (ULT)

God had...decided that he would shorten...that time when people suffer so much (UST)

“had shortened the time.” It may be helpful to specify which “days” are referred to. Alternate translation: “had reduced the days of suffering” or “had shortened the time of suffering” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

no flesh would have been saved (ULT) everyone would die (UST)

The word “flesh” refers to people, and “saved” refers to physical salvation. Alternate translation: “no one would be saved” or “everyone would die” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

for the sake of the elect (ULT) because he is concerned about the people (UST)

“in order to help the elect”

the elect whom he chose (ULT) the people whom he has chosen (UST)

The phrase “those whom he chose” means the same thing as “the elect.” Together, they emphasize that God chose these people. (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- would have been saved
- the Lord
- flesh
- elect
- he chose
- days
- days (2)

Translation Words - UST

- would die
- the Lord
- everyone
- people
- he has chosen
- that time when people suffer so much
- time (2)

ULT

²⁰ And if [the Lord](#) had not shortened the [days](#), no [flesh would have been saved](#). But for the sake of the [elect](#) whom [he chose](#), he cut short the [days](#).

UST

²⁰ If [the Lord](#) God had not decided that he would shorten [that time when people suffer so much](#), [everyone would die](#). But he has decided to shorten that [time](#) because he is concerned about the [people](#) whom [he has chosen](#).

Mark 13:21

General Information:

In verse 21 Jesus gives a command, and in 22 he tells the reason for the command. This can be reordered with the reason first, and the command second, as in the UST. (See: [Verse Bridges](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [believe it](#)
- [Christ](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [believe](#), [believer](#), [belief](#), [unbeliever](#), [unbelief](#)
- [Christ](#), [Messiah](#)

ULT

21 So then if anyone says to you, 'Look, here is the [Christ](#)!' or 'Look, there he is!' do not [believe it](#).

UST

21-22 At that time people will falsely say that they are the Messiah. And some will appear claiming to be prophets from God. Then they will perform many kinds of miracles. They will even try to deceive the people whom God has chosen. So at that time if someone says to you, 'Look, here is the Messiah!', or if someone says, 'Look, there he is!', do not believe it!

Mark 13:22

false Christs (ULT)

"people who claim they are Christ"

so as to deceive (ULT)

"in order to deceive" or "hoping to deceive" or "trying to deceive"

so as to deceive, if possible, the elect (ULT)

The phrase "even the elect" implies that the false Christs and false prophets will expect to deceive some people, but they will not know if they will be able to deceive the elect. Alternate translation: "in order to deceive people, and even deceive the elect, if that is possible" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

the elect (ULT)

"the people whom God has chosen"

Translation Words - ULT

- [signs](#)
- [elect](#)
- [wonders](#)
- [false prophets](#)
- [will appear](#)
- [to deceive](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sign](#), [proof](#), [reminder](#)
- [chosen](#), [choose](#), [chosen people](#), [Chosen One](#), [elect](#)
- [amazed](#), [amazement](#), [astonished](#), [marvel](#), [marveled](#), [marvelous](#), [wonder](#), [dumbfounded](#)
- [false prophet](#)
- [raise](#), [raised](#), [risen](#), [arise](#), [arose](#), [got up](#), [stir up](#), [stirred up](#)
- [deceive](#), [deceit](#), [deceiver](#), [deceitful](#), [deception](#), [illusions](#)

ULT

²² For false Christs and [false prophets](#) [will appear](#) and will give [signs](#) and [wonders](#), so as [to deceive](#), if possible, the [elect](#).

UST

²¹⁻²² At that time people will falsely say that they are the Messiah. And some will appear claiming to be prophets from God. Then they will perform many kinds of miracles. They will even try to deceive the people whom God has chosen. So at that time if someone says to you, 'Look, here is the Messiah!', or if someone says, 'Look, there he is!', do not believe it!

Mark 13:23

You must watch out (ULT)

“Be watchful” or “Be alert”

I have told you everything ahead of time (ULT)

I have warned you about all this before it happens (UST)

Jesus told them these things to warn them. Alternate translation: “I have told you all these things ahead of time to warn you” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

²³ You must watch out! See, I have told you everything ahead of time.

UST

²³ Be alert! Remember that I have warned you about all this before it happens!

Mark 13:24

the sun will be darkened (ULT)

God will cause the sun to become dark (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the sun will become dark” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the moon will not give its light (ULT)

the moon will not shine (UST)

Here the moon is spoken of as if it were alive and able to give something to someone else. Alternate translation: “the moon will not shine” or “the moon will be dark” (See: [Personification](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- will be darkened
- light
- tribulation
- days

Translation Words - UST

- God will cause...to become dark
- will...shine
- time when people suffer
- After

ULT

²⁴ But in those [days](#), after that [tribulation](#), the sun [will be darkened](#), and the moon will not give its [light](#);

UST

²⁴ [After](#) the [time when people suffer](#) like that, [God will cause](#) the sun [to become dark](#), and the moon will not [shine](#);

Mark 13:25**the...stars will be falling from the sky (ULT)**

This does not mean that they will fall to earth but that they will fall from where they are now. Alternate translation: “the stars will fall from their places in the sky” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**the powers that are in the heavens will be shaken (ULT)
will...all the things in the sky to shake out of their place (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the powers in the heavens will shake” or “God will shake the powers that are in the heavens” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the powers that are in the heavens

“the powerful things in the heavens.” Possible meanings are 1) this refers to the sun, moon, and stars or 2) this refers to powerful spiritual beings

**in the heavens (ULT)
in the sky (UST)**

“in the sky”

Translation Words - ULT

- [sky](#)
- [heavens](#)
- [powers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sky](#)
- [sky](#)
- [all the things](#)

ULT

²⁵ the stars will be falling from the [sky](#), and the [powers](#) that are in the [heavens](#) will be shaken.

UST

²⁵ God will cause the stars to fall from the [sky](#), and [all the things](#) in the [sky](#) to shake out of their place.

Mark 13:26

Then...they will see (ULT)

Then people will see (UST)

“Then people will see”

Then...with great power...glory (ULT)

“powerfully and gloriously”

Translation Words - ULT

- [power](#)
- [glory](#)
- [Son of Man](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [powerfully](#)
- [gloriously](#)
- [Son of Man](#)

ULT

²⁶ Then they will see the [Son of Man](#) coming in the clouds with great [power](#) and [glory](#).

UST

²⁶ Then people will see me, the [Son of Man](#), coming through the clouds [powerfully](#) and [gloriously](#).

Mark 13:27**he will gather together (ULT)****they can gather together (UST)**

The word “he” refers to God and is a metonym for his angels, as they are the ones who will gather the elect. Alternate translation: “they will gather” or “his angels will gather” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the four winds (ULT)**everywhere (UST)**

The whole earth is spoken of as “the four winds,” which refer to the four directions: north, south, east, and west. Alternate translation: “the north, south, east, and west” or “all parts of the earth” (See: [Metaphor](#))

from the end of the earth to the end of the sky (ULT)

These two extremes are given to emphasize that the elect will be gathered from the entire earth. Alternate translation: “from every place on earth” (See: [Merism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of the sky](#)
- [angels](#)
- [elect](#)
- [he will gather together](#)
- [he will send](#)
- [of the earth](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [angels](#)
- [people whom God has chosen](#)
- [they can gather together](#)
- [I will send out](#)
- [the most remote places on earth](#)

ULT

²⁷ Then [he will send](#) the [angels](#) and [he will gather together](#) his [elect](#) from the four winds, from the end [of the earth](#) to the end [of the sky](#).

UST

²⁷ Then [I will send out](#) my [angels](#) so [they can gather together](#) the [people whom God has chosen](#) from everywhere, from [the most remote places on earth](#).

Mark 13:28

Connecting Statement:

Jesus gives two short parables here to remind people to be aware when the things that he has been explaining happen. (See: [Parables](#))

its branch becomes tender and puts out its leaves (ULT)
their branches become tender and their leaves begin to sprout (UST)

The phrase “the branch” refers to the branches of the fig tree.
 Alternate translation: “its branches become tender and put out their leaves”

tender (ULT)

tender (UST)

“green and soft”

puts out its leaves (ULT)
their leaves begin to sprout (UST)

Here the fig tree is spoken of as if it were alive and able to willingly cause its leaves to grow. Alternate translation: “its leaves begin to sprout” (See: [Personification](#))

summer (ULT)

summer (UST)

the warm part of the year or the growing season

Translation Words - ULT

- [parable](#)
- [fig tree](#)
- [you know](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [I want you to learn something](#)
- [how fig trees grow](#)
- [you know](#)

ULT

²⁸ Learn the [parable](#) from the [fig tree](#). As soon as its branch becomes tender and puts out its leaves, [you know](#) that summer is near.

UST

²⁸ Now [I want you to learn something](#) from [how fig trees grow](#). When their branches become tender and their leaves begin to sprout, [you know](#) that summer is near for us.

Mark 13:29

these things (ULT)

what I have just described (UST)

This refers to the days of tribulation. Alternate translation: “these things I have just described” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

he is near (ULT)

it is very near the time for me to return (UST)

“the Son of Man is near”

right at the doors (ULT)

It will be as though I am already at the door (UST)

This idiom means that he is very near and has almost arrived, referring to a traveler being close to arriving at the city gates. Alternate translation: “and is almost here” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [you know](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [you...will know](#)

ULT

²⁹ So also, when you see these things happening, [you know](#) that he is near, right at the doors.

UST

²⁹ Similarly, when you see what I have just described happening, you yourselves [will know](#) that it is very near the time for me to return. It will be as though I am already at the door.

Mark 13:30

Truly I say to you (ULT)

Keep this in mind (UST)

This indicates that the statement that follows is especially important. See how you translated this in [Mark 3:28](#).

will...not...pass away (ULT)

will not die (UST)

This is a polite way to talk about someone dying. Alternate translation: “will not die” or “will not end” (See: [Euphemism](#))

until all of these things (ULT)

The phrase “these things” refers to the days of tribulation.

Translation Words - ULT

- Truly
- generation

Translation Words - UST

- Keep this in mind
- generation

ULT

³⁰ Truly I say to you, this [generation](#) will not pass away until all of these things occur.

UST

³⁰ [Keep this in mind](#): this [generation](#) will not die until these things take place.

Mark 13:31

Heaven and earth (ULT)

The earth and what is in the sky (UST)

The two extremes are given to refer to all of the sky, including the sun, moon, stars, and planets, and all of the earth. Alternate translation: "The sky, the earth, and everything in them" (See: [Merism](#))

will pass away (ULT)

will one day be destroyed (UST)

"will cease to exist." Here this phrase refers to the world ending.

but...words...but...my...words...will never pass away (ULT)

these things...that I have told you will certainly happen (UST)

Jesus speaks of words not losing their power as if they were something that will never physically die. Alternate translation: "my words will never lose their power" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Heaven](#)
- [but...my...words](#)
- [earth](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sky](#)
- [that I have told you](#)
- [earth](#)

ULT

³¹ [Heaven](#) and [earth](#) will pass away, [but](#) my [words](#) will never pass away.

UST

³¹ You can be certain that these things that I have prophesied will happen. The [earth](#) and what is in the [sky](#) will one day be destroyed, but these things [that I have told you](#) will certainly happen.

Mark 13:32

that day or that hour (ULT)

the exact time when I will return (UST)

This refers to the time that the Son of Man will return. Alternate translation: “that day or that hour that the Son of Man will return” or “the day or the hour that I will return” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

no one knows, not even the angels in heaven, nor the Son, but only the Father (ULT)

no one knows...The angels in heaven also do not know. Even I, God's Son, do not know. Only my Father knows (UST)

These words specify some of those who do not know when the Son of Man will return, different from the Father, who does know. Alternate translation: “no one knows—neither the angels in heaven nor the Son know—but the Father” or “neither the angels in heaven nor the Son know; no one knows but the Father” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

the angels in heaven (ULT)

The angels in heaven (UST)

Here “heaven” refers to the place where God lives.

but only the Father (ULT)

Only my Father knows (UST)

It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language naturally uses to refer to a human father. Also, this is an ellipsis, stating that the Father knows when the Son will return. Alternate translation: “but only the Father knows” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [angels](#)
- [Son](#)
- [Father](#)
- [hour](#)
- [day](#)
- [knows](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven](#)
- [angels](#)
- [Son](#)
- [Father](#)
- [the exact time when I will return](#)
- [the exact time when I will return](#)
- [knows](#)

ULT

³² But concerning that [day](#) or that [hour](#), no one [knows](#), not even the [angels](#) in [heaven](#), nor the [Son](#), but only the [Father](#).

UST

³² But no one [knows the exact time when I will return](#). The [angels](#) in [heaven](#) also do not know. Even I, God's [Son](#), do not know. Only my [Father](#) knows.

Mark 13:33

what time it is (ULT)

when that time will come when God will cause all these events to happen (UST)

It can be stated clearly what "time" refers to here. Alternate translation: "when all these events will happen" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- pray
- time
- Watch
- you...know

Translation Words - UST

- pray, prayer
- time...when God will cause all these events to happen
- Always be alert
- you do...know

ULT

³³ Be alert! [Watch](#) and [pray](#), because you do not [know](#) what [time](#) it is.

UST

³³ So be ready! [Always be alert](#), because [you do](#) not [know](#) when that [time](#) will come [when God will cause all these events to happen](#)!

Mark 13:34

his...to each...work (ULT)

his...He tells each one what...should do (UST)

“telling each one what work he should do”

Translation Words - ULT

- he commands
- work
- authority over
- watchman
- It is like
- stay alert
- of...servants
- house

Translation Words - UST

- he tells
- what...should do
- that they should manage the house
- doorkeeper
- When
- to be ready for his return
- servants
- house

ULT

³⁴ It is like a man going on a journey—he leaves his house and gives to each of his servants authority over his work, and he commands the watchman to stay alert.

UST

³⁴ When a man who wants to travel to a distant place is about to leave his house, he tells his servants that they should manage the house. He tells each one what he should do. Then he tells the doorkeeper to be ready for his return.

Mark 13:35

whether in the evening (ULT)

“he could return in the evening”

when the rooster crows (ULT)

when the rooster crows (UST)

The rooster is a bird that “crows” very early in the morning by making a loud call.

Translation Words - ULT

- master
- stay alert
- house
- you...know

Translation Words - UST

- master
- That man must always be ready...Similarly, you also must always be ready, because you do not know when I will return
- house
- he does...know

ULT

³⁵ Therefore [stay alert](#), because you do not [know](#) when the [master](#) of the [house](#) will come—whether in the evening, or at midnight, or when the rooster crows, or in the morning—

UST

³⁵ [That man must always be ready](#), because [he does](#) not [know](#) whether his [master](#) will return in the evening, at midnight, when the rooster crows, or at dawn. [Similarly, you also must always be ready, because you do not know when I will return.](#)

Mark 13:36

he might find you sleeping (ULT)

I will find that you are not ready (UST)

Here Jesus speaks of not being ready as “sleeping.” Alternate translation: “find you not ready for his return” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sleeping](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [are not ready](#)

ULT

³⁶ or else, if he comes suddenly, he might find you [sleeping](#).

UST

³⁶ May it not happen that when I come suddenly, I will find that you [are not ready](#)!

Mark 13:37

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Stay alert](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Always be ready](#)

ULT

³⁷ What I say to you I say to everyone:
[Stay alert!](#)"

UST

³⁷ These words that I am saying to you
apprentices I am saying to everyone:
[Always be ready!](#)"

Mark 14

Mark 14 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 14:27, 62, which are words from the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

The eating of the body and blood

[Mark 14:22-25](#) describes Jesus' last meal with his followers. At this time, Jesus told them that what they were eating and drinking were his body and his blood. Nearly all Christian churches celebrate "the Lord's Supper," the "Eucharist", or "Holy Communion" to remember this meal.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Abba, Father

"Abba" is an Aramaic word that the Jews used to speak to their fathers. Mark writes it as it sounds and then translates it. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

"Son of Man"

Jesus refers to himself as the "Son of Man" in this chapter (Mark 14:20). Your language may not allow people to speak of themselves as if they were speaking about someone else. (See: [Son of Man, son of man](#) and [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Mark 14:1

Connecting Statement:

Just two days before the Passover, the chief priests and scribes are secretly plotting to kill Jesus.

by stealth (ULT)

secretly (UST)

without people noticing

Translation Words - ULT

- scribes
- Festival of Unleavened Bread
- Passover
- chief priests
- were considering
- days
- they might arrest

Translation Words - UST

- men who taught the Jewish laws
- During those days they also celebrated the festival which they called Unleavened Bread
- week-long festival that they called the Passover
- chief priests
- were planning
- days
- they could arrest

ULT

¹ It was now two days before the Passover and the Festival of Unleavened Bread. The chief priests and the scribes were considering how they might arrest Jesus by stealth and kill him.

UST

¹ It was only two days before the people would begin to celebrate the week-long festival that they called the Passover. During those days they also celebrated the festival which they called Unleavened Bread. The chief priests and the men who taught the Jewish laws were planning how they could arrest Jesus secretly and put him to death.

Mark 14:2

For they were saying (ULT)

But they were saying to one another (UST)

The word "they" refers to the chief priests and the scribes.

Not during the feast (ULT)

We must not do it during the festival (UST)

This refers to them not arresting Jesus during the feast. Alternate translation: "We must not do it during the feast" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [people](#)
- [feast](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [people](#)
- [festival](#)

ULT

² For they were saying, "Not during the [feast](#), so that there might not be a riot among the [people](#)."

UST

² But they were saying to one another, "We must not do it during the [festival](#) because if we do it then, the [people](#) will be very angry with us and riot!"

Mark 14:3

Connecting Statement:

Though some were angry that the oil was used to anoint Jesus, Jesus says that the woman has anointed his body for burial before he will die.

of Simon the leper (ULT)

of Simon, whom Jesus had healed from leprosy (UST)

This man previously had leprosy but was no longer ill. This is a different man than Simon Peter and Simon the Zealot. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Jesus...as...was reclining at the table (ULT)

Jesus...While...were eating (UST)

In Jesus' culture, when people gathered to eat, they reclined on their sides, propping themselves up on pillows beside a low table.

an alabaster jar (ULT)

a stone jar (UST)

This is a jar made from alabaster. Alabaster was a very expensive yellow-white stone. Alternate translation: "beautiful white stone jar" (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

an alabaster jar of very costly anointing-oil, which was pure nard (ULT)

"that contained expensive, fragrant perfume called nard." Nard was a very expensive, sweet-smelling oil used to make perfume. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Jesus...on...head (ULT)

Jesus...head (UST)

"on Jesus' head"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Bethany](#)
- [leper](#)
- [on...head](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Bethany town](#)
- [whom Jesus had healed from leprosy](#)
- [head](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

³ Now while Jesus was in [Bethany](#) in the [house](#) of Simon the [leper](#), as he was reclining at the table, a woman came, having an alabaster jar of very costly anointing-oil, which was pure nard. She broke the jar and poured it on his [head](#).

UST

³ Jesus was at [Bethany town](#) in the [house](#) of Simon, [whom Jesus had healed from leprosy](#). While they were eating, a woman came to him. She was carrying a stone jar that contained expensive, fragrant perfume called nard. She opened the jar and then poured all the perfume on Jesus' [head](#).

Mark 14:4

Why has this waste of the anointing-oil happened (ULT)

They asked this question to show that they disapproved of the woman pouring the perfume on Jesus. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "It is terrible that she wasted that perfume!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [waste](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [It is terrible that she wasted](#)

ULT

⁴ But there were some who were angry, saying to themselves, "Why has this [waste](#) of the anointing-oil happened?"

UST

⁴ Some of the people who were present became angry and said to themselves, "[It is terrible that she wasted](#) that perfume!"

Mark 14:5

could have been...this perfume...sold (ULT)

Mark wants to show his readers that those present were more concerned about money. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "We could have sold this perfume" or "She could have sold this perfume" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

three hundred denarii (ULT)

a year's wages (UST)

"300 denarii." Denarii are Roman silver coins. (See: [Biblical Money](#) and [Numbers](#))

given to the poor (ULT)

the money could have been given to poor people (UST)

The phrase "the poor" refers to poor people. This refers to giving the money from the sale of the perfume to the poor. Alternate translation: "the money given to poor people" (See: [Ellipsis](#) and [Nominal Adjectives](#))

ULT

⁵ For this perfume could have been sold for more than three hundred denarii, and given to the poor." Then they scolded her.

UST

⁵ It could have been sold for almost a year's wages and then the money could have been given to poor people!" So they scolded her.

Mark 14:6

Why are you troubling her (ULT)

So you should not bother her (UST)

Jesus rebukes the guests for questioning this woman's action. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not trouble her!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- But Jesus
- a...work
- good
- She has done
- are you troubling

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- what I consider to be very appropriate
- what I consider to be very appropriate
- She has done
- So you should not bother

ULT

⁶ But [Jesus](#) said, "Leave her alone. Why [are you troubling](#) her? [She has done](#) a [good work](#) for me.

UST

⁶ But [Jesus](#) said, "Stop scolding her! [She has done](#) to me [what I consider to be very appropriate](#). [So you should not bother](#) her!"

Mark 14:7

the poor (ULT)

poor people (UST)

This refers to poor people. Alternate translation: “poor people” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [good](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [help](#)

ULT

⁷ For you always have the poor with you, and whenever you desire you can do [good](#) to them, but you will not always have me.

UST

⁷ You will always have poor people among you. So you can [help](#) them whenever you want to. But I will not be here with you much longer.

Mark 14:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [body](#)
- [She has anointed](#)
- [burial](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [body](#)
- [she has anointed](#)
- [burial](#)

ULT

⁸ She has done what she could. [She has anointed](#) my [body](#) beforehand for [burial](#).

UST

⁸ It is appropriate that she has done what she could do. It is as if she had known that I was going to die soon, because [she has anointed](#) my [body](#) ahead of time so that it is ready for [burial](#).

Mark 14:9

Truly...I say to you (ULT)

This indicates that the statement that follows is especially true and important. See how you translated this in [Mark 3:28](#).

wherever the gospel is preached (ULT)

Wherever my followers preach the good news (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "wherever my followers preach the gospel" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

what this woman has done will...be spoken of (ULT)

they will also tell what she has done (UST)

"what this woman has done will also be spoken of"

Translation Words - ULT

- Truly
- world
- gospel
- is preached

Translation Words - UST

- amen, truly
- world
- good news
- my followers preach

ULT

⁹ Truly I say to you, wherever the [gospel is preached](#) in the whole [world](#), what this woman has done will also be spoken of, in memory of her."

UST

⁹ I will tell you this: Wherever [my followers preach](#) the [good news](#) throughout the [world](#), they will also tell what she has done, and people will remember her."

Mark 14:10

Connecting Statement:

After the woman anoints Jesus with perfume, Judas promises to deliver Jesus to the chief priests.

so that he might deliver him over to them (ULT)
to talk about helping them to capture Jesus (UST)

Judas did not deliver Jesus over to them yet, rather he went to make arrangements with them. Alternate translation: "in order to arrange with them that he would deliver Jesus over to them" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

he might deliver him over (ULT)
helping...to capture Jesus (UST)

"bring Jesus to them so they could capture him"

Translation Words - ULT

- [twelve](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [Judas Iscariot](#)
- [he might deliver...over](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [twelve apprentices](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [Judas Iscariot](#)
- [helping...to capture](#)

ULT

¹⁰ Then [Judas Iscariot](#), who was one of the [twelve](#), went away to the [chief priests](#) so that [he might deliver](#) him [over](#) to them.

UST

¹⁰ Then [Judas Iscariot](#) went to the [chief priests](#) to talk about [helping](#) them [to capture](#) Jesus. He did that even though he was one of the [twelve apprentices](#).

Mark 14:11

When the chief priests heard it (ULT)

When the chief priests heard what he was willing to do for them (UST)

It may be helpful to state clearly what the chief priests heard.

Alternate translation: "When the chief priests heard what he was willing to do for them" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [promised](#)
- [money](#)
- [to betray](#)
- [they were glad](#)
- [He began looking for](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [They promised that](#)
- [a large amount of money](#)
- [to hand...over to them](#)
- [they were very happy](#)
- [Judas...began watching](#)

ULT

¹¹ When the chief priests heard it, [they were glad](#) and [promised](#) to give him [money](#). [He began looking for](#) an opportunity [to betray](#) him.

UST

¹¹ When the chief priests heard what he was willing to do for them, [they were very happy](#). [They promised that](#) they would give him [a large amount of money](#) in return. [Judas](#) agreed and [began watching](#) for an opportunity [to hand](#) Jesus [over to them](#).

Mark 14:12

Connecting Statement:

Jesus sends two of the disciples to prepare the Passover meal.

when they sacrificed the Passover lamb (ULT) when they kill the lambs for the Passover (UST)

At the beginning of the Festival of Unleavened Bread, it was customary to sacrifice a lamb. Alternate translation: "when it was customary to sacrifice the Passover lamb" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

you may eat the Passover meal (ULT) the meal for the Passover Celebration...we can eat it (UST)

Here the "Passover" refers to the Passover meal. Alternate translation: "eat the Passover meal" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [unleavened bread](#)
- [Passover lamb](#)
- [Passover meal](#) (2)
- [disciples](#)
- [they sacrificed](#)
- [day](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [festival that they call Unleavened Bread](#)
- [lambs for the Passover](#)
- [Passover Celebration](#) (2)
- [apprentices](#)
- [they kill](#)
- [day](#)

ULT

¹² Now on the first [day](#) of [unleavened bread](#), when [they sacrificed](#) the [Passover lamb](#), his [disciples](#) said to him, "Where do you want us to go to prepare, so you may eat the [Passover meal](#)?"

UST

¹² On the first [day](#) of the [festival that they call Unleavened Bread](#), when [they kill](#) the [lambs for the Passover](#), Jesus' [apprentices](#) said to him, "Where do you want us to go and prepare the meal for the [Passover Celebration](#) so that we can eat it?"

Mark 14:13

bearing a pitcher of water (ULT)

who will be carrying a large jar full of water (UST)

“carrying a large jar full of water”

Translation Words - ULT

- of...disciples
- of water
- he sent
- bearing

Translation Words - UST

- of...apprentices
- full of water
- Jesus chose...to prepare everything
- who will be carrying

ULT

¹³ So [he sent](#) two of his [disciples](#) and said to them, “Go into the city, and a man [bearing](#) a pitcher [of water](#) will meet you. Follow him.

UST

¹³ So [Jesus chose](#) two of his [apprentices to prepare everything](#). He said to them, “Go into Jerusalem city. A man will meet you, [who will be carrying](#) a large jar [full of water](#). Follow him.

Mark 14:14

The...Teacher says, "Where is my guest room...I will eat...with my disciples (ULT)

This can be written as an indirect quote. Translate this so that it is a polite request. Alternate translation: "Our Teacher would like to know where the guest room is where he may eat the Passover with his disciples." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

guest room (ULT)

wants us to prepare...the room (UST)

a room for visitors

Translation Words - ULT

- [owner of that house](#)
- [Passover](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [Teacher](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [man who owns the house](#)
- [meal of the Passover Celebration](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [teacher](#)

ULT

¹⁴ Whereever he enters, say to the [owner of that house](#), 'The [Teacher](#) says, "Where is my guest room where I will eat the [Passover](#) with my [disciples](#)?"'

UST

¹⁴ When he enters a house, say to the [man who owns the house](#), 'Our [teacher](#) wants us to prepare the [meal of the Passover Celebration](#) so that he can eat it with us his [disciples](#). Please show us the room.'

Mark 14:15

Make the preparations for us...there (ULT) prepare the meal there for us (UST)

They were to prepare the meal for Jesus and his disciples to eat.

Alternate translation: "Prepare the meal for us there" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

15 He will show you a large upper room, furnished and ready. Make the preparations for us there."

UST

15 He will show you a large room that is on the upper floor of the house. It will be furnished and ready for us to eat a meal in it. Then prepare the meal there for us."

Mark 14:16

the disciples left (ULT)

the two apprentices left (UST)

"The two disciples left"

just as he had said (ULT)

everything to be just like he had told...there (UST)

"as Jesus had said"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Passover meal](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [just as](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Passover Celebration](#)
- [apprentices](#)
- [everything to be just like...there](#)

ULT

16 So the [disciples](#) left and went to the city. They found it [just as](#) he had said to them, and they prepared the [Passover meal](#).

UST

16 So the two [apprentices](#) left. They went into the city and found [everything to be just like](#) he had told them. They prepared the meal for the [Passover Celebration there](#).

Mark 14:17

Connecting Statement:

That evening as Jesus and the disciples eat the Passover meal, Jesus tells them that one of them will betray him.

he came with the twelve (ULT)

Jesus arrived at that house with the twelve apprentices (UST)

It may be helpful to state where they came to. Alternate translation: "he came with the twelve to the house" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [twelve](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [twelve apprentices](#)

ULT

17 Then, when evening arrived, he came with the [twelve](#).

UST

17 When it was evening, Jesus arrived at that house with the [twelve apprentices](#).

Mark 14:18

As...were reclining at the table (ULT)

As...were all sitting there (UST)

In Jesus' culture, when people gathered to eat, they lay down on their sides, propping themselves up on pillows beside a low table.

Truly I say to you (ULT)

Listen carefully to this (UST)

This indicates that the statement that follows is especially true and important. See how you translated this in [Mark 3:28](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [Truly](#)
- [will betray](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [Listen carefully to this](#)
- [will make it possible for my enemies to arrest](#)

ULT

¹⁸ As they were reclining at the table and eating, [Jesus](#) said, "[Truly](#) I say to you, one of you who is eating with me [will betray](#) me."

UST

¹⁸ As they were all sitting there and eating, [Jesus](#) said, "[Listen carefully to this](#): One of you [will make it possible for my enemies to arrest](#) me. It is one of you who is eating with me right now!"

Mark 14:19

one by one

This means that "one at a time" each disciple asked him.

Surely not I (ULT)

Surely it is not I (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) this was a question for which the disciples expected the answer to be no or 2) this was a rhetorical question that did not require a response. Alternate translation: "Surely I am not the one who will betray you!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

¹⁹ They began to be grieved, and to say to him one by one, "Surely not I?"

UST

¹⁹ The apprentices became very sad and they said to him one by one, "Surely it is not I?"

Mark 14:20

It is one of the twelve (ULT)

It is one of you twelve apprentices (UST)

“He is one of the twelve of you, the one now”

the one who is dipping bread...with me in the bowl (ULT)

who is dipping bread into the sauce in the dish along with me (UST)

In Jesus' culture, people would often eat bread, dipping it in a shared bowl of sauce or of oil mixed with herbs.

Translation Words - ULT

- [twelve](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [twelve apprentices](#)

ULT

²⁰ Then he said to them, “It is one of the [twelve](#), the one who is dipping bread with me in the bowl.

UST

²⁰ Then he said to them, “It is one of you [twelve apprentices](#), the one who is dipping bread into the sauce in the dish along with me.

Mark 14:21

For the Son of Man will go just as it is written about him (ULT)

It is certain that I, the Son of Man, will die, because that is what has been written about me (UST)

Here Jesus refers to the scriptures prophesying about his death. If you have a polite way to talk about death in your language, use it here. Alternate translation: "For the Son of Man will die in the way that the scriptures say"

through whom the Son of Man is betrayed (ULT)

This can be stated more directly. Alternate translation: "who betrays the Son of Man" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- woe
- Son...of Man
- Son of Man
- better
- is betrayed
- just as
- it is written

Translation Words - UST

- there will be terrible punishment
- Son of Man
- me
- In fact...better off
- who betrays
- because that is what
- has been written

ULT

²¹ For the [Son of Man](#) will go [just as it is written](#) about him. But [woe](#) to that man through whom the [Son of Man is betrayed](#)! It would have been [better](#) for him if that man had not been born."

UST

²¹ It is certain that I, the [Son of Man](#), will die, [because that is what has been written](#) about me. But [there will be terrible punishment](#) for the man [who betrays me](#)! [In fact](#), he would have been [better off](#) if he had never been born!"

Mark 14:22

bread (ULT)

a flat loaf of bread (UST)

This was a flat loaf of unleavened bread, which was eaten as part of the Passover meal.

and broke it (ULT)

Then he broke it into pieces (UST)

This means that he broke the bread into pieces for the people to eat. Alternate translation: "broke it into pieces" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Take this. This is my body (ULT)

This bread is my body. Take it and eat it (UST)

"Take this bread. It is my body." Though most understand this to mean that the bread is a symbol of Jesus' body and that it is not actual flesh, it is best to translate this statement literally. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [blessed it](#)
- [body](#)
- [bread](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and thanked God for it](#)
- [body](#)
- [a flat loaf of bread](#)

ULT

²² As they were eating, Jesus took [bread](#), [blessed it](#), and broke it. He gave it to them and said, "Take this. This is my [body](#)."

UST

²² While they were eating, he took [a flat loaf of bread and thanked God for it](#). Then he broke it into pieces and gave it to them and said to them, "This bread is my [body](#). Take it and eat it."

Mark 14:23

He...took a cup (ULT)

he took a cup that contained wine (UST)

Here “cup” is a metonym for wine. Alternate translation: “He took the cup of wine” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

ULT

²³ He also took a cup, gave thanks, and gave it to them, and they all drank from it.

UST

²³ Afterwards, he took a cup that contained wine and thanked God for it. Then he gave it to them and they all drank.

Mark 14:24

This is my blood of the covenant, that is poured out for many (ULT)

The covenant is for the forgiveness of sins. This can be written more explicitly. Alternate translation: "This is my blood that confirms the covenant, the blood that is poured out so that many may receive the forgiveness of sins" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

This is my blood (ULT)

This wine is my blood (UST)

"This wine is my blood." Though most understand this to mean that the wine is a symbol of Jesus' blood and that it is not actual blood, it is best to translate this statement literally. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [blood](#)
- [covenant](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [blood](#)
- [covenant](#)

ULT

²⁴ He said to them, "This is my [blood](#) of the [covenant](#), that is poured out for many.

UST

²⁴ He said to them, "This wine is my [blood](#), which is about to be shed when my enemies kill me. With this blood I will confirm the covenant that God has made to forgive the sins of many people.

Mark 14:25

Truly I say to you (ULT) I want you to know this (UST)

This indicates that the statement that follows is especially true and important. See how you translated this in [Mark 3:28](#).

the fruit of the vine (ULT) wine (UST)

“wine.” This is a descriptive way to refer to wine.

new (ULT) again (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) “again” or 2) “in a new way”

Translation Words - ULT

- of God
- Truly
- kingdom of God
- vine
- fruit
- kingdom
- day

Translation Words - UST

- when God shows himself as king
- I want you to know this
- when God shows himself as king
- wine
- wine
- when God shows himself as king
- time

ULT

²⁵ [Truly](#) I say to you, I will never drink again of the [fruit](#) of the [vine](#) until that [day](#) when I drink it new in the [kingdom of God](#).”

UST

²⁵ [I want you to know this](#): I will not drink any more [wine](#) until the [time](#) when I drink it again [when God shows himself as king](#).”

Mark 14:26

When they had sung a hymn (ULT)

After they sang a hymn (UST)

A hymn is a type of song. It was traditional for them to sing an Old Testament psalm.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Mount of Olives](#)
- [of Olives](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Mount of Olives](#)
- [of Olives](#)

ULT

²⁶ When they had sung a hymn, they went out to the [Mount of Olives](#).

UST

²⁶ After they sang a hymn, they went out toward the [Mount of Olives](#).

Mark 14:27

Jesus said to them (ULT)

Jesus said to them (UST)

"Jesus said to his disciples"

will fall away (ULT)

You will leave me and run away (UST)

This is an idiom that means leave. Alternate translation: "will leave me" (See: [Idiom](#))

I will strike (ULT)

I will kill (UST)

"kill." Here "I" refers to God.

the sheep will be scattered (ULT)

scatter his sheep (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will scatter the sheep" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [shepherd](#)
- [sheep](#)
- [it is written](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [shepherd](#)
- [sheep](#)
- [They wrote in the scriptures that God said about me...Those words will come true](#)

ULT

²⁷ Then [Jesus](#) said to them, "All of you will fall away, for [it is written](#), 'I will strike the [shepherd](#) and the [sheep](#) will be scattered.'"

UST

²⁷ While they were on their way, [Jesus](#) said to them, "[They wrote in the scriptures that God said about me](#), 'I will kill the [shepherd](#) and scatter his [sheep](#).' [Those words will come true](#). You will leave me and run away."

Mark 14:28

Connecting Statement:

Jesus clearly tells Peter he will deny him. Peter and all of the disciples are certain they will not deny Jesus.

I...am raised up (ULT)

God makes...me...alive again (UST)

This idiom means that God will cause Jesus to become alive again after he has died. This can be written in active form. Alternate translation: "God raises me from the dead" or "God makes me alive again" (See: [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

I will go ahead of you (ULT)

I will go ahead of you...and meet you (UST)

"I will go before you"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Galilee](#)
- [am raised up](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [district of Galilee...there](#)
- [God makes...alive again](#)

ULT

²⁸ But after I [am raised up](#), I will go ahead of you into [Galilee](#)."

UST

²⁸ But after [God makes](#) me [alive again](#), I will go ahead of you to the [district of Galilee](#) and meet you [there](#)."

Mark 14:29**Even if all fall away, yet I will not (ULT)****Perhaps all the other disciples will leave you, but I will not! I will not leave you (UST)**

“I will not” can be fully expressed as “I will not fall away.” The phrase “not fall away” is a double negative and carries a positive meaning. This can be expressed in the positive if needed. Alternate translation: “Even if everyone else leaves you, I will stay with you” (See: [Ellipsis](#) and [Double Negatives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [But Peter](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Peter](#)

ULT

²⁹ [But Peter](#) said to him, “Even if all fall away, yet I will not.”

UST

²⁹ Then [Peter](#) said to him, “Perhaps all the other disciples will leave you, but I will not! I will not leave you!”

Mark 14:30

Truly I say to you (ULT)

The truth is that (UST)

This indicates that the statement that follows is especially true and important. See how you translated this in [Mark 3:28](#).

the rooster crows (ULT)

rooster crows (UST)

The rooster is a bird that calls out very early in the morning. The loud sound he makes is “crowing.”

twice (ULT)

the...two times (UST)

two times

you...will deny me (ULT)

you...will say about me...that you do not know me (UST)

“you will say that you do not know me”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [Truly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [The truth is that](#)

ULT

³⁰ Then [Jesus](#) said to him, “[Truly](#) I say to you, today—this very night—before the rooster crows twice, you will deny me three times.”

UST

³⁰ Then [Jesus](#) said to him, “[The truth is that](#) this very night, before the rooster crows two times, you will say about me three times, that you do not know me.

Mark 14:31

If I must die with (ULT)

"Even if I must die"

in the same manner...they all also spoke (ULT)

This means that all of the disciples said the same thing that Peter said.

Translation Words - ULT

- [die with](#)
- [in the same manner](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [they kill](#)
- [the same thing](#)

ULT

³¹ But Peter said emphatically, "If I must [die with](#) you, I will never deny you." And they all also spoke [in the same manner](#).

UST

³¹ But Peter replied strongly, "Even if [they kill](#) me, I will not say that I do not know you." And all the other apprentices said [the same thing](#).

Mark 14:32

Connecting Statement:

When they go to Gethsemane on the Mount of Olives, Jesus encourages three of his disciples to stay awake while he prays. Twice he awakens them, and the third time he tells them to wake up because it is time for the betrayal.

they came to the place (ULT)

Jesus and his apprentices came to the place (UST)

The word "they" refers to Jesus and his disciples.

Translation Words - ULT

- to...disciples
- is called
- I pray
- Gethsemane

Translation Words - UST

- of...disciples
- people call
- I pray
- Gethsemane

ULT

³² Then they came to the place that [is called Gethsemane](#), and Jesus said to his [disciples](#), "Sit here while [I pray](#)."

UST

³² On the way, Jesus and his apprentices came to the place that [people call Gethsemane](#). Then he said to some of his [disciples](#), "Stay here while [I pray](#)!"

Mark 14:33

to be distressed (ULT)
extremely upset (UST)

overwhelmed with sorrow

deeply troubled (ULT)
extremely upset (UST)

The word “deeply” refers to Jesus being greatly troubled in his soul.
 Alternate translation: “extremely troubled” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Peter](#)
- [John](#)
- [James](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Peter](#)
- [John](#)
- [James](#)

ULT

³³ He took [Peter](#), [James](#), and [John](#) with him and began to be distressed and deeply troubled.

UST

³³ Then he took [Peter](#), [James](#), and [John](#) with him. He became extremely upset.

Mark 14:34**My soul is (ULT)****I am (UST)**

Jesus speaks of himself as his “soul.” Alternate translation: “I am”
(See: [Synecdoche](#))

even to the point of death (ULT)**It is as if I were about to die (UST)**

Jesus is exaggerating because he feels so much distress and sorrow that he feels like he is about to die, though he knows he will not die until after the sun rises. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

stay alert (ULT)**keep watch (UST)**

The disciples were to stay alert while Jesus prayed. This does not mean that they were supposed to watch Jesus pray.

Translation Words - ULT

- [soul](#)
- [of death](#)
- [stay alert](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [I](#)
- [about to die](#)
- [keep watch](#)

ULT

³⁴ He said to them, “My [soul](#) is deeply grieved, even to the point [of death](#).
Remain here and [stay alert](#).”

UST

³⁴ He said to them, “[I](#) am very sorrowful.
It is as if I were [about to die](#). You men
stay here and [keep watch](#)!”

Mark 14:35**if it were possible (ULT)****if it were possible (UST)**

This means that if God would allow it to happen. Alternate translation: "if God would allow it" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

might pass...the hour (ULT)**he would not have to suffer...he would not have to suffer (UST)**

Here "this hour" refers to Jesus' time of suffering, both now in the garden and later. Alternate translation: "that he would not have to go through this time of suffering" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [prayed](#)
- [hour](#)
- [Jesus fell](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [he prayed](#)
- [he would not have to suffer](#)
- [and threw himself](#)

ULT

³⁵ Then going a little farther, [Jesus fell](#) to the ground and [prayed](#) that if it were possible the [hour](#) might pass from him.

UST

³⁵ He went a bit farther [and threw himself](#) on the ground. Then [he prayed](#) that if it were possible, [he would not have to suffer](#).

Mark 14:36

Abba (ULT)

O my Father (UST)

a term used by Jewish children to address their father. Since it is followed by "Father," it is best to transliterate this word. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

Father (ULT)

O my Father (UST)

This is an important title for God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Remove this cup from me (ULT)

rescue me so that I do not have to suffer now (UST)

Jesus speaks of the suffering that he must endure as if it were a cup. (See: [Metonymy](#))

But not what I will, but what you will (ULT)

But do not do what I want. Instead, do what you want (UST)

Jesus is asking God to do what he wants to be done and not what Jesus wants. Alternate translation: "But do not do what I want, do what you want" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Father](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [O my Father](#)

ULT

³⁶ He said, "Abba, [Father](#), all things are possible with you. Remove this cup from me. But not what I will, but what you will."

UST

³⁶ He said, "[O my Father](#), because you are able to do everything, rescue me so that I do not have to suffer now! But do not do what I want. Instead, do what you want!"

Mark 14:37**found them sleeping (ULT)****found his apprentices sleeping...woke them up (UST)**

The word "them" refers to Peter, James, and John.

Simon, are you asleep? Could you not stay alert for one hour (ULT)**Simon Peter...Are you sleeping? Were you not able to stay awake for just a short time (UST)**

Jesus rebukes Simon Peter for sleeping. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Simon, you are asleep when I told you to stay awake. You could not even stay awake for one hour."
(See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Peter](#)
- [Simon](#)
- [hour](#)
- [sleeping](#)
- [are you asleep](#)
- [Could](#)
- [you...stay alert](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Simon Peter](#)
- [Simon Peter](#)
- [for just a short time](#)
- [sleeping...woke them up](#)
- [Are you sleeping](#)
- [Were you...able](#)
- [to stay awake](#)

ULT

³⁷ Then he came back and found them [sleeping](#), and he said to [Peter](#), "[Simon](#), [are you asleep](#)? [Could](#) you not [stay alert](#) for one [hour](#)?"

UST

³⁷ Then he returned and found his apprentices [sleeping](#). He [woke them up](#) and said, "[Simon Peter](#)! [Are you sleeping](#)? [Were you](#) not [able to stay awake for just a short time](#)?"

Mark 14:38

so that you do not enter into temptation (ULT) so that you can resist when you are tempted (UST)

Jesus speaks of being tempted as if it were entering into a physical place. Alternate translation: “that you are not tempted” (See: [Metaphor](#))

The spirit indeed is willing, but the flesh is weak (ULT)

Jesus warns Simon Peter that he is not strong enough to do what he wants to do in his own strength. Alternate translation: “You are willing in your spirit, but you are too weak to do what you want to do” or “You want to do what I say, but you are weak”

The...spirit...the...flesh (ULT)

These refer to two different aspects of Peter. “The spirit” is his inmost desires. “The flesh” is his human ability and strength. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [flesh](#)
- [temptation](#)
- [spirit](#)
- [pray](#)
- [Stay alert](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [you are weak](#)
- [when you are tempted](#)
- [You want to do what I say](#)
- [pray](#)
- [So keep awake](#)

ULT

³⁸ [Stay alert](#) and [pray](#), so that you do not enter into [temptation](#). The [spirit](#) indeed is willing, but the [flesh](#) is weak.”

UST

³⁸ And he said to them, “[You want to do what I say](#), but [you are weak](#). [So keep awake](#) and [pray](#) so that you can resist [when you are tempted](#)!”

Mark 14:39

saying the same thing (ULT)
again what he prayed before (UST)

“prayed again what he prayed before”

Translation Words - ULT

- [and prayed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and prayed](#)

ULT

³⁹ He went away [and prayed](#) again,
saying the same thing.

UST

³⁹ Then he went away again [and prayed](#)
again what he prayed before.

Mark 14:40**he found them sleeping (ULT)****he found that they were sleeping (UST)**

The word “them” refers to Peter, James, and John.

for their eyes were heavy (ULT)

Here the author speaks of a sleepy person having a hard time keeping his eyes open as having “heavy eyes.” Alternate translation: “for they were so sleepy they were having a hard time keeping their eyes open” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [When he came back](#)
- [sleeping](#)
- [They...know](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [When he returned](#)
- [were sleeping](#)
- [they did...know](#)

ULT

⁴⁰ [When he came back](#) again, he found them [sleeping](#), for their eyes were heavy. [They](#) did not [know](#) what to say to him.

UST

⁴⁰ [When he returned](#), he found that they [were sleeping](#) again; they were so sleepy that they could not keep their eyes open. Because they were ashamed, [they did](#) not [know](#) what to say to him when he awakened them.

Mark 14:41**he came the third time (ULT)****He returned a third time (UST)**

Jesus had gone and prayed again. Then he returned to them a third time. This can be made clear. Alternate translation: "Then he went and prayed again. He returned the third time" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Are you still sleeping and taking your rest (ULT)

Jesus rebukes his disciples for not staying awake and praying. You can translate this rhetorical question as a statement if needed. Alternate translation: "You are still sleeping and resting!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

The hour has come (ULT)**The time for me to suffer is about to begin (UST)**

The time of Jesus' suffering and betrayal is about to begin.

Look (ULT)**Look (UST)**

"Listen!"

The Son of Man is being betrayed (ULT)**Someone is about to enable...the Son of Man (UST)**

Jesus warns his disciples that his betrayer is approaching them. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, am being betrayed" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of sinners](#)
- [Son of Man](#)
- [hands](#)
- [is being betrayed](#)
- [Are you...sleeping](#)
- [still](#)
- [hour](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sinful men](#)
- [Son of Man](#)
- [to capture me](#)
- [Someone is about to enable](#)
- [You are...asleep](#)
- [still](#)
- [time for me to suffer](#)

ULT

⁴¹ Then he came the third time and said to them, "[Are you still sleeping](#) and taking your rest? Enough! The [hour](#) has come. Look! The [Son of Man is being betrayed](#) into the [hands of sinners](#)."

UST

⁴¹ Then he went and prayed again. He returned a third time and found them sleeping again. He said to them, "[You are still asleep](#)? No more of this! The [time for me to suffer](#) is about to begin. Look! [Someone is about to enable sinful men to capture me](#), the [Son of Man](#)."

Mark 14:42

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the one who is betraying
- Get up

Translation Words - UST

- the one who is enabling them to capture
- So get up

ULT

⁴² Get up; let us go. Look, the one who is betraying me is near."

UST

⁴² So get up! Let us go! Look! Here comes the one who is enabling them to capture me!"

Mark 14:43

General Information:

Verse 44 gives background information about how Judas had arranged with the Jewish leaders to betray Jesus. (See: [Background Information](#))

Connecting Statement:

Judas betrays Jesus with a kiss, and the disciples all flee.

Translation Words - ULT

- [scribes](#)
- [twelve](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [Judas](#)
- [elders](#)
- [swords](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The leaders of the Jewish council](#)
- [twelve disciples](#)
- [The leaders of the Jewish council](#)
- [Judas...he](#)
- [The leaders of the Jewish council](#)
- [swords](#)

ULT

⁴³ And immediately, while he was still speaking, [Judas](#), one of the [twelve](#), arrived, and a crowd with him with [swords](#) and clubs, from the [chief priests](#), the [scribes](#), and the [elders](#).

UST

⁴³ While he was still speaking, [Judas](#) arrived. Even though he was one of Jesus' [twelve disciples](#), [he](#) came to enable Jesus' enemies to capture him. A crowd who carried [swords](#) and clubs was with him. [The leaders of the Jewish council](#) had sent them.

Mark 14:44

Now his betrayer (ULT)

This refers to Judas.

he is the one (ULT)

is the one whom you want...him (UST)

Here “the one” refers to the man that Judas was going to identify.

Alternate translation: “he is the one you want” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a sign
- betrayer
- I kiss
- Seize

Translation Words - UST

- sign, proof, reminder
- Judas, who was betraying
- I kiss...I kiss
- seize

ULT

⁴⁴ Now his [betrayer](#) had given them [a sign](#), saying, “Whomever [I kiss](#), he is the one. [Seize](#) him and lead him away under guard.”

UST

⁴⁴ [Judas, who was betraying](#) Jesus, had previously told this crowd, “The man whom [I kiss](#) is the one whom you want. When [I kiss](#) him, [seize](#) him and lead him away.”

Mark 14:45

he kissed him (ULT)

he kissed Jesus (UST)

“Judas kissed him”

Translation Words - ULT

- Rabbi
- he kissed

Translation Words - UST

- My teacher
- he kissed

ULT

⁴⁵ So when Judas arrived, immediately he came up to Jesus and said, “[Rabbi](#),” and [he kissed](#) him.

UST

⁴⁵ So, when Judas arrived, he immediately went to Jesus and said, “[My teacher](#)!” Then [he kissed](#) Jesus.

Mark 14:46

laid hands on him and seized him (ULT) grabbed Jesus (UST)

These two phrases have the same meaning to emphasize that they seized Jesus. Alternate translation: "grabbed Jesus and seized him" or "seized him" (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [hands](#)
- [seized](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [grabbed](#)
- [grabbed](#)

ULT

⁴⁶ Then they laid [hands](#) on him and [seized](#) him.

UST

⁴⁶ Then the crowd [grabbed](#) Jesus.

Mark 14:47

of those who stood by (ULT)
of his apprentices who was standing nearby (UST)

“who was standing nearby”

Translation Words - ULT

- [high priest](#)
- [sword](#)
- [servant](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [high priest](#)
- [sword](#)
- [servant](#)

ULT

⁴⁷ But a certain one of those who stood by drew his [sword](#) and struck the [servant](#) of the [high priest](#) and cut off his ear.

UST

⁴⁷ But one of his apprentices who was standing nearby drew his [sword](#). He struck the [servant](#) of the [high priest](#) with it, but he only cut off his ear.

Mark 14:48

Jesus answered and said to them (ULT)

"Jesus said to the crowd"

Do you come out, as against a robber, with swords and clubs to capture me (ULT)

Have you come here to seize me with swords and clubs, as if I were a bandit (UST)

Jesus is rebuking the crowd. This can be written as a statement.
Alternate translation: "It is ridiculous that you come here to seize me with swords and clubs, as if I were a robber!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [to capture](#)
- [a robber](#)
- [swords](#)
- [as](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [to seize](#)
- [bandit](#)
- [swords](#)
- [as](#)

ULT

⁴⁸ Then [Jesus](#) answered and said to them, "Do you come out, [as](#) against [a robber](#), with [swords](#) and clubs [to capture](#) me?"

UST

⁴⁸ [Jesus](#) said to them, "Have you come here [to seize](#) me with [swords](#) and clubs, [as](#) if I were a [bandit](#)?"

Mark 14:49

But this happened so that (ULT)

But this is happening in order that (UST)

“But this has happened so that”

Translation Words - ULT

- scriptures
- might be fulfilled
- temple
- teaching
- day
- you...arrest

Translation Words - UST

- Scriptures
- what the prophets have written in...about me may happen
- temple courtyard
- teaching the people
- Day after day
- did you...seize

ULT

⁴⁹ Every [day](#) I was with you [teaching](#) in the [temple](#), and you did not [arrest](#) me. But this happened so that the [scriptures](#) [might be fulfilled](#).”

UST

⁴⁹ [Day after day](#) I was with you in the [temple courtyard](#) [teaching the people](#). Why [did you](#) not [seize](#) me then? But this is happening in order that [what the prophets have written in](#) the [Scriptures](#) [about me may happen](#).”

Mark 14:50

they...left him...all (ULT)

left him...All his apprentices (UST)

This refers to the disciples.

ULT

⁵⁰ Then they all left him and ran away.

UST

⁵⁰ All his apprentices at once left him and ran away.

Mark 14:51

only a linen garment (ULT)

only a linen cloth (UST)

cloth made from the fibers of a flax plant

They seized...him (ULT)

The crowd grabbed him (UST)

"When the men seized that man"

Translation Words - ULT

- [They seized](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The crowd grabbed](#)

ULT

⁵¹ Now a certain young man was following Jesus, wearing only a linen garment over his naked body. [They seized](#) him,

UST

⁵¹ At that time, a young man was following Jesus. He was wearing only a linen cloth around his body. [The crowd grabbed](#) him,

Mark 14:52

but he left behind the linen garment (ULT)
but, as he pulled away from them, he left behind the
linen cloth in their hands (UST)

As the man was trying to run away, the others would have grabbed at his clothing, trying to stop him.

ULT

⁵² but he left behind the linen garment and ran away naked.

UST

⁵² but, as he pulled away from them, he left behind the linen cloth in their hands, and then he ran away naked.

Mark 14:53

Connecting Statement:

After the crowd of the chief priests, scribes, and elders lead Jesus to the high priest, Peter watches nearby while some stand to give false testimony against Jesus.

all the chief priests, the elders, and the scribes gathered together

This can be reordered so that it is easier to understand. "All of the chief priests, the elders, and the scribes had gathered there together"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [scribes](#)
- [high priest](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [gathered together](#)
- [elders](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [him](#)
- [All of the Jewish council](#)
- [high priest's house](#)
- [All of the Jewish council](#)
- [were gathering there](#)
- [All of the Jewish council](#)

ULT

⁵³ Then they led [Jesus](#) away to the [high priest](#), and all the [chief priests](#), the [elders](#), and the [scribes gathered together](#).

UST

⁵³ The men who had seized Jesus led [him](#) away to the [high priest's house](#). [All of the Jewish council were gathering there](#).

Mark 14:54

Now (ULT)

This word is used here to mark a shift in the story line as the author begins telling us about Peter.

right into the courtyard of the high priest (ULT)
went into the courtyard of the house where the high priest lived (UST)

As Peter followed Jesus, he stopped at the high priest's courtyard. This can be written clearly. Alternate translation: "and he went as far as the courtyard of the high priest" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

He was...sitting among the guards (ULT)
he sat there with the men who guarded the house of the high priest (UST)

Peter sat with the guards who were working at the courtyard. Alternate translation: "He sat in the courtyard among the guards" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [high priest](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [courtyard](#)
- [fire](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [high priest lived](#)
- [Peter...He](#)
- [courtyard](#)
- [a fire](#)

ULT

⁵⁴ Now [Peter](#) followed him from a distance, right into the [courtyard](#) of the [high priest](#). He was sitting among the guards and warming himself at the [fire](#).

UST

⁵⁴ [Peter](#) followed Jesus at a distance. [He](#) went into the [courtyard](#) of the house where the [high priest lived](#), and he sat there with the men who guarded the house of the high priest. He was warming himself beside [a fire](#).

Mark 14:55

Now (ULT)

This word is used here to mark a shift in the story line as the author continues telling us about Jesus being put on trial.

to put him to death (ULT)
that would be strong enough to put him to death...to put him to death (UST)

They were not the ones who would execute Jesus; rather, they would order someone else to do it. Alternate translation: "they might have Jesus executed" or "they might have someone execute Jesus" (See: [Metonymy](#))

they did not find any (ULT)
they did not find any evidence (UST)

They did not find testimony against Jesus with which they could convict him and have him put to death. Alternate translation: "But they did not find any testimony with which to convict him" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [testimony](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [put...to death](#)
- [were seeking](#)
- [Jewish council](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [for evidence...that would require the officials](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [to put...to death...to put...to death](#)
- [were looking](#)
- [rest of the Jewish council](#)

ULT

⁵⁵ Now the [chief priests](#) and the entire [Jewish council were seeking testimony](#) against [Jesus](#) to [put](#) him [to death](#). But they did not find any.

UST

⁵⁵ The [chief priests](#) and all the [rest of the Jewish council were looking for evidence](#) against [Jesus](#) that would be strong enough [to put](#) him [to death](#). But they did not find any evidence [that would require the officials to put](#) him [to death](#).

Mark 14:56

brought false testimony against him (ULT) told lies about Jesus (UST)

Here speaking false testimony is described as if it were a physical object that someone can carry. Alternate translation: “accused him by speaking false testimony against him” (See: [Metaphor](#))

their testimony did not agree (ULT) the statements they made did not agree with each other (UST)

This can be written in positive form. “but their testimony contradicted each other”

Translation Words - ULT

- [testimony](#)
- [brought false testimony](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [statements they made](#)
- [told lies](#)

ULT

⁵⁶ For many [brought false testimony](#) against him, but even their [testimony](#) did not agree.

UST

⁵⁶ Many other people [told lies](#) about Jesus, but the [statements they made](#) did not agree with each other. And so, their statements were not strong enough to make a charge against Jesus.

Mark 14:57

and brought false testimony against him (ULT) and accused him falsely (UST)

Here speaking false testimony is described as if it were a physical object that someone can carry. Alternate translation: “accused him by speaking false testimony against him” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- and brought false testimony
- stood up

Translation Words - UST

- and accused...falsely
- stood up

ULT

⁵⁷ Some [stood up and brought false testimony](#) against him, saying,

UST

⁵⁷ Finally, some [stood up and accused](#) him [falsely](#) by saying,

Mark 14:58

We...heard him say (ULT)

We heard him when he said (UST)

"We heard Jesus say." The word "we" refers to the people who brought false testimony against Jesus and does not include the people to whom they are speaking. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

made with hands (ULT)

that was built by men (UST)

Here "hands" refers to men. Alternate translation: "made by men...without man's help" or "built by men...without man's help" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

in three days (ULT)

within three days (UST)

"within three days." This means that the temple would be built within a three-day period.

another...I will build (ULT)

another temple...I will build (UST)

The word "temple" is understood from the previous phrase. It may be repeated. Alternate translation: "will build another temple" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [temple](#)
- [days](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [temple](#)
- [days](#)

ULT

⁵⁸ "We heard him say, 'I will destroy this [temple](#) made with hands, and in three [days](#) I will build another made without hands.'"

UST

⁵⁸ "We heard him when he said, 'I will destroy this [temple](#) that was built by men, and then within three [days](#) I will build another temple without help from anyone else.'"

Mark 14:59

not...did...agree (ULT)

But...not...did...agree with (UST)

“contradicted each other.” This can be written in positive form.

Translation Words - ULT

- [testimony](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [said](#)

ULT

⁵⁹ Yet even in this, their [testimony](#) did not agree.

UST

⁵⁹ But what some of these men [said](#) also did not agree with what others of them said.

Mark 14:60

Connecting Statement:

When Jesus answers that he is the Christ, the high priest and all of the leaders there condemn him as one who deserves to die.

stood up...among them (ULT)

stood up...in front of them (UST)

Jesus stands up in the middle of the angry crowd to speak to them. Translate this to show who was present when Jesus stood up to speak. Alternate translation: “stood up among the chief priests, scribes, and elders” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Do you not answer at all? What is it that they testify against you (ULT)

The chief priest is not asking Jesus for information about what the witnesses said. He is asking Jesus to prove what the witnesses said is wrong. Alternate translation: “Are you not going to reply? What do you say in response to the testimony these men are speaking against you?” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [testify against](#)
- [high priest](#)
- [stood up](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to Jesus](#)
- [all the things that...are saying in order to accuse](#)
- [high priest himself](#)
- [stood up](#)

ULT

⁶⁰ Then the [high priest stood up](#) among them and questioned [Jesus](#), saying, “Do you not answer at all? What is it that they [testify against](#) you?”

UST

⁶⁰ Then the [high priest himself stood up](#) in front of them and said [to Jesus](#), “Are you not going to reply? What do you say about [all the things that](#) they [are saying in order to accuse](#) you?”

Mark 14:61**the...Son of the Blessed One (ULT)****the...are...Son of God (UST)**

Here God is called “the Blessed.” It is best to translate “Son” with the same word your language would naturally use to refer to a “son” of a human father. Alternate translation: “the Son of the Blessed One” or “the Son of God” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#) and [Translating Son and Father](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Blessed One](#)
- [Son](#)
- [high priest](#)
- [Christ](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of God](#)
- [Son](#)
- [high priest...He](#)
- [Messiah](#)

ULT

⁶¹ But he was silent and did not answer at all. Again the [high priest](#) questioned him and said to him, “Are you the [Christ](#), the [Son](#) of the [Blessed One](#)?”

UST

⁶¹ But Jesus was silent and did not reply. Then the [high priest](#) tried again. [He](#) asked him, “Are you the [Messiah](#)? Do you say that you are the [Son of God](#)?”

Mark 14:62

I am (ULT)

I am (UST)

This likely has a double meaning: 1) to respond to the high priest's question and 2) to call himself "I Am," which is what God called himself in the Old Testament.

when he sits at the right hand of power (ULT) ruling beside God, who is completely powerful (UST)

Here "power" is a metonymym that represents God. To sit at the "right hand of God" is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God. Alternate translation: "he sits in the place of honor beside the all-powerful God" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Symbolic Action](#))

comes with the clouds of heaven (ULT) You will...see me coming down through the clouds in the sky (UST)

Here the clouds are described as accompanying Jesus when he returns. Alternate translation: "when he comes down through the clouds in the sky" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of heaven](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [of power](#)
- [the right hand](#)
- [Son of Man](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sky](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [who is completely powerful](#)
- [ruling beside God](#)
- [Son of Man](#)

ULT

⁶² [Jesus](#) said, "I am; and you will see the [Son of Man](#) when he sits at [the right hand of power](#) and comes with the clouds [of heaven](#)."

UST

⁶² [Jesus](#) said, "I am. Furthermore, you will see me, the [Son of Man](#), [ruling beside God](#), [who is completely powerful](#). You will also see me coming down through the clouds in the [sky](#)!"

Mark 14:63

tore his garments (ULT)

tore his own outer garment in protest (UST)

The high priest tore his clothes purposefully to show his outrage and horror at what Jesus has said. Alternate translation: "tore his garments in outrage"

What need do we still have for witnesses (ULT)

This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "We certainly do not need any more people who will testify against this man!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [for witnesses](#)
- [high priest](#)
- [garments](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [witnesses to testify against this man](#)
- [high priest...high priest](#)
- [outer garment](#)

ULT

⁶³ Then the [high priest](#) tore his [garments](#) and said, "What need do we still have [for witnesses](#)?"

UST

⁶³ When Jesus said this, the [high priest](#) tore his own [outer garment](#) in protest, and the [high priest](#) said, "Do we need more [witnesses to testify against this man](#)?"

Mark 14:64

You have heard the blasphemy (ULT)

You have heard his blasphemous claim to be God (UST)

This refers to what Jesus said, which the high priest called blasphemy. Alternate translation: “You have heard the blasphemy he has spoken” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

They...all (ULT)

They...all (UST)

all the people in the room

Translation Words - ULT

- [condemned](#)
- [blasphemy](#)
- [of death](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [agreed that...was guilty](#)
- [blasphemous claim to be God](#)
- [put to death](#)

ULT

⁶⁴ You have heard the [blasphemy](#). What do you think?” They all [condemned](#) him to be deserving [of death](#).

UST

⁶⁴ You have heard his [blasphemous claim to be God!](#)” They all [agreed that](#) Jesus [was guilty](#) and that he deserved to be [put to death](#).

Mark 14:65

some began to spit (ULT)

some of them began spitting on (UST)

some of the people in the room

to cover his face (ULT)

They put a blindfold on him (UST)

They covered his face with a cloth or blindfold, so he could not see.

Alternate translation: "to cover his face with a blindfold" (See:

[Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Prophecy (ULT)

If you are a prophet, tell us who hit you (UST)

They mocked him, asking him to prophesy who was hitting him.

Alternate translation: "Prophecy who hit you" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

The officers (ULT)

those who were guarding Jesus (UST)

men who guarded the governor's house

Translation Words - ULT

- [Prophecy](#)
- [strike](#)
- [face](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [If you are a prophet, tell us who hit you](#)
- [they began striking](#)
- [They put a blindfold on him](#)

ULT

⁶⁵ Then some began to spit on him, and to cover his [face](#), and [strike](#) him, and say to him, "[Prophecy!](#)" The officers also took him and slapped him.

UST

⁶⁵ Then some of them began spitting on Jesus. [They put a blindfold on him](#), and then [they began striking](#) him and saying to him, "[If you are a prophet, tell us who hit you!](#)" And those who were guarding Jesus struck him with their hands.

Mark 14:66

Connecting Statement:

As Jesus had predicted, Peter denies Jesus three times before the rooster crows.

below in the courtyard (ULT)
outside in the courtyard of the high priest's house (UST)

"outside in the courtyard"

one of the servant girls of the high priest (ULT)
one of the girls who worked for the high priest (UST)

The servant girls worked for the high priest. Alternate translation: "one of the servant girls who worked for the high priest" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [high priest](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [courtyard](#)
- [servant girls](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [high priest](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [courtyard of the high priest's house](#)
- [girls who worked](#)

ULT

⁶⁶ Now while [Peter](#) was below in the [courtyard](#), one of the [servant girls](#) of the [high priest](#) came to him.

UST

⁶⁶ While [Peter](#) was outside in the [courtyard of the high priest's house](#), one of the [girls who worked](#) for the [high priest](#) came near him.

Mark 14:67

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [Nazarene](#)
- [Peter](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [from Nazareth](#)
- [Peter](#)

ULT

⁶⁷ She saw [Peter](#) warming himself, and she looked closely at him and said, "You were also with the [Nazarene, Jesus](#)."

UST

⁶⁷ When she saw [Peter](#) warming himself beside the fire, she looked at him closely. Then she said, "You also were with [Jesus](#), that man [from Nazareth](#)!"

Mark 14:68**denied it (ULT)****denied it (UST)**

This means to claim that something is not true. In this case, Peter was saying that what the servant girl said about him was not true.

I neither know nor understand what you are talking about (ULT)**I do not know what you are talking about! I understand nothing of it (UST)**

Both “know” and “understand” have the same meaning here. The meaning is repeated to add emphasis to what Peter is saying. Alternate translation: “I really do not understand what you are talking about” (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [courtyard](#)
- [understand](#)
- [I...know](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [gate of the courtyard](#)
- [I understand](#)
- [I do...know what you are talking about](#)

ULT

⁶⁸ But he denied it, saying, “I neither [know](#) nor [understand](#) what you are talking about.” Then he went out into the [courtyard](#). ^[1]

UST

⁶⁸ But he denied it by saying, “[I do](#) not [know what you are talking about!](#) [I understand](#) nothing of it!” Then he went away from there to the [gate of the courtyard](#).

Mark 14:69

the servant girl (ULT)

The servant girl (UST)

This is the same servant girl who identified Peter previously.

one of them (ULT)

one of those who have been with that man they arrested (UST)

The people were identifying Peter as one of Jesus' disciples. This can be made more clear. Alternate translation: "one of Jesus' disciples" or "one of those who have been with that man they arrested" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [servant girl](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [servant girl](#)

ULT

⁶⁹ But the [servant girl](#) saw him there and began to say again to those who were standing there, "This man is one of them!"

UST

⁶⁹ The [servant girl](#) saw him there and said again to the people who were standing nearby, "This man is one of those who have been with that man they arrested."

Mark 14:70

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Surely
- a Galilean
- Peter

Translation Words - UST

- So it is certain that
- from Galilee district
- to Peter

ULT

⁷⁰ But he denied it again. After a little while those who were standing there again were saying to [Peter](#), “[Surely](#) you are one of them, for you also are [a Galilean](#).”

UST

⁷⁰ But he denied it again. After a little while, those who were standing there said [to Peter](#) again, “We can tell that you also are [from Galilee district](#). [So it is certain that](#) you are one of those who accompanied Jesus!”

Mark 14:71**to curse (ULT)****to say that God could punish him if he were not telling the truth (UST)**

If in your language you have to name the person who curses someone, state God. Alternate translation: "to say for God to curse him" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [to swear](#)
- [I...know](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [he said](#)
- [I do...know](#)

ULT

⁷¹ But he began to curse and [to swear](#), "I do not [know](#) this man whom you are talking about."

UST

⁷¹ But he began to say that God could punish him if he were not telling the truth; [he said](#), "[I do](#) not [know](#) the man that you are talking about!"

Mark 14:72

immediately...The rooster...crowed (ULT)

Immediately...the rooster crowed (UST)

The rooster is a bird that calls out very early in the morning. The loud sound he makes is "crowing."

a second time (ULT)

a second time (UST)

"Second" here is an ordinal number. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

he broke down (ULT)

he started crying (UST)

This idiom means that he was overwhelmed with grief and lost control of his emotions. Alternate translation: "he was overwhelmed with grief" or "he lost control of his emotions" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [and wept](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [he started crying](#)

ULT

⁷² The rooster immediately crowed a second time. Then [Peter](#) remembered the words that [Jesus](#) had said to him: "Before the rooster crows twice, you will deny me three times," and he broke down [and wept](#).

14:68 ^[1] Some ancient copies add, "Then the rooster crowed," but the best ancient copies do not have this phrase.

UST

⁷² Immediately the rooster crowed a second time. Then [Peter](#) remembered what [Jesus](#) had said to him earlier: "Before the rooster crows a second time, you will deny three times that you know me." When he realized that he had denied him three times, [he started crying](#).

Mark 15

Mark 15 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

“The curtain of the temple was split in two”

The curtain in the temple was an important symbol that showed that people needed to have someone speak to God for them. They could not speak to God directly because all people are sinful and God hates sin. God split the curtain to show that Jesus' people can now speak to God directly because Jesus has paid for their sins.

The tomb

The tomb in which Jesus was buried (Mark 15:46) was the kind of tomb in which wealthy Jewish families buried their dead. It was an actual room cut into a rock. It had a flat place on one side where they could place the body after they had put oil and spices on it and wrapped it in cloth. Then they would roll a large rock in front of the tomb so no one could see inside or enter.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Sarcasm

Both by pretending to worship Jesus (Mark 15:19) and by pretending to speak to a king (Mark 15:18), the soldiers and the Jews showed that they hated Jesus and did not believe that he was the Son of God. (See: [Irony](#) and [mock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, laughingstock](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Eloi, Eloi, lama sabachthani?

This is a phrase in Aramaic. Mark transliterates its sounds by writing them using Greek letters. He then explains its meaning. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

Mark 15:1

Connecting Statement:

When the chief priests, the elders, the scribes, and the council gave Jesus over to Pilate, they accused Jesus of doing many bad things. When Pilate asked if what they said was true, Jesus did not answer him.

bound Jesus, led him away (ULT)

Their guards tied Jesus' hands again. They took him (UST)

They commanded for Jesus to be bound, but it would have been the guards who actually bound him and led him away. Alternate translation: "they commanded for Jesus to be bound and then he was led away" or "they commanded the guards to bind Jesus and then they led him away" (See: [Metonymy](#))

They...handed him over to Pilate (ULT)

They took him...to the residence of Pilate, the governor (UST)

They had Jesus led to Pilate and transferred control of Jesus over to him.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [scribes](#)
- [bound](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [to Pilate](#)
- [elders](#)
- [met together](#)
- [Jewish council](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus' hands](#)
- [the rest](#)
- [Their guards tied...again](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [to the residence of Pilate, the governor](#)
- [the rest](#)
- [met together...in order to decide how to accuse Jesus before the Roman governor](#)
- [Jewish council](#)

ULT

¹ Early in the morning, the [chief priests met together](#) with the [elders](#) and [scribes](#) and the entire [Jewish council](#). They [bound Jesus](#), led him away, and handed him over [to Pilate](#).

UST

¹ Very early in the morning the [chief priests met together](#) with [the rest](#) of the [Jewish council in order to decide how to accuse Jesus before the Roman governor](#). [Their guards tied Jesus' hands again](#). They took him [to the residence of Pilate, the governor](#).

Mark 15:2

You say so (ULT)

You yourself have said so (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) by saying this, Jesus was saying that Pilate, not Jesus, was the one calling him the King of the Jews. Alternate translation: "You yourself have said so" or 2) by saying this, Jesus implied that he is the King of the Jews. Alternate translation: "Yes, as you said, I am" or "Yes. It is as you said" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jews](#)
- [King of the Jews](#)
- [Pilate](#)
- [King](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jews](#)
- [king of the Jews](#)
- [Pilate](#)
- [king](#)

ULT

² [Pilate](#) asked him, "Are you the [King](#) of the [Jews](#)?" So answering him, he said, "You say so."

UST

² [Pilate](#) asked Jesus, "Do you say that you are the [king](#) of the [Jews](#)?" Jesus answered him, "You yourself have said so."

Mark 15:3

were accusing him...of many things (ULT)

claimed that Jesus had done...bad things...many (UST)

“were accusing Jesus of many things” or “were saying that Jesus had done many bad things”

Translation Words - ULT

- [chief priests](#)
- [were accusing](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [chief priests](#)
- [claimed that...had done...bad things](#)

ULT

³ Then the [chief priests were accusing](#) him of many things.

UST

³ Then the [chief priests claimed that](#) Jesus [had done](#) many [bad things](#).

Mark 15:4

So Pilate again questioned him (ULT)

"Pilate asked Jesus again"

Do you not answer at all (ULT)

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "Do you have an answer"

See (ULT)

Listen to (UST)

"Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

Translation Words - ULT

- [So Pilate](#)
- [they are bringing against](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Pilate](#)
- [they are saying that...have done](#)

ULT

⁴ [So Pilate](#) again questioned him, saying, "Do you not answer at all? See how many charges [they are bringing against](#) you!"

UST

⁴ So [Pilate](#) asked him again, "Do you have nothing to reply? Listen to how many bad things [they are saying that](#) you [have done](#)!"

Mark 15:5

so that Pilate was amazed (ULT)

The result was that Pilate was very much surprised (UST)

It surprised Pilate that Jesus did not reply and defend himself.

Translation Words - ULT

- But Jesus
- Pilate
- was amazed

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Pilate
- was very much surprised

ULT

⁵ But Jesus no longer answered anything, so that Pilate was amazed.

UST

⁵ But even though Jesus was not guilty, he did not say anything more. The result was that Pilate was very much surprised.

Mark 15:6

Connecting Statement:

Pilate, hoping the crowd will choose Jesus, offers to release a prisoner, but the crowd asks for Barabbas instead.

Now (ULT)

Now (UST)

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line as the author shifts to telling background information about Pilate's tradition of releasing a prisoner at feasts and about Barabbas. (See: [Background Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [prisoner](#)
- [the time of the feast](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [person who was in prison](#)
- [the Passover Celebration](#)

ULT

⁶ Now at [the time of the feast](#), Pilate usually released to them one [prisoner](#), whom they requested.

UST

⁶ Now it was the governor's custom each year during [the Passover Celebration](#) to release one [person who was in prison](#). He usually released any prisoner the people requested.

Mark 15:7

A man who was named Barabbas was in prison with the rebels (ULT)

At that time there was a man called Barabbas who was in prison with some other men (UST)

“At that time there was a man called Barabbas, who was in prison with some other men. They had committed murder when they rebelled against the Roman government”

Translation Words - ULT

- in prison
- Barabbas
- had committed
- rebels

Translation Words - UST

- who was in prison
- Barabbas
- They had committed
- some other men

ULT

⁷ A man who was named [Barabbas](#) was [in prison](#) with the [rebels](#), who [had committed](#) murder in the rebellion.

UST

⁷ At that time there was a man called [Barabbas who was in prison](#) with [some other men](#). [They had committed](#) murder when they rebelled against the Roman government.

Mark 15:8

to ask him to do what he usually did for them (ULT)
asked him to release someone...just as in the past (UST)

This refers to Pilate releasing a prisoner at feasts. This can be made clear. Alternate translation: “to release a prisoner to them as he had done in the past” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- to ask him to do
- came to Pilate
- what...usually

Translation Words - UST

- asked him to release someone
- approached Pilate and
- just as

ULT

⁸ Then the crowd [came to Pilate](#) and began [to ask him to do what](#) he [usually](#) did for them.

UST

⁸ A crowd [approached Pilate and asked him to release someone, just as](#) in the past.

Mark 15:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jews](#)
- [King of the Jews](#)
- [So Pilate](#)
- [King](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [your king](#)
- [your king](#)
- [Pilate](#)
- [your king](#)

ULT

⁹ [So Pilate](#) answered them and said, “Do you want me to release to you the [King](#) of the [Jews](#)?”

UST

⁹ [Pilate](#) answered them, “Would you like me to release for you the man whom you people say is [your king](#)?”

Mark 15:10

**For he knew that the chief priests had handed Jesus over to him because of envy (ULT)
He asked this because he realized what the chief priests were wanting to do. They were accusing Jesus because they were jealous of him because many people were becoming his disciples (UST)**

This is background information about why Jesus was handed over to Pilate. (See: [Background Information](#))

**because of envy...the chief priests (ULT)
they were jealous of him because many people were becoming his disciples...the chief priests...They (UST)**

They envied Jesus, probably because so many people were following him and becoming his disciples. Alternate translation: “the chief priests were envious of Jesus. This is why they” or “the chief priests were envious of Jesus’ popularity among the people. This is why they” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [chief priests](#)
- [envy](#)
- [he knew](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [chief priests...They](#)
- [they were jealous of him because many people were becoming his disciples](#)
- [he realized](#)

ULT

¹⁰ For [he knew](#) that the [chief priests](#) had handed Jesus over to him because of [envy](#).

UST

¹⁰ He asked this because [he realized](#) what the [chief priests](#) were wanting to do. [They](#) were accusing Jesus because [they were jealous of him because many people were becoming his disciples](#).

Mark 15:11

stirred up the crowd (ULT)

urged the crowd (UST)

The author speaks of the chief priests rousing or urging the crowd as if the crowd were a bowl of something that they were stirring.

Alternate translation: "roused the crowd" or "urged the crowd" (See: [Metaphor](#))

instead...he would release (ULT)

to request that...instead of Jesus...Pilate release (UST)

They requested Barabbas to be released instead of Jesus. Alternate translation: "released instead of Jesus" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [chief priests](#)
- [Barabbas](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [chief priests](#)
- [Barabbas](#)

ULT

¹¹ But the [chief priests](#) stirred up the crowd so that he would release [Barabbas](#) to them instead.

UST

¹¹ But the [chief priests](#) urged the crowd to request that Pilate release [Barabbas](#) for them instead of Jesus.

Mark 15:12

Connecting Statement:

The crowd asks for Jesus' death, so Pilate turns him over to the soldiers, who mock him, crown him with thorns, strike him, and lead him out to crucify him.

What therefore should I do to the one you call the King of the Jews (ULT)

If I release Barabbas, what do you want me to do with your king (UST)

Pilate asks what he should do with Jesus if he releases Barabbas to them. This can be written clearly. Alternate translation: "If I release Barabbas, what then should I do with the King of the Jews" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jews](#)
- [King of the Jews](#)
- [Then Pilate](#)
- [King](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [your king](#)
- [your king](#)
- [Pilate](#)
- [your king](#)

ULT

¹² [Then Pilate](#) again answered and said to them, "What therefore should I do to the one you call the [King](#) of the [Jews](#)?"

UST

¹² [Pilate](#) said to them again, "If I release Barabbas, what do you want me to do with [your king](#)?"

Mark 15:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Crucify](#)
- [shouted](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Command your soldiers to crucify](#)
- [shouted back](#)

ULT

¹³ But they [shouted](#) again, "[Crucify](#) him!"

UST

¹³ Then they [shouted back](#), "[Command your soldiers to crucify](#) him!"

Mark 15:14

So Pilate said to them (ULT)

"Pilate said to the crowd"

Translation Words - ULT

- Crucify
- So Pilate
- shouted
- wrong

Translation Words - UST

- Crucify
- Pilate
- shouted
- crime

ULT

¹⁴ So Pilate said to them, "What wrong has he done?" But they shouted more and more, "Crucify him."

UST

¹⁴ Then Pilate said to them, "Why? What crime has he committed?" But they shouted even louder, "Crucify him!"

Mark 15:15

to do what would satisfy the crowd (ULT)
to please the crowd (UST)

“make the crowd happy by doing what they wanted him to do”

Barabbas...He scourged...Jesus (ULT)
Barabbas...his soldiers flogged...Jesus (UST)

Pilate did not actually scourge Jesus but rather his soldiers did.

He scourged (ULT)
his soldiers flogged (UST)

“flogged.” To “scourge” is to beat with an especially painful whip.

and then handed him over...in order to be crucified (ULT)

Pilate told his soliders to take Jesus away to crucify him. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “told his soldiers to take him away and crucify him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [be crucified](#)
- [So Pilate](#)
- [Barabbas](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [and crucify him](#)
- [Pilate](#)
- [Barabbas](#)

ULT

¹⁵ [So Pilate](#), wanting to do what would satisfy the crowd, released [Barabbas](#) to them. He scourged [Jesus](#) and then handed him over in order to [be crucified](#).

UST

¹⁵ So because [Pilate](#) wanted to please the crowd, he released [Barabbas](#) to them. Then his soldiers flogged [Jesus](#); after that, Pilate told them to take him away [and crucify him](#).

Mark 15:16

the palace (that is, the Praetorium (ULT))
the courtyard of the barracks (UST)

This was where the Roman soldiers in Jerusalem lived, and where the governor stayed when he was in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: “the courtyard of the soldiers’ barracks” or “the courtyard of the governor’s residence”

the whole cohort of soldiers (ULT)
the whole cohort who were on duty there (UST)

“the whole unit of soldiers”

Translation Words - ULT

- they called together
- palace
- soldiers

Translation Words - UST

- they summoned
- courtyard
- soldiers

ULT

¹⁶ Then the [soldiers](#) led him into the [palace](#) (that is, the Praetorium), and [they called together](#) the whole cohort of soldiers.

UST

¹⁶ The [soldiers](#) took Jesus into the [courtyard](#) of the barracks. Then [they summoned](#) the whole cohort who were on duty there.

Mark 15:17**They put...a purple robe...on...Jesus (ULT)****they put a purple robe on Jesus (UST)**

Purple was a color worn by royalty. The soldiers did not believe that Jesus was king. They clothed him this way to mock him because others said that he was the King of the Jews.

a crown of thorns (ULT)**a crown...from thornbush branches (UST)**

"a crown made of thorny branches"

Translation Words - ULT

- of thorns
- a purple robe
- a crown
- They put...on

Translation Words - UST

- from thornbush branches
- a purple robe
- a crown
- they put...on

ULT

¹⁷ [They put a purple robe on](#) Jesus, and they twisted together [a crown of thorns](#) and put it on him.

UST

¹⁷ After the soldiers gathered together, [they put a purple robe on](#) Jesus. Then they placed on his head [a crown](#) that they had woven [from thornbush branches](#). They did those things in order to ridicule him by pretending that he was a king.

Mark 15:18

Hail, King of the Jews (ULT)

they said, "Greetings, King of the Jews (UST)

The greeting "Hail" with a raised hand was only used to greet the Roman emperor. The soldiers did not believe that Jesus was the king of the Jews. Rather they said this to mock him. (See: [Irony](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jews](#)
- [King of the Jews](#)
- [King](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jews](#)
- [King of the Jews](#)
- [King](#)

ULT

¹⁸ Then they began to salute him: "Hail, [King](#) of the [Jews](#)!"

UST

¹⁸ Then they greeted him like they would greet a king, in order to ridicule him; they said, "Greetings, [King](#) of the [Jews](#)!"

Mark 15:19

with a staff (ULT)

with a reed (UST)

“a stick” or “a staff”

They knelt down (ULT)

They knelt down in front of him (UST)

A person who kneels bends his knees, so those who kneel are sometimes said to “bend their knees.” Alternate translation: “kneeled” or “knelt” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [head](#)
- [with a staff](#)
- [as if to honor](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [head](#)
- [with a reed](#)
- [to pretend to honor](#)

ULT

¹⁹ They kept striking his [head with a staff](#) and spitting on him. They knelt down [as if to honor](#) him.

UST

¹⁹ They repeatedly struck his [head with a reed](#) and spat on him. They knelt down in front of him [to pretend to honor](#) him.

Mark 15:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- crucify
- they had mocked
- purple robe
- put
- garments

Translation Words - UST

- to nail...to a cross
- they had finished mocking
- purple robe
- They put
- clothes

ULT

²⁰ When [they had mocked](#) him, they took off of him the [purple robe](#) and [put](#) his own [garments](#) on him, and then led him out in order to [crucify](#) him.

UST

²⁰ When [they had finished mocking](#) him, they pulled off the [purple robe](#). [They](#) [put](#) his own [clothes](#) on him, and then they led him outside of the city in order [to nail](#) him [to a cross](#).

Mark 15:21

they forced him...the...to carry his...cross (ULT)

According to Roman law, a soldier could force a man he came upon along the road to carry a load. In this case, they forced Simon to carry Jesus' cross.

the...from...country (ULT) from somewhere else (UST)

"from outside the city"

passerby...and they forced him...father of Alexander and Rufus...the (ULT) Now...and he was passing by Jesus...The soldiers compelled...He was the father of Alexander and Rufus (UST)

This is background information about the man whom the soldiers forced to carry Jesus' cross. (See: [Background Information](#))

Simon...of Alexander...Rufus (ULT) Simon...Simon...of Alexander...Rufus (UST)

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

of Cyrene (ULT) from Cyrene (UST)

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [cross](#)
- [of Cyrene](#)
- [father](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [cross](#)
- [from Cyrene](#)
- [father](#)

ULT

²¹ A certain passerby, Simon [of Cyrene](#) (the [father](#) of Alexander and Rufus), was coming from the country, and they forced him to carry his [cross](#).

UST

²¹ Now a man named Simon [from Cyrene](#) came along. He was the [father](#) of Alexander and Rufus, and he was passing by Jesus on his way to the city from somewhere else. The soldiers compelled Simon to carry the [cross](#) for Jesus.

Mark 15:22

Connecting Statement:

The soldiers bring Jesus to Golgotha, where they crucify him with two others. Many people mock him.

Place of a Skull (ULT)

A place like a skull (UST)

“Skull Place” or “Place of the Skull.” This the name of a place. It does not mean that there are lots of skulls there. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

of a Skull (ULT)

like a skull (UST)

A skull is the head bones, or a head without any flesh on it.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Golgotha](#)
- [of a Skull](#)
- [translated](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Golgotha](#)
- [like a skull](#)
- [means](#)

ULT

²² They brought Jesus to [Golgotha](#) (a place which is [translated](#), “Place [of a Skull](#)”).

UST

²² The soldiers brought them both to a place that they call [Golgotha](#). That name [means](#), “A place [like a skull](#).”

Mark 15:23

wine mixed with myrrh (ULT)

wine that was mixed with myrrh...it (UST)

It may be helpful to explain that myrrh is a pain-relieving medicine. Alternate translation: “wine mixed with a medicine called myrrh” or “wine mixed with a pain-relieving medicine called myrrh” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [wine](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [wine...it](#)

ULT

²³ They offered him [wine](#) mixed with myrrh, but he did not drink it.

UST

²³ Then they tried to give Jesus [wine](#) that was mixed with myrrh. They wanted him to drink [it](#) so that he would not feel so much pain when they crucified him. But he refused to drink it.

Mark 15:24

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [they crucified](#)
- [lots](#)
- [garments](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [they nailed...to a cross](#)
- [by gambling](#)
- [clothes](#)

ULT

²⁴ Then [they crucified](#) him, and divided his [garments](#) by casting [lots](#) for them to determine who would take which piece.

UST

²⁴ Some of the soldiers took his clothes. Then [they nailed](#) him [to a cross](#). Afterwards, they divided his [clothes](#) among themselves [by gambling](#) for them.

Mark 15:25

the third hour (ULT)

nine o'clock in the morning (UST)

“Third” here is a ordinal number. This refers to nine o'clock in the morning. Alternate translation: “nine o'clock in the morning” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [they crucified](#)
- [the...hour](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [they crucified](#)
- [nine o'clock in the morning](#)

ULT

²⁵ Now it was the third [hour](#) when [they crucified](#) him.

UST

²⁵ It was [nine o'clock in the morning](#) when [they crucified](#) him.

Mark 15:26

of the charge against him (ULT)

the reason why they were nailing him to the cross (UST)

“the crime they were accusing him of doing”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jews](#)
- [King of the Jews](#)
- [King](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jews](#)
- [King of the Jews](#)
- [King](#)

ULT

²⁶ And the inscription of the charge against him was written: “The [King](#) of the [Jews](#).”

UST

²⁶ They attached to the cross above Jesus’ head a sign on which it had been written the reason why they were nailing him to the cross. It said, “The [King](#) of the [Jews](#).”

Mark 15:27

one on his right, and one on his left (ULT)

They nailed one to a cross at the right side of Jesus and one to a cross at his left side (UST)

This can be written more clearly. Alternate translation: “one on a cross on the right side of him and one on a cross on the left side of him” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [They...crucified](#)
- [right](#)
- [robbers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [they...nailed to crosses](#)
- [the right side of Jesus](#)
- [who were robbers](#)

ULT

²⁷ [They](#) also [crucified](#) two [robbers](#) with him, one on his [right](#), and one on his left.

UST

²⁷ At the same time, [they](#) also [nailed to crosses](#) two men [who were robbers](#). They nailed one to a cross at [the right side of Jesus](#) and one to a cross at his left side.

Mark 15:28

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

28^[1] [The scripture was fulfilled that says, 'He was counted with the lawless ones.']

UST

28^[1] [The scripture was fulfilled that says, 'He was counted with the lawless ones.']

Mark 15:29

shaking their heads (ULT)

by shaking their heads at him (UST)

This is an action people do to show that they disapproved of Jesus.

Aha (ULT)

Aha (UST)

This is a exclamation of mockery. Use the appropriate exclamation in your language. (See: [Exclamations](#))

You who would destroy the temple and rebuild it in three days (ULT)

You said that you would destroy the temple and then you would build it again within three days (UST)

The people refer to Jesus by what he earlier prophesied that he would do. Alternate translation: "You who said you would destroy the temple and rebuild it in three days" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [insulted](#)
- [temple](#)
- [heads](#)
- [days](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [insulted](#)
- [temple](#)
- [heads](#)
- [days](#)

ULT

²⁹ Those who passed by [insulted](#) him, shaking their [heads](#) and saying, "Aha! You who would destroy the [temple](#) and rebuild it in three [days](#),

UST

²⁹ The people who were passing by [insulted](#) him by shaking their [heads](#) at him. They said, "Aha! You said that you would destroy the [temple](#) and then you would build it again within three [days](#)."

Mark 15:30

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [save](#)
- [cross](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [If you could do that, then rescue](#)
- [cross](#)

ULT

³⁰ [save](#) yourself and come down from the [cross](#)!"

UST

³⁰ [If you could do that, then rescue](#) yourself by coming down from the [cross](#)!"

Mark 15:31

In the same way (ULT) also (UST)

This refers to the way that the people who were walking by Jesus were mocking him.

were...mocking him with each other (ULT) wanted to make fun of Jesus...to each other (UST)

"were saying mocking things about Jesus among themselves"

Translation Words - ULT

- He saved
- but he...save
- scribes
- cannot
- chief priests
- were...mocking him
- In the same way

Translation Words - UST

- He has saved...from trouble
- save
- men who taught the Jewish laws
- but he cannot
- chief priests
- wanted to make fun of Jesus
- also

ULT

³¹ In the same way the chief priests were also mocking him with each other, along with the scribes, and said, "He saved others, but he cannot save himself.

UST

³¹ The chief priests, along with the men who taught the Jewish laws, also wanted to make fun of Jesus. So they said to each other, "He has saved others from trouble, but he cannot save himself!

Mark 15:32

Let the Christ, the King of Israel, come down (ULT)
He said, 'I am the Messiah. I am the King who rules the people of Israel.' If his words are true, he should come down (UST)

The leaders did not believe that Jesus is the Christ, the King of Israel. Alternate translation: "He calls himself the Christ and the King of Israel. So let him come down" or "If he is really the Christ and the King of Israel, he should come down" (See: [Irony](#))

believe (ULT)
we will believe him (UST)

The means to believe in Jesus. Alternate translation: "believe in him" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

taunted (ULT)
insulted (UST)

mocked, insulted

Translation Words - ULT

- [those who were crucified](#)
- [believe](#)
- [cross](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [taunted](#)
- [King](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The two men who were nailed onto crosses](#)
- [we will believe him](#)
- [cross](#)
- [who rules the people of Israel](#)
- [Messiah](#)
- [insulted](#)
- [King](#)

ULT

³² Let the [Christ](#), the [King of Israel](#), come down now from the [cross](#), so that we may see and [believe](#)," and [those who were crucified](#) with him also [taunted](#) him.

UST

³² He said, 'I am the [Messiah](#). I am the [King who rules the people of Israel](#).' If his words are true, he should come down now from the [cross](#)! Then [we will believe him](#)!" [The two men who were nailed onto crosses](#) beside him also [insulted](#) him.

Mark 15:33

Connecting Statement:

At noon darkness covers the whole land until three o'clock, when Jesus cries out with a loud voice and dies. When Jesus dies, the temple curtain rips from the top to the bottom.

the sixth hour (ULT)

At noon (UST)

This refers to noon or 12 p.m.

darkness came over the whole land (ULT)

Here the author describes it becoming dark outside as if the darkness were a wave that moved over the land.
Alternate translation: "the whole land became dark" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [darkness](#)
- [the...hour](#)
- [the...hour](#) (2)

Translation Words - UST

- [dark](#)
- [At noon](#)
- [three o'clock in the afternoon](#) (2)

ULT

³³ Now when the sixth [hour](#) arrived, [darkness](#) came over the whole land until the ninth [hour](#).

UST

³³ [At noon](#) the whole land became [dark](#), and it stayed dark until [three o'clock in the afternoon](#).

Mark 15:34

at the ninth hour (ULT)

At three o'clock (UST)

This refers to three o'clock in the afternoon. Alternate translation: "At three o'clock in the afternoon" or "In the middle of the afternoon"

Eloi, Eloi, lama sabachthani (ULT)

Eloi, Eloi, lama sabachthani (UST)

These are Aramaic words that should be copied as is into your language with similar sounds. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

is translated (ULT)

means (UST)

"means"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#) (2)
- [have you forsaken](#)
- [with a...voice](#)
- [hour](#)
- [translated](#)
- [cried out](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#) (2)
- [have you deserted](#)
- [loudly](#)
- [At three o'clock](#)
- [means](#)
- [shouted](#)

ULT

³⁴ And at the ninth [hour](#), [Jesus cried out](#) [with a](#) loud [voice](#), "Eloi, Eloi, lama sabachthani?" which is [translated](#), "My [God](#), my [God](#), why [have you forsaken](#) me?"

UST

³⁴ [At three o'clock Jesus shouted loudly](#), "Eloi, Eloi, lama sabachthani?" That [means](#), "My [God](#), my [God](#), why [have you deserted](#) me?"

Mark 15:35

When some of those standing by heard him, they said (ULT)

When some of the people who were standing there heard the word 'Eloi', they misunderstood it and said (UST)

It can be stated clearly that they misunderstood what Jesus said.
Alternate translation: "When some of those standing there heard his words, they misunderstood and said" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [he is calling for](#)
- [Elijah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [He is calling for](#)
- [the prophet Elijah](#)

ULT

³⁵ When some of those standing by heard him, they said, "Look, [he is calling for Elijah](#)."

UST

³⁵ When some of the people who were standing there heard the word 'Eloi', they misunderstood it and said, "Listen! [He is calling for the prophet Elijah!](#)"

Mark 15:36

with sour wine (ULT)

with sour wine (UST)

“vinegar”

a reed (ULT)

on the tip of a reed (UST)

“stick.” This was a staff made from a reed.

and gave it to him to drink (ULT)

and then held it up to try to get Jesus to suck on it (UST)

“gave it to Jesus.” The man held up the staff so that Jesus could drink wine from the sponge. Alternate translation: “held it up to Jesus”
(See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Elijah](#)
- [a reed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Elijah](#)
- [on the tip of a reed](#)

ULT

³⁶ Then someone ran and filled a sponge with sour wine, put it on [a reed](#), and gave it to him to drink, saying, “Let him alone! Let us see if [Elijah](#) comes to take him down!”

UST

³⁶ One of them ran and filled a sponge with sour wine. He placed it [on the tip of a reed](#), and then held it up to try to get Jesus to suck on it. He said, “Wait! Let us see whether [Elijah](#) will come to take him down from the cross!”

Mark 15:37

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Then Jesus
- with a...voice

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- shouted

ULT

³⁷ [Then Jesus](#) cried out [with a](#) loud [voice](#) and breathed his last.

UST

³⁷ And then [Jesus shouted](#) loudly, stopped breathing, and died.

Mark 15:38

the curtain of the temple was torn in two (ULT)
the curtain in the temple sanctuary split into two pieces (UST)

Mark is showing that God himself split the temple curtain. This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "God split the curtain of the temple in two" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [temple](#)
- [curtain](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [temple sanctuary](#)
- [curtain](#)

ULT

³⁸ Then the [curtain](#) of the [temple](#) was torn in two from the top to the bottom.

UST

³⁸ At that moment the [curtain](#) in the [temple sanctuary](#) split into two pieces from top to bottom. That showed that ordinary people could now go into the presence of God.

Mark 15:39

the centurion (ULT)

The officer who supervised the soldiers who nailed Jesus to the cross (UST)

This is the centurion who supervised the soldiers who crucified Jesus.

who stood in front of Jesus (ULT)

was standing in front of Jesus (UST)

Here “faced” is an idiom that means to look towards someone.

Alternate translation: “who stood in front of Jesus” (See: [Idiom](#))

that he had breathed his last in this way (ULT)

“how Jesus had died” or “the way Jesus had died”

the Son of God (ULT)

the Son of God (UST)

This is an important title for Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of God](#)
- [was the Son of God](#)
- [Truly](#)
- [centurion](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of God](#)
- [was the Son of God](#)
- [Truly](#)
- [officer who supervised the soldiers who nailed Jesus to the cross](#)

ULT

³⁹ When the [centurion](#) who stood in front of Jesus saw that he had breathed his last in this way, he said, “[Truly](#) this man [was the Son of God](#).”

UST

³⁹ The [officer who supervised the soldiers who nailed Jesus to the cross](#) was standing in front of Jesus. When he saw how Jesus had died, he exclaimed, “[Truly](#), this man [was the Son of God](#)!”

Mark 15:40

who looked on from a distance (ULT)

“watched from far away”

also...Magdalene...mother of James the younger...of Joses (ULT)

“who was the mother of James...and of Joses.” This can be written without the parentheses.

of James the younger (ULT)

“the younger James.” This man was referred to as “the younger” probably to distinguish him from another man named James.

of Joses (ULT)

This Joses was not that same person as the younger brother of Jesus. See how you translated the same name in [Mark 6:3](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Salome (ULT)

Salome is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Mary Magdalene](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Mary Magdalene](#)

ULT

40 There were also women who looked on from a distance. Among them were [Mary Magdalene](#), Mary (the mother of James the younger and of Joses), and Salome.

UST

40-41 There were also some women there; they were watching these events from a distance. They had accompanied Jesus when he was in Galilee, and they had provided what he needed. They had come with him to Jerusalem. Among those women was Mary from Magdala. There was another Mary, who was the mother of the younger James and of Joses. There was also Salome.

Mark 15:41

When he was in Galilee they followed him...with him to Jerusalem (ULT)

“When Jesus was in Galilee these women followed him...with him to Jerusalem.” This is background information about the women who watched the crucifixion from a distance. (See: [Background Information](#))

him...who had come up...to Jerusalem (ULT)

Jerusalem was higher than almost any other place in Israel, so it was normal for people to speak of going up to Jerusalem and going down from it.

Translation Words - ULT

- [served](#)
- [Galilee](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to minister, ministry](#)
- [Galilee, Galilean](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

ULT

⁴¹ When he was in [Galilee](#) they followed him and [served](#) him. There were also many other women, who had come up with him to [Jerusalem](#).

UST

⁴⁰⁻⁴¹ There were also some women there; they were watching these events from a distance. They had accompanied Jesus when he was in Galilee, and they had provided what he needed. They had come with him to Jerusalem. Among those women was Mary from Magdala. There was another Mary, who was the mother of the younger James and of Joses. There was also Salome.

Mark 15:42

Connecting Statement:

Joseph of Arimathea asks Pilate for the body of Jesus, which he wraps in linen and puts in a tomb.

when evening had...come (ULT)

Here evening is spoken of as if it were something that is able to “come” from one place to another. Alternate translation: “it had become evening” or “it was evening” (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

42 Now when evening had already come, because it was the Day of Preparation, that is, the day before the Sabbath,

UST

42-43 When evening was near, a man named Joseph from Arimathea came there. He was a member of the Jewish council, one whom everyone respected. He was also one of those who had been waiting expectantly for when God would show himself as king. Evening was now approaching. It was the day before the Sabbath, a day the Jews called the day of preparation. So he went with courage to Pilate and asked him to permit him to take the body of Jesus down from the cross and bury it immediately.

Mark 15:43

Joseph of Arimathea, a respected...came (ULT)

The phrase “came there” refers to Joseph coming to Pilate, which is also described after the background information is given, but his coming is referenced before for emphasis and to help introduce him to the story. There may be a different way to do this in your language. Alternate translation: “Joseph of Arimathea was a respected” (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

Joseph of Arimathea (ULT)

“Joseph from Arimathea.” Joseph is the name of a man, and Arimathea is the name of the place he is from. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

a respected member of the council...the kingdom of God (ULT)

This is background information about Joseph. (See: [Background Information](#))

He...went in to Pilate (ULT)

“went to Pilate” or “went in to where Pilate was”

asked for the body of Jesus (ULT)

It can be stated clearly that he wanted to get the body so that he could bury it. Alternate translation: “asked for permission to get the body of Jesus in order to bury it” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of Jesus
- of God
- body
- kingdom of God
- Pilate
- boldly
- kingdom
- member of the council

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- God
- body
- kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven
- Pilate
- bold, boldness, emboldened
- kingdom
- council

ULT

⁴³ Joseph of Arimathea, a respected [member of the council](#) who also was himself waiting for the [kingdom of God](#), came. He [boldly](#) went in to [Pilate](#) and asked for the [body of Jesus](#).

UST

⁴²⁻⁴³ When evening was near, a man named Joseph from Arimathea came there. He was a member of the Jewish council, one whom everyone respected. He was also one of those who had been waiting expectantly for when God would show himself as king. Evening was now approaching. It was the day before the Sabbath, a day the Jews called the day of preparation. So he went with courage to Pilate and asked him to permit him to take the body of Jesus down from the cross and bury it immediately.

Mark 15:44

Pilate was amazed that Jesus was already dead, so he called the centurion (ULT)

Pilate heard people saying that Jesus was dead. This surprised him, so he asked the centurion if it was true. This can be made clear. Alternate translation: "Pilate was amazed when he heard that Jesus was already dead, so he called the centurion" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- he called
- centurion
- Pilate
- was amazed that
- Jesus was...dead
- Jesus had...died

Translation Words - UST

- he summoned
- officer who was in charge of the soldiers who had crucified Jesus
- Pilate
- was surprised when he heard that
- dead
- Jesus had...died

ULT

⁴⁴ [Pilate](#) [was amazed that Jesus was](#) already [dead](#), so [he called](#) the [centurion](#) and asked him if [Jesus had](#) already [died](#).

UST

⁴⁴ [Pilate](#) [was surprised when he heard that](#) Jesus was already [dead](#). So [he summoned](#) the [officer who was in charge of the soldiers who had crucified Jesus](#), and he asked him if [Jesus had](#) already [died](#).

Mark 15:45

he gave the body to Joseph (ULT)

Pilate allowed Joseph to take away the body (UST)

“he permitted Joseph to take Jesus’ body”

Translation Words - ULT

- [body](#)
- [centurion](#)
- [When Pilate learned this](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [body](#)
- [officer](#)
- [When...told Pilate that Jesus was dead](#)

ULT

⁴⁵ [When Pilate learned this](#) from the [centurion](#), he gave the [body](#) to Joseph.

UST

⁴⁵ [When](#) the [officer told Pilate that Jesus was dead](#), Pilate allowed Joseph to take away the [body](#).

Mark 15:46

a linen cloth (ULT)

a linen cloth (UST)

Linen is cloth made from the fibers of a flax plant. See how you translated this in [Mark 14:51](#).

took him down from the cross...Then he rolled a stone (ULT)

he and others took Jesus' body down from the cross...

Then they rolled a huge flat stone (UST)

You may need to make explicit that Joseph probably had help from other people when he took Jesus' body down from the cross, prepared it for the tomb, and closed the tomb. Alternate translation: "He and others took him down...Then they rolled a stone" (See: [Metonymy](#))

a tomb that had been cut out of a rock (ULT)

a tomb that previously had been dug out of the rock cliff (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "a tomb that someone had previously cut out of solid rock" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

a stone against (ULT)

a huge flat stone in front of (UST)

"a huge flat stone in front of"

Translation Words - ULT

- [a tomb](#)
- [tomb](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [a tomb](#)
- [tomb](#)

ULT

⁴⁶ So Joseph had bought a linen cloth, took him down from the cross, wrapped him in the linen cloth, and laid him in [a tomb](#) that had been cut out of a rock. Then he rolled a stone against the entrance of the [tomb](#).

UST

⁴⁶ After Joseph had bought a linen cloth, he and others took Jesus' body down from the cross. They wrapped it in the linen cloth and laid it in [a tomb](#) that previously had been dug out of the rock cliff. Then they rolled a huge flat stone in front of the entrance to the [tomb](#).

Mark 15:47

of Joses (ULT)

of Joses (UST)

This Joses was not that same person as the younger brother of Jesus. See how you translated the same name in [Mark 6:3](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

saw the place where Jesus was buried (ULT) were watching where they placed Jesus' body (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the place where Joseph and the others buried Jesus' body" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Mary...Magdalene](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Mary from Magdala](#)

ULT

⁴⁷ [Mary Magdalene](#) and Mary the mother of Joses saw the place where Jesus was buried.

15:28 ^[1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 28 (compare Luke 22:37).

UST

⁴⁷ [Mary from Magdala](#) and Mary the mother of Joses were watching where they placed Jesus' body.

15:28 ^[1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 28 (compare Luke 22:37).

Mark 16

Mark 16 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

The tomb

The tomb in which Jesus was buried (Mark 15:46) was the kind of tomb in which wealthy Jewish families buried their dead. It was an actual room cut into a rock. It had a flat place on one side where they could place the body after they had put oil and spices on it and wrapped it in cloth. Then they would roll a large rock in front of the tomb so no one could see inside or enter.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

A young man dressed in a white robe

Matthew, Mark, Luke, and John all wrote about angels in white clothing with the women at Jesus' tomb. Two of the authors called them men, but that is only because the angels were in human form. Two of the authors wrote about two angels, but the other two authors wrote about only one of them. It is best to translate each of these passages as it appears in the ULT without trying to make the passages all say exactly the same thing. (See: Matthew 28:1-2 and Mark 16:5 and Luke 24:4 and John 20:12)

Mark 16:1

Connecting Statement:

On the first day of the week, women come early because they expect to use spices to anoint Jesus' body. They are surprised to see a young man who tells them Jesus is alive, but they are afraid and do not tell anyone.

When the Sabbath day was over (ULT)

On Saturday evening when the Jewish day of rest had ended (UST)

That is, after the Sabbath, the seventh day of the week, had ended and the first day of the week had begun.

Translation Words - ULT

- [and anoint](#)
- [Sabbath day](#)
- [Mary...Magdalene](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to follow the Jewish custom and anoint...for burial](#)
- [On Saturday evening when the Jewish day of rest had ended](#)
- [Mary...from Magdala](#)

ULT

¹ When the [Sabbath day](#) was over, [Mary Magdalene](#), Mary the mother of James, and Salome bought spices that they might come [and anoint](#) Jesus' body.

UST

¹ [On Saturday evening when the Jewish day of rest had ended](#), [Mary from Magdala](#), Mary the mother of the younger James, and Salome bought fragrant ointments [to follow the Jewish custom and anoint](#) Jesus' body [for burial](#).

Mark 16:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [tomb](#)
- [when...came up](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [tomb](#)
- [just after...rose](#)

ULT

² Very early on the first day of the week, they went to the [tomb](#) [when](#) the sun [came up](#).

UST

² Very early on Sunday, the first day of the Jewish week, [just after](#) the sun [rose](#), they took the fragrant ointment and started going toward the [tomb](#).

Mark 16:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [tomb](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [tomb](#)

ULT

³ They were saying to one another, "Who will roll away the stone for us from the entrance to the [tomb](#)?"

UST

³ While they were going there, they were asking each other, "Who will roll away for us the stone that blocks the entrance of the [tomb](#)?"

Mark 16:4

the stone had been rolled away (ULT)

someone had rolled away the stone (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “someone had rolled away the stone” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

⁴ But when they looked up, they saw that the stone had been rolled away, for it was very large.

UST

⁴ After they arrived, they looked up and were surprised to see that someone had rolled away the stone because it was very large.

Mark 16:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- a...robe
- they were alarmed
- tomb
- dressed in

Translation Words - UST

- a...robe
- they were astonished
- tomb
- He was wearing

ULT

⁵ So they entered into the [tomb](#) and saw a young man [dressed in](#) a white [robe](#), sitting on the right side, and [they were alarmed](#).

UST

⁵ They entered the [tomb](#) and saw an angel who looked like a young man. He was sitting at the right side of the cave. [He was wearing](#) a white [robe](#). As a result, [they were astonished](#).

Mark 16:6

He is risen (ULT)

But he has become alive again (UST)

The angel is emphatically stating that Jesus has risen from the dead. This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "He arose!" or "God raised him from the dead!" or "He raised himself from the dead!" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [who was crucified](#)
- [Nazarene](#)
- [be alarmed](#)
- [He is risen](#)
- [You seek](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [who was put to death by being nailed to a cross](#)
- [Nazareth](#)
- [Do...be astonished](#)
- [But he has become alive again](#)
- [I know that you are looking for](#)

ULT

⁶ But he said to them, "Do not [be alarmed](#). [You seek Jesus](#), the [Nazarene](#), [who was crucified](#). [He is risen](#)! He is not here. Look at the place where they laid him.

UST

⁶ The young man said to them, "Do not [be astonished](#)! [I know that you are looking for Jesus](#), the man from [Nazareth](#), [who was put to death by being nailed to a cross](#). [But he has become alive again](#)! He is not here! Look! Here is the place where they placed his body.

Mark 16:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [Galilee](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [just as](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [apprentices...them](#)
- [Galilee district](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [just like](#)

ULT

⁷ But go, tell his [disciples](#) and [Peter](#), 'He is going ahead of you to [Galilee](#). There you will see him, [just as](#) he told you.'

UST

⁷ Go and tell his [apprentices](#). Particularly be sure that you tell [Peter](#). Tell [them](#), 'Jesus is going ahead of you to [Galilee district](#), and you will see him there, [just like](#) he told you previously!'

Mark 16:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- they were so afraid
- amazement
- trembling
- tomb

Translation Words - UST

- they were afraid
- they were astonished
- They were trembling because they were afraid
- tomb

ULT

⁸ Then they went out and ran from the [tomb](#), for [trembling](#) and [amazement](#) had seized them. They said nothing to anyone because [they were so afraid](#).

UST

⁸ The women went outside and ran from the [tomb](#). [They were trembling because they were afraid](#), and [they were astonished](#). But they did not say anything to anyone about this because [they were afraid](#).

Mark 16:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

^{9[1]} [Early on the first day of the week, after he arose, he appeared first to Mary Magdalene, from whom he had cast out seven demons.]

UST

^{9[1]} [When Jesus became alive again early on Sunday morning, the first day of the Jewish week, he appeared first to Mary from Magdala. She was the woman from whom he had previously forced out seven evil spirits.]

Mark 16:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

¹⁰ She went and told those who were with him, while they were mourning and weeping.

UST

¹⁰ She went to those who had been with Jesus, while they were mourning and crying. She told them what she had seen.

Mark 16:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

11 They heard that he was alive and that he had been seen by her, but they did not believe.

UST

11 But when she told them that Jesus was alive again and that she had seen him, they refused to believe it.

Mark 16:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

¹² After these things he appeared in a different form to two of them, as they were walking out into the country.

UST

¹² Later that day, Jesus appeared in a different form to two of his apprentices while they were walking from Jerusalem to the surrounding area.

Mark 16:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

¹³ They went and told the rest of the disciples, but they did not believe them.

UST

¹³ After they recognized him, those two went back to Jerusalem. They told his other apprentices what had happened, but they did not believe it.

Mark 16:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

¹⁴ Jesus later appeared to the eleven as they were reclining at the table, and he rebuked them for their unbelief and hardness of heart, because they did not believe those who saw him after he rose from the dead.

UST

¹⁴ Later Jesus appeared to the eleven apprentices while they were eating. He scolded them because they had stubbornly refused to believe the reports of those who saw him after he had become alive again.

Mark 16:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

15 He said to them, "Go into all the world, and preach the gospel to the entire creation.

UST

15 He said to them, "Go into the whole world and preach the good news to everyone!

Mark 16:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

16 He who believes and is baptized will be saved, and he who does not believe will be condemned.

UST

16 God will save everyone who believes your message and who is baptized. He will condemn everyone who does not believe.

Mark 16:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

17 These signs will go with those who believe: In my name they will cast out demons. They will speak in new languages.

UST

17 Those who believe the good news will perform miracles to show that I am with them. By my power they will do miracles like these: they will force evil spirits out of people. They will speak in languages that they have not learned.

Mark 16:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

18 They will pick up snakes with their hands, and if they drink anything deadly, it will not hurt them. They will lay hands on the sick, and they will get well."

UST

18 If they pick up snakes or if they drink any poisonous liquid accidentally, they will not be hurt. God will heal sick people on whom they lay their hands."

Mark 16:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

19 After the Lord had spoken to them, he was taken up into heaven and sat down at the right hand of God.

UST

19 After the Lord Jesus had said this to his apprentices, God took him up into heaven. Then he sat down on his throne beside God at the place of highest honor at his right hand, to rule with him.

Mark 16:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

²⁰ The disciples left and preached everywhere, while the Lord worked with them and confirmed the word by the signs that went with them.]

UST

²⁰ As for the apprentices, they went out from Jerusalem, and then they preached everywhere. Wherever they went, the Lord enabled them to perform miracles. By doing that, he showed people that God's message is true.]



unfoldingWord® Translation Academy

Version 12

Abstract Nouns

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **Abstract Nouns** are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. It is a way of giving names to actions or qualities so that people who speak these languages can talk about them as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, they may not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," but they would express the same meaning in other ways. They would say, for example, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, "What is its **weight**?" could be expressed as "How much does it **weigh**?" or "How **heavy** is it?"

Examples from the Bible

...from ***childhood*** you have known the sacred writings... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone is a child.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "salvation" here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "slowness" refers how slowly something is done.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

The abstract noun "purposes" refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

...**from** childhood

you have known the sacred writings... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

Ever since **you were a child** you have known the sacred writings.

But godliness

with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

But **being godly** and **content** is very **beneficial**.
But we **benefit** greatly when we **are godly** and **content**.
But we **benefit** greatly when we **honor and obey God** and when we are **happy with what we have**.

Today salvation

has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

Today the people in this house **have been saved**...
Today God **has saved** the people in this house...

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness

to be. (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **moving slowly** to be.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes

of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal **the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them**.

(Go back to: [Mark 10:30](#); [12:38](#))

Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- ACTIVE: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- PASSIVE: **The house** was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

- **ACTIVE:** **My father** built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** **The house** was built by my father in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** **The house** was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

Reasons this is a translation issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

Purposes for the passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples from the Bible

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants **were killed**, and your servant Uriah the Hittite **was killed**, too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal **was broken down**... (Judges 6:28 ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea (Luke 17:2 ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
3. Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

A loaf of bread was given

him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

The king's servants gave Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

(2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."

It would be better for him if a millstone were put

around his neck and he were thrown into the sea. (Luke 17:2 ULT)

It would be better for him if **they were to put** a millstone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

It would be better for him if **someone were to put** a heavy stone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

(3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

A loaf of bread was given

him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

He **received** a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Abstract Nouns](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order]]

(Go back to: [Mark 1:5](#); [1:9](#); [1:14](#); [2:1](#); [2:20](#); [2:27](#); [3:5](#); [4:6](#); [4:11](#); [4:24](#); [4:25](#); [5:4](#); [5:23](#); [5:28](#); [5:29](#); [6:14](#); [6:16](#); [6:17](#); [7:2](#); [7:10](#); [7:11](#); [7:27](#); [7:35](#); [8:12](#); [8:25](#); [8:31](#); [9:2](#); [9:12](#); [9:31](#); [9:45](#); [9:47](#); [9:49](#); [10:33](#); [10:40](#); [10:42](#); [10:45](#); [10:49](#); [11:2](#); [11:10](#); [12:25](#); [12:26](#); [12:40](#); [13:2](#); [13:9](#); [13:12](#); [13:13](#); [13:24](#); [13:25](#); [14:5](#); [14:9](#); [14:27](#); [14:28](#); [14:41](#); [15:15](#); [15:38](#); [15:46](#); [15:47](#); [16:4](#); [16:6](#))

Apostrophe

Definition

An apostrophe is a figure of speech in which a speaker turns his attention away from his listeners and speaks to someone or something that he knows cannot hear him.

This page answers the question: *What is the figure of speech called apostrophe?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Description

He does this to tell his listeners his message or feelings about that person or thing in a very strong way.

Reason this is a translation issue

Many languages do not use apostrophe, and readers could be confused by it. They may wonder who the speaker is talking to, or think that the speaker is crazy to talk to things or people who cannot hear.

Examples from the Bible

Mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on you (2 Samuel 1:21 ULT)

King Saul was killed on Mount Gilboa, and David sang a sad song about it. By telling these mountains that he wanted them to have no dew or rain, he showed how sad he was.

Jerusalem, Jerusalem, who kills the prophets and stones those sent to you. (Luke 13:34 ULT)

Jesus was expressing his feelings for the people of Jerusalem in front of his disciples and a group of Pharisees. By speaking directly to Jerusalem as though its people could hear him, Jesus showed how deeply he cared about them.

He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh: **"Altar, altar!** This is what Yahweh says, 'See, ...on you they will burn human bones.'" (1 Kings 13:2 ULT)

The man of God spoke as if the altar could hear him, but he really wanted the king, who was standing there, to hear him.

Translation Strategies

If apostrophe would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. But if this way of speaking would be confusing to your people, let the speaker continue speaking to the people that are listening to him as he tells **them** his message or feelings about the people or thing that cannot hear him. See the example below.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh: "Altar

, altar! This is what Yahweh says, 'See,...on you they will burn human bones.'" (1 Kings 13:2 ULT)

He said this about the altar: "This is what Yahweh says **about this altar**. 'See,...they will burn people's bones on **it**.'"

Mountains of Gilboa

, let there not be dew or rain on you (2 Samuel 1:21 ULT)

As for these mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on **them**

(Go back to: [Mark 11:14](#))

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

- **Assumed knowledge** is whatever a **speaker assumes his audience knows** before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.
- When **the speaker does give the audience information**, he can do so in two ways:
 - **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
 - **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. **Implicit information** is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this **implicit information** by combining what they already know (**assumed knowledge**) with the **explicit information** that the speaker tells them directly.

Reasons this is a translation issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different than the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the **assumed knowledge** or the **implicit information** is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the **day of judgment** than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands when they eat**. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

Jesus said to him, "**Foxes** have holes

, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes to live in**, and the birds of the sky **have nests to live in**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon

at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.

...it will be more tolerable for **those cities Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked**, at the day of judgment than for you.
or:
...it will be more tolerable for those **wicked cities Tyre and Sidon** at the day of judgment than for you.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands

when they eat. (Matthew 15:2 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness** when they eat.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19, 20 ULT) - The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, he would have to live like Jesus without a house.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but **I, the Son of Man**, have **no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live.**"

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

At the day of judgment, God will **punish Tyre and Sidon**, cities whose people were very wicked, **less severely than he will punish you.**

or:

At the day of judgment, God will **punish you more severely** than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Mark 1:3](#); [1:16](#); [1:19](#); [1:20](#); [1:31](#); [1:44](#); [1:45](#); [2:2](#); [2:5](#); [2:21](#); [2:23](#); [2:25](#); [3:2](#); [3:10](#); [3:11](#); [4:12](#); [4:17](#); [5:4](#); [5:6](#); [5:13](#); [5:19](#); [5:24](#); [5:27](#); [5:37](#); [5:40](#); [6:11](#); [6:14](#); [6:15](#); [6:26](#); [6:40](#); [6:44](#); [6:51](#); [6:55](#); [7:12](#); [7:15](#); [7:19](#); [7:29](#); [7:32](#); [7:33](#); [8:8](#); [8:9](#); [8:10](#); [8:11](#); [8:12](#); [8:13](#); [8:16](#); [8:19](#); [8:20](#); [8:22](#); [8:28](#); [8:30](#); [8:32](#); [8:35](#); [9:4](#); [9:7](#); [9:9](#); [9:11](#); [9:13](#); [9:15](#); [9:19](#); [9:26](#); [9:31](#); [9:34](#); [9:37](#); [9:38](#); [9:47](#); [9:48](#); [10:1](#); [10:9](#); [10:10](#); [10:12](#); [10:13](#); [10:33](#); [10:34](#); [10:43](#); [10:47](#); [10:52](#); [11:3](#); [11:8](#); [11:9](#); [11:10](#); [11:13](#); [11:15](#); [11:20](#); [11:21](#); [11:24](#); [11:28](#); [11:32](#); [12:1](#); [12:2](#); [12:3](#); [12:4](#); [12:6](#); [12:7](#); [12:9](#); [12:12](#); [12:15](#); [12:17](#); [12:18](#); [12:19](#); [12:21](#); [12:22](#); [12:26](#); [12:27](#); [12:35](#); [12:36](#); [12:38](#); [12:40](#); [13:1](#); [13:2](#); [13:3](#); [13:4](#); [13:7](#); [13:9](#); [13:10](#); [13:13](#); [13:14](#); [13:20](#); [13:23](#); [13:25](#); [13:29](#); [13:32](#); [13:33](#); [14:10](#); [14:11](#); [14:12](#); [14:15](#); [14:17](#); [14:19](#); [14:21](#); [14:22](#); [14:24](#); [14:35](#); [14:41](#); [14:44](#); [14:54](#); [14:55](#); [14:60](#); [14:64](#); [14:65](#); [14:66](#); [14:69](#); [15:2](#); [15:8](#); [15:10](#); [15:12](#); [15:23](#); [15:27](#); [15:29](#); [15:32](#); [15:35](#); [15:36](#); [15:43](#); [15:44](#))

Background Information

Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called **background information**. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

This page answers the question: *What is background information, and how can I show that some information is background information?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Order of Events](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

Example - The underlined sentences in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because ***their village was going to have a feast the next day. Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day!*** They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope ***they had brought with them***, and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter's cousin saw the pig and realized that ***it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig.***

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are: "their village was going to have a feast the next day;" "He once killed three wild pigs in one day;" "that they had brought with them;" and "Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig."

Often background information uses "be" verbs like "was" and "were", rather than action verbs. Examples of these are "Peter ***was*** the best hunter in the village" and "it ***was*** his own pig."

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are "because," "once," and "had."

A writer may use background information

- To help their listeners be interested in the story
- To help their listeners understand something in the story
- To help the listeners understand why something is important in the story
- To tell the setting of a story
- Setting includes:
 - where the story takes place
 - when the story takes place
 - who is present when the story begins
 - what is happening when the story begins

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
- You (the translator) need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
- You will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that your own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.

Examples from the Bible

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram **was eighty-six years old** when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

Now Jesus himself, when he began to teach, **was about thirty years of age**. He **was the son** (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces background information about Jesus' age and ancestors. The story starts up again in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

Now **it happened on a Sabbath** that Jesus **was going through the grain fields** and his disciples **were picking the heads of grain**, rubbing them between their hands, and eating the grain. But some of the Pharisees said... (Luke 6:1-2a ULT)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the sentence, "But some of the Pharisees said."

Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kind of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

1. Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.
2. Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULT English translations.

Now

Jesus himself, when he began to teach, was about thirty years of age. He was the son (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

English uses the word "now" to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb "was" shows that it is background information.

With many other exhortations also, he preached good news to the people. John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias

, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The underlined phrases happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb "had" in "had done" shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael.
 Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram

. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

"When Abram was eighty-six years old, Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael."

John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias

, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20)

The translation below reorders John's rebuke and Herod's actions.

"Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother's wife, Herodias, and he did many other evil things, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison."

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Connecting Words and Phrases](#)

[Introduction of a New Event](#)

(Go back to: [Mark 1:30](#); [6:16](#); [6:21](#); [7:2](#); [7:26](#); [8:14](#); [9:6](#); [14:43](#); [15:6](#); [15:10](#); [15:21](#); [15:41](#); [15:43](#))

Biblical Money

Description:

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of money in the Bible?*

In early Old Testament times, people weighed their metals such as silver and gold and would give a certain weight of that metal in order to buy things. Later people started to make coins that each contained a standard amount of a certain metal. The daric is one such coin. In New Testament times, people used silver and copper coins.

The two tables below show some of the most well-known units of money found in the Old Testament (OT) and New Testament (NT). The table for Old Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it weighed. The table for New Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it was worth in terms of a day's wage.

Unit in OT	Metal	Weight
daric	gold coin	8.4 grams
shekel	various metals	11 grams
talent	various metals	33 kilograms

Unit in NT	Metal	Day's Wage
denarius/denarii	silver coin	1 day
drachma	silver coin	1 day
mite	copper coin	1/64 day
shekel	silver coin	4 days
talent	silver	6,000 days

Translation Principle

Do not use modern money values since these change from year to year. Using them will cause the Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate.

Translation Strategies

The value of most money in the Old Testament was based on its weight. So when translating these weights in the Old Testament, see Biblical Weight. The strategies below are for translating the value of money in the New Testament

1. Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)
2. Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many coins were used.
3. Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
4. Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a note.
5. Use the Bible term and explain it in a note.

Translation Strategies

The translations strategies are all applied to Luke 7:41 below.

The one owed five hundred denarii, and the other owed fifty denarii. (Luke 7:41 ULT)

(1) Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)

"The one owed **five hundred denali**, and the other owed **fifty denali**."

(2) Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many pieces or coins were used.

"The one owed **five hundred silver coins**, and the other owed **fifty silver coins**."

(3) Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.

"The one owed **five hundred days' wages**, and the other owed **fifty days' wages**."

(4) Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

"The one owed **five hundred denarii** ¹, and the other owed **fifty denarii**. ²"

The footnotes would look like:

[1] five hundred days's wages
[2] fifty day's wages

(5) Use the Bible term and explain it in a footnote.

"The one owed **five hundred denarii** ¹, and the other owed **fifty denarii**."
(Luke 7:41 ULT)

[1] A denarius was the amount of silver that people could earn in one day of work.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Copy or Borrow Words](#)
[Translate Unknowns](#)

(Go back to: [Mark 6:37](#); [12:15](#); [12:42](#); [14:5](#))

Connecting Words and Phrases

Description

This page answers the question: *How do connecting words work to connect parts of the text in different ways?*

As humans, we write our thoughts in phrases and sentences.

Usually, we want to communicate a series of thoughts that are connected to each other in different ways. **Connecting Words and Phrases** show how these thoughts are related to each other. For example, we can show how the following thoughts are related by using the underlined Connecting Words:

- It was raining, so I opened my umbrella.
- It was raining, but I did not have an umbrella. So I got very wet.

Connecting Words or Phrases can connect phrases or clauses within a sentence. They can connect sentences to each other. They can also connect entire chunks to one another in order to show how the chunk before relates to the chunk after. Very often, the Connecting Words that connect entire chunks to one another are either conjunctions or adverbs.

It was raining, but I did not have an umbrella. So I got very wet.

Now I must change my clothes. Then I will drink a cup of hot tea and warm myself by the fire.

In the above example, the word "now" connects the two short chunks of text, showing the relationship between them. The speaker must change his clothes, drink hot tea, and warm himself because of something that happened earlier (that is, he got wet in the rain).

Sometimes people might not use a Connecting Word because they expect the readers to understand the relationship between the thoughts because of the context. Some languages do not use Connecting Words as much as other languages do. They might say:

- It was raining. I did not have an umbrella. I got very wet.

You (the translator) will need to use the method that is most natural and clear in the target language. But in general, using Connecting Words whenever possible helps the reader to understand the ideas in the Bible most clearly.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- You need to understand the relationship between paragraphs, between sentences, and between parts of sentences in the Bible, and how Connecting Words and Phrases can help you to understand the relationship between the thoughts that it is connecting.
- Each language has its own ways of showing how thoughts are related.
- You need to know how to help readers understand the relationship between the thoughts in a way that is natural in your language.

Translation Principles

- You need to translate in a way that readers can understand the same relationship between thoughts that the original readers would have understood.
- Whether or not a Connecting Word is used is not as important as readers being able to understand the relationship between the ideas.

The Different Types of Connections

Listed below are different types of connections between ideas or events. These different types of connections can be indicated by using different Connecting Words. When we write or translate something, it is important to use the

right Connecting Word so that these connections are clear for the reader. If you would like additional information simply click the colored word to be directed to a page containing definitions and examples for each type of connection.

- Sequential Clause – a time relationship between two events in which one happens and then the other happens.
- Simultaneous Clause – a time relationship between two or more events that occur at the same time.
- Background Clause – a time relationship in which the first clause describes a long event that is happening at the time when the beginning of the second event happens, which is described in the second clause.
- Exceptional Relationship – one clause describes a group of people or items, and the other clause excludes one or more items or people from the group.
- Hypothetical Condition – the second event will only take place if the first one takes place. Sometimes what takes place is dependent on the actions of other people.
- Factual Condition – a connection that sounds hypothetical but is already certain or true so that the condition is guaranteed to happen.
- Contrary to Fact Condition – a connection that sounds hypothetical but is already certain that it is not true. See also: [Hypothetical Statements](#).
- Goal Relationship – a logical relationship in which the second event is the purpose or goal of the first.
- Reason and Result Relationship – a logical relationship in which one event is the reason for the other event, which is the result.
- Contrast Relationship – one item is being described as different or in opposition to another.

Examples from the Bible

I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me, **but** instead I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. **Then** after three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him fifteen days. (Galatians 1:16-18 ULT)

The word “but” introduces something that **contrasts** with what was said before. The **contrast** here is between what Paul did not do and what he did do. The word “then” introduces a **sequence** of events. It introduces something that Paul did after he returned to Damascus.

Therefore whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

The word “Therefore” links this section with the section before it, signalling that the section that came before gave the **reason** for this section. “Therefore” usually links sections larger than one sentence. The word “and” links only two actions within the same sentence, that of breaking commandments and teaching others. In this verse the word “But” **contrasts** what one group of people will be called in God’s kingdom with what another group of people will be called.

We do not place a stumbling block in front of anyone, **for** we do not wish our ministry to be brought into disrepute. **Instead**, we prove ourselves by all our actions, that we are God’s servants. (2 Corinthians 6:3-4 ULT)

Here the word “for” connects what follows as the **reason** for what came before; the reason that Paul does not place stumbling blocks is that he does not want his ministry brought into disrepute. “Instead” **contrasts** what Paul does (proving by his actions that he is God’s servant) with what he said he does not do (placing stumbling blocks).

General Translation Strategies

See each type of Connecting Word above for specific strategies

If the way the relationship between thoughts is shown in the ULT would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, then consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use a connecting word (even if the ULT does not use one).
2. Do not use a connecting word if it would be strange to use one and people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.
3. Use a different connecting word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a connecting word (even if the ULT does not use one).

Jesus said to them, "Come after me, and I will make you become fishers of men."
Immediately they left the nets and went after him. (Mark 1:17-18 ULT)

They followed Jesus **because** he told them to. Some translators may want to mark this clause with the connecting word "so".

Jesus said to them, "Come after me, and I will make you become fishers of men." **So** immediately they left the nets and went after him.

(2) Do not use a connecting word if it would be odd to use one and people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.

Therefore whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and

teaches others to do so, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. But whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

Some languages would prefer not to use connecting words here, because the meaning is clear without them and using them would be unnatural. They might translate like this:

Therefore whoever breaks the least one of these commandments, teaching others to do so as well, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. Whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.

I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me, but

instead I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. Then after three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him fifteen days. (Galatians 1:16-18 ULT)

Some languages might not need the words "but" or "then" here. They might translate like this:

I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me. Instead I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. After three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him fifteen days.

(3) Use a different connecting word.

Therefore

whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. But whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

Instead of a word like “therefore,” a language might need a phrase to indicate that there was a section before it that gave the reason for the section that follows. Also, the word “but” is used here because of the contrast between the two groups of people. But in some languages, the word “but” would show that what comes after it is surprising because of what came before it. So “and” might be clearer for those languages. They might translate like this:

Because of that, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven.
And whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.

(Go back to: [Mark 3:10](#); [6:20](#); [11:24](#); [12:9](#))

Copy or Borrow Words

Description

Sometimes the Bible includes things that are not part of your culture and that your language may not have a word for. It also includes people and places that you may not have names for.

When that happens you can “borrow” the word from the Bible into your own language. This means that you basically copy it from the other language. This page tells how to “borrow” words. (There are also other ways to translate words for things that are not in your language. See [Translate Unknowns](#).)

This page answers the question: *What does it mean to borrow words from another language and how can I do it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Examples from the Bible

He saw a **fig** tree on the roadside (Matthew 21:19 ULT)

If there are no fig trees where your language is spoken, there might not be a name for this kind of tree in your language.

Above him were the **seraphim**; each one had six wings; with two each covered his face, and with two he covered his feet, and with two he flew. (Isaiah 6:2 ULT)

Your language might not have a name for this kind of creature.

The declaration of the word of Yahweh to Israel by the hand of **Malachi**. (Malachi 1:1 ULT)

Malachi might not be a name that people who speak your language use.

Translation Strategies

There are several things to be aware of when borrowing words from another language.

- Different languages use different scripts, such as the Hebrew, Greek, Latin, Cyrillic, Devanagari, and Korean scripts. These scripts use different shapes to represent the letters in their alphabets.
- Languages that use the same script might pronounce the letters in that script differently. For example, when speaking German, people pronounce the letter “j” the same way that people pronounce the letter “y” when speaking English.
- Languages do not all have the same sounds or combinations of sounds. For example, many languages do not have the soft “th” sound in the English word “think,” and some languages cannot start a word with a combination of sounds like “st” as in “stop.”

There are several ways to borrow a word.

1. If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.
2. You can spell the word as the other language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.
3. You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the other language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.

אֶפְרַיִם - A man's name in Hebrew letters.

"Zephaniah" - The same name in Roman letters

(2) You can spell the word as the other language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.

Zephaniah - This is a man's name.

"Zephaniah" - The name as it is spelled in English, but you can pronounce it according to the rules of your language.

(3) You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the other language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.

Zephaniah - If your language does not have the "z", you could use "s". If your writing system does not use "ph" you could use "f". Depending on how you pronounce the "i" you could spell it with "i" or "ai" or "ay".

"Sefania"

"Sefanaia"

"Sefanaya"

(Go back to: [Mark 5 General Notes](#); [5:41](#); [Notes](#); [7:11](#); [7:34](#); [11:9](#); [Notes](#); [14:36](#); [Notes](#); [15:34](#))

Direct and Indirect Quotations

Description

There are two kinds of quotations: direct quotation and indirect quotation.

A **direct quotation** occurs when someone reports what another person said from the viewpoint of that original speaker. People usually expect that this kind of quotation will represent the original speaker's exact words. In the example below, John would have said "I" when referring to himself, so the narrator, who is reporting John's words, uses the word "I" in the quotation to refer to John. To show that these are John's exact words, many languages put the words between quotation marks: "".

- John said, "I do not know at what time I will arrive."

An **indirect quotation** occurs when a speaker reports what someone else said, but in this case, the speaker is reporting it from his own point of view instead of from the original person's point of view. This kind of quotation usually features changes in pronouns, and it often features changes in time, in word choices, and in length. In the example below, the narrator refers to John as "he" in the quotation and uses the word "would", to replace the future tense indicated by "will".

- John said that **he** did not know at what time **he** would arrive.

Why this is a translation issue

In some languages, reported speech can be expressed by either direct or indirect quotations. In other languages, it is more natural to use one rather than the other, or there is a certain meaning implied by using one rather than the other. So for each quotation, translators need to decide whether it is best to translate it as a direct quotation or an indirect quotation.

Examples from the Bible

The verses in the examples below contain both direct and indirect quotations. In the explanation below the verse, we have underlined the quotations.

He instructed him to tell no one, but told him, "Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them." (Luke 5:14 ULT)

- Indirect quote: He instructed him **to tell no one**,
- Direct quote: but told him, "**Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest...**"

Being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God would come, Jesus answered them and said, "The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, 'Look here!' or, 'Look there!' because the kingdom of God is among you." (Luke 17:20-21 ULT)

- Indirect quote: Being asked by the Pharisees **when the kingdom of God would come**,
- Direct quote: Jesus answered them and said, "**The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, 'Look here!' or, 'Look there!' because the kingdom of God is among you.**"
- Direct quotes: Neither will they say, '**Look here!**' or, '**Look there!**'

This page answers the question: *What are direct and indirect quotations?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

[Quotations and Quote Margins](#)

Translation Strategies

If the kind of quote used in the source text would work well in your language, consider using it. If the kind of quote used in that context is not natural for your language, follow these strategies.

1. If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.
2. If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.

He instructed him to tell no one, but told him, “Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.

” (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He instructed him to tell no one, but ***to go on his way, and to show himself to the priest and to offer a sacrifice for his cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.***”

- (2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

He instructed him, to tell no one

, but told him, “Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.” (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He instructed him, “***Tell no one.*** Just go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_quotations.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-quotesinquotes]]

(Go back to: [Mark 5:43](#); [8:6](#); [8:30](#); [10:49](#); [12:19](#); [14:14](#))

Double Negatives

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of “not.” Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

This page answers the question: *What are double negatives?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning “not.” Examples in English are “no,” “not,” “none,” “no one,” “nothing,” “nowhere,” “never,” “nor,” “neither,” and “without.” Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean “not” such as the underlined parts of these words: “**un** happy,” “**im** possible,” and “use**less**.” Some other kinds of words also have a negative meaning, such as “lack” or “reject,” or even “fight” or “evil.”

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each have a negative meaning.

It is **not** that we do **not** have authority... (2 Thessalonians 3:9 ULT)

And this better confidence did **not** happen **without** the taking of an oath,... (Hebrews 7:20 ULT.)

Be sure of this—wicked people will **not** go **unpunished** (Proverbs 11:21 ULT)

Reason this is a translation issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as Spanish, a double negative emphasizes the negative. The following Spanish sentence *No ví a nadie* is literally, “I did not see no one”. It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one”. The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, “I did not see anyone”.
- In some languages, a second negative cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, “He is not unintelligent” means “He is intelligent”.
- In some languages the double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” means, “He is somewhat intelligent”.
- In some languages, such as the languages of the Bible, the double negative can create a positive sentence, and often strengthens the statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” can mean “He is intelligent” or “He is very intelligent”.

To translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know both what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

Examples from the Bible

...in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14 ULT)

This means “so that they will be fruitful”.

All things were made through him and **without** him there was **not** one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULT)

By using a double negative, John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything. The double negative makes a stronger statement than the simple positive.

Translation Strategies

If double negatives are natural and are used to express the positive in your language, consider using them. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

1. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.
2. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as "very" or "surely" or "absolutely."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

■ **For we do** not

have a high priest who cannot feel sympathy for our weaknesses. (Hebrews 4:15 ULT)

■ "For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses."

...in order not

to be unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14 ULT)

■ "...so that they may be fruitful."

(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as "very" or "surely" or "absolutely."

■ **Be sure of this—wicked people will** not

go unpunished... (Proverbs 11:21 ULT)

■ "Be sure of this—wicked people will **certainly** be punished..."

All things were made through him and without

him there was not one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULT)

■ "All things were made through him. He made **absolutely** everything that has been made."

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]

(Go back to: [Mark 6:4](#); [9:29](#); [10:14](#); [10:30](#); [14:29](#))

Doublet

Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Unlike Hendiadys, in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

Examples from the Bible

King David was **old** and **advanced in years**. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean that he was “very old.”

...he attacked two men **more righteous** and **better** than himself... (1 Kings 2:32 ULT)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words (Daniel 2:9 ULT)

This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

...as of a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19 ULT)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect--not even one.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words or phrases.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

You have decided to prepare false

and deceptive words (Daniel 2:9 ULT)

“You have decided to prepare **false** things to say.”

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

■ **King David was** old

and advanced in years. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

■ “King David was **very old**.”

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

■ **...a lamb** without blemish

and without spot... (1 Peter 1:19 ULT) - English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

■ “...a lamb **without any blemish at all**...”

(Go back to: [Mark 4:39](#); [7:14](#); [8:15](#); [12:30](#); [13:20](#); [14:68](#))

Ellipsis

Description

Ellipsis is what happens when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words from a sentence that it normally should have to be a complete sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

...the wicked will not stand in the judgment, ***nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.***
(Psalm 1:5)

There is ellipsis in the second part because “nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would be:

...nor ***will*** sinners ***stand*** in the assembly of the righteous.

There are two types of ellipsis.

1. A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.
2. An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage, or from the nature of the situation.

Reason this is a translation issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

Examples from the Bible

Relative Ellipsis

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf ***and Sirion like a young ox.*** (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and ***he makes*** Sirion ***skip*** like a young ox.

But if we are afflicted, ***for your comfort and salvation;*** if we are comforted, ***for your comfort,***...
(2 Corinthians 1:6)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:

This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

But if we are afflicted, **we are afflicted** for your comfort and salvation; if we are comforted, **we are comforted** for your comfort,...

Absolute Ellipsis

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, **that I might receive my sight.**" (Luke 18:40-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

"Lord, **I want you to heal me so** that I might receive my sight."

To Titus...**Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior.** (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

To Titus...**May you receive** grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our savior.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

...**the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor** sinners in the assembly

of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5)

...the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and **sinners will not stand in the assembly** of the righteous

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, that I might receive my sight

." (Luke 18:40-41)

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, **I want you to heal me** that I might receive my sight."

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox

. (Psalm 29:6)

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

(Go back to: [Mark 1:22; 1:40; 1:41; 2:17; 2:27; 3:4; 3:10; 4:8; 4:11; 4:20; 4:37; 5:14; 5:20; 5:21; 5:33; 6:12; 6:13; 6:45; 7:14; 7:23; 7:36; 8:28; 9:18; 9:21; 9:23; 9:28; 9:29; 9:32; 10:27; 10:31; 10:39; 10:47; 11:31; 11:32; 11:33; 12:5; 12:16; 12:17; 12:21; 12:22; 12:27; 12:32; 13:8; 13:11; 13:12; 13:16; 13:22; 13:32; 14:2; 14:5; 14:29; 14:36; 14:58; 15:11](#))

Euphemism

Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

This page answers the question: *What is a Euphemism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Definition

...they found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULT)

This means that Saul and his sons “were dead”. It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

Examples from the Bible

...where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself...(1 Samuel 24:3 ULT)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

Mary said to the angel, “How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

...where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself

. (1 Samuel 24:3 ULT) - Some languages might use euphemisms like these:

“...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave **to dig a hole**”
 “...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave **to have some time alone**”

Mary said to the angel, “How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

■ Mary said to the angel, “How will this happen, since ***I do not know a man?***” - (This is the euphemism used in the original Greek)

(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

■ **they found Saul and his sons** fallen

on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULT)

■ “they found Saul and his sons ***dead*** on Mount Gilboa.”

(Go back to: [Mark 1:11](#); [5:25](#); [13:17](#); [13:30](#))

Exclamations

Description

Exclamations are words or sentences that show strong feeling such as surprise, joy, fear, or anger. In the ULT and UST, they usually have an exclamation mark (!) at the end. The mark shows that it is an exclamation. The situation and the meaning of what the people say helps us understand what feelings they were expressing. In the example below from Matthew 8, the speakers were terribly afraid. In the example from Matthew 9, the speakers were amazed, because something happened that they had never seen before.

This page answers the question: *What are ways of translating exclamations?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes]]

Save us, Lord; we are about to die! (Matthew 8:25 ULT)

When the demon had been driven out, the mute man spoke. The crowds were astonished and said, "This has never been seen before in Israel!" (Matthew 9:33 ULT)

Reason this is a translation issue

Languages have different ways of showing that a sentence communicates strong emotion.

Examples from the Bible

Some exclamations have a word that shows feeling. The sentences below have "Oh" and "Ah". The word "oh" here shows the speaker's amazement.

Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

The word "Ah" below shows that Gideon was very frightened.

Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. Gideon said, "**Ah**, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULT)

Some exclamations start with a question word such as "how" or "why", even though they are not questions. The sentence below shows that the speaker is amazed at how unsearchable God's judgments are.

How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

Some exclamations in the Bible do not have a main verb. The exclamation below shows that the speaker is disgusted with the person he is speaking to.

You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22 ULT)

Translation Strategies

1. If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is "is" or "are".
2. Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling.
3. Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.
4. Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.
5. If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is "is" or "are".

You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22 ULT)

"You **are** such a worthless person!"

Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

"Oh, the riches of the wisdom and the knowledge of God **are** so deep!"

(2) Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling. The word "wow" below shows that they were astonished. The expression "Oh no" shows that something terrible or frightening has happened.

They were absolutely astonished, saying, "He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak." (Mark 7:36 ULT)

"They were absolutely astonished, saying, '**Wow!** He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak.'"

Ah, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face! (Judges 6:22 ULT)

"**Oh no**, Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!"

(3) Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.

Ah

, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face! (Judges 6:22 ULT)

Lord Yahweh, **what will happen to me?** For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!"
Help, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!

(4) Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.

How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

"His judgments are **so** unsearchable and his ways are **far** beyond discovering!"

(5) If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. Gideon said, "Ah

, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULT)

"Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. **He was terrified** and said, "**Ah**, Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULT)

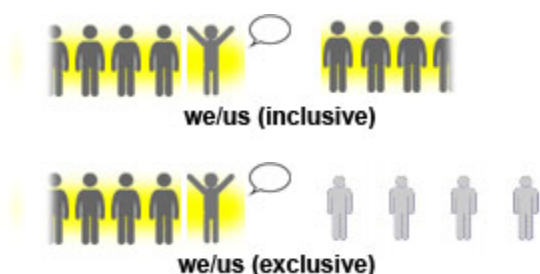
(Go back to: [Mark 15:29](#))

Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but **not you**”. The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us”, “our”, “ours”, and “ourselves”. Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we”, then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of “we” to use.

Examples from the Bible

They said, “**We** have no more than five loaves of bread and two fish, unless **we** went and bought food for all this crowd of people.” (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the first clause, the disciples are telling Jesus how much food they have among them, so this “we” could be the inclusive form or the exclusive form. In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food, so that “we” would be the exclusive form, since Jesus would not go to buy food.

we have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to **us** (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

...the shepherds said one to each other, “Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**.” (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us”, they were **including** the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, “Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said “us”, he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so this would be the inclusive form.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[*When Masculine Words Include Women*](#)

(Go back to: [Mark 9:5](#); [10:35](#); [14:58](#))

First, Second or Third Person

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you”. Sometimes in the Bible a speaker refers to himself or to the person he is speaking to with terms other than “I” or “you”.

Description

- **First person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we”. (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- **Second person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you”. (Also: your, yours)
- **Third person** - This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he”, “she”, “it” and “they”. (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

This page answers the question: *What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns]]

Reason this is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses the third person to refer to himself or to the people he is speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you”.

Examples from the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULT)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and “his”. He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,
“...Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **him**? (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “him”. He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

Abraham answered and said, “Look what I have done, taking it upon myself to speak to **my Lord**, even though I am only dust and ashes! (Genesis 18:27 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you”. He did this to show his humility before God.

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your”.

Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you”.
2. Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you”.

But David said to Saul, “Your servant

used to keep his father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34)

But David said to Saul, “**I, your servant**, used to keep **my** father’s sheep.”

(2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like God’s

? Can you thunder with a voice like him? (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **mine**? Can you thunder with a voice like **me**?”

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you

does not forgive his brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **your** brother from your heart.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Forms of You](#)

(Go back to: [Mark 2:10](#); [4:9](#); [4:23](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#))

Forms of You

Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some languages have other forms that refer to three or four people.

This page answers the question: *What are the different forms of you?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-yousingular]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-youdual]]

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_younum.

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_youform.

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of “You” - Formal or Informal

(Go back to: [Mark 1:2](#))

How to Translate Names

Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this **Melchizedek**, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2 ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title, because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see [Borrow Words](#).
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples from the Bible

You went over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the **Amorites** (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called **Beerlahairoi**; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me”.

She named him **Moses** and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULT)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out”.

Saul was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

You went over the Jordan

and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

You went over the **Jordan River** and came to the **city of Jericho**. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with **the tribe of the Amorites**

Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because Herod wants to kill you.” (Luke 13:31 ULT)

Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because **King Herod** wants to kill you.

(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

She named him Moses

and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULT)

She named him **Moses (which sounds like ‘drawn out’)**, and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

...she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called Beerlahairoi

; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULT)

...she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**;

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called "Saul" before Acts 13 and "Paul" after Acts 13. You could translate his name as "Paul" all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

...a young man named Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

...a young man named **Paul**¹

The footnote would look like:

^[1] Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But Saul

, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write "Saul" where the source text has "Saul" and "Paul" where the source text has "Paul."

a young man named Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

^[1] This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But Saul

, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

It came about in Iconium that Paul

and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul**¹ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:

|| [1] This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Copy or Borrow Words](#)

(Go back to: [Introduction to the Gospel of Mark](#); [Mark 2:14](#); [3:17](#); [3:18](#); [5:1](#); [5:20](#); [5:22](#); [6:3](#); [6:17](#); [6:45](#); [6:53](#); [7:26](#); [7:31](#); [8:10](#); [8:22](#); [10:46](#); [11:1](#); [14:3](#); [15:21](#); [15:22](#); [15:40](#); [15:43](#); [15:47](#))

Hyperbole

Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

- It rains here every night.
1. The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.
 2. The speaker means this as a **generalization** if he means that it rains here most nights.
 3. The speaker means this as a **hyperbole** if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

Hyperbole: This is a figure of speech that uses **exaggeration**. A speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

They will not leave **one stone upon another** (Luke 19:44 ULT)

- This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

Moses was educated in **all the learning of the Egyptians** (Acts 7:22 ULT)

- This hyperbole means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught, and thus was as educated as any Egyptian.

Generalization: This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

The one who ignores instruction **will have poverty and shame**, but **honor will come** to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

- These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as **the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words**. (Matthew 6:7)

- This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," it does not necessarily mean **exactly** "all," "always," "none," or "never." It simply means "most," "most of the time," "hardly any," or "rarely."

Reason this is a translation issue

1. Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.
2. If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

This page answers the question: *What are hyperboles? What are generalizations? How can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Examples from the Bible

Examples of Hyperbole

If your hand causes you to stumble, **cut it off**. It is better for you to enter into life maimed... (Mark 9:43 ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should **do whatever extreme things** we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expression the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were **many, many** soldiers in the Philistine army.

But as his anointing teaches you about **all things** and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about **all things that we need to know**. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

They found him, and they said to him, "**Everyone** is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that **many people** were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

Examples of Generalization

Can anything good come out of Nazareth? (John 1:46 ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

One of them, of their own prophets, has said, "**Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies**." (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

A lazy hand causes poverty, but the hand of the diligent makes him rich. (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

Caution

Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

...they saw Jesus **walking on the sea** and coming near the boat... (John 6:19 ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

Do not assume that the word "all" is always a generalization that means "most."

Yahweh is righteous in **all** his ways
and gracious in **all** he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

1. Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
2. For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
3. For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
4. For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore

. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and **a great number of troops**.

- (2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases”.

The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame... (Proverbs 13:18 ULT)

In general, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7)

“And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles **generally** do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.”

- (3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

The whole

country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5 ULT)

Almost all the country of Judea and **almost all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”
or:
Many of the country of Judea and **many** of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”

- (4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

The whole

country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5 ULT)

■ The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(Go back to: [Mark 1:5](#); [1:32](#); [1:33](#); [1:37](#); [1:39](#); [1:45](#); [4:17](#); [4:34](#); [8:3](#); [8:16](#); [8:36](#); [10:25](#); [14:34](#))

Hypothetical Situations

Consider these phrases: “If the sun stopped shining...,” “What if the sun stopped shining...,” “Suppose the sun stopped shining...,” and “If only the sun had not stopped shining.” We use such expressions to set up hypothetical situations, imagining what might have happened or what could happen in the future but probably will not. We also use them to express regret or wishes. These occur often in the Bible. You (the translator) need to translate them in a way that people will know that the event did not actually happen, and that they will understand why the event was imagined.

This page answers the question: *What is a hypothetical situation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

Description

Hypothetical situations are situations that are not real. They can be in the past, present, or future. Hypothetical situations in the past and present have not happened, and ones in the future are not expected to happen.

People sometimes tell about conditions and what would happen if those conditions were met, but they know that these things have not happened or probably will not happen. (The conditions are the phrase that start with “if.”)

- If he had lived to be one hundred years old, he would have seen his grandson's grandson. (But he did not.)
- If he lived to be one hundred years old, he would still be alive today. (But he is not.)
- If he lives to be one hundred years old, he will see his grandson's grandson. (But he probably will not.)

People sometimes express wishes about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- I wish he had come.
- I wish he were here.
- I wish he would come.

People sometimes express regrets about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- If only he had come.
- If only he were here.
- If only he would come.

Reason this Is a Translation Issue

- Translators need to recognize the different kinds of hypothetical situations in the Bible and understand that they are unreal.
- Translators need to know their own language's ways of talking about different kinds of hypothetical situations.

Examples from the Bible

Hypothetical situations in the past

“Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! **If the mighty deeds had been done** in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, **they would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes.”
(Matthew 11:21 ULT)

Here in Matthew 11:21 Jesus said that **if** the people living in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon had been able to see the miracles that he performed, they would have repented long ago. The people of Tyre and Sidon did not actually see his miracles and they did not repent. He said this to rebuke the people of Chorazin and Bethsaida who had seen his miracles and yet did not repent.

Martha then said to Jesus, “Lord, ***if you had been here, my brother would not have died.***” (John 11:21 ULT)

Martha said this to express her wish that Jesus had come sooner, so that her brother would not have died. But Jesus did not come sooner, and her brother did die.

Hypothetical situations in the present

Also, no man puts new wine into old wineskins. ***If he did that, the new wine would burst the skins, and the wine would be spilled, and the wineskins would be destroyed.*** (Luke 5:37 ULT)

Jesus told about what would happen if a person were to put new wine into old wineskins. But no one would do that. He used this imaginary situation as an example to show that there are times when it is unwise to mix new things with old things. He did this so that people could understand why his disciples were not fasting as people traditionally did.

Jesus said to them, “What man would there be among you, who, ***if he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath, would not grasp hold of it and lift it out?***” (Matthew 12:11 ULT)

Jesus asked the religious leaders what they would do on the Sabbath if one of their sheep fell into a hole. He was not saying that their sheep would fall into a hole. He used this imaginary situation to show them that they were wrong to judge him for healing people on the Sabbath.

Hypothetical situation in the future

Unless those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved; but for the sake of the elect, those days will be shortened. (Matthew 24:22 ULT)

Jesus was talking about a future time when very bad things would happen. He told what would happen if those days of trouble were to last a long time. He did this to show about how bad those days will be—so bad that if they lasted a long time, no one would be saved. But then he clarified that God will shorten those days of trouble, so that the elect (those he has chosen) will be saved.

Expressing emotion about a hypothetical situation

People sometimes talk about hypothetical situations in order to express regrets and wishes. Regrets are about the past and wishes are about the present and future.

The Israelites said to them, “***If only we had died by Yahweh’s hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full.*** For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger.” (Exodus 16:3 ULT)

Here the Israelites were afraid that they would have to suffer and die of hunger in the wilderness, and so they wished that they had stayed in Egypt and died there with full stomachs. They were complaining, expressing regret that this had not happened.

I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. ***I wish that you were either cold or hot!*** (Revelation 3:15 ULT)

Jesus wished that the people were either hot or cold, but they are neither. He was rebuking them, expressing anger at this.

Translation Strategies

Find out how people speaking your language show:

- that something could have happened, but did not.

- that something could be true now, but is not.
- that something could happen in the future, but will not unless something changes.
- that they wish for something, but it does not happen.
- that they regret that something did not happen.

Use your language's ways of showing these kinds of things.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_hypo.

(Go back to: [Mark 10:25](#); [Notes](#); [12:20](#))

Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, “You are telling me a lie.”)
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme.”)
- This house is under water. (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.”)
- We are painting the town red. (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.”)

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

he resolutely **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULT)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided”.

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you should **enter under my roof**. (Luke 7:6 ULT)

The phrase “enter under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house”.

Let these words **go deeply into your ears**. (Luke 9:44 ULT)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say”.

Purpose: An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

Examples from the Bible

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

the children of Israel went out **with a high hand**. (Exodus 14:8 ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

the one who **lifts up my head** (Psalm 3:3 ULT)

This means, "the one who helps me."

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your flesh and bone."
(1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

...Look, we all **belong to the same nation**.

he resolutely set his face

to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULT)

He started to travel to Jerusalem, **determined to reach it**.

I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof

. (Luke 7:6 ULT)

I am not worthy that you should enter **my house**.

(2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Let these words go deeply into your ears

(Luke 9:44 ULT)

Be all ears when I say these words to you.

"My eyes grow dim

from grief (Psalm 6:7 ULT)

I am crying my **eyes out**

(Go back to: [Mark 1:2](#); [1:41](#); [3:21](#); [3:30](#); [4:29](#); [4:37](#); [5:2](#); [5:15](#); [6:14](#); [6:35](#); [7:6](#); [7:25](#); [9:10](#); [9:17](#); [9:27](#); [9:37](#); [9:38](#); [11:6](#); [12:32](#); [12:33](#); [12:36](#); [13:8](#); [13:9](#); [13:11](#); [13:12](#); [13:29](#); [14:27](#); [14:28](#); [14:71](#); [14:72](#); [15:39](#))

Inclusive and Exclusive “We”

Description

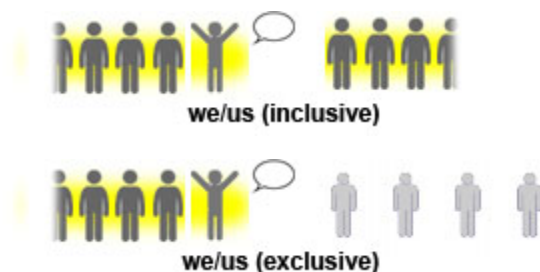
Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but not you.” The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these.

This page answers the question: *What is inclusive and exclusive “we”?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we” will need to understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of “we” to use.

Examples from the Bible

Inclusive

...the shepherds said one to each other, “Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**.” (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us,” they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, “Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said “us,” he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so this would be the inclusive form.

Exclusive

we have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to **us** (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

They said, “**We** have no more than five loaves of bread and two fish, unless **we** went and bought food for all this crowd of people.” (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the first clause, the disciples are telling Jesus how much food they have among them, so this "we" could be the inclusive form or the exclusive form. In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food, so that "we" would be the exclusive form, since Jesus would not go to buy food.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#)

(Go back to: [Mark 4:38; 9:5](#))

Introduction of a New Event

Description

When people tell a story, they tell about an event or a series of events. Often they put certain information at the beginning of the story, such as who the story is about, when it happened, and where it happened. This information that the writer gives before the events of the story begin is called the setting of the story. Some new events in a story also have a setting because they might involve new people, new times, and new places. In some languages people also tell if they saw the event or heard about it from someone else.

This page answers the question: *How do we introduce a new event in a story?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

[Order of Events](#)

When your people tell about events, what information do they give at the beginning? Is there a certain order that they put it in? In your translation, you will need to follow the way your language introduces new information at the beginning of a story or a new event rather than the way the source language did that. In this way your translation will sound natural and communicate clearly in your language.

Examples from the Bible

In the days of Herod, king of Judea, ***there was a certain priest named Zechariah***, from the division of Abijah. ***His wife was*** from the daughters of Aaron, and her name was Elizabeth. (Luke 1:5 ULT)

The verses above introduce a story about Zechariah. The first underlined phrase tells when it happened, and the next two underlined phrases introduce the main people. The next two verses go on to explain that Zechariah and Elizabeth were old and did not have any children. All of this is the setting. Then the phrase “One day” in Luke 1:8 helps to introduce the first event in this story:

One day while Zechariah was performing his duties as a priest before God in the order of his division, the priests followed their custom and chose him by lot to enter the temple of the Lord and burn incense. (Luke 1:8-9 ULT)

The birth of Jesus Christ happened in the following way. His mother Mary was engaged to marry Joseph, but before they came together, she was found to be pregnant by the Holy Spirit. (Matthew 1:18 ULT)

The underlined sentence above makes it explicit that a story about Jesus is being introduced. The story will tell about how the birth of Jesus happened.

After Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judea in the days of Herod the king, learned men from the east arrived in Jerusalem saying,... (Matthew 2:1 ULT)

The underlined phrase above shows that the events concerning the learned men happened ***after*** Jesus was born.

In those days John the Baptist came preaching in the wilderness of Judea saying,... (Matthew 3:1-22 ULT)

The underlined phrase above shows that John the Baptist came preaching around the time of the previous events. It is probably very general and refers to when Jesus lived in Nazareth.

Then Jesus came from Galilee to the Jordan River to be baptized by John. (Matthew 3:13 ULT)

The word “then” shows that Jesus came to the Jordan River some time after the events in the previous verses.

Now there was a ***Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus, a member of the Jewish Council***. This man came to Jesus at night time (John 3:1-2 ULT)

The author first introduced the new person and then told about what he did and when he did it. In some languages it might be more natural to tell about the time first.

⁶ Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. ⁷ Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood.
(Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

Verse 6 is a summary of the events that happen in the rest of chapter 7. Chapter 6 already told about how God told Noah that there would be a flood, and how Noah prepared for it. Chapter 7 verse 6 introduces the part of the story that tells about Noah and his family and the animals going into the ship, the rain starting, and the rain flooding the earth. Some languages might need to make it clear that this verse simply introduces the event, or move this verse after verse 7. Verse 6 is not one of the events of the story. The people went into the ship before the flood came.

Translation Strategies

If the information given at the beginning of a new event is clear and natural to your readers, consider translating it as it is in the ULT or UST. If not, consider one of these strategies.

1. Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.
2. If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase to fill in that information, such as: "another time" or "someone."
3. If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.
4. If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event would actually happen later in the story.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.

Now there was a Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus, a member of the Jewish Council

. This man came to Jesus at night time and said to him... (John 3:1,2)

There was a **man whose name was Nicodemus. He was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council.** One night he came to Jesus and said...

One night **a man named Nicodemus, who was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council,** came to Jesus and said...

As he passed by, he saw Levi the son of Alpheus, who was sitting

at the tax collecting place, and he said to him... (Mark 2:14 ULT)

As he passed by, **Levi the son of Alpheus was sitting** at the tax collecting place. Jesus saw him and said to him...

As he passed by, **there was a man sitting** at the tax collecting place. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him...

As he passed by, **there was a tax collector** sitting at the tax collecting place. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him...

- (2) If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase such as: another time, someone.

Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT) - If people expect to be told something about when the new event happened, the phrase "after that" can help them see that it happened after the events already mentioned.

After that, when Noah was six hundred years old, the flood came upon the earth.

Again he began

to teach beside the lake. (Mark 4:1 ULT) - In chapter 3 Jesus was teaching at someone's house. Readers may need to be told that this new event happened at another time, or that Jesus actually went to the lake.

Another time Jesus began to teach people again beside the lake.

Jesus went to the lake and **began to teach people again** there.

(3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.

Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT)

Now this is what happened when Noah was six hundred years old and the flood came upon the earth.

This part tells about what happened when the flood came upon the earth. It happened when Noah was six hundred years old.

(4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event will actually happen later in the story.

Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

Now this is what happened when Noah was six hundred years old. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because **God had said that the waters of the flood would come.**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Background Information](#)

[Introduction of New and Old Participants](#)

(Go back to: [Mark 1:9](#); [8:1](#); [9:33](#); [10:13](#))

Introduction of New and Old Participants

Description

The first time that people or things are mentioned in a story, they are **new participants**. After that, whenever they are mentioned, they are **old participants**.

Now ***there was a Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus...This man*** came to Jesus at night time...
Jesus replied to ***him*** (John 3:1)

This page answers the question: *Why cannot the readers of my translation understand who the author was writing about?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

The first underlined phrase introduces Nicodemus as a new participant. He is then referred to as “This man” and “him” when he is an old participant.

Reason this is a translation issue

In order to make your translation clear and natural, it is necessary to refer to the participants in such a way that people will know if they are new participants or participants that they have already read about. Different languages have different ways of doing this. You must follow the way that your language does this, not the way that the source language does this.

Examples from the Bible

New Participants

Often the most important new participant is introduced with a phrase that says that he existed, such as “There was a man” in the example below. The phrase “There was” tells us that this man existed. The word “a” in “a man” tells us that the author is speaking about him for the first time. The rest of the sentence tells where this man was from, who his family was, and what his name was.

There was a man from Zorah, of the family of the Danites, whose name was Manoah. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

A new participant who is not the most important one is often introduced in relation to the more important person who was already introduced. In the example below, Manoah’s wife is simply referred to as “his wife”. This phrase shows her relationship to him.

There was a man from Zorah, of the family of the Danites, whose name was Manoah. ***His wife*** was not able to become pregnant and so she had not given birth. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

Sometimes a new participant is introduced simply by name because the author assumes that the readers know who the person is. In the first verse of 1 Kings, the author assumes that his readers know who King David is, so there is no need to explain who he is.

When King David was very old, they covered him with blankets, but he could not keep warm. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

Old Participants

A person who has already been brought into the story can be referred to with a pronoun after that. In the example below, Manoah is referred to with the pronoun “his”, and his wife is referred to with the pronoun “she”.

His wife was not able to become pregnant and so ***she*** had not given birth. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

Old participants can also be referred to in other ways, depending on what is happening in the story. In the example below, the story is about bearing a son, and Manoah's wife is referred to with the noun phrase "the woman".

The angel of Yahweh appeared to **the woman** and said to her, (Judges 13:3 ULT)

If the old participant has not been mentioned for a while, or if there could be confusion between participants, the author may use the participant's name again. In the example below, Manoah is referred to with his name, which the author has not used since verse 2.

Then **Manoah** prayed to Yahweh...(Judges 13:8 ULT)

Some languages place an affix on the verb that tells something about the subject. In some of those languages people do not always use noun phrases or pronouns for old participants when they are the subject of the sentence. The marker on the verb gives enough information for the listener to understand who the subject is. (See Verbs.)

Translation Strategies

1. If the participant is new, use one of your language's ways of introducing new participants.
2. If it is not clear to whom a pronoun refers, use a noun phrase or name.
3. If an old participant is referred to by name or a noun phrase, and people wonder if this is another new participant, try using a pronoun instead. If a pronoun is not needed because people would understand it clearly from the context, then leave out the pronoun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If the participant is new, use one of your language's ways of introducing new participants.

Joseph, a Levite, a man from Cyprus, was given the name Barnabas by the apostles (that is, being interpreted, Son of encouragement). (Acts 4:36-37 ULT) - Starting the sentence with Joseph's name when he has not been introduced yet might be confusing in some languages.

There was a man from Cyprus who was a Levite. His name was Joseph, and he was given the name Barnabas by the apostles (that is, being interpreted, Son of encouragement).

There was a Levite from Cyprus whose name was Joseph. The apostles gave him the name Barnabas, which means Son of encouragement.

- (2) If it is not clear who a pronoun refers to, use a noun phrase or name.

It happened when he

finished praying in a certain place, that one of his disciples said, "Lord, teach us to pray just as John taught his disciples." (Luke 11:1 ULT) - Since this is the first verse in a chapter, readers might wonder who "he" refers to.

It happened when **Jesus** finished praying in a certain place, that one of his disciples said, "Lord, teach us to pray just as John taught his disciples."

- (3) If an old participant is referred to by name or a noun phrase, and people wonder if this is another new participant, try using a pronoun instead. If a pronoun is not needed because people would understand it clearly from the context, then leave out the pronoun.

Joseph's

master took Joseph and put him in prison, in the place where all the king's prisoners were put, and Joseph stayed there. (Genesis 39:20 ULT) - Since Joseph is the main person in the story, some languages might find it unnatural or confusing to use his name so much. They might prefer a pronoun.

Joseph's master took **him** and put **him** in prison, in the place where all the king's prisoners were put, and **he** stayed there in the prison.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-pronouns]]

(Go back to: [Mark 1:30](#); [5:25](#); [15:43](#))

Irony

Description

Irony is a figure of speech in which the sense that the speaker intends to communicate is actually the opposite of the literal meaning of the words. Sometimes a person does this by using someone else's words, but in a way that communicates that he does not agree with them. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else's belief about something is wrong or foolish. It is often humorous.

This page answers the question: *What is irony and how can I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Jesus answered them, "People who are in good health do not need a physician, only people who are sick need one. I did not come to call righteous people to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance." (Luke 5:31-32 ULT)

When Jesus spoke of "righteous people," he was not referring to people who were truly righteous, but to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous. By using irony, Jesus communicated that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

Reason this is a translation issue

- If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will understand the passage to mean the opposite of what it was intended to mean.

Examples from the Bible

How well you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9 ULT)

Here Jesus praises the Pharisees for doing something that is obviously wrong. Through irony, he communicates the opposite of praise: He communicates that the Pharisees, who take great pride in keeping the commandments, are so far from God that they do not even recognize that their traditions are breaking God's commandments. The use of irony makes the Pharisee's sin more obvious and startling.

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. ***"Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled."*** (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

People worshiped idols as if their idols had knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not do this, but by speaking as if they could, he mocked the idols, making their inability more obvious, and rebuked the people for worshiping them.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?
Can you find the way back to their houses for them?
Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then; "the number of your days is so large!" (Job 38:20, 21 ULT)

Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two underlined phrases above are irony. They emphasize the opposite of what they say, because they are so obviously false. They emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God's questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many, many years later.

Already you have all you could want! Already you have become rich! You began to reign—and that quite apart from us! (1 Corinthians 4:8 ULT)

The Corinthians considered themselves to be very wise, self-sufficient, and not in need of any instruction from the Apostle Paul. Paul used irony, speaking as if he agreed with them, to show how proudly they were acting and how far from being wise they really were.

Translation Strategies

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.
2. Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony. The actual meaning of the irony is **not** found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal meaning of the speaker's words.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

How well you reject the commandment of God

so you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9 ULT)

You think that you are doing well when you reject God's commandment so you may keep your tradition!

You act like it is good to reject God's commandment so you may keep your tradition!

I did not come to call righteous people

to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance. (Luke 5:32 ULT)

I did not come to call **people who think that they are righteous** to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.

(2) Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.

How well you reject the commandment of God

so you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9 ULT)

You are doing a terrible thing when you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition!

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. "Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen

, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled." (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

'Present your case,' says Yahweh; 'present your best arguments for your idols,' says the King of Jacob. Your idols **cannot bring us their own arguments or come forward to declare to us what will happen** so we may know these things well. We cannot hear them because **they cannot speak** to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?

Can you find the way back to their houses for them?

Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;

the number of your days is so large!" (Job 38:20, 21 ULT)

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? ***You act like you know how light and darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation, but you are not!***

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Litotes](#)

(Go back to: [Mark 2:17](#); [7:9](#); [Notes](#); [15:18](#); [15:32](#))

Litotes

Description

Litotes is a figure of speech in which the speaker expresses a strong positive meaning by using two negative words or a negative word with a word that means the opposite of the meaning he intends. A few examples of negative words are “no”, “not”, “none”, and “never”. The opposite of “good” is “bad”. Someone could say that something is “not bad” to mean that it is extremely good.

This page answers the question: *What is litotes?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use litotes. People who speak those languages might not understand that a statement using litotes actually strengthens the positive meaning. Instead, they might think that it weakens or even cancels the positive meaning.

Examples from the Bible

For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was **not useless**, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was **very** useful.

Now when it became day, there was **no small excitement** among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a **lot** of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very agitated.)

And you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,
are **not the least** among the leaders of Judah,
for from you will come a ruler
who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULT)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a **very important city**.

Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

1. If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was not useless

. (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

“For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you **did much good**.”

Now when it became day, there was no small excitement

among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

"Now when it became day, there was **great excitement** among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter."

"Now when it became day, the soldiers were **very concerned** because of what had happened to Peter."

(Go back to: [Mark 3:24](#); [4:22](#); [8:14](#); [9:41](#); [10:30](#); [11:13](#); [12:14](#); [12:34](#))

Merism

Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

“I am the Alpha and the Omega,” says the Lord God, “the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.” (Revelation 1:8, ULT)

I am the **Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End**. (Revelation 22:13, ULT)

This page answers the question: *What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Alpha and Omega are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth...**, (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

Heaven and earth is a merism that includes everything that exists.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

Examples from the Bible

From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

This underlined phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means “everywhere”.

He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13)

The underlined phrase is merism because it speaks of, old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone”.

Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth

... (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything...**

From the rising of the sun to its setting

, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

■ ***In all places***, people should praise Yahweh's name.

(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

■ **I praise you, Father, Lord of** heaven and earth

. (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

■ I praise you, Father, Lord of ***everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth.***

He will bless those who honor him, both young and old

. (Psalm 115:13 ULT)

■ He will bless ***all those*** who honor him, regardless of whether they are ***young or old.***

(Go back to: [Mark 13:27](#); [13:31](#))

Metaphor

Description

A **metaphor** is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say:

- The girl I love is a red rose.

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer's task is to understand in what way they are alike.

The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about "the girl I love". This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and "a red rose." The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both *beautiful*. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical **Image** brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the **Image** and the **Topic** are similar. Often, the **Idea** of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the **Idea** himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a **metaphor** is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker's **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison (Idea)** between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a "passive" metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being "active." Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these "dead metaphors." Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms "table **leg**", "family **tree**", "book **leaf**" (meaning a page in

This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a Bible passage that has one?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[Simile](#)

a book), or the word “crane” (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word “hand” to represent “power,” using the word “face” to represent “presence,” and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were “clothing.”

Patterned Pairs of Concepts acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction UP (the Image) often represents the concepts of MORE or BETTER (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going *up*,” “A *highly* intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The temperature is going *down*,” and “I am feeling very *low*.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world’s languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat *up*.” MORE is spoken of as UP.
- “Let us *go ahead* with our debate.” DOING WHAT WAS PLANNED is spoken of as WALKING or ADVANCING.
- “You *defend* your theory well.” ARGUMENT is spoken of as WAR.
- “A *flow* of words” WORDS are spoken of as LIQUIDS.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. They make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.
(Malachi 4:2 ULT)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

Jesus said, “Go and tell that fox...,” (Luke 13:32 ULT)

Here, “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors are the metaphors that need special care to translate correctly. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.

Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty." (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is "I" (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is "bread." Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is "life." In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

Examples from the Bible

Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1 ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria ("you", the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshipped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay**. **You are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are "we" and "you," and the Image(s) are "clay" and "potter." The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter's clay and "us" is that **neither the clay nor God's people have a right to complain about what they are becoming**.

Jesus said to them, "Take heed and beware of **the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees**." The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, "It is because we took no bread." (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said "yeast," they thought he was talking about bread, but "yeast" was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.
2. If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally ***if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible***. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
3. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as." See [Simile](#).
4. If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
5. If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
6. If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)
7. If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.
8. If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, fell at his feet

. (Mark 5:22 ULT)

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, ***immediately bowed down in front of him.***

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally ***if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible***. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

It was because of your hard hearts

that he wrote you this law, (Mark 10:5 ULT)

It was because of your ***hard hearts*** that he wrote you this law,

We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay

. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are *like* clay. You are *like* a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad

. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to *kick against a pointed stick*.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay

. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

“And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *wood*. You are our *carver*; and we all are the work of your hand.”

“And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *string*. You are the *weaver*; and we all are the work of your hand.”

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

Yahweh lives; may my rock

be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; *He is my rock*. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

Yahweh lives; may my rock

be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock *under which I can hide from my enemies*. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad

. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You *fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick*.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

I will make you become fishers of men

. (Mark 1:17 ULT)

I will make you become **people who gather men**.
Now you gather fish. I will make you **gather people**.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns.

(Go back to: [Mark 1:2](#); [1:3](#); [1:5](#); [1:7](#); [1:8](#); [1:17](#); [1:40](#); [1:45](#); [2:5](#); [3:5](#); [3:24](#); [3:26](#); [3:35](#); [4:12](#); [4:14](#); [4:16](#); [4:17](#); [4:18](#); [4:19](#); [4:20](#); [4:24](#); [5:9](#); [6:12](#); [6:52](#); [7:5](#); [7:27](#); [Notes](#); [8:15](#); [8:17](#); [8:33](#); [8:34](#); [8:38](#); [9:35](#); [9:41](#); [9:43](#); [9:45](#); [9:49](#); [9:50](#); [10:5](#); [10:8](#); [10:14](#); [10:17](#); [10:21](#); [10:24](#); [10:31](#); [10:38](#); [10:44](#); [11:10](#); [11:17](#); [12:11](#); [12:13](#); [12:25](#); [12:34](#); [12:36](#); [12:40](#); [13:5](#); [13:6](#); [13:8](#); [13:14](#); [13:27](#); [13:31](#); [13:36](#); [14:33](#); [14:38](#); [14:40](#); [14:56](#); [14:57](#); [14:62](#); [15:11](#); [15:19](#); [15:33](#); [15:42](#))

Metonymy

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

and **the blood** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

He took **the cup** in the same way after supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not used to metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples from the Bible

The Lord God will give him **the throne** of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship," or "reign." This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

Immediately his **mouth** was opened (Luke 1:64 ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

...who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people, and as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "***This cup*** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

"He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "***The wine in this cup*** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you."

(2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

The Lord God will give him ***the throne*** of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

"The Lord God will give him ***the kingly authority*** of his father, David."

or:

"The Lord God will ***make him king*** like his ancestor, King David."

who warned you to flee from ***the wrath*** to come? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

"who warned you to flee from God's coming ***punishment?***"

To learn about some common metonymies, see Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies.

(Go back to: [Mark 1:11](#); [1:33](#); [2:6](#); [2:8](#); [3:4](#); [3:24](#); [3:25](#); [3:26](#); [4:9](#); [4:14](#); [4:23](#); [4:29](#); [6:10](#); [6:16](#); [6:19](#); [6:52](#); [7:6](#); [7:19](#); [7:21](#); [7:37](#); [8:11](#); [8:17](#); [8:19](#); [8:20](#); [8:34](#); [9:1](#); [9:7](#); [9:9](#); [9:10](#); [9:31](#); [9:38](#); [9:43](#); [9:45](#); [9:47](#); [10:5](#); [10:21](#); [10:37](#); [11:9](#); [11:10](#); [11:23](#); [11:30](#); [11:31](#); [12:17](#); [12:30](#); [12:33](#); [13:6](#); [13:13](#); [13:27](#); [14:12](#); [14:36](#); [14:38](#); [14:55](#); [14:62](#); [15:1](#); [15:46](#))

Nominal Adjectives

Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word “rich” is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that “rich” is an adjective.

...**The rich man** had huge numbers of flocks and herds...(2 Samuel 12:2 ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes before the word “man” and describes “man”.

He will not be rich; his wealth will not last... (Job 15:29 ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes after the verb “be” and describes “He”.

Here is a sentence that shows that “rich” can also function as a noun.

...**the rich** must not give more than the half shekel, and **the poor** must not give less. (Exodus 30:15 ULT)

In Exodus 30:15, the word “rich” acts as a noun in the phrase “the rich”, and it refers to rich people. The word “poor” also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.
- Some languages do not use adjectives in this way.
- Readers of these languages may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about the group of people whom the adjective describes.

Examples from the Bible

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3 ULT)

“The righteous” here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

Blessed are **the meek** (Matthew 5:5 ULT)

“The meek” here are all people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives in this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

1. Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of the righteous

. (Psalms 125:3 ULT)

This page answers the question: *How do I translate adjectives that act like nouns?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]

█ The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **righteous people**.

Blessed are the meek

... (Matthew 5:5 ULT)

█ Blessed are **people who are meek**...

(Go back to: [Mark 6:55](#); [6:56](#); [10:21](#); [10:31](#); [12:27](#); [12:29](#); [14:5](#); [14:7](#); [14:61](#))

Numbers

Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words ("five") or as numerals ("5"). Some numbers are very large, such as "two hundred" (200), "twenty-two thousand" (22,000), or "one hundred million" (100,000,000). Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate numbers?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

Abram was **eighty-six** years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

That day about **three thousand** men out of the people died. (Exodus 32:28 ULT)

Here the number three thousand is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word "about" shows that it is not an exact number.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

Examples from the Bible

When Jared had lived **162** years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived **eight hundred** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived **962** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULT)

The numbers 162, eight hundred, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

Our sister, may you be the mother of **thousands of ten thousands** (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

Translation Strategies

1. Write numbers using numerals.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parentheses after them.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14 ULT)

(1) Write numbers using numerals.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(2) Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house one **hundred thousand (100,000)** talents of gold, **one million (1,000,000)** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **a thousand thousand** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents)**, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

Consistency in the ULT and UST

The *unfoldingWord® Literal Text* (ULT) and the *unfoldingWord® Simplified Text* (UST) use words for numbers that have only one or two words (nine, sixteen, three hundred). They use numerals for numbers that have more than two words (the numerals "130" instead of "one hundred thirty").

When Adam had lived **130** years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived **eight hundred** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived **930** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULT)

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction]]

(Go back to: [Mark 1:13](#); [4:8](#); [4:20](#); [5:13](#); [5:25](#); [5:42](#); [6:7](#); [6:37](#); [6:40](#); [6:43](#); [6:44](#); [8:19](#); [8:20](#); [14:5](#))

Order of Events

Description

In the Bible, events are not always told in the order in which they occurred. Sometimes the author wanted to discuss something that happened at an earlier time than the event that he just talked about. This can be confusing to the reader.

Reason this is a translation issue: Readers might think that the events happened in the order that they are told. It is important to help them understand the correct order of events.

This page answers the question: *Why are the events not listed in the order they happened, and how do I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]

Examples from the Bible

But then Herod...had John locked up in prison. Now it came about, while all the people were being baptized by John, that Jesus also was baptized. (Luke 3:20-21 ULT)

This could sound like John baptized Jesus after John was locked up in prison, but John baptized Jesus before John was locked up in prison.

Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets... But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout." (Joshua 6:8-10 ULT)

This could sound like Joshua gave the order not to shout after the army had already started their march, but he had given that order before they started marching.

Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2 ULT)

This sounds like a person must first open the scroll and then break its seals, but the seals that lock the scroll must be broken before the scroll can be unrolled.

Translation Strategies

1. If your language uses phrases or time words to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using one of them.
2. If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that. (See the section on "Aspect" of Verbs.)
3. If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occurred, consider reordering the events so they they are in that order. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6). (See [Verse Bridges](#).)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If your language uses phrases, time words or tenses to show that an event happened before the one just mentioned, consider using one of them.

²⁰ But then Herod...had John locked up in prison. ²¹ Now it came about, while all the people were being baptized by John, that Jesus also was baptized. (Luke 3:20-21 ULT)

²⁰ But then Herod...had John locked up in prison. ²¹ **Before John was put in prison**, while all the people were being baptized by John, Jesus also was baptized.

Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2 ULT)

Who is worthy to open the scroll **after** breaking its seals?

(2) If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that.

⁸ Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets... ¹⁰ But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout." (Joshua 6:8-10 ULT)

⁸ Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets... ¹⁰ But Joshua **had commanded** the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout.

(3) If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occur, consider reordering the events. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6).

⁸ Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets... ¹⁰ But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout." (Joshua 6:8-10 ULT)

⁸⁻¹⁰ Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout." Then just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets...

Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2 ULT)

Who is worthy to break the seals and open the scroll?

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_events.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Background Information](#)

[Connecting Words and Phrases](#)

[Introduction of a New Event](#)

[Verse Bridges](#)

(Go back to: [Mark 3:9](#); [5:7](#); [5:36](#))

Ordinal Numbers

Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

He gave to the church **first** apostles, **second** prophets, **third** teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULT)

This page answers the question: *What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Numbers](#)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have “-th” added to the end.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
4	four	fourth
10	ten	tenth
100	one hundred	one hundredth
1,000	one thousand	one thousandth

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
1	one	first
2	two	second
3	three	third
5	five	fifth
12	twelve	twelfth

Reason this is a translation issue:

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

Examples from the Bible

The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim, ... the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

The people cast lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The **first** row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The **second** row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The **third** row

must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The **fourth** row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULT)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

1. Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.

The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim,...the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

There were **twenty-four** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **another** to Jedaiah, **another** to Harim,...**another** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.
There were **twenty-four** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **the next** to Jedaiah, **the next** to Harim,...**the next** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became four

rivers. The name of the first is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of the second river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of the third river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The fourth river is the Euphrates. (Genesis 2:10-14 ULT)

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **one** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the next** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the next** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The **last** river is the Euphrates.

- (2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim,...the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

They cast **twenty-four** lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim,...Delaiah, and Maaziah.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction]]

(Go back to: [Mark 6:48](#); [14:72](#); [15:25](#))

Parables

A parable is a short story that teaches something(s) that is true, and teaches in such a way that is easy to understand and hard to forget.

Description

A parable is a short story that is told to teach something(s) that is true. Though the events in a parable could happen, they did not actually happen. They are told only to teach the lesson(s) that the listener is meant to learn. Parables rarely contain the names of specific people. (This may help you identify what is a parable and what is an account of a real event.) Parables often have figures of speech such as [simile](#) and [metaphor](#).

This page answers the question: *What is a parable?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

Then he also told them a parable. "Can a blind person guide another blind person? If he did, they would both fall into a pit, would they not?" (Luke 6:39 ULT)

This parable teaches that if a person does not have spiritual understanding, he cannot help someone else to understand spiritual things.

Examples from the Bible

Neither do people light a lamp and put it under a basket, but rather, on the lampstand, and it shines for everyone in the house. Let your light shine before people in such a way that they see your good deeds and praise your Father who is in heaven. (Matthew 5:15-16 ULT)

This parable teaches us not to hide the way we live for God from other people.

Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches." (Matthew 13:31-32 ULT)

This parable teaches that the kingdom of God may seem small at first, but it will grow and spread throughout the world.

Translation Strategies

1. If a parable is hard to understand because it has unknown objects in it, you can replace the unknown objects with objects that people in your culture know. However, be careful to keep the teaching the same. (See [Translate Unknowns](#).)
2. If the teaching of the parable is unclear, consider telling a little about what it teaches in the introduction, such as "Jesus told this story about being generous."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If a parable is hard to understand because it has unknown objects in it, you can replace the unknown objects with objects that people in your culture know. However, be careful to keep the teaching the same.

Jesus said to them, "Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on a lampstand

". (Mark 4:21 ULT) - If people do not know what a lampstand is, you could substitute something else that people put a light on so it can give light to the house.

Jesus said to them, "Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on **a high shelf**."

Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed

in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches." (Matthew 13:31-32 ULT) - To sow seeds means to toss them so that they scatter on the ground. If people are not familiar with sowing, you can substitute planting.

Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and **planted** in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches."

(2) If the teaching of the parable is unclear, consider telling a little about what it teaches in the introduction, such as "Jesus told this story about being generous."

Jesus said to them

, "Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on a lampstand". (Mark 4:21 ULT)

Jesus told them a parable about why they should witness openly. "Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on a lampstand." (Mark 4:21 ULT)

Then Jesus presented another parable to them.

He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches." (Matthew 13:31-32 ULT)

Then Jesus presented another parable to them about how the Kingdom of God grows. He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches."

(Go back to: [Mark 2:18](#); [2:22](#); [3:23](#); [4:1](#); [4:26](#); [7:14](#); [12:1](#); [13:28](#))

Parallelism

Description

In **parallelism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.
This is also called synonymous parallelism.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

Synonymous parallelism (the kind in which the two phrases mean the same thing) in the poetry of the original languages has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and above the ordinary way of speaking.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it is confusing, rather than beautiful.

Note: We use the term "synonymous parallelism" for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term **Doublet** for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

Examples from the Bible

(1) The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

Your word is a lamp to my feet
and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

(2) The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.

The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere,
keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULT)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

(3) The second completes what is said in the first.

This page answers the question: *What is parallelism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

I lift up my voice to Yahweh,
and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULT)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

(4) The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous,
but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULT)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

A gentle answer turns away wrath,
but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULT)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
2. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”
3. If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

Until now you have deceived me and told me lies. (Judges 16:13, ULT) - Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.

“Until now you have deceived me with your lies.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT) - The phrase “all the paths he takes” is a metaphor for “all he does.”

“Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.”

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2 ULT) - This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:

“For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.”

- (2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

“Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.”

(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

you have deceived me and told me lies. (Judges 16:13 ULT)

“All you have done is lie to me.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

“Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Personification](#)

(Go back to: [Mark 1:3](#); [3:4](#); [4:22](#); [6:50](#); [8:17](#); [9:19](#); [10:14](#); [11:28](#); [14:46](#))

Personification

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

Or sin:

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULT)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things, such as wealth, as if they were relationships between people.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples from the Bible

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

1. Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
2. In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

...sin crouches

This page answers the question: *What is personification?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULT) - God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

...**sin** is at your door, **waiting to attack you**

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

...**sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULT) - This can be translated with the word “as.”

...sin is crouching at the door, **just as a wild animal does waiting to attack a person**.

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

...**even the** winds and the sea obey him

(Matthew 8:27 ULT) - The men speak of the “wind and the sea” as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

He even **controls the winds and the sea**.

NOTE: We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Apostrophe](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [Mark 4:32](#); [13:24](#); [13:28](#))

Proverbs

Description

Proverbs are short sayings that give wise advice or teach something that is generally true about life. People enjoy proverbs because they give a lot of wisdom in few words. Proverbs in the Bible often use metaphor and parallelism. Proverbs should not be understood as absolute and unchangeable laws. Rather, proverbs offer *general advice* to a person about how to live his life.

This page answers the question: *What are proverbs, and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Metaphor](#)

[Parallelism](#)

[\[\[r://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

Hatred stirs up conflicts,
but love covers over all offenses. (Proverbs 10:12 ULT)

Here is another example from the book of Proverbs.

Look at the ant, you lazy person, consider her ways, and be wise.
It has no commander, officer, or ruler,
yet it prepares its food in the summer,
and during the harvest it stores up what it will eat. (Proverbs 6:6-8 ULT)

Reason this is a translation issue

Each language has its own ways of saying proverbs. There are many proverbs in the Bible. They need to be translated in the way that people say proverbs in your language, so that people recognize them as proverbs and understand what they teach.

Examples from the Bible

A good name is to be chosen over great riches,
and favor is better than silver and gold. (Proverbs 22:1 ULT)

This means that it is better to be a good person and to have a good reputation than it is to have a lot of money.

Like vinegar on the teeth and smoke in the eyes,
so is the sluggard to those who send him. (Proverbs 10:26 ULT)

This means that a lazy person is very annoying to those who send him to do something.

The way of Yahweh protects those who have integrity,
but it is destruction for the wicked. (Proverbs 10:29 ULT)

This means that Yahweh protects people who do what is right, but he destroys those who are wicked.

Translation Strategies

If translating a proverb literally would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing that. If not, here are some options:

1. Find out how people say proverbs in your language, and use one of those ways.
2. If certain objects in the proverb are not known to many people in your language group, consider replacing them with objects that people know and that function in the same way in your language.
3. Substitute a proverb in your language that has the same teaching as the proverb in the Bible.
4. Give the same teaching but not in a form of a proverb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Find out how people say proverbs in your language, and use one of those ways.

**A good name is to be chosen over great riches,
and favor is better than silver and gold.** (Proverbs 22:1 ULT)

Here are some ideas for ways that people might say a proverb in their language.

It is better to have a good name than to have great riches, and to be favored by people than to have silver and gold.

Wise people choose a good name over great riches, and favor over silver and gold.

Try to have a good reputation rather than great riches.

Will riches really help you? I would rather have a good reputation.

(2) If certain objects in the proverb are not known to many people in your language group, consider replacing them with objects that people know and that function in the same way in your language.

Like snow in summer

or rain in harvest,

so a fool does not deserve honor. (Proverbs 26:1 ULT)

It is not natural for *a cold wind to blow in the hot season* or for it to rain in the harvest season;
And it is not natural to honor a foolish person.

(3) Substitute a proverb in your language that has the same teaching as the proverb in the Bible.

Do not boast about tomorrow (Proverbs 27:1 ULT)

Do not count your chickens before they hatch.

(4) Give the same teaching but not in a form of a proverb.

**A generation that curses their father and does not bless their mother,
that is a generation that is pure in their own eyes,
but they are not washed of their filth.** (Proverbs 30:11-12 ULT)

People who do not respect their parents think that they are righteous, and they do not turn away from their sin.

(Go back to: [Mark 2:17](#))

Quotations and Quote Margins

Description

This page answers the question: *What are quote margins and where should I put them?*

When saying that someone said something, we often tell who spoke, whom they spoke to, and what they said. The information about who spoke and whom they spoke to is called the **quote margin**. What the person said is the **quotation**. (This is also called a quote.) In some languages the quote margin may come first, last, or even in between two parts of the quotation.

The quote margins are underlined below.

- ***She said***, "The food is ready. Come and eat."
- "The food is ready. Come and eat," ***she said***.
- "The food is ready," ***she said***. "Come and eat."

Also in some languages, the quote margin may have more than one verb meaning "said".

But his mother ***answered*** and ***said***, "No, instead he will be called John." (Luke 1:60 ULT)

When writing that someone said something, some languages put the quote (what was said) in quotation marks called inverted commas (" "). Some languages use other symbols around the quotation, such as these angle quote marks (« »), or something else.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Translators need to put the quote margin where it is most clear and natural in their language.
- Translators need to decide whether they want the quote margin to have one or two verbs meaning "said".
- Translators need to decide which marks to use around the quotation.

Examples from the Bible

Quote margin before the quote

Zechariah said to the angel, "How will I know this will happen? For I am an old man, and my wife also is very old." (Luke 1:18 ULT)

Then some tax collectors also came to be baptized, and ***they said to him***, "Teacher, what must we do?" (Luke 3:12 ULT)

He said to them, "Do not collect more money than you are supposed to." (Luke 3:13 ULT)

Quote margin after the quote

Yahweh relented concerning this. "It will not happen," ***he said***. (Amos 7:3 ULT)

Quote margin between two parts of the quote

"I will hide my face from them," ***he said***, "and I will see what their end will be; for they are a perverse generation, children who are unfaithful." (Deuteronomy 32:20 ULT)

"Therefore, those who can," ***he said***, "should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him." (Acts 25:5 ULT)

"For look, days are coming"—***this is Yahweh's declaration***—"when I will restore the fortunes of my people, Israel" (Jeremiah 30:3 ULT)

Translation Strategies

1. Decide where to put the quote margin.
2. Decide whether to use one or two words meaning "said."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Decide where to put the quote margin.

“Therefore, those who can,” he said,

“should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him.” (Acts 25:5 ULT)

He said, “Therefore, those who can should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him.”

“Therefore, those who can should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him,” **he said**.

“Therefore, those who can should go there with us,” **he said**. “If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him.”

- (2) Decide whether to use one or two words meaning “said”.

But his mother answered and said

, “No, instead he will be called John.” (Luke 1:60 ULT)

But his mother **replied**, “No, instead he will be called John.”

But his mother **said**, “No, instead he will be called John.”

But his mother **answered** like this, “No, instead he will be called John,” she **said**.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Direct and Indirect Quotations](#)

(Go back to: [Mark 10:5](#))

Reflexive Pronouns

Description

All languages have ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. English does this by using **reflexive pronouns**. These are pronouns that refer to someone or something that has already been mentioned in a sentence. In English the reflexive pronouns are: "myself", "yourself", "himself", "herself", "itself", "ourselves", "yourselves", and "themselves". Other languages may have other ways to show this.

This page answers the question: *What are reflexive pronouns?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

Reason this is a translation issue

- Languages have different ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. For those languages, translators will need to know how to translate the English reflexive pronouns.
- The reflexive pronouns in English also have other functions.

Uses of Reflexive Pronouns

- To show that the same person or things fills two different roles in a sentence
- To emphasize a person or thing in the sentence
- To show that someone did something alone
- To show that someone or something was alone

Examples from the Bible

Reflexive pronouns are used to show the same person or thing fills two different roles in a sentence.

If **I** should testify about **myself** alone, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31 ULT)

Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and **many** went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to purify **themselves**. (John 11:55 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to emphasize a person or thing in the sentence.

Jesus himself was not baptizing, but his disciples were (John 4:2 ULT)

So they left the crowd, taking Jesus with them, since he was already in the boat. Other boats were also with him. And a violent windstorm arose and the waves were breaking into the boat so that the boat was already full. But **Jesus himself** was in the stern, asleep on a cushion. (Mark 4:36-38 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone did something alone.

When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain **by himself**. (John 6:15 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone or something was alone.

He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. **It** was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up in its place **by itself**. (John 20:6-7 ULT)

Translation Strategies

If a reflexive pronoun would have the same function in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.
2. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.
3. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it.
4. In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone”.
5. In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.

If I should testify about myself

alone, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31)

“If I should *self-testify* alone, my testimony would not be true.”

Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to purify themselves

. (John 11:55)

“Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to *self-purify*.”

(2) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.

He himself

took our sickness and bore our diseases. (Matthew 8:17 ULT)

“It was *he who* took our sickness and bore our diseases.”

Jesus himself

was not baptizing, but his disciples were. (John 4:2)

“It was *not Jesus who* was baptizing, but his disciples were.”

(3) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it. English adds the reflexive pronoun.

Now Jesus said this to test Philip, for he himself

knew what he was going to do. (John 6:6)

(4) In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone”.

When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain by himself

. (John 6:15)

“When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again **alone** up the mountain.”

(5) In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up in its place by itself

. (John 20:6-7 ULT)

“He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up and lying **in its own place.**”

(Go back to: [Mark 3:26](#); [6:22](#); [9:2](#); [12:36](#))

Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes]]

Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

Those who stood by said, ***"Is this how you insult God's high priest?"*** (Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking about his way of insulting God's high priest. Rather they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purpose of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

Examples from the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULT)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULT)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden...(Luke 13:18-19 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
4. Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the answer after the question.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?

Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? ***Of course not!*** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? **None of you would do that!**

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?

It is like a mustard seed... (Luke 13:18-19 ULT)

This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed..."

Is this how you insult God's high priest?

(Acts 23:4 ULT)

You should not insult God's high priest!

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?

(Job 3:11 ULT)

I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?

(Luke 1:43 ULT)

How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

Do you not still rule

the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULT)

You still rule the kingdom of Israel, **do you not?**

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Or what man among you is there who

, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, **would you give him a stone?**

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils

? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number

(Go back to: [Mark 1:24; 1:27; Notes; 2:7; 2:8; 2:9; 2:16; 2:19; 2:24; 2:25; 2:26; 3:4; 3:23; 3:33; 4:13; 4:21; 4:30; 4:38; 4:40; 4:41; 5:7; 5:35; 5:39; 6:3; 6:37; 7:5; 7:18; 7:19; Notes; 8:4; 8:12; 8:17; 8:18; 8:21; 8:36; 8:37; 9:12; 9:19; 9:23; 9:50; 10:18; 10:26; 11:17; 12:9; 12:10; 12:15; 12:23; 12:24; 12:35; 12:37; 13:2; 14:4; 14:6; 14:19; 14:37; 14:41; 14:48; 14:63](#))

Simile

A simile is an explicit comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be “like” the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than”.

This page answers the question: *What is a simile?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than”.

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were **like sheep without a shepherd**. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, so be as wise **as serpents** and harmless **as doves**. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12 ULT)

God’s word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person’s flesh. God’s word is very effective in showing what is in a person’s heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people’s attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

Examples from the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, **as a good soldier of Christ Jesus**. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

for **as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky**, so will the Son of Man be in his day. (Luke 17:24 ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

See, I send **you out** as sheep in the midst of wolves

(Matthew 10:16 ULT) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.

See, I send **you out among wicked people** and you will be in danger from them **as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves**.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword

. (Hebrews 4:12 ULT)

For the word of God is living and active and **more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword**

(2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

See, I send **you out** as sheep in the midst of wolves

, (Matthew 10:16 ULT) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

See, I send you out **as chickens in the midst of wild dogs**,

How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings

, but you did not agree! (Matthew 23:37 ULT)

How often I wanted to gather your children together, **as a mother closely watches over her infants**, but you refused!

If you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard

, (Matthew 17:20)

If you have faith even as small **as a tiny seed**,

(3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

See, I send **you out** as sheep in the midst of wolves

, (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

See, I send you out among **people who will want to harm you**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings
, but you did not agree! (Matthew 23:37 ULT)

How often I wanted to **protect you**, but you refused!

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metaphor](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [Mark 1:10](#); [4:26](#); [6:34](#); [8:24](#); [9:26](#); [10:15](#); [12:31](#); [12:33](#))

Symbolic Action

Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their head up and down to mean "Yes" or turn their head from side to side to mean "No". Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

This page answers the question: *What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

Reason this is a translation issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture, and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means "I am surprised" or "What did you say?" In others cultures it means "Yes".

In the Bible people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture.

You (the translator) need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in your own culture, then you need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

Examples from the Bible

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

Look, I stand at the door and **knock**. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come in to his home, and have a meal with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.
2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet. (Luke 8:41)

Jairus showed Jesus great respect.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. (Revelation 3:20)

Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet. (Luke 8:41 ULT) - Since Jairus actually did this, you should not substitute an action from your own culture.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. (Revelation 3:20 ULT) - Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.

Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

(Go back to: [Mark 12:36](#); [14:62](#))

Symbolic Language

Description

Symbolic language in speech and writing is the use of symbols to represent other things, other events, etc. In the Bible it occurs most in prophecy and poetry, especially in visions and dreams about things that will happen in the future. Though people may not immediately know the meaning of a symbol, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation.

This page answers the question: *What is symbolic language and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

Eat this scroll, then go speak to the house of Israel." (Ezekiel 3:1 ULT)

This was in a dream. Eating the scroll is a symbol of reading and understanding well what was written on the scroll, and accepting these words from God into himself.

Purposes of symbolism

- One purpose of symbolism is to help people understand the importance or severity of an event by putting it in other, very dramatic terms.
- Another purpose of symbolism is to tell some people about something while hiding the true meaning from others who do not understand the symbolism.

Reason this is a translation issue

People who read the Bible today may find it hard to recognize that the language is symbolic, and they may not know what the symbol stands for.

Translation Principles

- When symbolic language is used, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation.
- It is also important not to explain the symbol more than the original speaker or writer did, since he may not have wanted everyone living then to be able to understand it easily.

Examples from the Bible

After this I saw in my dream at night **a fourth animal**, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had **large iron teeth**; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had **ten horns**. (Daniel 7:7 ULT)

The meaning of the underlined symbols is explained in Daniel 7:23-24 as shown below. The animals represent kingdoms, iron teeth represent a powerful army, and the horns represent powerful leaders.

This is what that person said, 'As for the fourth animal, it will be **a fourth kingdom** on earth that will be different from all the other kingdoms. It will devour the whole earth, and it will trample it down and break it into pieces. As for the ten horns, out of this kingdom **ten kings** will arise, and another will arise after them. He will be different from the previous ones, and he will conquer the three kings. (Daniel 7:23-24 ULT)

I turned around to see whose voice was speaking to me, and as I turned I saw **seven golden lampstands**. In the middle of the lampstands there was one like a Son of Man,...He had in his right hand **seven stars**, and coming out of his mouth was **a sharp two-edged sword**...As for the hidden meaning about the seven stars you saw in my right hand, and the seven golden lampstands: **the seven stars are the angels of the seven churches**, and **the seven lampstands are the seven churches**. (Revelation 1:12, 16, 20 ULT)

This passage explains the meaning of the seven lampstands and the seven stars. The two-edged sword represents God's word and judgment.

Translation Strategies

1. Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.
2. Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.

After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal

, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns. (Daniel 7:7 ULT) - People will be able to understand what the symbols mean when they read the explanation in Daniel 7:23-24.

(2) Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.

After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal

, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns. (Daniel 7:7 ULT)

After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal, ¹ terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; ² it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns. ³

The footnotes would look like:

^[1] The animal is a symbol for a kingdom.

^[2] The iron teeth is a symbol for the kingdom's powerful army.

^[3] The horns are a symbol of powerful kings.

(Go back to: [Mark 14:22](#); [14:24](#))

Synecdoche

Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

My soul exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULT)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul,” which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

the Pharisees said to him, “Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful...” (Mark 2:24 ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example from the Bible

I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULT)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

“My soul

exalts the Lord.” (Luke 1:46 ULT)

“I exalt the Lord.”

...the Pharisees

said to him (Mark 2:24 ULT)

...a representative of the Pharisees said to him...

...I looked on all the deeds that my hands

This page answers the question: *What is a synecdoche, and how can I translate such a thing into my language?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

had accomplished... (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULT)

I looked on all the deeds that *I* had accomplished

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metonymy](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part2]]

(Go back to: [Mark 1:44](#); [3:20](#); [4:33](#); [6:8](#); [7:5](#); [7:27](#); [12:7](#); [12:40](#); [13:20](#); [14:23](#); [14:34](#); [14:58](#))

Textual Variants

Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However, people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, or some mistook a word for another that looked like it. Occasionally they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident, or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles have some of these sentences that were added. In the ULT, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

This page answers the question: *Why does the ULT have missing or added verses, and should I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-source-text\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts\]\]](#)

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULT based the ULT on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULT may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULT translators have sometimes included information about some of the differences between them, either in the ULT footnotes in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULT and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULT. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

Examples from the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULT has a footnote about verse 11.

¹⁰ See that you do not despise any of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. ¹¹ ^[1]

^[1] Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11. *For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.*

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULT, but it is marked off with square brackets ([]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

⁵³ [Then every man went to his own house.... ¹¹ She said, "No one, Lord." Jesus said, "Neither do I condemn you. Go your way; from now on sin no more."] ^[2]

^[2] The best earliest manuscripts do not have John 7:53-8:11

Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULT or another version that you have access to.

1. Translate the verses that the ULT does and include the footnote that the ULT provides.
2. Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:14-16 ULT, which has a footnote about verse 16.

¹⁴ He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand.
¹⁵ There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him.
 It is what comes out of the person that defiles him." ¹⁶^[1]

^[1] The best ancient copies omit v. 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*

(1) Translate the verses that the ULT does and include the footnote that the ULT provides.

¹⁴ He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵
 There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what
 comes out of the person that defiles him." ¹⁶^[1]

^[1] The best ancient copies omit verse 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let
 him hear.*

(2) Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

¹⁴ He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵
 There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what
 comes out of the person that defiles him. ¹⁶ If any man has ears to hear, let him hear." ^[1]

^[1] Some ancient copies do not have verse 16.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-chapverse\]\]](#)
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts\]\]](#)
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-terms\]\]](#)
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-original\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Introduction to the Gospel of Mark](#))

Translate Unknowns

While working to translate the Bible, you (the translator) might find yourself asking: "How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?"

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The unfoldingWord® Translation Words pages and the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

We have here only five loaves of **bread** and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread and do not know what it is.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples from the Bible

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11 ULT)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous **wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **myrrh**. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

to him who made **great lights** (Psalm 136:7 ULT)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

your sins...will be white like **snow** (Isaiah 1:18 ULT)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves

. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but **are truly hungry and dangerous animals**.

"Ravenous wolves" is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See [Translating Metaphors](#).)

We have here only five loaves of bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

We have here only five **loaves of baked grain seeds** and two fish

(2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

your sins...will be white like snow

(Isaiah 1:18 ULT) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.

your sins...will be white like **milk** your sins...will be white like **the moon**

(3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with myrrh

. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word "medicine."

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **a medicine called myrrh**. But he refused to drink it.

We have here only five loaves of bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).

■ We have here only five loaves of ***baked crushed seed bread*** and two fish

(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

■ **I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for** jackals

(Jeremiah 9:11 ULT)

■ I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for ***wild dogs***

We have here only five loaves of bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

■ We have here only five ***loaves of baked food*** and two fish

(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

■ **to him who made** great lights

(Psalm 136:7 ULT)

■ to him who made ***the sun and the moon***

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Copy or Borrow Words](#)

[How to Translate Names](#)

(Go back to: [Mark 14:3](#))

Translating Son and Father

Door43 supports Bible translations that represent these concepts when they refer to God.

Biblical Witness

“Father” and “Son” are names that God calls himself in the Bible.

The Bible shows that God called Jesus his Son:

After he was baptized, Jesus came up immediately from the water, and...a voice came out of the heavens saying, **“This is my beloved Son.** I am very pleased with him.” (Matthew 3:16-17 ULT)

The Bible shows that Jesus called God his Father:

Jesus said, “I praise you **Father**, Lord of heaven and earth,...no one knows the **Son** except the **Father**, and no one knows the **Father** except the **Son**” (Matthew 11:25-27 ULT) (See also: John 6:26-57)

Christians have found that “Father” and “Son” are the ideas that most essentially describe the eternal relationship of the First and Second Persons of the Trinity to each other. The Bible indeed refers to them in various ways, but no other terms reflect the eternal love and intimacy between these Persons, nor the interdependent eternal relationship between them.

Jesus referred to God in the following terms:

Baptize them into **the name of the Father, of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit.** (Matthew 28:19 ULT)

The intimate, loving relationship between the Father and the Son is eternal, just as they are eternal.

The Father **loves** the Son. (John 3:35-36; 5:19-20 ULT)

I **love** the Father, I do what the Father commands me, just as he gave me the commandment. (John 14:31 ULT)

...no one knows who the Son is except the Father, and no one knows who the Father is except the Son. (Luke 10:22 ULT)

The terms “Father” and “Son” also communicate that the Father and the Son are of the same essence; they are both eternal God.

Jesus said, “Father, glorify your Son so that the Son may glorify you...I glorified you on the earth,...Now Father, glorify me...with the glory that **I had with you before the world was created.**” (John 17:1-5 ULT)

But in these last days, he [God the Father] has spoken to us through a Son, whom he appointed to be the heir of all things. It is through him that God also made the universe. He is the brightness of God’s glory, **the very character of his essence.** He even holds everything together by the word of his power. (Hebrews 1:2-3 ULT)

Jesus said to him, “I have been with you for so long and you still do not know me, Philip? **Whoever has seen me has seen the Father.** How can you say, ‘Show us the Father’? (John 14:9 ULT)

This page answers the question: *Why are these concepts important in referring to God?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/guidelines-faithful]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/guidelines-sonofgod]]

Human Relationships

Human fathers and sons are not perfect, but the Bible still uses those terms for the Father

and Son, who are perfect.

Just as today, human father-son relationships during Bible times were never as loving or perfect as the relationship between Jesus and his Father. But this does not mean that the translator should avoid the concepts of father and son. The Scriptures use these terms to refer to God, the perfect Father and Son, as well as to sinful human fathers and sons. In referring to God as Father and Son, choose words in your language that are widely used to refer to a human "father" and "son." In this way you will communicate that God the Father and God the Son are of the same divine essence (they are both God), just as a human father and son are of the same human essence (they are both human and share the same human characteristics).

Translation Strategies

1. Think through all the possibilities within your language to translate the words "son" and "father." Determine which words in your language best represent the divine "Son" and "Father."
2. If your language has more than one word for "son," use the word that has the closest meaning to "only son" (or "first son" if necessary).
3. If your language has more than one word for "father," use the word that has the closest meaning to "birth father," rather than "adoptive father."

(See *God the Father* and *Son of God* pages in [unfoldingWord® Translation Words](#) for help translating "Father" and "Son.")

(Go back to: [Mark 1:1](#); [1:11](#); [3:11](#); [5:7](#); [8:31](#); [8:38](#); [9:7](#); [9:31](#); [14:36](#); [14:61](#); [15:39](#))

Verse Bridges

Description

In some cases, you will see in the unfoldingWord® Simplified Text (UST) that two or more verse numbers are combined, such as 17-18. This is called a verse bridge. This means that the information in the verses was rearranged so that the story or message could be more easily understood.

This page answers the question: *Why are some verse numbers combined in the UST, such as "3-5" or "17-18"?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-bibleorg\]\]](https://en.ta/man/translate/translate-bibleorg)

²⁹ These were the clans of the Horites: Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, and Anah, ³⁰ Dishon, Ezer, Dishan: these are clans of the Horites, according to their clan lists in the land of Seir. (Genesis 36:29-30 ULT)

²⁹⁻³⁰ The people groups who were descendants of Hor lived in Seir land. The names of the people groups are Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, Anah, Dishon, Ezer, and Dishan. (Genesis 36:29-30 UST)

In the ULT text, verses 29 and 30 are separate, and the information about the people living in Seir is at the end of verse 30. In the UST text, the verses are joined, and the information about them living in Seir is at the beginning. For many languages, this is a more logical order of information.

Examples from the Bible

Where the UST has a verse bridge, the ULT will have separate verses.

⁴⁻⁵ Yahweh our God will bless you in the land that he is giving to you. If you obey Yahweh our God and obey all the commandments that I am giving to you today, there will not be any poor people among you. (Deuteronomy 15:4-5 UST)

⁴ However, there should be no poor among you (for Yahweh will surely bless you in the land that he gives you as an inheritance to possess), ⁵ if only you diligently listen to the voice of Yahweh your God, to keep all these commandments that I am commanding you today. (Deuteronomy 15:4-5 ULT)

¹⁶⁻¹⁷ But Yahweh said to him, "You must not eat the fruit of the tree that will enable you to know what actions are evil to do as well as what actions are good to do. If you eat any fruit from that tree, on that day your relationship with me will end. But I will permit you to eat the fruit of any of the other trees in the garden." (Genesis 2:16-17 UST)

¹⁶ Yahweh God commanded the man, saying, "From every tree in the garden you may freely eat. ¹⁷ But from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil you may not eat, for on the day that you eat from it, you will surely die." (Genesis 2:16-17 ULT)

Translation Strategies

Order the information in a way that will be clear to your readers. If the order of information is clear as it is in the ULT, then use that order. But if the order is confusing or gives the wrong meaning, then change the order so that it is more clear.

1. If you put information from one verse before information from an earlier verse, then combine the verses and put a hyphen between the two verse numbers.

See how to mark verses in [translationStudio](#).

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If information from one verse is put before information from an earlier verse, then combine the verses and put the verse numbers before the first verse with a hyphen between them.

² you must select three cities for yourself in the middle of your land that Yahweh your God is giving you to possess. ³ You must build a road and divide the borders of your land into three parts, the land that Yahweh your God is causing you to inherit, so that everyone who kills another person may flee there. (Deuteronomy 19:2-3)

²⁻³ you must divide into three parts the land that he is giving to you. Then select a city in each part. You must make good roads in order that people can get to those cities easily. Someone who kills another person can escape to one of those cities to be safe. (Deuteronomy 19:2-3 UST)

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-chapverse\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Mark 5:36](#); [6:7](#); [7:2](#); [7:12](#); [12:43](#); [13:21](#))

When Masculine Words Include Women

In the Bible, sometimes the words “men”, “brothers” and “sons” refer only to men. At other times, those words include both men and women. In those places where the writer meant both men and women, you (the translator) need to translate it in a way that does not limit the meaning to men.

Description

In some languages a word that normally refers to men can also be used in a more general way to refer to both men and women. For example, the Bible sometimes says **‘brothers’** when it refers to both brothers and sisters.

Also in some languages, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can be used in a more general way for any person if it is not important whether the person is a man or a woman. In the example below, the pronoun is “his”, but it is not limited to males.

A wise child makes **his** father rejoice
but a foolish child brings grief to **his** mother. (Proverbs 10:1 ULT)

This page answers the question: *How do I translate “brother” or “he” when it could refer to anyone, male or female?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-genericnoun\]\]](#)

Reason this is a translation issue

- In some cultures words like “man,” “brother,” and “son” can only be used to refer to men. If those words are used in a translation in a more general way, people will think that what is being said does not apply to women.
- In some cultures, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can only refer to men. If a masculine pronoun is used, people will think that what is said does not apply to women.

Translation Principles

When a statement applies to both men and women, translate it in such a way that people will be able to understand that it applies to both.

Examples from the Bible

We want you to know, **brothers**, about the grace of God that has been given to the churches of Macedonia. (2 Corinthians 8:1 ULT)

This verse is addressing the believers in Corinth, not only men, but **men and women**.

Then said Jesus to his disciples, “If anyone wants to follow me, **he** must deny **himself**, take up **his** cross, and follow me.” (Matthew 16:24-26 ULT)

Jesus was not speaking only of men, but of **men and women**.

Caution: Sometimes masculine words are used specifically to refer to men. Do not use words that would lead people to think that they include women. The underlined words below are specifically about men.

Moses said, ‘If a **man** dies, having no children, **his brother** must marry **his** wife and have a child for **his brother**.’ (Mark 22:24 ULT)

Translation Strategies

If people would understand that that masculine words like “man,” “brother,” and “he” can include women, then consider using them. Otherwise, here are some ways for translating those words when they include women.

1. Use a noun that can be used for both men and women.
2. Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.
3. Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use nouns that can be used for both men and women.

The wise man

dies just like the fool dies. (Ecclesiastes 2:16 ULT)

“The wise **person** dies just like the fool dies.”
 “Wise **people** die just like fools die.”

(2) Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.

For we do not want you to be ignorant, brothers

, about the troubles we had in Asia. (2 Corinthians 1:8) - Paul was writing this letter to both men and women.

“For we do not want you to be ignorant, **brothers and sisters**, about the troubles we had in Asia.” (2 Corinthians 1:8)

(3) Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me.
 (Matthew 16:24 ULT) - English speakers can change the masculine singular pronouns, “he,” “himself,” and “his” to plural pronouns that do not mark gender, “they,” “themselves,” and “their” in order to show that it applies to all people, not just men.

“If **people** want to follow me, **they** must deny **themselves**, take up **their** cross, and follow me.”

(Go back to: [Mark 2:27](#); [13:12](#))



unfoldingWord® Translation Words

Version 14

Abiathar

Definition:

Abiathar was a high priest for the nation of Israel during the time of King David.

- When King Saul killed the priests, Abiathar escaped and went to David in the wilderness.
- Abiathar and another high priest named Zadok served David faithfully throughout his reign.
- After David's death, Abiathar helped Adonijah try to become king instead of Solomon.
- Because of this, King Solomon removed Abiathar from the priesthood.

(See also: Zadok, Saul (OT), [David](#), Solomon, Adonijah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:32-34
- 1 Kings 01:07
- 1 Kings 02:22-23
- 2 Samuel 17:15
- Mark 02:25-26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H54, G8

(Go back to: [Mark 2:26](#))

abomination, abominable

Definition:

The term “abomination” is used to refer to something that causes disgust or extreme dislike.

- The Egyptians considered the Hebrew people to be an “abomination.” This means that the Egyptians disliked the Hebrews and didn’t want to associate with them or be near them.
- Some of the things that the Bible calls “an abomination to Yahweh” include lying, pride, sacrificing humans, worship of idols, murder, and sexual sins such as adultery and homosexual acts.
- In teaching his disciples about the end times, Jesus referred to a prophecy by the prophet Daniel about an “abomination of desolation” that would be set up as a rebellion against God, defiling his place of worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “abomination” could also be translated by “something God hates” or “something disgusting” or “disgusting practice” or “very evil action.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase “is an abomination to” could include “is greatly hated by” or “is disgusting to” or “is totally unacceptable to” or “causes deep disgust.”
- The phrase “abomination of desolation” could be translated as “defiling object that causes people to be greatly harmed” or “disgusting thing that causes great sorrow.”

(See also: [adultery](#), desecrate, [desolate](#), false god, [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Ezra 09:1-2
- Genesis 46:34
- Isaiah 01:13
- Matthew 24:15
- Proverbs 26:25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H887, H6292, H8251, H8262, H8263, H8441, G946

(Go back to: [Mark 13:14](#))

Abraham, Abram

Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to "Abraham."

- The name "Abram" means "exalted father."
- "Abraham" means "father of many."
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Canaan, Chaldea, Sarah, [Isaac](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 03:08
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:04
- Genesis 22:02
- James 02:23
- Matthew 01:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:06** When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **05:04** Then God changed **Abram's** name to **Abraham**, which means "father of many."
- **05:05** About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's son.
- **05:06** When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham's** faith by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."
- **06:01** When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **06:04** After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **21:02** God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H87, H85, G11

(Go back to: [Mark 12:26](#))

accuse, accused, accuser, accusation

Definition:

The terms “accuse” and “accusation” refer to blaming someone for doing something wrong. A person who accuses others is an “accuser.”

- A false accusation is when a charge against someone is not true, as when Jesus was falsely accused of wrongdoing by the leaders of the Jews.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Satan is called “the accuser.”

Bible References:

- Acts 19:40
- Hosea 04:04
- Jeremiah 02:9-11
- Luke 06:6-8
- Romans 08:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3198, H6818, G1458, G2147, G2596, G2724

(Go back to: [Mark 3:2](#); [15:3](#); [15:4](#))

adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress

Definition:

The term “adultery” refers to a sin that occurs when a married person has sexual relations with someone who is not that person’s spouse. Both of them are guilty of adultery. The term “adulterous” describes this kind of behavior or any person who commits this sin.

- The term “adulterer” refers generally to any person who commits adultery.
- Sometimes the term “adulteress” is used to specify that it was a woman who committed adultery.
- Adultery breaks the promises that a husband and wife made to each other in their covenant of marriage.
- God commanded the Israelites to not commit adultery.

Translation Suggestions:

- If the target language does not have one word that means “adultery,” this term could be translated with a phrase such as “having sexual relations with someone else’s wife” or “being intimate with another person’s spouse.”
- Some languages may have an indirect way of talking about adultery, such as “sleeping with someone else’s spouse” or “being unfaithful to one’s wife.” (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: [commit](#), [covenant](#), [sexual immorality](#), sleep with, [faithful](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 20:14
- Hosea 04:1-2
- Luke 16:18
- Matthew 05:28
- Matthew 12:39
- Revelation 02:22

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:06** “Do not commit **adultery**.”
- **28:02** Do not commit **adultery**.
- **34:07** “The religious leader prayed like this, ‘Thank you, God, that I am not a sinner like other men-such as robbers, unjust men, **adulterers**, or even like that tax collector.’”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5003, H5004, G3428, G3429, G3430, G3431, G3432

(Go back to: [Mark 7:22](#); [8:38](#); [10:11](#); [10:12](#); [10:19](#))

adversary, enemy

Definition:

An "adversary" is a person (or group of people) who is opposed to someone else. The term "enemy" has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose or harm another person.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an "adversary" of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an "adversary" and an "enemy."
- The term "adversary" may be translated as "opponent" or "enemy," but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: [Satan](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:14
- Isaiah 09:11
- Job 06:23
- Lamentations 04:12
- Luke 12:59
- Matthew 13:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G476, G480, G2189, G2190, G5227

(Go back to: [Mark 12:36](#))

advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels

Definition:

The terms “counsel” and “advice” have the same meaning and refer to helping someone decide wisely about what to do in a certain situation. A wise “counselor” or “advisor” is someone who gives advice or counsel that will help a person make right choices.

- Kings often have official advisors or counselors to help them decide important matters that affect the people they are ruling.
- Sometimes the advice or counsel that is given is not good. Evil advisors may urge a king to take action or make a decree that will harm him or his people.
- Depending on the context, “advice” or “counsel” could also be translated as “help in deciding” or “warnings” or “exhortations” or “guidance.”
- The action, to “counsel” could be translated as to “advise” or to “make suggestions” or to “exhort.”
- Note that “counsel” is a different word than “council,” which refers to a group of people.

(See also: exhort, [Holy Spirit](#), [wise](#))

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1697, H1847, H1875, H1884, H1907, H3272, H3289, H3982, H4156, H4431, H5475, H5779, H6440, H6963, H6098, H7592, H8458, G1011, G1012, G1106, G4823, G4825

(Go back to: [Mark 3:6](#))

afflict, affliction, distress

Definition:

The term “afflict” means to cause someone distress or suffering. An “affliction” is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- Sometimes God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships with the intention for them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To “be afflicted with” means to suffer from some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “afflict” someone could be translated as “cause someone to experience troubles” or “cause someone to suffer” or “cause suffering to come.”
- A phrase like “afflict someone with leprosy” could be translated as “cause someone to be sick with leprosy.”
- When a disease or disaster is sent to “afflict” people or animals, this could be translated as “cause suffering to.”
- Depending on the context, the term “affliction” could be translated as “calamity” or “sickness” or “suffering” or “great distress.”
- The phrase “afflicted with” could also be translated as “suffering from” or “sick with.”

(See also: [leprosy](#), [plague](#), [suffer](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 01:06
- Amos 05:12
- Colossians 01:24
- Exodus 22:22-24
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 29:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H3013, H3905, H3906, H6031, H6039, H6040, H6041, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7451, H7489, G2346, G2347, G3804

(Go back to: [Mark 3:10](#); [5:29](#); [5:34](#))

age, aged

Definition:

The term “age” refers to the number of years a person has lived. It also used to refer generally to a time period.

- Other words used to express an extended period of time include “era” and “season.”
- Jesus refers to “this age” as the present time when evil, sin, and disobedience fill the earth.
- There will be a future age when righteousness will reign over a new heaven and a new earth.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “age” could also be translated as “era” or “number of years old” or “time period” or “time.”
- The phrase “at a very old age” could be translated as “at many years old” or “when he was very old” or “when he had lived a very long time.”
- The phrase “this present evil age” means “during this time right now when people are very evil.”

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:28
- 1 Corinthians 02:07
- Hebrews 06:05
- Job 05:26

Word Data:

- Strong's: G165, G1074

(Go back to: [Mark 4:19](#); [10:30](#); [11:14](#))

amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, dumbfounded

Definition:

All these terms refer to being very surprised because of something extraordinary that happened.

- Some of these words are translations of Greek expressions that mean “struck with amazement” or “standing outside of (oneself).” These expressions show how very surprised or shocked the person was feeling. Other languages might also have ways to express this.
- Usually the event that caused the wonder and amazement was a miracle, something only God could do.
- The meaning of these terms can also include feelings of confusion because what happened was totally unexpected.
- Other ways to translate these words could be “extremely surprised” or “very shocked.”
- Related words include “marvelous” (amazing, wonderful), “amazement,” and “astonishment.”
- In general, these terms are positive and express that the people were happy about what had happened.

(See also: [miracle](#), [sign](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 08:9-11
- Acts 09:20-22
- Galatians 01:06
- Mark 02:10-12
- Matthew 07:28
- Matthew 15:29-31
- Matthew 19:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H926, H2865, H3820, H4159, H6313, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H8074, H8429, H8539, H8540, H8541, G639, G1568, G1569, G1605, G1611, G1839, G2284, G2285, G2296, G2297, G2298, G4023, G4592, G5059

(Go back to: [Mark 1:22](#); [1:27](#); [2:12](#); [5:20](#); [5:42](#); [6:2](#); [6:6](#); [6:51](#); [7:37](#); [9:15](#); [10:24](#); [10:26](#); [10:32](#); [11:18](#); [12:11](#); [12:17](#); [13:22](#); [15:5](#); [15:44](#); [16:5](#); [16:6](#); [16:8](#))

amen, truly

Definition:

The term “amen” is a word used to emphasize or call attention to what a person has said. It is often used at the end of a prayer. Sometimes it is translated as “truly.”

- When used at the end of a prayer, “amen” communicates agreement with the prayer or expresses a desire that the prayer be fulfilled.
- In his teaching, Jesus used “amen” to emphasize the truth of what he said. He often followed that by “and I say to you” to introduce another teaching that related to the previous teaching.
- When Jesus uses “amen” this way, some English versions (and the ULT) translate this as “verily” or “truly.”
- Another word meaning “truly” is sometimes translated as “surely” or “certainly” and is also used to emphasize what the speaker is saying.

Translation Suggestions:

- Consider whether the target language has a special word or phrase that is used to emphasize something that has been said.
- When used at the end of a prayer or to confirm something, “amen” could be translated as “let it be so” or “may this happen” or “that is true.”
- When Jesus says, “truly I tell you,” this could also be translated as “Yes, I tell you sincerely” or “That is true, and I also tell you.”
- The phrase “truly, truly I tell you” could be translated as “I tell you this very sincerely” or “I tell you this very earnestly” or “what I am telling you is true.”

(See also: [fulfill](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 27:15
- John 05:19
- Jude 01:24-25
- Matthew 26:33-35
- Philemon 01:23-25
- Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H543, G281

(Go back to: [Mark 3:28](#); [8:12](#); [9:1](#); [9:41](#); [10:15](#); [10:29](#); [11:23](#); [12:43](#); [13:30](#); [14:9](#); [14:18](#); [14:25](#); [14:30](#))

ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Definition:

The term “father” refers to a person’s male parent.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to a male ancestor(s) of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestors” or “ancestral fathers.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: [God the Father](#), [son](#), [Son of God](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:02
- Acts 07:32
- Acts 07:45
- Acts 22:03
- Genesis 31:30
- Genesis 31:42
- Genesis 31:53
- Hebrews 07:4-6
- John 04:12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 03:07
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 01:07
- Matthew 03:09
- Matthew 10:21
- Matthew 18:14
- Romans 04:12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1, H2, H25, H369, H539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G540, G1080, G3737, G3962, G3964, G3966, G3967, G3970, G3971, G3995, G4245, G4269, G4613

(Go back to: [Mark 1:20](#); [5:40](#); [7:10](#); [7:11](#); [7:12](#); [9:21](#); [9:24](#); [10:7](#); [10:19](#); [10:29](#); [11:10](#); [13:12](#); [15:21](#))

Andrew

Facts:

Andrew was one of twelve men whom Jesus chose to be his closest disciples (later called apostles).

- Andrew's brother was Simon Peter. Both of them were fishermen.
- Peter and Andrew were fishing in the Sea of Galilee when Jesus called them to be his disciples.
- Before Peter and Andrew met Jesus, they had been disciples of John the Baptizer.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [disciple](#), [the twelve](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 01:12-14
- John 01:40
- Mark 01:17
- Mark 01:29-31
- Mark 03:17-19
- Matthew 04:19
- Matthew 10:2-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: G406

(Go back to: [Mark 1:16](#); [1:29](#); [3:18](#); [13:3](#))

angel, archangel

Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term “archangel” refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word “angel” literally means “messenger.”
- The term “archangel” literally means “chief messenger.” The only angel referred to in the Bible as an “archangel” is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God’s authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God are by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, “angel of Yahweh,” has more than one possible meaning: 1) It may mean “angel who represents Yahweh” or “messenger who serves Yahweh.” 2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel’s use of “I” as if Yahweh himself was talking.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “angel” could include “messenger from God” or “God’s heavenly servant” or “God’s spirit messenger.”
- The term “archangel” could be translated as “chief angel” or “head ruling angel” or “leader of the angels.”
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase “angel of Yahweh” should be translated using the words for “angel” and “Yahweh.” This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include “angel from Yahweh” or “angel sent by Yahweh” or “Yahweh, who looked like an angel.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: chief, [head](#), [messenger](#), Michael, [ruler](#), [servant](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 12:23
- Colossians 02:18-19
- Genesis 48:16
- Luke 02:13
- Mark 08:38
- Matthew 13:50
- Revelation 01:20
- Zechariah 01:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:12** God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- **22:03** The **angel** responded to Zechariah, “I was sent by God to bring you this good news.”

- **23:06** Suddenly, a shining **angel** appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The **angel** said, "Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you."
- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with **angels** praising God.
- **25:08** Then **angels** came and took care of Jesus.
- **38:12** Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an **angel** to strengthen him.
- **38:15** "I could ask the Father for an army of **angels** to defend me."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H430, H4397, H4398, H8136, G32, G743, G2465

(Go back to: [Mark 1:13](#); [8:38](#); [12:25](#); [13:27](#); [13:32](#))

anoint, anointed, anointing

Definition:

The term “anoint” means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. In biblical times, there were several reasons for anointing someone with oil.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
- After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
- The titles “Messiah” (Hebrew) and “Christ” (Greek) mean “the Anointed (One).”
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.
- In biblical times, a woman might anoint herself with perfume to make herself more sexually attractive.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “anoint” could be translated as “pour oil on” or “put oil on” or “consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on.”
- To “be anointed” could be translated as “be consecrated with oil.” or “be appointed” or “be consecrated.”
- In some contexts the term “anoint” could be translated as “appoint.”
- A phrase like “the anointed priest,” could be translated as “the priest who was consecrated with oil” or “the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [consecrate](#), [high priest](#), [King of the Jews](#), [priest](#), [prophet](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:20
- 1 John 02:27
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- Acts 04:27-28
- Amos 06:5-6
- Exodus 29:5-7
- James 05:13-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H430, H1101, H1878, H3323, H4397, H4398, H4473, H4886, H4888, H4899, H5480, H8136, G32, G218, G743, G1472, G2025, G3462, G5545, G5548

(Go back to: [Mark 6:13](#); [14:8](#); [16:1](#))

apostle, apostleship

Definition:

The “apostles” were men sent by Jesus to preach about God and his kingdom. The term “apostleship” refers to the position and authority of those who were chosen as apostles.

- The word “apostle” means “someone who is sent out for a special purpose.” The apostle has the same authority as the one who sent him.
- Jesus’ twelve closest disciples became the first apostles. Other men, such as Paul and James, also became apostles.
- By God’s power, the apostles were able to boldly preach the gospel and heal people, and were able to force demons to come out of people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “apostle” can also be translated with a word or phrase that means “someone who is sent out” or “sent-out one” or “person who is called to go out and preach God’s message to people.”
- It is important to translate the terms “apostle” and “disciple” in different ways.
- Also consider how this term was translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [authority](#), [disciple](#), [James \(son of Zebedee\)](#), Paul, [the twelve](#))

Bible References:

- Jude 01:17-19
- Luke 09:12-14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **26:10** Then Jesus chose twelve men who were called his **apostles**. The **apostles** traveled with Jesus and learned from him.
- **30:01** Jesus sent his **apostles** to preach and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:02** Judas was one of Jesus’ **apostles**. He was in charge of the **apostles’** money bag, but he loved money and often stole from the bag.
- **43:13** The disciples devoted themselves to the **apostles’** teaching, fellowship, eating together, and prayer.
- **46:08** Then a believer named Barnabas took Saul to the **apostles** and told them how Saul had preached boldly in Damascus.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G651, G652, G2491, G5376, G5570

(Go back to: [Mark 3:14](#); [6:30](#))

appoint, appointed

Definition:

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in “appointed to eternal life.” That people were “appointed to eternal life” means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as “be chosen.”

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 08:11
- Acts 03:20
- Acts 06:02
- Acts 13:48
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 03:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H561, H977, H2163, H2296, H2706, H2708, H2710, H3198, H3245, H3259, H3677, H3983, H4150, H4151, H4152, H4483, H4487, H4662, H5324, H5344, H5414, H5567, H5975, H6310, H6485, H6565, H6635, H6680, H6923, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7896, G322, G606, G1299, G1303, G1935, G2525, G2749, G4287, G4296, G4384, G4929, G5021, G5087

(Go back to: [Mark 3:16](#))

ash, ashes

Facts:

The term “ash” (or “ashes”) refers to the grey powdery substance that is left behind after wood is burned.

- In ancient times, sitting in ashes was a sign of mourning or grieving. When grieving, it was the custom to wear rough, scratchy sackcloth and sit in ashes or put ashes on the head.
- Putting ashes on the head was also a sign of humiliation or embarrassment.
- An “ash heap” is a pile of ashes.
- Sometimes the word "dust" is used with the term "ashes" in the phrase, "dust and ashes." This phrase can be translated as "dust and ashes" or simply as "ashes."
- When translating “ashes,” use the word in the target language that refers to the burned-up remains after wood has burned.

(See also: [fire](#), sackcloth)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 20:10
- Jeremiah 06:26
- Psalms 102:09
- Psalms 113:07

Word Data:

- Strong's: H80, H665, H1854, H6083, H6368, H7834, G2868, G4700, G5077, G5522

(Go back to: [Mark 6:11](#))

asleep, fall asleep, sleep, sleeper, sleepless

Definition:

These terms can have figurative meanings relating to death.

- To “sleep” or “be asleep” can be a metaphor meaning to “be dead.” (See: Metaphor)
- The expression “fall asleep” means start sleeping, or, figuratively, die.
- To “sleep with one’s fathers” means to die, as one’s ancestors have, or to be dead, as one’s ancestors are.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “fall asleep” could be translated as to “suddenly become asleep” or to “start sleeping” or to “die,” depending on its meaning.
- Note: It is especially important to keep the figurative expression in contexts where the audience did not understand the meaning. For example, when Jesus told his disciples that Lazarus was “sleeping” they thought he meant that Lazarus was just sleeping naturally. In this context, it would not make sense to translate this as “he died.”
- Some project languages may have a different expression for death or dying which could be used if the expressions “sleep” and “asleep” do not make sense.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:27-29
- 1 Thessalonians 04:14
- Acts 07:60
- Daniel 12:02
- Psalms 044:23
- Romans 13:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1957, H3462, H3463, H7290, H7901, H8139, H8142, H8153, H8639, G879, G1852, G1853, G2518, G2837, G5258

(Go back to: [Mark 4:27](#); [4:38](#); [5:39](#); [13:36](#); [14:37](#); [14:40](#); [14:41](#))

assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting

Definition:

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together for some reason, often to discuss problems, give advice, or make decisions. An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.

Old Testament

- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.

New Testament

- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
- When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
- The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: [hyperbole](#))
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”

(See also: [council](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:14
- Acts 07:38
- Ezra 10:12-13
- Hebrews 12:22-24
- Leviticus 04:20-21
- Nehemiah 08:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H622, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H6116, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, G1577, G3831, G4863, G4864, G4871, G4905

(Go back to: [Mark 1:33](#); [2:2](#); [3:20](#); [4:1](#); [5:21](#); [6:30](#); [7:1](#); [13:27](#); [14:53](#))

astray, go astray, went astray, lead astray, stray

Definition:

The terms “stray” and “go astray” mean to disobey God’s will. People who are “led astray” have allowed other people or circumstances to influence them to disobey God.

- The word “astray” gives a picture of leaving a clear path or a place of safety to go down a wrong and dangerous path.
- Sheep who leave the pasture of their shepherd have “strayed.” God compares sinful people to sheep who have left him and “gone astray.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “go astray” could be translated as “go away from God” or “take a wrong path away from God’s will” or “stop obeying God” or “live in a way that goes away from God.”
- To “lead someone astray” could be translated as “cause someone to disobey God” or “influence someone to stop obeying God” or “cause someone to follow you down a wrong path.”

(See also: disobey, [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:07
- 2 Timothy 03:13
- Exodus 23:4-5
- Ezekiel 48:10-12
- Matthew 18:13
- Matthew 24:05
- Psalms 058:03
- Psalms 119:110

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5080, H7683, H7686, H8582, G4105, G5351

(Go back to: [Mark 12:24](#); [12:27](#); [13:5](#); [13:6](#))

authority

Definition:

The term “authority” refers to the power of influence and control that someone has over someone else.

- Kings and other governing rulers have authority over the people they are ruling.
- The word “authorities” can refer to people, governments, or organizations that have authority over others.
- The word “authorities” can also refer to spirit beings who have power over people who have not submitted themselves to God’s authority.
- Masters have authority over their servants or slaves. Parents have authority over their children.
- Governments have the authority or right to make laws that govern their citizens.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “authority” can also be translated as “control” or “right” or “qualifications.”
- Sometimes “authority” is used with the meaning of “power.”
- When “authorities” is used to refer to people or organizations who rule people, it could also be translated as “leaders” or “rulers” or “powers.”
- The phrase “by his own authority” could also be translated as, “with his own right to lead” or “based on his own qualifications.”
- The expression, “under authority” could be translated as, “responsible to obey” or “having to obey others’ commands.”

(See also: citizen, [command](#), [obey](#), [power](#), [ruler](#))

Bible References:

- Colossians 02:10
- Esther 09:29
- Genesis 41:35
- Jonah 03:6-7
- Luke 12:05
- Luke 20:1-2
- Mark 01:22
- Matthew 08:09
- Matthew 28:19
- Titus 03:01

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8633, G831, G1413, G1849, G1850, G2003, G2715, G5247

(Go back to: [Mark 1:22](#); [1:27](#); [2:10](#); [3:15](#); [6:7](#); [10:42](#); [11:28](#); [11:29](#); [11:33](#); [13:34](#))

baptize, baptized, baptism

Definition:

In the New Testament, the terms “baptize” and “baptism” usually refer to ritually bathing a Christian with water to show that he has been cleansed from sin and has been united with Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- Christians have different views about how a person should be baptized with water. It is probably best to translate this term in a general way that allows for different ways of applying the water.
- Depending on the context, the term “baptize” could be translated as “purify,” “pour out on,” “plunge (or dip) into,” “wash.” For example, “baptize you with water” could be translated as, “plunge you into water.”
- The term “baptism” could be translated as “purification,” “a pouring out,” “a dipping,” “a cleansing.”
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [repent](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 02:38
- Acts 08:36
- Acts 09:18
- Acts 10:48
- Luke 03:16
- Matthew 03:14
- Matthew 28:18-19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:03** When people heard John’s message, many of them repented from their sins, and John **baptized** them. Many religious leaders also came to be **baptized** by John, but they did not repent or confess their sins.
- **24:06** The next day, Jesus came to be **baptized** by John.
- **24:07** John said to Jesus, “I am not worthy to **baptize** you. You should **baptize** me instead.”
- **42:10** So go, make disciples of all people groups by **baptizing** them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **43:11** Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be **baptized** in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins.”
- **43:12** About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were **baptized** and became part of the church at Jerusalem.
- **45:11** As Philip and the Ethiopian traveled, they came to some water. The Ethiopian said, “Look! There is some water! May I be **baptized**?”
- **46:05** Saul immediately was able to see again, and Ananias **baptized** him.
- **49:14** Jesus invites you to believe in him and be **baptized**.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G907

(Go back to: [Mark 1:4](#); [1:5](#); [1:8](#); [1:9](#); [6:14](#); [6:24](#); [6:25](#); [10:38](#); [10:39](#); [11:30](#))

Barabbas

Facts:

Barabbas was a prisoner in Jerusalem at the time when Jesus was arrested.

- Barabbas was a criminal who had committed crimes of murder and rebellion against the Roman government.
- When Pontius Pilate offered to either release Barabbas or Jesus, the people chose Barabbas.
- So Pilate allowed Barabbas to go free, but condemned Jesus to be killed.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Pilate](#), Rome)

Bible References:

- John 18:40
- Luke 23:19
- Mark 15:07
- Matthew 27:15-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: G912

(Go back to: [Mark 15:7](#); [15:11](#); [15:15](#))

Bartholomew

Facts:

Bartholomew was one of Jesus' twelve apostles.

- Along with the other apostles, Bartholomew was sent out to preach the gospel and do miracles in Jesus' name.
- He was also one of those who saw Jesus return to heaven.
- A few weeks after that, he was with the other apostles in Jerusalem at Pentecost when the Holy Spirit came upon them.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [good news](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [miracle](#), Pentecost, [the twelve](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 01:12-14
- Luke 06:14-16
- Mark 03:17-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: G918

(Go back to: [Mark 3:18](#))

basket, basketfuls

Definition:

The term “basket” refers to a container made of woven material.

- In biblical times, baskets were probably woven with strong plant materials, such as wood from peeled tree branches or twigs.
- A basket could be coated with a waterproof substance so that it could float.
- When Moses was a baby, his mother made a waterproof basket to put him in and floated it among the reeds of the Nile River.
- The word translated as “basket” in that story is the same word that is translated as “ark” referring to the boat that Noah built. The common meaning of its use in these two contexts may be “floating container.”

(See also: ark, [Moses](#), Nile River, Noah)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 11:33
- Acts 09:25
- Amos 08:01
- John 06:13-15
- Judges 06:19-20
- Matthew 14:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H374, H1731, H1736, H2935, H3619, H5536, H7991, G2894, G3426, G4553, G4711

(Go back to: [Mark 4:21](#); [6:43](#); [8:8](#); [8:19](#); [8:20](#))

bear, bearer, carry

Facts:

The term “bear” literally means “carry” something. There are also many figurative uses of this term.

- When speaking of a woman who will bear a child, this means “give birth to” a child.
- To “bear a burden” means to “experience difficult things.” These difficult things could include physical or emotional suffering.
- A common expression in the Bible is “bear fruit,” which means “produce fruit” or “have fruit.”
- The expression “bear witness” means “testify” or “report what one has seen or experienced.”
- The statement that “a son will not bear the iniquity of his father” means that he “will not be held responsible for” or “will not be punished for” his father’s sins.
- In general, this term could be translated as “carry” or “be responsible for” or “produce” or “have” or “endure,” depending on the context.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: burden, Elisha, [endure](#), [fruit](#), iniquity, [report](#), [sheep](#), [strength](#), [testimony](#), [testimony](#))

Bible References:

- Lamentations 03:27

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2232, H3201, H3205, H5375, H5445, H5449, H6030, H6509, H6779, G142, G430, G941, G1080, G1627, G2592, G3140, G4160, G4722, G4828, G5041, G5088, G5342, G5409, G5576

(Go back to: [Mark 9:19](#); [14:13](#))

beast

Facts:

In the Bible, the term “beast” is often just another way of saying “animal.”

- A wild beast is a type of animal that lives freely in the forest or fields and has not been trained by people.
- A domestic beast is an animal that lives with people and is kept for food or for performing work, such as plowing fields. Often the term “livestock” is used to refer to this kind of animal.
- The Old Testament book of Daniel and the New Testament book of Revelation describe visions which have beasts that represent evil powers and authorities that oppose God. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Some of these beasts are described as having strange features, such as several heads and many horns. They often have power and authority, indicating that they may represent countries, nations, or other political powers.
- Ways to translate this could include “creature” or “created thing” or “animal” or “wild animal,” depending on the context.

(See also: [authority](#), Daniel, livestock, [nation](#), [power](#), [reveal](#), [Beelzebul](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:32
- 1 Samuel 17:44
- 2 Chronicles 25:18
- Jeremiah 16:1-4
- Leviticus 07:21
- Psalms 049:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H338, H929, H1165, H2123, H2416, H2423, H2874, H3753, H4806, H7409, G2226, G2341, G2342, G2934, G4968, G5074

(Go back to: [Mark 1:13](#))

Beelzebul

Facts:

Beelzebul is another name for Satan, or the devil. It is also sometimes spelled, “Beelzebub.”

- This name literally means “lord of flies” which means, “ruler over demons.” But it is best to translate this term close to the original spelling rather than translate the meaning.
- It could also be translated as “Beelzebul the devil” to make it clear who is being referred to.
- This name is related to the name of the false god “Baal-zebub” of Ekron.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [demon](#), Ekron, [Satan](#))

Bible References:

- Luke 11:15
- Mark 03:22
- Matthew 10:25
- Matthew 12:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: G954

(Go back to: [Mark 3:22](#))

beg, beggar, needy

Definition:

The term “beg” means to urgently ask someone for something. It often refers to asking for money, but it is also commonly used to refer to pleading for something.

- Often people beg or plead when they strongly need something, but don’t know if the other person will give them what they ask for.
- A “beggar” is someone who regularly sits or stands in a public place to ask people for money.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as, “plead” or “urgently ask” or “demand money” or “regularly ask for money.”

(See also: plead)

Bible References:

- Luke 16:20
- Mark 06:56
- Matthew 14:36
- Psalm 045:12-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:04** God sent frogs all over Egypt. Pharaoh **begged** Moses to take away the frogs.
- **29:08** “The king called the servant and said, ‘You wicked servant! I forgave your debt because you **begged** me.”
- **32:07** The demons **begged** Jesus, “Please do not send us out of this region!” There was a herd of pigs feeding on a nearby hill. So, the demons **begged** Jesus, “Please send us into the pigs instead!”
- **32:10** The man who used to have the demons **begged** to go along with Jesus.
- **35:11** His father came out and **begged** him to come and celebrate with them, but he refused.”
- **44:01** One day, Peter and John were going to the Temple. As they approached the Temple gate, they saw a crippled man who was **begging** for money.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H34, H7592, G154, G1871, G4319, G4434

(Go back to: [Mark 1:40](#); [5:10](#); [5:12](#); [5:17](#); [5:18](#); [5:23](#); [6:56](#); [7:32](#); [8:22](#); [10:46](#); [15:8](#))

believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief

Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

2. believe in

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

3. believer

In the Bible, the term “believer” refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term “believer” literally means “person who believes.”
- The term “Christian” eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

4. unbelief

The term “unbelief” refers to not believing something or someone.

- In the Bible, “unbelief” refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one’s Savior.
- A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an “unbeliever.”

Translation Suggestions:

- To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”
- Some translations may prefer to say “believer in Jesus” or “believer in Christ.”
- This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means “person who trusts in Jesus” or “someone who knows Jesus and lives for him.”
- Other ways to translate “believer” could be “follower of Jesus” or “person who knows and obeys Jesus.”
- The term “believer” is a general term for any believer in Christ, while “disciple” and “apostle” were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.
- Other ways to translate “unbelief” could include “lack of faith” or “not believing.”
- The term “unbeliever” could be translated as “person who does not believe in Jesus” or “someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior.”

(See also: [believe](#), [apostle](#), [Christian](#), [disciple](#), [faith](#), [trust](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:06
- Genesis 45:26
- Job 09:16-18
- Habakkuk 01:5-7
- Mark 06:4-6
- Mark 01:14-15
- Luke 09:41
- John 01:12
- Acts 06:05
- Acts 09:42
- Acts 28:23-24
- Romans 03:03
- 1 Corinthians 06:01
- 1 Corinthians 09:05
- 2 Corinthians 06:15
- Hebrews 03:12
- 1 John 03:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:04** Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- **04:08** Abram **believed** God's promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God's promise.
- **11:02** God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- **11:06** But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- **37:05** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?"
- **43:01** After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The **believers** there constantly gathered together to pray.
- **43:03** While the **believers** were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the **believers**.
- **43:13** Every day, more people became **believers**.
- **46:06** That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the **believers** fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **46:01** Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the **believers**.
- **46:09** Some **believers** who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus. It was at Antioch that **believers** in Jesus were first called "Christians."
- **47:14** They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the **believers** in the churches.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H540, G543, G544, G569, G570, G571, G3982, G4100, G4102, G4103, G4135

(Go back to: [Mark 1:15](#); [5:36](#); [6:6](#); [9:19](#); [9:23](#); [9:24](#); [9:42](#); [11:23](#); [11:24](#); [11:31](#); [13:21](#); [15:32](#))

beloved

Definition:

The term “beloved” is an expression of affection that describes someone who is loved and dear to someone else.

- The term “beloved” literally means “loved (one)” or “(who is) loved.”
- God refers to Jesus as his “beloved Son.”
- In their letters to Christian churches, the apostles frequently address their fellow believers as “beloved.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “loved” or “loved one” or “well-loved,” or “very dear.”
- In the context of talking about a close friend, this could be translated as “my dear friend” or “my close friend.” In English it is natural to say “my dear friend, Paul” or “Paul, who is my dear friend.” Other languages may find it more natural to order this in a different way.
- Note that the word “beloved” comes from the word for God’s love, which is unconditional, unselfish, and sacrificial.

(See also: [love](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:14
- 1 John 03:02
- 1 John 04:07
- Mark 01:11
- Mark 12:06
- Revelation 20:09
- Romans 16:08
- Song of Solomon 01:14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H157, H1730, H2532, H3033, H3039, H4261, G25, G27, G5207

(Go back to: [Mark 1:11](#); [9:7](#); [12:6](#))

Bethany

Facts:

The town of Bethany was located at the base of the eastern slope of the Mount of Olives, about 2 miles east of Jerusalem.

- Bethany was near the road that ran between Jerusalem and Jericho.
- Jesus often visited Bethany where his close friends Lazarus, Martha, and Mary lived.
- Bethany is especially known as the place where Jesus raised Lazarus from the dead.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jericho](#), [Jerusalem](#), Lazarus, Martha, Mary (sister of Martha), [Mount of Olives](#))

Bible References:

- John 01:26-28
- Luke 24:50-51
- Mark 11:01
- Matthew 21:15-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: G963

(Go back to: [Mark 11:1](#); [11:11](#); [11:12](#); [14:3](#))

betray, betrayer

Definition:

The term “betray” means to act in a way that deceives and harms someone. A “betrayer” is a person who betrays a friend who was trusting him.

- Judas was “the betrayer” because he told the Jewish leaders how to capture Jesus.
- The betrayal by Judas was especially evil because he was an apostle of Jesus who received money in exchange for giving the Jewish leaders information that would result in Jesus’ unjust death.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “betray” could be translated as “deceive and cause harm to” or “turn over to the enemy” or “treat treacherously.”
- The term “betrayer” could be translated as “person who betrays” or “double dealer” or “traitor.”

(See also: [Judas Iscariot](#), Jewish leaders, [apostle](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:52
- John 06:64
- John 13:22
- Matthew 10:04
- Matthew 26:22

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:11** Other prophets foretold that those who killed the Messiah would gamble for his clothes and he would be **betrayed** by a friend. The prophet Zechariah foretold that the friend would be paid thirty silver coins as payment for **betraying** the Messiah.
- **38:02** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in Jerusalem, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to **betray** Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **38:03** The Jewish leaders, led by the high priest, paid Judas thirty silver coins to **betray** Jesus.
- **38:06** Then Jesus said to the disciples, “One of you will **betray** me.” Jesus said, “The person to whom I give this piece of bread is the **betrayer**.”
- **38:13** When he returned the third time, Jesus said, “Wake up! My **betrayer** is here.”
- **38:14** Then Jesus said, “Judas, do you **betray** me with a kiss?”
- **39:08** Meanwhile, Judas, the **betrayer**, saw that the Jewish leaders had condemned Jesus to die. He became full of sorrow and went away and killed himself.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7411, G3860, G4273

(Go back to: [Mark 3:19](#); [9:31](#); [10:33](#); [13:9](#); [14:10](#); [14:11](#); [14:18](#); [14:21](#); [14:41](#); [14:42](#); [14:44](#))

bind, bond, bound

Definition:

The term “bind” means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a “bond.” The term “bound” is the past tense of this term.

- To be “bound” means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
- In a figurative sense, a person can be “bound” to a vow, which means he is “required to fulfill” what he promised to do.
- The term “bonds” refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
- In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
- The term “bind” can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
- A dead person would be “bound” with cloth in preparation for burial.
- The term “bond” is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
- A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
- For example, a husband and wife are “bound” or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “bind” could also be translated as “tie” or “tie up” or “wrap (around).”
- Figuratively, it could be translated as to “restrain” or to “prevent” or to “keep from (something).”
- A special use of “bind” in Matthew 16 and 18 means “forbid” or “not permit.”
- The term “bonds” could be translated as “chains” or “ropes” or “shackles.”
- Figuratively the term “bond” could be translated as “knot” or “connection” or “close relationship.”
- The phrase “bond of peace” means “being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other” or “the tying together that peace brings.”
- To “bind up” could be translated as “wrap around” or “put a bandage on.”
- To “bind” oneself with a vow could be translated as “promise to fulfill a vow” or “commit to fulfill a vow.”
- Depending on the context, the term “bound” could also be translated as “tied” or “tied up” or “chained” or “obligated (to fulfill)” or “required to do.”

(See also: [fulfill](#), [peace](#), [prison](#), [servant](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

- Leviticus 08:07

Word Data:

- Strong's: H247, H481, H519, H615, H631, H632, H640, H1366, H1367, H1379, H2280, H2706, H3256, H3533, H3729, H4147, H4148, H4205, H4562, H5650, H5656, H5659, H6029, H6123, H6616, H6696, H6872, H6887, H7194, H7405, H7573, H7576, H8198, H8244, H8379, G254, G331, G332, G1195, G1196, G1198, G1199, G1210, G1397, G1398, G1401, G1402, G2611, G2615, G3734, G3784, G3814, G4019, G4029, G4385, G4886, G4887, G5265

(Go back to: [Mark 3:27](#); [5:3](#); [5:4](#); [6:17](#); [7:35](#); [15:1](#); [15:7](#))

blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “blasphemy” refers to speaking in a way that shows a deep disrespect for God or people. To “blaspheme” someone is to speak against that person so that others think something false or bad about him.

- Most often, to blaspheme God means to slander or insult him by saying things that are not true about him or by behaving in an immoral way that dishonors him.
- It is blasphemy for a human being to claim to be God or to claim that there is a God other than the one true God.
- Some English versions translate this term as “slander” when it refers to blaspheming people.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “blaspheme” can be translated as to “say evil things against” or to “dishonor God” or to “slander.”
- Ways to translate “blasphemy” could include “speaking wrongly about others” or “slander” or “spreading false rumors.”

(See also: dishonor, slander)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:12-14
- Acts 06:11
- Acts 26:9-11
- James 02:5-7
- John 10:32-33
- Luke 12:10
- Mark 14:64
- Matthew 12:31
- Matthew 26:65
- Psalms 074:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1288, H1442, H2778, H5006, H5007, H5344, G987, G988, G989

(Go back to: [Mark 2:7](#); [Notes](#); [3:28](#); [3:29](#); [7:22](#); [14:64](#); [15:29](#))

bless, blessed, blessing

Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as to “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 01:03
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:03
- James 01:25
- Luke 06:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 09:05
- Romans 04:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:07** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **01:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **01:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **04:04** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **04:07** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”
- **07:03** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.

- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H833, H835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G1757, G2127, G2128, G2129, G3106, G3107, G3108, G6050

(Go back to: [Mark 6:41](#); [8:7](#); [10:16](#); [11:9](#); [11:10](#); [14:22](#); [14:61](#))

blood

Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body.

- Blood is a metaphor for life, and when it is shed or poured out, it is a metaphor for the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See also: [flesh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 14:32
- Acts 02:20
- Acts 05:28
- Colossians 01:20
- Galatians 01:16
- Genesis 04:11
- Psalms 016:4
- Psalms 105:28-30

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:03** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **10:03** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **11:05** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb’s **blood**.
- **13:09** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s punishment passes over him.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1818, H5332, G129, G130, G131

(Go back to: [Mark 5:25](#); [5:29](#); [14:24](#))

body

Definition:

The term “body” literally refers to the physical body of a person or animal. This term is also used figuratively to refer to an object or whole group that has individual members.

- Often the term “body” refers to a dead person or animal. Sometimes this is referred to as a “dead body” or a “corpse.”
- When Jesus said to the disciples at his last Passover meal, “This (bread) is my body,” he was referring to his physical body that would be “broken” (killed) to pay for their sins.
- In the Bible, Christians as a group are referred to as the “body of Christ.”
- Just as a physical body has many parts, the “body of Christ” has many individual members.
- Each individual believer has a special function in the body of Christ to help the whole group work together to serve God and bring him glory.
- Jesus is also referred to as the “head” (leader) of the “body” of his believers. Just as a person’s head tells his body what to do, so Jesus is the one who guides and directs Christians as members of his “body.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The best way to translate this term would be with the word that is most commonly used to refer to a physical body in the project language. Make sure that the word used is not an offensive term.
- When referring collectively to believers, for some languages it may be more natural and accurate to say “spiritual body of Christ.”
- When Jesus says, “This is my body,” it is best to translate this literally, with a note to explain it if needed.
- Some languages may have a separate word when referring to a dead body, such as “corpse” for a person or “carcass” for an animal. Make sure the word used to translate this makes sense in the context and is acceptable.

(See also: [head](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:12
- 1 Corinthians 05:05
- Ephesians 04:04
- Judges 14:08
- Numbers 06:6-8
- Psalm 031:09
- Romans 12:05

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H990, H1320, H1460, H1465, H1472, H1480, H1655, H3409, H4191, H5038, H5085, H5315, H6106, H6297, H7607, G4430, G4954, G4983, G5559

(Go back to: [Mark 5:29](#); [6:29](#); [14:8](#); [14:22](#); [15:43](#); [15:45](#))

bold, boldness, emboldened

Definition:

These terms all refer to having courage and confidence to speak the truth and do the right thing even when it is difficult or dangerous.

- A “bold” person is not afraid to say and do what is good and right, including defending people who are being mistreated. This could be translated as “courageous” or “fearless.”
- In the New Testament, the disciples continued to “boldly” preach about Christ in public places, in spite of the danger of being put in jail or killed. This could be translated as “confidently” or “with strong courage” or “courageously.”
- The “boldness” of these early disciples in speaking the good news of Christ’s redeeming death on the cross resulted in the gospel being spread throughout Israel and nearby countries and finally, to the rest of the world. “Boldness” could also be translated as “confident courage.”

(See also: confidence, [good news](#), redeem)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:28
- 1 Thessalonians 02:1-2
- 2 Corinthians 03:12-13
- Acts 04:13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H982, H5797, G662, G2292, G3618, G3954, G3955, G5111, G5112

(Go back to: [Mark 15:43](#))

bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: [humble](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 05:18
- Exodus 20:05
- Genesis 24:26
- Genesis 44:14
- Isaiah 44:19
- Luke 24:05
- Matthew 02:11
- Revelation 03:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H86, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G1120, G2578, G2827, G4098

(Go back to: [Mark 3:11](#); [5:6](#); [5:22](#); [5:33](#); [7:25](#); [14:35](#); [15:19](#))

bread

Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term “loaf” occurs by itself, it means “loaf of bread.”
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast. However, bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. This is called “unleavened bread” in the Bible. The ancient Israelites ate “unleavened bread” during the passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: [Synecdoche](#)) Many times the term “bread” can be translated more generally as “food.”
- The phrase “bread of the presence” refers to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as “bread showing that God lived among them.”
- The term “bread from heaven” refers to the special white food called “manna” that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert. Jesus also called himself the “bread that came down from heaven” and the “bread of life.”

(See also: [Passover](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [unleavened bread](#), [yeast](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 02:46
- Acts 27:35
- Exodus 16:15
- Luke 09:13
- Mark 06:38
- Matthew 04:04
- Matthew 11:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G106, G740, G4286

(Go back to: [Mark 2:26](#); [3:20](#); [6:8](#); [6:37](#); [6:38](#); [6:41](#); [6:44](#); [6:52](#); [7:2](#); [7:5](#); [7:27](#); [8:4](#); [8:5](#); [8:6](#); [8:14](#); [8:16](#); [8:17](#); [8:19](#); [14:22](#))

bridegroom

Definition:

In a marriage ceremony, the bridegroom is the man who will marry the bride.

- In the Jewish culture during Bible times, the ceremony was centered around the bridegroom coming to get his bride.
- In the Bible, Jesus is figuratively called the "Bridegroom" who will someday come for his "Bride," the Church.
- Jesus compared his disciples to the friends of the bridegroom who celebrate while the bridegroom is with them, but who will be sad when he is gone.

(See also: bride)

Bible References:

- Isaiah 62:5
- Joel 02:15-16
- John 03:30
- Luke 05:35
- Mark 02:19
- Mark 02:20
- Matthew 09:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2860, G3566

(Go back to: [Mark 2:19](#); [2:20](#))

brother

Definition:

The term “brother” refers to a male sibling who shares at least one biological parent.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives or associates, such as members of the same tribe, clan, occupation, or people group. When used in this way, the term can refer to both men and women.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often use the term “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [God the Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:26
- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 03:01
- Philippians 04:21
- Revelation 01:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2455, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

(Go back to: [Mark 1:16](#); [1:19](#); [Notes](#); [3:17](#); [3:31](#); [3:32](#); [3:33](#); [3:34](#); [3:35](#); [5:37](#); [6:3](#); [6:17](#); [6:18](#); [10:29](#); [10:30](#); [12:19](#); [12:20](#); [13:12](#))

burnt offering, offering by fire

Definition:

A “burnt offering” was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an “offering by fire.”

- Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
- Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
- God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: altar, atonement, ox, [priest](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 40:5-7
- Genesis 08:20
- Genesis 22:1-3
- Leviticus 03:05
- Mark 12:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H801, H5930, H7133, H8548, G3646

(Go back to: [Mark 12:33](#))

bury, buried, burial

Definition:

The term “bury” refers to putting an object (usually a dead body) into a hole or other burial place and then covering it with dirt or stones, etc. The term “burial” is the act of burying something, or it can be used to describe a place where something has been buried.

- Often people bury a dead body by placing it into a deep hole in the ground and then covering it with dirt.
- Sometimes the dead body is placed in a box-like structure, such as a coffin, before burying it.
- In Bible times, dead people were often buried in a cave or similar place. After Jesus died, his body was wrapped in cloths and placed in a stone tomb that was sealed with a large boulder.
- The terms “burial place” or “burial room” or “burial chamber” or “burial cave” always refer to a place where a dead body is buried.
- Other things can also be buried, such as when Achan buried silver and other things that he had stolen from Jericho.
- The phrase “buried his face” usually means “covered his face with his hands.”
- Sometimes the word “hide” can mean “bury” as when Achan hid things in the ground that he had stolen from Jericho. This meant he buried them in the ground.

(See also: [Jericho](#), [tomb](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 09:9-10
- Genesis 35:4-5
- Jeremiah 25:33
- Luke 16:22
- Matthew 27:07
- Psalm 079:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6900, H6912, H6913, G1779, G1780, G2290, G4916, G5027

(Go back to: [Mark 14:8](#))

Caesar

Facts:

The term “Caesar” was the name or title used by many of the rulers of the Roman Empire. In the Bible, this name refers to three different Roman rulers.

- The first Roman ruler named Caesar was “Caesar Augustus,” who was ruling during the time that Jesus was born.
- About thirty years later, at the time when John the Baptist was preaching, Tiberius Caesar was the ruler of the Roman Empire.
- Tiberius Caesar was still ruling Rome when Jesus told the people to pay Caesar what was due him and to give to God what is due him.
- When Paul appealed to Caesar, this referred to the Roman emperor, Nero, who also had the title “Caesar.”
- When “Caesar” is used by itself as a title, it can also be translated as: “the Emperor” or “the Roman Ruler.”
- In names such as Caesar Augustus or Tiberius Caesar, “Caesar” can be spelled close to the way a national language spells it.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [king](#), Paul, Rome)

Bible References:

- Acts 25:06
- Luke 02:01
- Luke 20:23-24
- Luke 23:02
- Mark 12:13-15
- Matthew 22:17
- Philippians 04:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2541

(Go back to: [Mark 12:14](#); [12:16](#); [12:17](#))

Caesarea, Caesarea Philippi

Facts:

Caesarea was an important city on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, about 39 km south of Mount Carmel. Caesarea Philippi was a city located in the northeastern part of Israel, near Mount Hermon.

- These cities were named for the Caesars who ruled the Roman empire.
- The coastal Caesarea became the capital city of the Roman province of Judea around the time of the birth of Jesus.
- The apostle Peter first preached to the Gentiles in Caesarea.
- Paul sailed from Caesarea to Tarsus and also passed through this city on two of his missionary journeys.
- Jesus and his disciples traveled in the region surrounding Caesarea Philippi in Syria. Both cities were named after Herod Philip.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Caesar](#), [Gentile](#), the sea, Carmel, Mount Hermon, Rome, Tarsus)

Bible References:

- Acts 09:30
- Acts 10:1-2
- Acts 25:01
- Acts 25:14
- Mark 08:27
- Matthew 16:13-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2542, G5376

(Go back to: [Mark 8:27](#))

call, call out

Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” usually mean to speak loudly, but the term “call” can also mean to name or summon a person. There are also some other meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- When God “calls” people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, “His name is called John,” means, “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God has specifically chosen that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as, “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as, “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as, “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as, “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as, “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as, “I know you and have chosen you.”

(See also: [pray](#), [cry](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:24
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- 2 Timothy 01:09
- Ephesians 04:01
- Galatians 01:15
- Matthew 02:15
- Philippians 03:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G154, G363, G1458, G1528, G1941, G1951, G2028, G2046, G2564, G2821, G2822, G2840, G2919, G3004, G3106, G3333, G3343, G3603, G3686, G3687, G4316, G4341, G4377, G4779, G4867, G5455, G5537, G5581

(Go back to: [Mark 1:20](#); [2:17](#); [3:13](#); [3:23](#); [3:31](#); [6:7](#); [7:14](#); [8:1](#); [8:34](#); [9:35](#); [10:18](#); [10:42](#); [10:49](#); [11:17](#); [12:37](#); [12:43](#); [15:16](#); [15:35](#); [15:44](#))

camel

Definition:

A camel is a large, four legged animal with one or two humps on its back. (See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

- In Bible times, the camel was the largest animal found in Israel and the surrounding regions.
- The camel was used mainly for carrying people and burdens.
- Some people groups also used camels for food but not the Israelites because God said that camels were unclean and were not to be eaten.
- Camels were valuable because they could move swiftly in the sand and could live without food and water for several weeks at a time.

(See also: burden, [clean](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:21
- 2 Chronicles 09:1-2
- Exodus 09:1-4
- Mark 10:25
- Matthew 03:04
- Matthew 19:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1581, G2574

(Go back to: [Mark 1:6](#); [10:25](#))

Capernaum

Facts:

Capernaum was a fishing village on the northwest shore of the Sea of Galilee.

- Jesus lived in Capernaum whenever he was teaching in Galilee.
- Several of his disciples were from Capernaum.
- Jesus also did many miracles in this city, including bringing a dead girl back to life.
- Capernaum was one of three cities that Jesus publicly rebuked because their people rejected him and did not believe his message. He warned them that God would punish them for their unbelief.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Galilee](#), [Sea of Galilee](#))

Bible References:

- John 02:12
- Luke 04:31
- Luke 07:1
- Mark 01:21
- Mark 02:02
- Matthew 04:12-13
- Matthew 17:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2584

(Go back to: [Mark 1:21](#); [2:1](#); [9:33](#))

captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured

Definition:

The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to capturing people and forcing them to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression to “take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as, “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners.”
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as, “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as, “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as, “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: Babylon, exile, [prison](#), [seize](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:05
- Isaiah 20:04
- Jeremiah 43:03
- Luke 04:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1546, H1547, H7617, H7622, H7628, H7633, H7686, G161, G162, G163, G164, G2221

(Go back to: [Mark 14:48](#))

cast out, driving out, throw out

Definition:

To “cast out” or “drive out” someone or something means to force that person or thing to go away.

- The term “cast” means the same thing as “throw.” To cast a net means to throw the net into the water.
- In a figurative sense, “cast out” or “cast away” someone can mean to reject that person and send him away.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include, “force out” or “send away” or “get rid of.”
- To “cast out demons” could be translated as “cause the demons to leave” or “drive the evil spirits out” or “expel the demons” or “command the demon to come out.”
- To “cast out” someone from a synagog or church could be translated as “banish them” or “put them out.”

(See also: [demon](#), [demon-possessed](#), [lots](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:17-19
- Mark 03:13-16
- Mark 09:29
- Matthew 07:21-23
- Matthew 09:32-34
- Matthew 12:24
- Matthew 17:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1272, H1644, H1920, H3423, H7971, H7993, G1544

(Go back to: [Mark 1:12](#); [1:34](#); [1:39](#); [3:15](#); [3:22](#); [3:23](#); [5:40](#); [6:13](#); [7:26](#); [9:18](#); [9:28](#); [9:38](#); [9:47](#); [11:15](#); [12:8](#))

centurion

Definition:

A centurion was a Roman army officer who had a group of 100 soldiers under his command.

- This could also be translated with a term that means, “leader of a hundred men” or “army leader” or “officer in charge of a hundred.”
- One Roman centurion came to Jesus to request healing for his servant.
- The centurion in charge of Jesus’ crucifixion was amazed when he witnessed how Jesus died.
- God sent a centurion to Peter so that Peter could explain to him the good news about Jesus.

(See also: Rome)

Bible References:

- Acts 10:01
- Acts 27:01
- Acts 27:42-44
- Luke 07:04
- Luke 23:47
- Mark 15:39
- Matthew 08:07
- Matthew 27:54

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G1543, G2760

(Go back to: [Mark 15:39](#); [15:44](#); [15:45](#))

children, child, offspring

Definition:

The term "child" (plural "children") refers to the offspring of a man and woman. The term is often used more generally to refer to anyone who is young in age and is not yet a fully grown adult. The term "offspring" is a general reference to the biological descendants of people or animals.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called "children."
- Often the term "children" is used to refer to a person's descendants.
- Often in the Bible, "offspring" has the same meaning as "children" or "descendants."
- The term "seed" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to offspring.
- The phrase "children of" can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
 - children of the light
 - children of obedience
 - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to the Church. For example, sometimes the New Testament refers to people who believe in Jesus as "children of God."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "children" could be translated as "descendants" when it is referring to a person's great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, "children of" could be translated as, "people who have the characteristics of" or "people who behave like."
- If possible, the phrase, "children of God" should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, "people who belong to God" or "God's spiritual children."
- When Jesus calls his disciples "children," this could also be translated as, "dear friends" or "my beloved disciples."
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as "children," this could also be translated as "dear fellow believers."
- The phrase, "children of the promise" could be translated as, "people who have received what God promised them."

(See also: descendant, [seed](#), [promise](#), [son](#), [spirit](#), [believe](#), [beloved](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:28
- 3 John 01:04
- Galatians 04:19
- Genesis 45:11
- Joshua 08:34-35
- Nehemiah 05:05
- Acts 17:29
- Exodus 13:11-13
- Genesis 24:07
- Isaiah 41:8-9
- Job 05:25
- Luke 03:7
- Matthew 12:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1323, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2138, H2145, H2233, H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3208, H3211, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5209, H5271, H5288, H5290, H5759, H5764, H5768, H5953, H6185, H6363, H6529, H6631, H7908, H7909, H7921, G730, G815, G1025, G1064, G1081, G1085, G1471, G3439, G3515, G3516, G3808, G3812, G3813, G3816, G5040, G5041, G5042, G5043, G5044, G5206, G5207, G5388

(Go back to: [Mark 2:5](#); [5:39](#); [5:40](#); [5:41](#); [7:27](#); [7:28](#); [7:30](#); [9:21](#); [9:24](#); [9:36](#); [9:37](#); [10:13](#); [10:14](#); [10:15](#); [10:24](#); [10:29](#); [10:30](#); [12:19](#); [12:20](#); [12:21](#); [12:22](#); [13:12](#))

chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect

Definition:

The term “the elect” literally means “chosen ones” or “chosen people” and refers to those whom God has appointed or selected to be his people. “Chosen One” or “Chosen One of God” is a title that refers to Jesus, who is the chosen Messiah.

- The term “choose” means to select something or someone or to decide something. It is often used to refer to God appointing people to belong to him and to serve him.
- To be “chosen” means to be “selected” or “appointed” to be or do something.
- God chose people to be holy, to be set apart by him for the purpose of bearing good spiritual fruit. That is why they are called “the chosen (ones)” or “the elect.”
- The term “chosen one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to certain people such as Moses and King David whom God had appointed as leaders over his people. It is also used to refer to the nation of Israel as God’s chosen people.
- The phrase “the elect” is an older term that literally means “the chosen ones” or “the chosen people.” This phrase in the original language is plural when referring to believers in Christ.
- In older English Bible versions, the term “elect” is used in both the Old and New Testaments to translate the word for “chosen one(s).” More modern versions use “elect” only in the New Testament, to refer to people who have been saved by God through faith in Jesus. Elsewhere in the Bible text, they translate this word more literally as “chosen ones.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “elect” with a word or phrase that means “chosen ones” or “chosen people.” This could also be translated as “people whom God chose” or “the ones God appointed to be his people.”
- The phrase “who were chosen” could also be translated as “who were appointed” or “who were selected” or “whom God chose.”
- “I chose you” could be translated as “I appointed you” or “I selected you.”
- In reference to Jesus, “Chosen One” could also be translated as “God’s chosen One” or “God’s specially appointed Messiah” or “the One God appointed (to save people).”

(See also: [appoint](#), [Christ](#))

Bible References:

- 2 John 01:01
- Colossians 03:12
- Ephesians 01:3-4
- Isaiah 65:22-23
- Luke 18:07
- Matthew 24:19-22
- Romans 08:33

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H970, H972, H977, H1262, H1305, H4005, H6901, G138, G140, G1586, G1588, G1589, G1951, G3724, G4400, G4401, G4758, G4899, G5500

(Go back to: [Mark 13:20](#); [13:22](#); [13:27](#))

Christ, Messiah

Facts:

The terms “Messiah” and “Christ” mean “Anointed One” and refer to Jesus, God’s Son.

- Both “Messiah” and “Christ” are used in the New Testament to refer to God’s Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning “anointed (one)” is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word “Christ” is often used as a title, as in “the Christ” and “Christ Jesus.”
- “Christ” also came to be used as part of his name, as in “Jesus Christ.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using its meaning, “the Anointed One” or “God’s Anointed Savior.”
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like “Christ” or “Messiah.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, “Christ, the Anointed One.”
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of “Messiah” and “Christ” work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Son of God](#), [David](#), [Jesus](#), [anoint](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 05:1-3
- Acts 02:35
- Acts 05:40-42
- John 01:40-42
- John 03:27-28
- John 04:25
- Luke 02:10-12
- Matthew 01:16

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:07** The **Messiah** was God’s Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- **17:08** As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the **Messiah** came, almost 1,000 years.
- **21:01** From the very beginning, God planned to send the **Messiah**.
- **21:04** God promised King David that the **Messiah** would be one of David’s own descendants.
- **21:05** The **Messiah** would start the New Covenant.
- **21:06** God’s prophets also said that the **Messiah** would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.
- **21:09** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the **Messiah** would be born from a virgin.
- **43:07** “But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your **Holy One** rot in the grave.’”

- **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and **Messiah!**"
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus **Christ** so that God will forgive your sins."
- **46:06** Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the **Messiah**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4899, G3323, G5547

(Go back to: [Mark 1:1](#); [8:29](#); [9:41](#); [12:35](#); [13:21](#); [14:61](#); [15:32](#))

clean, wash

Definition:

The term "clean" generally refers either to removing dirt or stains from something or to not having any dirt or stain in the first place. The term "wash" refers specifically to action of removing dirt or stains from something.

- "Cleanse" is the process of making something "clean." It could also be translated as "wash" or "purify."
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually "clean" and which ones were "unclean." Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term "clean" means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared "clean" again.
- Sometimes "clean" is used figuratively to refer to moral purity, meaning to be "clean" from sin.

In the Bible, the term "unclean" is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were "clean" and which ones were "unclean." The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be "unclean" until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something "unclean," they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God's commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God's service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an "unclean spirit" refers to an evil spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for "clean" or "pure" (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, "ritually clean" or "acceptable to God."
- "Cleanse" could be translated by "wash" or "purify."
- Make sure that the words used for "clean" and "cleanse" can also be understood in a figurative sense.
- The term "unclean" could also be translated as "not clean" or "unfit in God's eyes" or "physically unclean" or "defiled."
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, "unclean" could be translated as "evil" or "defiled."
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: [defile](#), [demon](#), [holy](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 07:02
- Genesis 07:08
- Deuteronomy 12:15
- Psalms 051:07
- Proverbs 20:30
- Ezekiel 24:13
- Matthew 23:27
- Luke 05:13
- Acts 08:07
- Acts 10:27-29

- Colossians 03:05
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- James 04:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1305, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2398, H2548, H2834, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2893, H2930, H2931, H2932, H3001, H3722, H5079, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6172, H6565, H6663, H6945, H7137, H8552, H8562, G167, G169, G2511, G2512, G2513, G2839, G2840, G3394, G3689

(Go back to: [Mark 1 General Notes](#); [1:23](#); [1:26](#); [1:27](#); [1:40](#); [1:41](#); [1:42](#); [1:44](#); [3:11](#); [3:30](#); [5:2](#); [5:8](#); [5:13](#); [6:7](#); [Notes](#); [7:19](#); [7:25](#); [9:25](#))

clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments

Definition:

When used figuratively in the Bible, “clothed with” means to be endowed or equipped with something. To “clothe” oneself with something means to seek to have a certain character quality.

- In the same way that clothing is external to your body and is visible to all, when you are “clothed” with a certain character quality, others can readily see it. To “clothe yourself with kindness” means to let your actions be so characterized by kindness that it is easily seen by everyone.
- To be “clothed with power from on high” means to have power given to you.
- This term is also used to express negative experiences, such as “clothed with shame” or “clothed with terror.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the literal figure of speech, “clothe yourselves with.” Another way to translate this could be “put on” if this refers to putting on clothes.
- If that does not give the correct meaning, other ways to translate “clothed with” could be “showing” or “manifesting” or “filled with” or “having the quality of.”
- The term “clothe yourself with” could also be translated as “cover yourself with” or “behave in a way that shows.”

Bible References:

- Luke 24:49

Word Data:

- Strong's: H899, H3680, H3736, H3830, H3847, H3848, H4055, H4374, H5497, H8008, H8071, H8516, G294, G1463, G1562, G1737, G1742, G1746, G1902, G2066, G2224, G2439, G2440, G4016, G4749, G5509

(Go back to: [Mark 1:6](#); [2:21](#); [5:15](#); [5:27](#); [5:28](#); [5:30](#); [6:9](#); [6:56](#); [9:3](#); [10:50](#); [11:7](#); [11:8](#); [13:16](#); [15:17](#); [15:20](#); [15:24](#); [16:5](#))

command, commandment

Definition:

The term “command” means to order someone to do something. The term “commandment” refers to the thing that a person is commanded to do.

- The term “commandment” sometimes refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the “Ten Commandments.”
- A command can be positive (“Honor your parents”) or negative (“Do not steal”).
- To “take command” means to “take control” or “take charge” of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, “law.” Also compare with the definitions of “decree” and “statute.”
- Some translators may prefer to translate “command” and “commandment” with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See decree, statute, law, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Luke 01:06
- Matthew 01:24
- Matthew 22:38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 01:17-19
- Romans 07:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H560, H565, H1296, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2941, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4662, H4687, H4929, H4931, H4941, H5057, H5713, H5749, H6213, H6310, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7761, H7970, H8269, G1263, G1291, G1296, G1297, G1299, G1690, G1778, G1781, G1785, G2003, G2004, G2008, G2036, G2753, G3056, G3726, G3852, G3853, G4367, G4483, G4487, G5506

(Go back to: [Mark 1:27](#); [1:44](#); [6:8](#); [6:27](#); [6:39](#); [7:7](#); [7:8](#); [7:9](#); [8:6](#); [9:9](#); [9:25](#); [10:3](#); [10:5](#); [10:19](#); [10:49](#); [11:6](#); [12:28](#); [12:31](#); [13:34](#))

commander

Definition:

The term "commander" refers to a leader of an army who is responsible for leading and commanding a certain group of soldiers.

- A commander could be in charge of a small group of soldiers or a large group, such as a thousand men.
- This term is also used to refer to Yahweh as the commander of angel armies.
- Other ways to translate "commander" could include, "leader" or "captain" or "officer."
- The term to "command" an army could be translated as to "lead" or to "be in charge of."

(See also: [command](#), [ruler](#), [centurion](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 11:11-12
- Daniel 02:14
- Mark 06:21-22
- Proverbs 06:07

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2710, H2951, H1169, H4929, H5057, H6346, H7101, H7262, H7218, H7227, H7229, H7990, H8269, G5506

(Go back to: [Mark 6:21](#))

commit, committed, commitment

Definition:

The terms “commit” and “commitment” refers to making a decision or promising to do something.

- A person who promises to do something is also described as being “committed” to doing it.
- To “commit” to someone a certain task means to assign that task to that person. For example, in 2 Corinthians Paul says that God has “committed” (or “given”) to us the ministry of helping people be reconciled to God.
- The terms “commit” and “committed” also often refer to doing a certain wrong action such as “commit a sin” or “commit adultery” or “commit murder.”
- The expression “committed to him the task” could also be translated as “gave him the task” or “entrusted to him the task” or “assigned the task to him.”
- The term “commitment” could be translated by, “task that was given” or “promise that was made.”

(See also: [adultery](#), [faithful](#), [promise](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 28:07
- 1 Peter 02:21-23
- Jeremiah 02:12-13
- Matthew 13:41
- Psalm 058:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H817, H1361, H1497, H1500, H1540, H1556, H2181, H2388, H2398, H2399, H2403, H4560, H4603, H5003, H5753, H5766, H5771, H6213, H6466, H7683, H7760, H7847, G264, G2038, G2716, G3429, G3431, G3860, G3872, G3908, G4102, G4160, G4203

(Go back to: [Mark 15:7](#))

compassion, compassionate

Definition:

The term "compassion" refers to a feeling of concern for people, especially for those who are suffering. A "compassionate" person cares about other people and helps them.

- The word "compassion" refers to caring about people in need, as well as taking action to help them.
- The Bible says that God is compassionate, that is, he is full of love and mercy.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways of translating "compassion" could include, "deep caring" or "pity" or "helpful mercy."
- The term "compassionate" could also be translated as, "caring and helpful" or "deeply loving and merciful."

Bible References:

- Daniel 01:8-10
- Hosea 13:14
- James 05:9-11
- Jonah 04:1-3
- Mark 01:41
- Romans 09:14-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2550, H7349, H7355, H7356, G1653, G3356, G3627, G4697, G4834, G4835

(Go back to: [Mark 1:41](#); [6:34](#); [8:2](#); [9:22](#))

condemn, condemned, condemnation

Definition:

The terms “condemn” and “condemnation” refer to judging someone for doing something wrong.

- Often the word “condemn” includes punishing that person for what they did wrong.
- Sometimes “condemn” means to falsely accuse someone or to judge someone harshly.
- The term “condemnation” refers to the act of condemning or accusing someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “harshly judge” or “criticize falsely.”
- The phrase “condemn him” could be translated as, “judge that he is guilty” or “state that he must be punished for his sin.”
- The term “condemnation” could be translated as, “harsh judging” or “declaring to be guilty” or “punishment of guilt.”

(See also: judge, punish)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:20
- Job 09:29
- John 05:24
- Luke 06:37
- Matthew 12:07
- Proverbs 17:15-16
- Psalms 034:22
- Romans 05:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6064, H7034, H7561, H8199, G176, G843, G2607, G2613, G2631, G2632, G2633, G2917, G2919, G2920, G5272, G6048

(Go back to: [Mark 10:33](#); [12:40](#); [14:64](#))

confess, confession

Definition:

To confess means to admit or assert that something is true. A “confession” is a statement or admission that something is true.

- The term “confess” can refer to boldly stating the truth about God. It can also refer to admitting that we have sinned.
- The Bible says that if people confess their sins to God, he will forgive them.
- James the apostle wrote in his letter that when believers confess their sins to each other, this brings spiritual healing.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Philippians that someday everyone will confess or declare that Jesus is Lord.
- Paul also said that if people confess that Jesus is Lord and believe that God raised him from the dead, they will be saved.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confess” could include, “admit” or “testify” or “declare” or “acknowledge” or “affirm.”
- Different ways to translate “confession” could be, “declaration” or “testimony” or “statement about what we believe” or “admitting sin.”

(See also: [faith](#), [testimony](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:8-10
- 2 John 01:7-8
- James 05:16
- Leviticus 05:5-6
- Matthew 03:4-6
- Nehemiah 01:6-7
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Psalms 038:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3034, H8426, G1843, G3670, G3671

(Go back to: [Mark 1:5](#))

cornerstone

Definition:

The term “cornerstone” refers to a large stone that has been specially cut and placed in the corner of the foundation of a building.

- All the other stones of the building are measured and placed in relation to the cornerstone.
- It is very important for the strength and stability of the whole structure.
- In the New Testament, the Assembly of believers is metaphorically compared to a building which has Jesus Christ as its “cornerstone.”
- In the same way that the cornerstone of a building supports and determines the position of the whole building, so Jesus Christ is the cornerstone on which the Assembly of believers is founded and supported.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “cornerstone” could also be translated as “main building stone” or “foundation stone.”
- Consider whether the target language has a term for a part of a building’s foundation that is the main support. If so, this term could be used.
- Another way to translate this would be, “a foundation stone used for the corner of a building.”
- It is important to keep the fact that this is a large stone, used as a solid and secure building material. If stones are not used for constructing buildings, there may be another word that could be used that means “large stone” (such as “boulder”) but it should also have the idea of being well-formed and made to fit.

Bible References:

- Acts 04:11
- Ephesians 02:20
- Matthew 21:42
- Psalms 118:22

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H68, H6438, H7218, G204, G1137, G2776, G3037

(Go back to: [Mark 12:10](#))

corrupt witness, false report, false testimony, false witness

Definition:

The terms “false witness” and “corrupt witness” refer to a person who says untrue things about a person or an event, usually in a formal setting such as a court.

- A “false testimony” or “false report” is the actual lie that is told.
- To “bear false witness” means to lie or give a false report about something.
- The Bible gives several accounts in which false witnesses were hired to lie about someone in order to have that person punished or killed.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bear false witness” or “give a false testimony” could be translated as “testify falsely” or “give a false report about someone” or “speak falsely against someone” or “lie.”
- When “false witness” refers to a person, it could be translated as “person who lies” or “one who testifies falsely” or “someone who says things that are not true.”

(See also: [testimony](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:19
- Exodus 20:16
- Matthew 15:18-20
- Matthew 19:18-19
- Proverbs 14:5-6
- Psalms 027:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H6030, H7650, H8267, G1965, G3144, G5571, G5575, G5576, G5577

(Go back to: [Mark 10:19](#); [14:56](#); [14:57](#))

council

Definition:

A council is a group of people who meet to discuss, give advice, and make decisions about important matters.

- A council is usually organized in an official and somewhat permanent way for a specific purpose, such as making decisions about legal matters.
- The “Jewish Council” in Jerusalem, also known as the “Sanhedrin,” had 70 members, which included Jewish leaders such as chief priests, elders, scribes, Pharisees, and Sadducees who met regularly to decide matters of Jewish law. It was this council of religious leaders who put Jesus on trial and decided that he should be killed.
- There were also smaller Jewish councils in other cities.
- The apostle Paul was brought before a Roman council when he was arrested for teaching the gospel.
- Depending on the context, the word “council” could also be translated as “legal assembly” or “political assembly.”
- To be “in council” means to be in a special meeting to decide something.
- Note that this is a different word than “counsel,” which means, “wise advice.”

(See also: [assembly](#), [counsel](#), [Pharisee](#), [law](#), [priest](#), [Sadducee](#), [scribe](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:57-58
- Acts 24:20
- John 03:02
- Luke 22:68
- Mark 13:09
- Matthew 05:22
- Matthew 26:59

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4186, H5475, G1010, G4824, G4892

(Go back to: [Mark 13:9](#); [14:55](#); [15:1](#); [15:43](#))

courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage, discouragement

Facts:

The term “courage” refers to boldly facing or doing something that is difficult, frightening, or dangerous.

- The term, “courageous” describes someone who shows courage, who does the right thing even when feeling afraid or pressured to give up.
- A person shows courage when he faces emotional or physical pain with strength and perseverance.
- The expression “take courage” means, “don’t be afraid” or “be assured that things will turn out well.”
- When Joshua was preparing to go into the dangerous land of Canaan, Moses exhorted him to be “strong and courageous.”
- The term “courageous” could also be translated as “brave” or “unafraid” or “bold.”
- Depending on the context, to “have courage” could also be translated as, “be emotionally strong” or “be confident” or “stand firm.”
- To “speak with courage” could be translated as, “speak boldly” or “speak without being afraid” or “speak confidently.”

The terms “encourage” and “encouragement” refer to saying and doing things to cause someone to have comfort, hope, confidence, and courage.

- A similar term is “exhort,” which means to urge someone to reject an activity that is wrong and to instead do things that are good and right.
- The apostle Paul and other New Testament writers taught Christians to encourage one another to love and serve others.

The term “discourage” refers to saying and doing things that cause people to lose hope, confidence, and courage and so to have less desire to keep working hard to do what they know they should do.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “encourage” could include “urge” or “comfort” or “say kind things” or “help and support.”
- The phrase “give words of encouragement” means “say things that cause other people to feel loved, accepted, and empowered.”

(See also: confidence, exhort, [fear](#), [strength](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 01:37-38
- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 1 Chronicles 17:25
- Matthew 09:20-22
- 1 Corinthians 14:1-4
- 2 Corinthians 07:13
- Acts 05:12-13
- Acts 16:40
- Hebrews 03:12-13
- Hebrews 13:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H533, H553, H1368, H2388, H2388, H2428, H3820, H3824, H7307, G2114, G2115, G2174, G2292, G2293, G2294, G3870, G3874, G3954, G4389, G4837, G5111

(Go back to: [Mark 6:50](#); [10:49](#))

court, courtyard

Definition:

The terms “courtyard” and “court” refer to an enclosed area that is open to the sky and surrounded by walls. The term “court” also refers to a place where judges decide legal and criminal matters.

- The tabernacle was surrounded by one courtyard which was enclosed by walls made of thick, cloth curtains.
- The temple complex had three inner courtyards: one for the priests, one for Jewish men, and one for Jewish women.
- These inner courtyards were surrounded by a low stone wall that separated them from an outer courtyard where Gentiles were permitted to worship.
- The courtyard of a house was an open area in the middle of the house.
- The phrase “king’s court” can refer to his palace or to a place in his palace where he makes judgments.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” is a figurative way of referring to Yahweh’s dwelling place or to the place where people go to worship Yahweh.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “courtyard” could be translated as “enclosed space” or “walled-in land” or “temple grounds” or “temple enclosure.”
- Sometimes the term “temple” may need to be translated as “temple courtyards” or “temple complex” so that it is clear that the courtyards are being referred to, not the temple building.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” could be translated as, “place where Yahweh lives” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped.”
- The term used for a king’s court could also be used to refer to Yahweh’s court.

(See also: [Gentile](#), judge, [king](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:4-5
- Exodus 27:09
- Jeremiah 19:14-15
- Luke 22:55
- Matthew 26:69-70
- Numbers 03:26
- Psalms 065:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1508, H2691, H5835, H7339, H8651, G833, G4259

(Go back to: [Mark 14:54](#); [14:66](#); [14:68](#))

covenant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "covenant" refers to a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term "new covenant" refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God's "new covenant" was explained in the part of the Bible called the "New Testament."
- This new covenant is in contrast to the "old" or "former" covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people's sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, "binding agreement" or "formal commitment" or "pledge" or "contract."
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as "promise" or "pledge."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term "new covenant" could be translated as "new formal agreement" or "new pact" or "new contract."
- The word "new" in these expressions has the meaning of "fresh" or "new kind of" or "another."

(See also: [covenant](#), [promise](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 09:12
- Genesis 17:07
- Genesis 31:44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26
- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12

- Mark 14:24
- Luke 01:73
- Luke 22:20
- Acts 07:08
- 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
- 2 Corinthians 03:06
- Galatians 03:17-18
- Hebrews 12:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:09** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **05:04** "I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac."
- **06:04** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **07:10** The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob."
- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation."
- **13:04** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- **21:05** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.
- **21:14** Through the Messiah's death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it."
- **48:11** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H2319, H3772, G802, G1242, G4934

(Go back to: [Mark 14:24](#))

create, created, creation, creator

Definition:

The term “create” means to make something or to cause something to be. Whatever is created is called a “creation.” God is called the “Creator” because he caused everything in the entire universe to come into existence.

- When this term is used to refer to God creating the world, it means he made it out of nothing.
- When human beings “create” something, it means they made it out of things that already existed.
- Sometimes “create” is used in a figurative way to describe something abstract, such as creating peace, or creating a pure heart in someone.
- The term “creation” can refer to the very beginning of the world when God first created everything. It can also be used to refer generally to everything that God created. Sometimes the word “creation” refers more specifically to just the people in the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may have to directly say that God created the world “out of nothing” to make sure this meaning is clear.
- The phrase, “since the creation of the world” means, “since the time when God created the world.”
- A similar phrase, “at the beginning of creation” could be translated as, “when God created the world at the beginning of time,” or “when the world was first created.”
- To preach the good news to “all creation” means to preach the good news to “all people everywhere on earth.”
- The phrase “Let all creation rejoice” means “Let everything that God created rejoice.”
- Depending on the context, “create” could be translated as “make” or “cause to be” or “make out of nothing.”
- The term “the Creator” could be translated as “the One who created everything” or “God, who made the whole world.”
- Phrases like “your Creator” could be translated as “God, who created you.”

(See also: [God](#), [good news](#), [world](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 11:9-10
- 1 Peter 04:17-19
- Colossians 01:15
- Galatians 06:15
- Genesis 01:01
- Genesis 14:19-20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3335, H4639, H6213, H6385, H7069, G2041, G2602, G2675, G2936, G2937, G2939, G4160, G5480

(Go back to: [Mark 10:6](#); [13:19](#))

cross

Definition:

In Bible times, a cross was an upright wooden post stuck into the ground, with a horizontal wooden beam attached to it near the top.

- During the time of the Roman Empire, the Roman government would execute criminals by tying or nailing them to a cross and leaving them there to die.
- Jesus was falsely accused of crimes he did not commit and the Romans put him to death on a cross.
- Note that this is a completely different word from the verb “cross” that means to go over to the other side of something, such as a river or lake.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using a term in the target language that refers to the shape of a cross.
- Consider describing the cross as something on which people were killed, using phrases such as “execution post” or “tree of death.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [crucify](#), Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 01:17
- Colossians 02:15
- Galatians 06:12
- John 19:18
- Luke 09:23
- Luke 23:26
- Matthew 10:38
- Philippians 02:08

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **40:01** After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to crucify him. They made him carry the **cross** on which he would die.
- **40:02** The soldiers brought Jesus to a place called “the Skull” and nailed his arms and feet to the **cross**.
- **40:05** The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd mocked Jesus. They said to him, “If you are the Son of God, come down from the **cross** and save yourself! Then we will believe you.”
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the **cross**, he received your punishment.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the **cross** instead of you, and that God raised him to life again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G4716

(Go back to: [Mark 8:34](#); [15:21](#); [15:30](#); [15:32](#))

crown, crowned

Definition:

A crown is a decorative, circular headpiece worn on the head of rulers such as kings and queens. The term to “crown” means to put a crown on someone’s head; figuratively it means, to “honor.”

- Crowns are usually made of gold or silver, and are embedded with precious gems such as emeralds and rubies.
- A crown was intended to be a symbol of a king’s power and wealth.
- By contrast, the crown made of thorn branches that the Roman soldiers placed on Jesus’ head was meant to mock him and hurt him.
- In ancient times, winners of athletic contests would be awarded a crown made out of olive branches. The apostle Paul mentions this crown in his second letter to Timothy.
- Used figuratively, to “crown” means to honor someone. We honor God by obeying him and praising him to others. This is like putting a crown on him and acknowledging that he is King.
- Paul calls fellow believers his “joy and crown.” In this expression, “crown” is used figuratively to mean that Paul has been greatly blessed and honored by how these believers have remained faithful in serving God.
- When used figuratively, “crown” could be translated as “prize” or “honor” or “reward.”
- The figurative use of to “crown” could be translated as to “honor” or to “decorate.”
- If a person is “crowned” this could be translated as “a crown was put on his head.”
- The expression, “he was crowned with glory and honor” could be translated as, “glory and honor were bestowed on him” or “he was given glory and honor” or “he was endowed with glory and honor.”

(See also: [glory](#), [king](#), [olive](#))

Bible References:

- John 19:03
- Lamentations 05:16
- Matthew 27:29
- Philippians 04:01
- Psalms 021:03
- Revelation 03:11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3803, H3804, H5145, H5849, H5850, H6936, G1238, G4735, G4737

(Go back to: [Mark 15:17](#))

crucify, crucified

Definition:

The term “crucify” means to execute someone by attaching him to a cross and leaving him there to suffer and die in great pain.

- The victim was either tied to the cross or nailed to it. Crucified people died from blood loss or from suffocation.
- The ancient Roman Empire frequently used this method of execution to punish and kill people who were terrible criminals or who had rebelled against the authority of their government.
- The Jewish religious leaders asked the Roman governor to order his soldiers to crucify Jesus. The soldiers nailed Jesus to a cross. He suffered there for six hours, and then died.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “crucify” could be translated as, “kill on a cross” or “execute by nailing to a cross.”

(See also: [cross](#), Rome)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:23
- Galatians 02:20-21
- Luke 23:20-22
- Luke 23:34
- Matthew 20:17-19
- Matthew 27:23-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:11** But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, “**Crucify** him (Jesus)!”
- **39:12** Pilate became afraid that the crowd would begin to riot, so he ordered his soldiers to **crucify** Jesus. played a major role in the crucifixion of Jesus Christ.
- **40:01** After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to **crucify** him. They made him carry the cross on which he would die.
- **40:04** Jesus was **crucified** between two robbers.
- **43:06** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know. But you **crucified** him!”
- **43:09** “You **crucified** this man, Jesus.”
- **44:08** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You **crucified** Jesus, but God raised him to life again!”

Word Data:

- Strong's: G388, G4362, G4717, G4957

(Go back to: [Mark 15:13](#); [15:14](#); [15:15](#); [15:20](#); [15:24](#); [15:25](#); [15:27](#); [15:32](#); [16:6](#))

cry, cry out, outcry

Definition:

The terms “cry” or “cry out” usually mean to say something loudly or urgently. Someone can “cry out” in pain, distress, anger, or fear, often with the intent of asking for help.

- The phrase “cry out” can also mean to shout or to call out with the intent of asking for help.
- This term could also be translated as “exclaim loudly” or “urgently ask for help,” depending on the context.
- An expression such as, “I cry out to you” could be translated as, “I call to you for help” or “I urgently ask you for help.”

(See also: [call](#), plead)

Bible References:

- Job 27:09
- Mark 05:5-6
- Mark 06:48-50
- Psalm 022:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1058, H2199, H2201, H6030, H6463, H6670, H6682, H6817, H6818, H6873, H6963, H7121, H7123, H7321, H7440, H7442, H7723, H7737, H7768, H7771, H7775, H8663, G310, G349, G863, G994, G995, G1916, G2019, G2799, G2805, G2896, G2905, G2906, G2929, G4377, G5455

(Go back to: [Mark 1:3](#); [1:23](#); [1:26](#); [3:11](#); [5:5](#); [5:7](#); [5:38](#); [5:39](#); [6:49](#); [9:24](#); [9:26](#); [10:47](#); [10:48](#); [11:9](#); [14:72](#); [15:8](#); [15:13](#); [15:14](#); [15:34](#); [15:37](#))

cure, cured, heal, healed, healing, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy

Definition:

The terms “heal” and “cure” both mean to cause a sick, wounded, or disabled person to be healthy again.

- A person who is “healed” or “cured” has been “made well” or “made healthy.”
- Healing can happen naturally since God gave our bodies the ability to recover from many kinds of wounds and diseases. This kind of healing usually happens slowly.
- However, certain conditions, such as being blind or paralyzed, and certain serious diseases, such as leprosy, however do not heal on their own. When people are healed of these things, it is a miracle that usually happens suddenly.
- For example, Jesus healed many people who were blind or lame or diseased, and they became well right away.
- The apostles also healed people miraculously, such as when Peter caused a crippled man to immediately be able to walk.

(See also: [miracle](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 05:16
- Acts 08:06
- Luke 05:13
- Luke 06:19
- Luke 08:43
- Matthew 04:23-25
- Matthew 09:35
- Matthew 13:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:14** One of the miracles happened to Naaman, an enemy commander, who had a horrible skin disease. He had heard of Elisha so he went and asked Elisha to **heal** him.
- **21:10** He (Isaiah) also predicted that the Messiah would **heal** sick people and those who could not hear, see, speak, or walk.
- **26:06** Jesus continued saying, “And during the time of the prophet Elisha, there were many people in Israel with skin diseases. But Elisha did not **heal** any of them. He only **healed** the skin disease of Naaman, a commander of Israel’s enemies.”
- **26:08** They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and Jesus **healed** them.
- **32:14** She had heard that Jesus had **healed** many sick people and thought, “I’m sure that if I can just touch Jesus’ clothes, then I will be **healed**, too!”
- **44:03** Immediately, God **healed** the lame man, and he began to walk and jump around, and to praise God.
- **44:08** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you **healed** by the power of Jesus the Messiah.”
- **49:02** Jesus did many miracles that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, **healed** many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H724, H1369, H1455, H2280, H2421, H2896, H3545, H4832, H4974, H7495, H7499, H7500, H7725, H7965, H8549, H8585, H8644, H622, G1295, G1743, G2322, G2323, G2386, G2390, G2392, G2511, G3647, G4982, G5198, G5199

(Go back to: [Mark 1:34](#); [3:2](#); [3:10](#); [5:23](#); [5:28](#); [5:29](#); [5:34](#); [6:5](#); [6:13](#); [6:56](#); [10:52](#))

curse, cursed, cursing

Definition:

The term "curse" means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as "cause bad things to happen to" or "declare that something bad will happen to" or "swear to cause evil things to happen to."
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as, "punish by allowing bad things to happen."
- The term "cursed" when used to describe people could be translated as, "(this person) will experience much trouble."
- The phrase "cursed be" could be translated as, "May (this person) experience great difficulties."
- The phrase, "Cursed is the ground" could be translated as, "The soil will not be very fertile."
- However, if the target language has the phrase "cursed be" and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: [bless](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Galatians 03:10
- Galatians 03:14
- Genesis 03:14
- Genesis 03:17
- James 03:10
- Numbers 22:06
- Psalms 109:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:09** God said to the snake, "You are **cursed**!"
- **02:11** "Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food."
- **04:04** "I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you."
- **39:07** Then Peter vowed, saying, "May God **curse** me if I know this man!"
- **50:16** Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H422, H423, H779, H1288, H2763, H2764, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, H8381, G331, G332, G685, G1944, G2551, G2652, G2653, G2671, G2672, G6035

(Go back to: [Mark 11:21](#))

curtain

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “curtain” refers to a very thick, heavy piece of material used in the making of the tabernacle and the temple.

- The tabernacle was built using four layers of curtains for the top and sides. These curtain coverings were made of cloth or animal skins.
- Cloth curtains were also used to form a wall surrounding the tabernacle courtyard. These curtains were made out of “linen” which was a kind of cloth made out of the flax plant.
- In both the tabernacle and temple building, a thick cloth curtain hung between the holy place and the most holy place. It was this curtain that was miraculously torn into two parts when Jesus died.

Translation Suggestions:

- Since modern-day curtains are very different from the curtains used in the Bible, it may be more clear to use a different word or to add words that describe the curtains.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “curtain covering” or “covering” or “piece of thick cloth” or “animal skin covering” or “hanging piece of cloth.”

(See also: holy place, [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- Hebrews 10:20
- Leviticus 04:17
- Luke 23:45
- Matthew 27:51
- Numbers 04:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1852, H3407, H4539, H6532, H7050, G2665

(Go back to: [Mark 15:38](#))

Cyrene

Facts:

Cyrene was a Greek city on the north coast of Africa on the Mediterranean Sea, directly south of the island of Crete.

- In New Testament times, both Jews and Christians lived in Cyrene.
- Cyrene is probably most well-known in the Bible as the home city of a man named Simon who carried the cross of Jesus.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Crete)

Bible References:

- Acts 11:19-21
- Matthew 27:32-34

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2956, G2957

(Go back to: [Mark 15:21](#))

darkness

Definition:

The term “darkness” literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, “darkness” means “impurity” or “evil” or “spiritual blindness.”
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression “dominion of darkness” refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term “darkness” can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- People who do not know God are said to be “living in darkness,” which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as “outer darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, “darkness of night” (as opposed to “light of day”) or “not seeing anything, like at night” or “evil, like a dark place”.

(See also: corrupt, dominion, [kingdom](#), [light](#), redeem, [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:06
- 1 John 02:08
- 1 Thessalonians 05:05
- 2 Samuel 22:12
- Colossians 01:13
- Isaiah 05:30
- Jeremiah 13:16
- Joshua 24:7
- Matthew 08:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H652, H653, H2816, H2821, H2822, H2825, H3990, H3991, H4285, H5890, H6205, G2217, G4652, G4653, G4655, G4656

(Go back to: [Mark 13:24](#); [15:33](#))

David

Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Goliath, Philistines, Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 17:12-13
- 1 Samuel 20:34
- 2 Samuel 05:02
- 2 Timothy 02:08
- Acts 02:25
- Acts 13:22
- Luke 01:32
- Mark 02:26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:02** God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. ... **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **17:03** **David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath.
- **17:04** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul.
- **17:05** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.
- **17:06** **David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **17:09** **David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was. **David** repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1732, G1138

(Go back to: [Mark 2:25](#); [10:47](#); [10:48](#); [11:10](#); [12:35](#); [12:36](#); [12:37](#))

day

Definition:

The term "day" literally refers to a period of time lasting 24 hours beginning at sundown. It is also used figuratively.

- For the Israelites and the Jews, a day began at sunset of one day and ended at sunset of the next day.
- Sometimes the term "day" is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the "day of Yahweh" or "last days."
- Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate "day" nonfiguratively.
- Other translations of "day" could include, "time" or "season" or "occasion" or "event," depending on the context.

(See also: judgment day, last day)

Bible References:

- Acts 20:06
- Daniel 10:04
- Ezra 06:15
- Ezra 06:19
- Matthew 09:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H3118, H6242, G2250

(Go back to: [Mark 1:9](#); [1:13](#); [2:1](#); [2:20](#); [4:27](#); [4:35](#); [5:5](#); [6:21](#); [8:1](#); [8:2](#); [8:31](#); [9:2](#); [9:31](#); [10:34](#); [13:17](#); [13:19](#); [13:20](#); [13:24](#); [13:32](#); [14:1](#); [14:12](#); [14:25](#); [14:49](#); [14:58](#); [15:29](#))

deceive, deceit, deceiver, deceitful, deception, illusions

Definition:

The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true. The act of deceiving someone is called “deceit” or “deception.”

- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated as “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:08
- 1 Timothy 02:14
- 2 Thessalonians 02:3-4
- Genesis 03:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- Matthew 27:64
- Micah 06:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H898, H2048, H3577, H3584, H3868, H4123, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H5558, H6121, H6231, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8582, H8591, H8649, G538, G539, G1386, G1387, G1388, G1818, G3884, G4105, G4106, G4108, G5422, G5423

(Go back to: [Mark 4:19](#); [7:22](#); [13:22](#))

defile, defiled

Definition:

The terms “defile” and “be defiled” refer to becoming polluted or dirty. Something can be defiled in a physical, moral, or ritual sense.

- God warned the Israelites to not defile themselves by eating or touching things that he had declared as “unclean” and “unholy.”
- Certain things such as dead bodies and contagious diseases were declared by God to be unclean and would defile a person if they touched them.
- God commanded the Israelites to avoid sexual sins. These would defile them and make them unacceptable to God.
- There were also certain kinds of bodily processes that defiled a person temporarily until he could become ritually pure again.
- In the New Testament, Jesus taught that sinful thoughts and actions are what truly defile a person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “defile” can also be translated as “cause to be unclean” or “cause to be unrighteous” or “cause to be ritually unacceptable.”
- To “be defiled” could be translated as “become unclean” or “be caused to be morally unacceptable (to God)” or “become ritually unacceptable.”

(See also: [clean](#), [clean](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:08
- Exodus 20:24-26
- Genesis 34:27
- Genesis 49:04
- Isaiah 43:27-28
- Leviticus 11:43-45
- Mark 07:14-16
- Matthew 15:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1351, H1352, H1602, H2490, H2491, H2610, H2930, H2931, G2839, G2840, G3392, G3435

(Go back to: [Mark 7:15](#); [7:18](#); [7:20](#); [7:23](#))

delight

Definition:

The term "delight" means great pleasure or great joy.

- To "delight in" something means to "to take pleasure in" or "take joy in" or "be happy about" it. If a person "delights in" something, it means that he enjoys it very much.
- When something is very agreeable or pleasing it is called "delightful."
- The expression "my delight is in the law of Yahweh" could be translated as "the law of Yahweh gives me great joy" or "I love to obey the laws of Yahweh" or "I am happy when I obey Yahweh's commands."
- The phrases "take no delight in" and "have no delight in" could be translated as "not at all pleased by" or "not happy about."
- The phrase "delight himself in" means "he enjoys doing" something or "he is very happy about" something or someone.
- The term "delights" refers to things that a person enjoys. This could be translated as "pleasures" or "things that give joy."
- An expression such as "I delight to do your will" could also be translated as "I enjoy doing your will" or "I am very happy when I obey you."

Bible References:

- Proverbs 08:30
- Psalm 001:02
- Psalms 119:69-70
- Song of Solomon 01:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H2530, H2531, H2532, H2654, H2655, H2656, H2836, H4574, H5276, H5727, H5730, H6026, H6027, H7306, H7381, H7521, H7522, H8057, H8173, H8191, H8588, H8597

(Go back to: [Mark 1:11](#))

demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit

Definition:

All these terms refer to demons, which are spirit beings that oppose God's will.

- God created angels to serve him. When the devil rebelled against God, some of the angels also rebelled and were thrown out of heaven. It is believed that demons and evil spirits are these "fallen angels."
- Sometimes these demons are called "unclean spirits." The term "unclean" means "impure" or "evil" or "unholy."
- Because demons serve the devil, they do evil things. Sometimes they live inside people and control them.
- Demons are more powerful than human beings, but not as powerful as God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "demon" could also be translated as "evil spirit."
- The term "unclean spirit" could also be translated as "impure spirit" or "corrupt spirit" or "evil spirit."
- Make sure that the word or phrase used to translate this term is different from the term used to refer to the devil.
- Also consider how the term "demon" is translated in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [demon-possessed](#), [Satan](#), false god, false god, [angel](#), [evil](#), [clean](#))

Bible References:

- James 02:19
- James 03:15
- Luke 04:36
- Mark 03:22
- Matthew 04:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **26:09** Many people who had **demons** in them were brought to Jesus. When Jesus commanded them, the **demons** came out of the people, and often shouted, "You are the Son of God!"
- **32:08** The **demons** came out of the man and entered the pigs.
- **47:05** Finally one day when the slave girl started yelling, Paul turned to her and said to the **demon** that was in her, "In the name of Jesus, come out of her." Right away the **demon** left her.
- **49:02** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out **demons**, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2932, H7307, H7451, H7700, G169, G1139, G1140, G1141, G1142, G4190, G4151, G4152, G4189

(Go back to: [Mark 1:23](#); [1:26](#); [1:27](#); [1:34](#); [1:39](#); [3:11](#); [3:15](#); [3:22](#); [3:30](#); [5:2](#); [5:8](#); [5:13](#); [6:7](#); [6:13](#); [7:25](#); [7:26](#); [7:29](#); [7:30](#); [9:25](#); [9:38](#))

demon-possessed

Definition:

A person who is demon-possessed has a demon or evil spirit that controls what he does and thinks.

- Often a demon-possessed person will hurt himself or other people because the demon causes him to do that.
- Jesus healed demon-possessed people by commanding the demons to come out of them. This is often called "casting out" demons.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include "demon-controlled" or "controlled by an evil spirit" or "having an evil spirit living inside."

(See also: [demon](#))

Bible References:

- Mark 01:32
- Matthew 04:24
- Matthew 08:16
- Matthew 08:33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **26:09** Many people who had **demons in them** were brought to Jesus.
- **32:02** When they reached the other side of the lake, a **demon-possessed** man came running up to Jesus.
- **32:06** The man **with the demon** cried out in a loud voice, "What do you want with me, Jesus, Son of the Most High God? Please do not torture me!"
- **32:09** The people from the town came and saw the man who used to **have the demons**.
- **47:03** Every day as they (Paul and Silas) walked there, a slave girl **possessed by a demon** followed them.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G1139

(Go back to: [Mark 1:32](#); [5:15](#); [5:16](#); [5:18](#))

desert, wilderness

Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as "wilderness."
- "Wilderness" conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as "deserted place" or "remote place" or "uninhabited place."

Bible References:

- Acts 13:16-18
- Acts 21:38
- Exodus 04:27-28
- Genesis 37:21-22
- John 03:14
- Luke 01:80
- Luke 09:12-14
- Mark 01:03
- Matthew 04:01
- Matthew 11:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G2047, G2048

(Go back to: [Mark 1:3](#); [1:4](#); [1:12](#); [1:13](#); [1:35](#); [1:45](#); [6:31](#); [6:32](#); [6:35](#); [8:4](#))

desolate, desolation, alone, deserted

Definition:

The terms “desolate” and “desolation” refer to destroying an inhabited region so that it becomes uninhabited.

- When referring to a person, the term “desolate” describes a condition of ruin, loneliness, and grief.
- The term “desolation” is the state or condition of being desolated.
- If a field where crops are growing is made desolate, it means that something has destroyed the crops, such as insects or an invading army.
- A “desolate region” refers to an area of land where few people live because few crops or other vegetation grow there.
- A “desolate land” or “wilderness” was often where outcasts (such as lepers) and dangerous animals lived.
- If a city is “made desolate” it means that its buildings and goods have been destroyed or stolen, and its people have been killed or captured. The city becomes “empty” and “ruined.” This is similar to the meaning of “devastate” or “devastated,” but with more emphasis on the emptiness.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “ruined” or “destroyed” or “laid waste” or “lonely and outcast” or “deserted.”

(See also: [desert](#), devastate, ruin, [waste](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 22:19
- Acts 01:20
- Daniel 09:17-19
- Lamentations 03:11
- Luke 11:17
- Matthew 12:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H490, H816, H910, H1565, H2717, H2720, H2721, H2723, H3173, H3341, H3456, H3582, H4875, H4923, H5352, H5800, H7582, H7701, H7722, H8047, H8074, H8076, H8077, G2048, G2049, G2050, G3443

(Go back to: [Mark 13:14](#))

devour

Definition:

The term "devour" means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term "devour" is often used with a meaning of "completely destroy" as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as "completely consume" or "totally destroy."

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:08
- Amos 01:10
- Exodus 24:17
- Ezekiel 16:20
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 23:13-15
- Psalms 021:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H398, H399, H400, H402, H1104, H1105, H3216, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, H7602, G2068, G2666, G2719, G5315

(Go back to: [Mark 4:4](#); [12:40](#))

die, dead, deadly, death,

Definition:

The term "death" refers to being physically dead instead of alive.

1. Physical death

- To "die" means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- The expression "put to death" refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Eternal death

- Eternal death is the separation of a person from God.
- This is the kind of death that happened to Adam when he sinned and disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- This same kind of death happens to every person, because we sin. But God gives us eternal life when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, to "die" may be expressed as to "not live." The term "dead" may be translated as "not alive" or "not having any life" or "not living."
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to "pass away" in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, eternal life and eternal death are often compared to physical life and physical death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and eternal death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say "eternal death" when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say "physical death" in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression "the dead" is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as "dead people" or "people who have died." (See: [nominal adjective](#))
- The expression "put to death" could also be translated as "kill" or "murder" or "execute."

(See also: [believe](#), [faith](#), [life](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:21
- 1 Thessalonians 04:17
- Acts 10:42
- Acts 14:19
- Colossians 02:15
- Colossians 02:20
- Genesis 02:15-17
- Genesis 34:27
- Matthew 16:28
- Romans 05:10
- Romans 05:12
- Romans 06:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **02:11** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **07:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:05** "Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **40:08** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:07** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **48:02** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H8045, H8546, H8552, G336, G337, G520, G599, G615, G622, G1634, G1935, G2079, G2253, G2286, G2287, G2288, G2289, G2348, G2837, G2966, G3498, G3499, G3500, G4430, G4880, G4881, G5053, G5054

(Go back to: [Mark 5:35](#); [5:39](#); [6:14](#); [7:10](#); [9:1](#); [9:9](#); [9:10](#); [9:26](#); [9:48](#); [10:33](#); [12:19](#); [12:20](#); [12:21](#); [12:22](#); [12:25](#); [12:26](#); [12:27](#); [13:12](#); [14:31](#); [14:34](#); [14:55](#); [14:64](#); [15:44](#))

disciple

Definition:

The term “disciple” refers to a person who spends much time with a teacher, learning from that teacher’s character and teaching.

- The people who followed Jesus around, listening to his teachings and obeying them, were called his “disciples.”
- John the Baptist also had disciples.
- During Jesus’ ministry, there were many disciples who followed him and heard his teachings.
- Jesus chose twelve disciples to be his closest followers; these men became known as his “apostles.”
- Jesus’ twelve apostles continued to be known as his “disciples” or “the 12.”
- Just before Jesus went up to heaven, he commanded his disciples to teach other people about how to become Jesus’ disciples, too.
- Anyone who believes in Jesus and obeys his teachings is called a disciple of Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “disciple” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “follower” or “student” or “pupil” or “learner.”
- Make sure that the translation of this term does not refer only to a student who learns in a classroom.
- The translation of this term should also be different from the translation of “apostle.”

(See also: [apostle](#), [believe](#), [Jesus](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [the twelve](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 06:1
- Acts 09:26-27
- Acts 11:26
- Acts 14:22
- John 13:23
- Luke 06:40
- Matthew 11:03
- Matthew 26:33-35
- Matthew 27:64

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **30:08** He (Jesus) gave the pieces to his **disciples** to give to the people. The **disciples** kept passing out the food, and it never ran out!
- **38:01** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his **disciples** that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **38:11** Then Jesus went with his **disciples** to a place called Gethsemane. Jesus told his **disciples** to pray that they would not enter into temptation.
- **42:10** Jesus said to his **disciples**, “All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me. So go, make **disciples** of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3928, G3100, G3101, G3102

(Go back to: [Introduction to the Gospel of Mark](#); [Mark 2:15](#); [2:16](#); [2:18](#); [2:23](#); [3:7](#); [3:9](#); [4:34](#); [5:31](#); [6:1](#); [6:29](#); [6:35](#); [6:41](#); [6:45](#); [7:2](#); [7:5](#); [7:17](#); [8:1](#); [8:4](#); [8:6](#); [8:10](#); [8:27](#); [8:33](#); [8:34](#); [9:14](#); [9:18](#); [9:28](#); [9:31](#); [10:10](#); [10:13](#); [10:23](#); [10:24](#); [10:46](#); [11:1](#); [11:14](#); [12:43](#); [13:1](#); [14:12](#); [14:13](#); [14:14](#); [14:16](#); [14:32](#); [16:7](#))

divorce

Definition:

A divorce is the legal act of ending a marriage. The term to “divorce” means to formally and legally separate from one’s spouse in order to end the marriage.

- The literal meaning of the term to “divorce” is to “send away” or to “formally separate from.” Other languages may have similar expressions to refer to divorce.
- A “certificate of divorce” could be translated as a “paper stating that the marriage has ended.”

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 08:8-11
- Leviticus 21:7-9
- Luke 16:18
- Mark 10:04
- Matthew 05:32
- Matthew 19:03

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1644, H3748, H5493, H7971, G630, G647, G863

(Go back to: [Mark 10:4](#); [10:11](#); [10:12](#))

doctrine, teaching, beliefs, instructions, knowledge

Definition:

The word “doctrine” literally means “teaching.” It usually refers to religious teaching.

- In the context of Christian teachings, “doctrine” refers to all teachings about God – Father, Son and Holy Spirit – including all his character qualities and everything he has done.
- It also refers to everything God teaches Christians about how to live holy lives that bring glory to him.
- The word “doctrine” is sometimes also used to refer to false or worldly religious teachings that come from human beings. The context makes the meaning clear.
- This term could also be translated as “teaching.”

(See also: [teach](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:03
- 2 Timothy 03:16-17
- Mark 07:6-7
- Matthew 15:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3948, G1319, G1322, G2085

(Go back to: [Mark 7:7](#))

dove, pigeon

Definition:

Doves and pigeons are two kinds of small, gray-brown birds that look similar. A dove is often thought of as being lighter in color, almost white.

- Some languages have two different names for them, while others use the same name for both.
- Doves and pigeons were used in sacrifices to God, especially for people who could not afford to buy a larger animal.
- A dove brought the leaf of an olive tree to Noah when the flood waters were going down.
- Doves sometimes symbolize purity, innocence, or peace.
- If doves or pigeons are not known in the language area where the translation is being done, this term could be translated as “a small grayish brown bird called a dove” or “a small gray or brown bird, similar to a (name of local bird)”.
- If both a dove and a pigeon are referred to in the same verse, it is best to use two different words for these birds, if possible.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [olive](#), innocent, pure)

Bible References:

- Genesis 08:09
- Luke 02:22-24
- Mark 01:10
- Matthew 03:16
- Matthew 21:12-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1469, H1686, H3123, H8449, G4058

(Go back to: [Mark 1:10](#); [11:15](#))

earth, earthen, earthly

Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- “Earth” can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth. (See: [metonymy](#))
- The expressions “let the earth be glad” and “he will judge the earth” are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term “earthly” usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [world](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 02:11-12
- Daniel 04:35
- Luke 12:51
- Matthew 06:10
- Matthew 11:25
- Zechariah 06:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H127, H772, H776, H778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G1093, G1919, G2709, G2886, G3625, G4578, G5517

(Go back to: [Mark 2:10](#); [4:28](#); [4:31](#); [9:3](#); [13:27](#); [13:31](#))

Edom, Edomite, Idumea

Facts:

Edom was another name for Esau. The region where he lived also became known as “Edom” and later, “Idumea.” The “Edomites” were his descendants.

- The region of Edom changed locations over time. It was mostly located to the south of Israel and eventually extended into southern Judah.
- During New Testament times, Edom covered the southern half of the province of Judea. The Greeks called it “Idumea.”
- The name “Edom” means “red,” which may refer to the fact that Esau was covered with red hair when he was born. Or it may refer to the red lentil stew that Esau traded his birthright for.
- In the Old Testament, the country of Edom is often mentioned as an enemy of Israel.
- The entire book of Obadiah is about the destruction of Edom. Other Old Testament prophets also spoke negative prophecies against Edom.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [adversary](#), birthright, Esau, Obadiah, [prophet](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 25:30
- Genesis 32:03
- Genesis 36:01
- Isaiah 11:14-15
- Joshua 11:16-17
- Obadiah 01:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H123, H130, H8165, G2401

(Go back to: [Mark 3:8](#))

elder, older, old

Definition:

The term "elder" or "older" refers to people (in the Bible, usually men) who have grown old enough to become mature adults and leaders within a community. For example, elders might have gray hair, have adult children, or perhaps even have grandchildren or great-grandchildren.

- The term "elder" came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of social justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish "elders" continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian "elders" gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers. Elders in these churches sometimes included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as "older men" or "spiritually mature men leading the church."

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- 1 Timothy 03:1-3
- 1 Timothy 04:14
- Acts 05:19-21
- Acts 14:23
- Mark 11:28
- Matthew 21:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1419, H2205, H7868, G1087, G3187, G4244, G4245, G4850

(Go back to: [Mark 7:3](#); [7:5](#); [8:31](#); [11:27](#); [14:43](#); [14:53](#); [15:1](#))

Elijah

Facts:

Elijah was one of the most important prophets of Yahweh. Elijah prophesied during the reigns of several kings of Israel and Judah, including King Ahab.

- God did many miracles through Elijah, including raising a dead boy back to life.
- Elijah rebuked King Ahab for worshiping the false god Baal.
- He challenged the prophets of Baal to a test that proved that Yahweh is the only true God.
- At the end of Elijah's life, God miraculously took him up to heaven while he was still alive.
- Hundreds of years later, Elijah, along with Moses, appeared with Jesus on a mountain, and they talked together about Jesus' coming suffering and death in Jerusalem.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [miracle](#), [prophet](#), Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 17:1
- 2 Kings 01:3-4
- James 05:16-18
- John 01:19-21
- John 01:24-25
- Mark 09:05

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:02 Elijah** was a prophet when Ahab was king over the kingdom of Israel.
- **19:02 Elijah** said to Ahab, "There will be no rain or dew in the kingdom of Israel until I say so."
- **19:03** God told **Elijah** to go to a stream in the wilderness to hide from Ahab who wanted to kill him. Every morning and every evening, birds would bring him bread and meat.
- **19:04** But they took care of **Elijah**, and God provided for them so that their flour jar and their bottle of oil never became empty.
- **19:05** After three and a half years, God told **Elijah** to return to the kingdom of Israel and speak with Ahab because he was going to send rain again.
- **19:07** Then **Elijah** said to the prophets of Baal, "Kill a bull and prepare it as a sacrifice, but do not light the fire."
- **19:12** Then **Elijah** said, "Do not let any of the prophets of Baal escape!"
- **36:03** Then Moses and the prophet **Elijah** appeared. These men had lived hundreds of years before this. They talked with Jesus about his death that would soon happen in Jerusalem.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H452, G2243

(Go back to: [Mark 6:15](#); [8:28](#); [9:4](#); [9:5](#); [9:11](#); [9:12](#); [9:13](#); [15:35](#); [15:36](#))

endure, endurance

Definition:

The term “endure” means to last a long time or to bear something difficult with patience.

- It also means to stand firm when times of testing come, without giving up.
- The term “endurance” can mean “patience” or “bearing up under a trial” or “persevering when being persecuted.”
- The encouragement to Christians to “endure to the end” is telling them to obey Jesus, even if this causes them to suffer.
- To “endure suffering” can also mean to “experience suffering.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the term “endure” could include “persevere” or “keep believing” or “continue to do what God wants you to do” or “stand firm.”
- In some contexts, to “endure” could be translated as to “experience” or to “go through.”
- With the meaning of lasting for a long time, the term “endure” could also be translated as “last” or “continue.” The phrase “will not endure” could be translated as “will not last” or “will not continue to survive.”
- Ways to translate “endurance” could include “perseverance” or “continuing to believe” or “remaining faithful.”

(See also: persevere)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:11-13
- James 01:03
- James 01:12
- Luke 21:19
- Matthew 13:21
- Revelation 01:09
- Romans 05:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H386, H3201, H3557, H5331, H5375, H5975, G430, G907, G1526, G2005, G2076, G2594, G3306, G4722, G5278, G5281, G5297, G5342

(Go back to: [Mark 13:13](#))

envy, covet

Definition:

The term “envy” refers to being jealous of someone because of what that person possesses or because of that person’s admirable qualities. The term “covet” means to strongly desire to have something.

- Envy is normally a negative feeling of resentment because of another person’s success, good fortune, or possessions.
- Coveting is a strong desire to have someone else’s property, or even someone else’s spouse.

(See also: jealous)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:4-7
- 1 Peter 02:01
- Exodus 20:17
- Mark 07:20-23
- Proverbs 03:31-32
- Romans 01:29

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H183, H1214, H1215, H2530, H3415, H5869, H7065, H7068, G866, G1937, G2205, G2206, G3713, G3788, G4123, G4124, G4190, G5354, G5355, G5366

(Go back to: [Mark 7:22](#); [15:10](#))

eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.

The term “forever” refers to never-ending time.

- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like. It emphasizes that something will always happen or exist. It refers to time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referred to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- “Forever” could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase “forever and ever” could also be translated as “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of David will always be reigning.”

(See also: [David](#), reign, [life](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:08
- Genesis 48:04
- Exodus 15:17
- 2 Samuel 03:28-30
- 1 Kings 02:32-33
- Job 04:20-21
- Psalms 021:04
- Isaiah 09:6-7
- Isaiah 40:27-28
- Daniel 07:18
- Luke 18:18
- Acts 13:46

- Romans 05:21
- Hebrews 06:19-20
- Hebrews 10:11-14
- 1 John 01:02
- 1 John 05:12
- Revelation 01:4-6
- Revelation 22:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?"
- **28:01** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, "Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?" Jesus said to him, "Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God's laws."
- **28:10** Jesus answered, "Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name's sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H4481, H5331, H5703, H5705, H5769, H5865, H5957, H6924, G126, G165, G166, G1336

(Go back to: [Mark 3:29](#); [10:17](#); [10:30](#))

evil, wicked, unpleasant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, [sin](#), [good](#), [righteous](#), [demon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 06:10
- 3 John 01:10
- Genesis 02:17
- Genesis 06:5-6
- Job 01:01
- Job 08:20
- Judges 09:57
- Luke 06:22-23
- Matthew 07:11-12
- Proverbs 03:07
- Psalms 022:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:04** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **04:02** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **08:12** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:01** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:08** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:02** They said, “We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!”
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2254, H2617, H3399, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G92, G113, G459, G932, G987, G988, G1426, G2549, G2551, G2554, G2555, G2556, G2557, G2559, G2560, G2635, G2636, G4151, G4189, G4190, G4191, G5337

(Go back to: [Mark 7:10](#); [7:21](#); [7:22](#); [7:23](#); [9:39](#))

ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a “ram.” A female sheep is called a “ewe.” The plural of “sheep” is also “sheep.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [lamb](#), [sacrifice](#), [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 08:32
- Genesis 30:32
- John 02:14
- Luke 15:05
- Mark 06:34
- Matthew 09:36
- Matthew 10:06
- Matthew 12:12
- Matthew 25:33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:12** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **17:02** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **30:03** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **38:08** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7462, H7716, G4165, G4262, G4263

(Go back to: [Mark 6:34](#); [14:27](#))

face, facial

Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression “your face” is often a figurative way of saying “you.” Similarly, the expression “my face” often means “I” or “me.”
- In a physical sense, to “face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term to “face” could be translated as to “turn toward” or to “look at directly” or to “look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression “hide his face from” could be translated as “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression “say it to their face” could be translated as “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression “on the face of the land” could also be translated as “throughout the land” or “over the whole earth” or “living throughout the earth.”

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 05:04
- Genesis 33:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H600, H639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G3799, G4383, G4750

(Go back to: [Mark 1:2](#); [12:14](#); [14:65](#))

faith

Definition:

In general, the term “faith” refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To “have faith” in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To “have faith in Jesus” means to believe all of God’s teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes “faith” refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression “the truths of the faith.”
- In contexts such as “keep the faith” or “abandon the faith,” the term “faith” refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, “faith” can be translated as “belief” or “conviction” or “confidence” or “trust.”
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb “believe.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- The expression “keep the faith” could be translated by “keep believing in Jesus” or “continue to believe in Jesus.”
- The sentence “they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith” could be translated by “they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught.”
- The expression “my true son in the faith” could be translated by something like “who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus” or “my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:07
- Acts 06:7
- Galatians 02:20-21
- James 02:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:06** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham’s **faith** by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **31:07** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, “You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?”
- **32:16** Jesus said to her, “Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace.”
- **38:09** Then Jesus said to Peter, “Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H529, H530, G1680, G3640, G4102, G6066

(Go back to: [Mark 2:5](#); [4:40](#); [5:34](#); [10:52](#); [11:22](#))

faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy

Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

The term “unfaithful” describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is “unfaithfulness.”

- The people of Israel were called “unfaithful” when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
- In marriage, someone who commits adultery is “unfaithful” to his or her spouse.
- God used the term “unfaithfulness” to describe Israel’s disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”
- Depending on the context, “unfaithful” could be translated as “not faithful” or “unbelieving” or “not obedient” or “not loyal.”
- The phrase “the unfaithful” could be translated as “people who are not faithful (to God)” or “unfaithful people” or “those who disobey God” or “people who rebel against God.”
- The term “unfaithfulness” could be translated as “disobedience” or “disloyalty” or “not believing or obeying.”
- In some languages, the term “unfaithful” is related to the word for “unbelief.”

(See also: [adultery](#), [believe](#), [disobey](#), [faith](#), [believe](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:07
- Joshua 02:14
- Judges 02:16-17
- 1 Samuel 02:9
- Psalm 012:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 01:26
- Jeremiah 09:7-9
- Hosea 05:07
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 01:07
- 1 Thessalonians 05:24
- 3 John 01:05

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:09** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's **unfaithfulness**, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon's death.
- **35:12** "The older son said to his father, 'All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!'"
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:04** If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H529, H530, H539, H540, H571, H898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G569, G571, G4103

(Go back to: [Mark 8 General Notes](#))

false prophet

Definition:

A false prophet is a person who wrongly claims that his message comes from God.

- The prophecies of false prophets are not usually fulfilled. That is, they do not come true.
- False prophets teach messages that partially or totally contradict what the Bible says.
- This term could also be translated as “person who falsely claims to be God’s spokesman” or “someone who falsely claims to speak God’s words.”
- The New Testament teaches that in the end times there will be many false prophets who will try to deceive people into thinking that they come from God.

(See also: [fulfill](#), [prophet](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:1-3
- 2 Peter 02:01
- Acts 13:6-8
- Luke 06:26
- Matthew 07:16
- Matthew 24:23-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: G5578

(Go back to: [Mark 13:22](#))

famine

Definition:

The term “famine” refers to an extreme lack of food throughout a country or region, usually due to not enough rain.

- Food crops can fail from natural causes such as lack of rain, crop disease, or insects.
- Food shortages can also be caused by people, such as enemies who destroy crops.
- In the Bible, God sometimes caused famine as a way to punish nations when they sinned against him.
- In Amos 8:11 the term “famine” is used figuratively to refer to a time when God punished his people by not speaking to them. This could be translated with the word for “famine” in your language, or with a phrase such as “extreme lack” or “severe deprivation.”

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:11-12
- Acts 07:11
- Genesis 12:10
- Genesis 45:06
- Jeremiah 11:21-23
- Luke 04:25
- Matthew 24:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3720, H7458, H7459, G3042

(Go back to: [Mark 13:8](#))

fast, fasting

Definition:

The term to “fast” means to stop eating food for a period of time, such as for a day or more. Sometimes it also includes not drinking.

- Fasting can help people to focus on God and pray without being distracted by preparing food and eating.
- Jesus condemned the Jewish religious leaders for fasting for the wrong reasons. They fasted so that others would think they were righteous.
- Sometimes people fast because they are very sad or grieved about something.
- The verb to “fast” can also be translated as to “refrain from eating” or to “not eat.”
- The noun “fast” could be translated as “time of not eating” or “time of abstaining from food.”

(See also: Jewish leaders)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 20:03
- Acts 13:1-3
- Jonah 03:4-5
- Luke 05:34
- Mark 02:19
- Matthew 06:18
- Matthew 09:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:01** Immediately after Jesus was baptized, the Holy Spirit led him out into the wilderness, where he **fasted** for forty days and forty nights.
- **34:08** “For example, I **fast** two times every week and I give you ten percent of all the money and goods that I receive.”
- **46:10** One day, while the Christians at Antioch were **fasting** and praying, the Holy Spirit said to them, “Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul to do the work I have called them to do.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2908, H5144, H6684, H6685, G3521, G3522

(Go back to: [Mark 2 General Notes](#); [2:18](#); [2:19](#); [2:20](#); [9:29](#))

fear, afraid, dread

Definition:

The terms "fear" refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term "fear" can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king. The term "dread" refers to extreme or intense fear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "fear" can be translated in various ways, depending on the context. Some possibilities include: "be afraid;" "deeply respect;" or "deep respect;" "revere;" or "reverence;" or perhaps "be in awe of."
- The phrase "fear not" could also be translated as "do not be afraid" or "stop being afraid."
- The sentence "The fear of God fell on all of them" might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: "Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;" or, "Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;" or, "Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power)."

(See also: [marvel](#), awe, [Lord](#), [power](#), Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:18
- Acts 02:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 06:14
- Jonah 01:09
- Luke 12:05
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H367, H926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G870, G1167, G1168, G1169, G1630, G1719, G2124, G2125, G2962, G5398, G5399, G5400, G5401

(Go back to: [Mark 4:40](#); [4:41](#); [5:15](#); [5:33](#); [5:36](#); [6:20](#); [6:50](#); [Notes](#); [9:32](#); [10:32](#); [11:18](#); [11:32](#); [12:12](#); [16:8](#))

feast, feasting

Definition:

The term “feast” is a very general term that refers to an event where people gather to celebrate something by eating a large meal together. In biblical times, a feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called “feasts.”
- In biblical times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- The term to “feast” could also be translated as to “eat lavishly” or to “celebrate by eating lots of food” or to “eat a special, large meal.”
- Depending on the context, “feast” could be translated as “celebrating together with a large meal” or “a meal with a lot of food” or “a celebration meal.”

(See also: [festival](#), banquet)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Genesis 26:30
- Genesis 29:22
- Genesis 40:20
- Jude 01:12-13
- Luke 02:43
- Luke 14:7-9
- Matthew 22:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H398, H2077, H2282, H3899, H3900, H4150, H4797, H4960, H7646, H8057, H8354, G26, G1062, G1173, G1859, G2165, G4910

(Go back to: [Mark 6:21](#); [12:39](#))

festival

Definition:

In general, a festival is a celebration held by a community of people.

- The word for “festival” in the Old Testament literally means “appointed time.”
- The festivals celebrated by the Israelites were specially appointed times or seasons that God had commanded them to observe.
- In some English translations, the word “feast” is used instead of festival because the celebrations included having a large meal together.
- There were several main festivals that the Israelites celebrated every year:
 - Passover
 - Festival of Unleavened Bread
 - Firstfruits
 - Festival of Weeks (Pentecost)
 - Festival of Trumpets
 - Day of Atonement
 - Festival of Shelters
- The purpose of these festivals was to thank God and to remember the amazing things he had done to rescue, protect, and provide for his people.

(See also: [feast](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:31
- 2 Chronicles 08:13
- Exodus 05:01
- John 04:45
- Luke 22:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1974, H2166, H2282, H2287, H6213, H4150, G1456, G1858, G1859

(Go back to: [Mark 14:2](#); [15:6](#))

fig

Definition:

A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

- Fig trees can grow 6 meters in height and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
- Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.
- Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
- In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
- The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
- Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

Bible References:

- Habakkuk 03:17
- James 03:12
- Luke 13:07
- Mark 11:14
- Matthew 07:17
- Matthew 21:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H1690, H6291, H8384, G3653, G4808, G4810

(Go back to: [Mark 11:13](#); [11:20](#); [11:21](#); [13:28](#))

fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- The term “fire” is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase “baptize with fire” could also be translated as “cause to experience suffering in order to be purified.”

(See also: pure)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 01:10
- 2 Thessalonians 01:08
- Acts 07:29-30
- John 15:06
- Luke 03:16
- Matthew 03:12
- Nehemiah 01:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H215, H217, H398, H784, H800, H801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H2734, H3341, H3857, H4071, H4168, H5135, H6315, H8316, G439, G440, G1067, G2741, G4442, G4443, G4447, G4448, G4451, G5394, G5457

(Go back to: [Mark 9:22](#); [9:43](#); [9:48](#); [9:49](#); [14:54](#))

fishermen, fishers

Definition:

Fishermen are men who catch fish from the water as a means of earning money. In the New Testament, the fishermen used large nets to catch fish. The term “fishers” is another name for fishermen.

- Peter and other apostles worked as fishermen before being called by Jesus.
- Since the land of Israel was near water, the Bible has many references to fish and fishermen.
- This term could be translated with a phrase such as “men who catch fish” or “men who earn money by catching fish.”

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 47:9-10
- Isaiah 19:08
- Luke 05:1-3
- Matthew 04:19
- Matthew 13:47

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1728, H1771, H2271, G231

(Go back to: [Mark 1:16](#); [1:17](#))

flesh

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kinfolk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression “become one flesh” could be translated as “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: [euphemism](#)). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who “become one flesh” literally become one person.

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:16
- 2 John 01:07
- Ephesians 06:12
- Galatians 01:16
- Genesis 02:24
- John 01:14
- Matthew 16:17
- Romans 08:08

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G2907, G4559, G4560, G4561

(Go back to: [Mark 10:8](#); [13:20](#); [14:38](#))

fool, foolish, folly

Definition:

The term “fool” refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term “foolish” describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

- In the Bible, the term “fool” usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
- In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, one who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
- The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
- The term “folly” refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God’s will. Often “folly” also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “fool” could be translated as “foolish person” or “unwise person” or “senseless person” or “ungodly person.”
- Ways to translate “foolish” could include “lacking understanding” or “unwise” or “senseless.”

(See also: [wise](#))

Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 01:17
- Ephesians 05:15
- Galatians 03:03
- Genesis 31:28
- Matthew 07:26
- Matthew 25:08
- Proverbs 13:16
- Psalms 049:13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H191, H196, H200, H1198, H1984, H2973, H3684, H3687, H3688, H3689, H3690, H5014, H5034, H5036, H5039, H5528, H5529, H5530, H5531, H6612, H8417, H8602, H8604, G453, G454, G781, G801, G877, G878, G2757, G3150, G3154, G3471, G3472, G3473, G3474, G3912

(Go back to: [Mark 7:18](#); [7:22](#))

footstool

Definition:

The term “footstool” refers to an object which a person puts his feet on, usually to rest them while sitting. This term also has figurative meanings of submission and lower status.

- People in Bible times considered feet to be the least honorable parts of the body. So a “footstool” was of even lower honor because feet were rested on it.
- When God says “I will make my enemies a footstool for my feet” he is declaring power, control, and victory over the people who rebel against him. They will be humbled and conquered to the point of submitting to God’s will.
- To “worship at God’s footstool” means to bow down in worship before him as he sits on his throne. This again communicates humility and submission to God.
- David refers to the temple as God’s “footstool.” This could refer to his absolute authority over his people. This could also be picturing God the King on his throne, with his feet resting on his footstool, which represents all that is in submission to him.

Bible References:

- Acts 07:49
- Isaiah 66:1
- Luke 20:43
- Matthew 05:35
- Matthew 22:44
- Psalm 110:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1916, H3534, H7272, G4228, G5286

(Go back to: [Mark 12:36](#))

forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned

Definition:

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against that person even though they did something hurtful. "Forgiveness" is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean "cancel," as in the expression "forgive a debt."
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus' sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

The term "pardon" means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

- This word has the same meaning as "forgive" but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
- In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
- Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "forgive" could be translated as "pardon" or "cancel" or "release" or "not hold against" (someone).
- The term "forgiveness" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "practice of not resenting" or "declaring (someone) as not guilty" or "the act of pardoning."
- If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate "pardon."

(See also: [guilt](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 50:17
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Joshua 24:19-20
- 2 Kings 05:17-19
- Psalms 025:11
- Psalms 025:17-19
- Isaiah 55:6-7
- Isaiah 40:02
- Luke 05:21
- Acts 08:22
- Ephesians 04:31-32
- Colossians 03:12-14
- 1 John 02:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **07:10** But Esau had already **forgiven** Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
- **13:15** Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would **forgive** the people. God listened to Moses and **forgave** them.
- **17:13** David repented of his sin and God **forgave** him.
- **21:05** In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would **forgive** their sins.

- **29:01** One day Peter asked Jesus, "Master, how many times should I **forgive** my brother when he sins against me?"
- **29:08** I **forgave** your debt because you begged me.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the **forgiveness** of sins.

Word Data:

- H5546, H5547, H3722, H5375, H5545, H5547, H7521, G859, G863, G5483

(Go back to: [Mark 1:4](#); [2:5](#); [2:7](#); [2:9](#); [2:10](#); [3:28](#); [3:29](#); [4:12](#); [11:25](#))

forsake, forsaken, leave

Definition:

The term “forsake” means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been “forsaken” has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

- When people “forsake” God, they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
- When God “forsakes” people, he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
- This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following, God’s teachings.
- The term “forsaken” can be used in the past tense, as in “he has forsaken you” or as in referring to someone who has “been forsaken.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “abandon” or “neglect” or “give up” or “go away from” or “leave behind,” depending on the context.
- To “forsake” God’s law could be translated “disobey God’s law.” This could also be translated as “abandon” or “give up on” or “stop obeying” his teachings or his laws.
- The phrase “be forsaken” can be translated as “be abandoned” or “be deserted.”
- It more clearer to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text describes forsaking a thing or a person.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:11-13
- Daniel 11:29-30
- Genesis 24:27
- Joshua 24:16-18
- Matthew 27:45-47
- Proverbs 27:9-10
- Psalms 071:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H488, H2308, H5203, H5428, H5800, H5805, H7503, G646, G657, G863, G1459, G2641,

(Go back to: [Mark 15:34](#))

fruit, fruitful, unfruitful

Definition:

The term “fruit” literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses “fruit” to refer to a person’s actions. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person’s words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term “fruitful” always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term “fruitful” is also used figuratively to mean “prosperous.” This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the “fruit of wisdom” refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression “fruit of the Spirit” refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression “fruit of the womb” refers to “what the womb produces--”that is children.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for “fruit” that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural, “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much spiritual fruit” or “having many children” or “prosperous.”
- The expression “fruit of the land” could also be translated as “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to “be fruitful and multiply,” which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as “have many offspring” or “have many children and descendants” or “have many children so that you will have many descendants.”
- The expression “fruit of the womb” could be translated as “what the womb produces” or “children a woman gives birth to” or just “children.” When Elizabeth says to Mary “blessed is the fruit of your womb,” she means “blessed is the child you will give birth to.” The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression “fruit of the vine,” could be translated as “vine fruit” or “grapes.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as “will produce more fruit” or “will have more children” or “will be prosperous.”
- The apostle Paul’s expression “fruitful labor” could be translated as “work that brings very good results” or “efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus.”
- The “fruit of the Spirit” could also be translated as “works that the Holy Spirit produces” or “words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in someone.”

(See also: descendant, [grain](#), [grape](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [vine](#), [womb](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 05:23
- Genesis 01:11
- Luke 08:15
- Matthew 03:08
- Matthew 07:17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2233, H2981, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H5108, H6509, H6529, H7019, H8393, H8570, G1081, G2590, G2592, G2593, G3703, G5052, G5352

(Go back to: [Mark 4:7](#); [4:8](#); [4:19](#); [4:20](#); [4:29](#); [11:14](#); [12:2](#); [14:25](#))

fulfill, fulfilled, carried out

Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill,” as in “fulfill your ministry,” could include “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: [prophet](#), [Christ](#), [minister](#), [call](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 02:27
- Acts 03:17-18
- Leviticus 22:17-19
- Luke 04:21
- Matthew 01:22-23
- Matthew 05:17
- Psalms 116:12-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:04** John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- **40:03** The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”
- **42:07** Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be **fulfilled**.”
- **43:05** “This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- **43:07** “This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
- **44:05** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H5487, G1096, G4138

(Go back to: [Mark 1:15](#); [14:49](#))

Galilee, Galilean

Facts:

Galilee was the most northern region of Israel, just north of Samaria. A “Galilean” was a person who lived in Galilee or who lived in Galilee.

- Galilee, Samaria, and Judea were the three main provinces of Israel during New Testament times.
- Galilee is bordered on the east by a large lake called the “Sea of Galilee.”
- Jesus grew up and lived in the town of Nazareth in Galilee.
- Most of the miracles and teachings of Jesus took place in the region of Galilee.

(See also: [Nazareth](#), Samaria, [Sea of Galilee](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 09:32
- Acts 13:31
- John 02:1-2
- John 04:03
- Luke 13:03
- Mark 03:07
- Matthew 02:22-23
- Matthew 03:13-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:10** The prophet Isaiah said the Messiah would live in **Galilee**, comfort broken-hearted people, and proclaim freedom to captives and release to prisoners.
- **26:01** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the power of the Holy Spirit to the region of **Galilee** where he lived.
- **39:06** Finally, the people said, “We know that you were with Jesus because you both are from **Galilee**.”
- **41:06** Then the angel told the women, “Go and tell the disciples, ‘Jesus has risen from the dead and he will go to **Galilee** ahead of you.’”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1551, G1056, G1057

(Go back to: [Mark 1:9](#); [1:14](#); [1:16](#); [1:28](#); [1:39](#); [3:7](#); [6:21](#); [7:31](#); [9:30](#); [14:28](#); [14:70](#); [15:41](#); [16:7](#))

gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Definition:

A “gate” is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city. The “gate bar” refers to a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place so that the gate cannot be opened from the outside.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
- The phrase “bars of the gate” could be translated as “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

Bible References:

- Acts 09:24
- Acts 10:18
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:01
- Genesis 24:60
- Matthew 07:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, G2374, G4439, G4440

(Go back to: [Mark 13:34](#))

generation

Definition:

The term “generation” generally refers to a group of people who are all alive at the same time. They are all born in the same general time period and are therefore about the same age.

- A generation can also refer to a span of time. In Bible times, a generation was usually considered to be about 40 years.
- Parents and their children are from two different generations.
- In the Bible, the term “generation” is also used figuratively to refer generally to people who share common characteristics.

Translation Suggestions

- The phrase “this generation” or “people of this generation” could be translated as “the people living now” or “you people.”
- “This wicked generation” could also be translated as “these wicked people living now.”
- The expression “from generation to generation” or “from one generation to the next” could be translated as “people living now, as well as their children and grandchildren” or “people in every time period” or “people in this time period and future time periods” or “all people and their descendants.”
- “A generation to come will serve him; they will tell the next generation about Yahweh” could also be translated as “Many people in the future will serve Yahweh and will tell their children and grandchildren about him.”

(See also: descendant, [evil](#), [ancestor](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 15:19-21
- Exodus 03:13-15
- Genesis 15:16
- Genesis 17:07
- Mark 08:12
- Matthew 11:16
- Matthew 23:34-36
- Matthew 24:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1755, H1859, H8435, G1074

(Go back to: [Mark 8:12](#); [8:38](#); [9:19](#); [13:30](#))

Gentile

Facts:

The term “Gentile” refers to anyone who is not a Jew. Gentiles are people who are not descendants of Jacob.

- In the Bible, the term “uncircumcised” is also used figuratively to refer to Gentiles because many of them did not circumcise their male children as the Israelites did.
- Because God chose the Jews to be his special people, they thought of the Gentiles as outsiders who could never be God’s people.
- The Jews were also called “Israelites” or “Hebrews” at different times in history. They referred to anyone else as a “Gentile.”
- Gentile could also be translated as “not a Jew” or “non-Jewish” or “not an Israelite” (Old Testament) or “non-Jew.”
- Traditionally, Jews would neither eat with nor associate with Gentiles, which at first caused problems within the early church.

(See also: [Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [Jew](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 09:13-16
- Acts 14:5-7
- Galatians 02:16
- Luke 02:32
- Matthew 05:47
- Matthew 06:5-7
- Romans 11:25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1471, G1482, G1484, G1672

(Go back to: [Mark 7:26](#); [10:33](#); [10:42](#))

Gethsemane

Facts:

Gethsemane was a garden of olive trees east of Jerusalem beyond the Kidron valley and near the Mount of Olives.

- The garden of Gethsemane was a place where Jesus and his followers would go to be alone and rest, away from the crowds.
- It was in Gethsemane that Jesus prayed in deep sorrow, before being arrested there by Jewish leaders.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Judas Iscariot](#), [Kidron Valley](#), [Mount of Olives](#))

Bible References:

- Mark 14:32
- Matthew 26:36

Word Data:

- Strong's: G1068

(Go back to: [Mark 14:32](#))

glory, glorious, glorify

Definition:

The term “glory” is a general term for a family of concepts including value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, or majesty. The term “glorify” means to ascribe glory to someone or something, or to show or tell how glorious something or someone is.

- In the Bible, the term “glory” is especially used to describe God, who is more valuable, more worthy, more important, more honorable, more splendid, and more majestic than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything about his character reveals his glory.
- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done. They can also glorify God by living in accordance with God's character, because doing so shows to others his value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, and majesty.
- The expression to “glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

Old Testament

- The specific phrase “the glory of Yahweh” in the Old Testament usually refers to some perceptible manifestation of Yahweh's presence in a particular location.

New Testament

- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to all people the full extent of how glorious Jesus is.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. This use of the term “glorify” carries a unique meaning. It means that when people who believe in Christ are raised to life, they will be changed physically to be like Jesus as he appeared after his resurrection.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include “splendor” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God's greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”
- “Glorify” could also be translated as “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
- The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God's greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”
- The term “be glorified” could also be translated as, “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: [honor](#), majesty, exalt, [obey](#), praise)

Bible References:

- Exodus 24:17
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:02
- Luke 18:43
- Luke 02:09
- John 12:28

- Acts 03:13-14
- Acts 07:1-3
- Romans 08:17
- 1 Corinthians 06:19-20
- Philippians 02:14-16
- Philippians 04:19
- Colossians 03:1-4
- 1 Thessalonians 02:05
- James 02:1-4
- 1 Peter 04:15-16
- Revelation 15:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glor**y to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **25:06** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glor**y and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- **37:01** When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glor**y of God.”
- **37:08** Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glor**y if you believe in me?”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H117, H142, H155, H215, H1342, H1921, H1926, H1935, H1984, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8597, G1391, G1392, G1740, G1741, G2744, G4888

(Go back to: [Mark 2:12](#); [8:38](#); [Notes](#); [10:37](#); [13:26](#))

God

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being” or “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”
NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word “god,” it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [create](#), false god, [God the Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), false god, [Son of God](#), Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 04:10
- Colossians 01:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 03:1-2
- Genesis 01:02
- Hosea 04:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 02:20
- Jeremiah 05:05
- John 01:03
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Lamentations 03:43
- Micah 04:05
- Philippians 02:06
- Proverbs 24:12
- Psalms 047:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01 God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **01:15 God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **05:03** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **09:14 God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:02** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:07** You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:09** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:07** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:01** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:09** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H136, H305, H410, H426, H430, H433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G112, G516, G932, G935, G1096, G1140, G2098, G2124, G2128, G2150, G2152, G2153, G2299, G2304, G2305, G2312, G2313, G2314, G2315, G2316, G2317, G2318, G2319, G2320, G3361, G3785, G4151, G5207, G5377, G5463, G5537, G5538

(Go back to: [Mark 1:1](#); [1:14](#); [1:15](#); [1:24](#); [2:7](#); [2:12](#); [2:26](#); [3:11](#); [3:35](#); [4:11](#); [4:26](#); [4:30](#); [5:7](#); [7:8](#); [7:9](#); [7:13](#); [8:33](#); [9:1](#); [9:47](#); [10:9](#); [10:14](#); [10:15](#); [10:18](#); [10:23](#); [10:24](#); [10:25](#); [10:27](#); [11:22](#); [12:14](#); [12:17](#); [12:24](#); [12:26](#); [12:27](#); [12:29](#); [12:30](#); [12:34](#); [13:19](#); [14:25](#); [15:34](#); [15:39](#); [15:43](#))

God the Father, heavenly Father, Father

Facts:

The terms "God the Father" and "heavenly Father" refer to Yahweh, the one true God. Another term with the same meaning is "Father," used most often when Jesus was referring to him.

- God exists as God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Each one is fully God, and yet they are only one God. This is a mystery that mere humans cannot fully understand.
- God the Father sent God the Son (Jesus) into the world and he sends the Holy Spirit to his people.
- Anyone who believes in God the Son becomes a child of God the Father, and God the Holy Spirit comes to live in that person. This is another mystery that human beings cannot fully understand.

Translation Suggestions:

- In translating the phrase "God the Father," it is best to translate "Father" with the same word that the language naturally uses to refer to a human father.
- The term "heavenly Father" could be translated by "Father who lives in heaven" or "Father God who lives in heaven" or "God our Father from heaven."
- Usually "Father" is capitalized when it, refers to God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ancestor](#), [God](#), [heaven](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [Son of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 08:4-6
- 1 John 02:01
- 1 John 02:23
- 1 John 03:01
- Colossians 01:1-3
- Ephesians 05:18-21
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 05:16
- Matthew 23:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:09** There is only one God. But John heard **God the Father** speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **29:09** Then Jesus said, "This is what my **heavenly Father** will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart."
- **37:09** Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, "**Father**, thank you for hearing me."
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! **Father**, I give my spirit into your hands."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of **the Father**, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **43:08** "Jesus is now exalted to the right hand of **God the Father**."
- **50:10** "Then the righteous ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of **God their Father**."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H2, G3962

(Go back to: [Mark 8:38](#); [11:25](#); [13:32](#); [14:36](#))

Golgotha

Facts:

“Golgotha” was the name of the place where Jesus was crucified. Its name comes from an Aramaic word that means “Skull” or “Place of the Skull.”

- Golgotha was located outside the city walls of Jerusalem, somewhere nearby. It was perhaps located on a slope of the Mount of Olives.
- In some older English versions of the Bible, Golgotha is translated as “Calvary,” which comes from the Latin word for “skull.”
- Many Bible versions use a word that looks or sounds similar to “Golgotha,” since its meaning is already explained in the Bible text.

(Translation Suggestion: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Aram, [Mount of Olives](#))

Bible References:

- John 19:17
- Mark 15:22
- Matthew 27:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: G1115

([Go back to: Mark 15:22](#))

good news, gospel

Definition:

The term “gospel” literally means “good news” and refers to a message or announcement that tells people something that benefits them and makes them glad.

- In the Bible, this term usually refers to the message about God’s salvation for people through Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross.
- In most English Bibles, “good news” is usually translated as “gospel” and is also used in phrases such as, the “gospel of Jesus Christ,” the “gospel of God” and the “gospel of the kingdom.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways to translate this term could include, “good message” or “good announcement” or “God’s message of salvation” or “the good things God teaches about Jesus.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase, “good news of” could include, “good news/ message about” or “good message from” or “the good things God tells us about” or “what God says about how he saves people.”

(See also: [kingdom](#), [sacrifice](#), [save](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:05
- Acts 08:25
- Colossians 01:23
- Galatians 01:06
- Luke 08:1-3
- Mark 01:14
- Philippians 02:22
- Romans 01:03

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:06** The angel said, “Do not be afraid, because I have some **good news** for you. The Messiah, the Master, has been born in Bethlehem!”
- **26:03** Jesus read, “God has given me his Spirit so that I can proclaim **good news** to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed. This is the year of the Lord’s favor.”
- **45:10** Philip also used other Scriptures to tell him the **good news of Jesus**.
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to preach the **good news about Jesus** in many other places.
- **47:01** One day, Paul and his friend Silas went to the town of Philippi to proclaim the **good news about Jesus**.
- **47:13** The **good news about Jesus** kept spreading, and the Church kept growing.
- **50:01** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the **good news about Jesus** the Messiah.
- **50:02** When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My disciples will preach the **good news** about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”
- **50:03** Before he returned to heaven, Jesus told Christians to proclaim the **good news** to people who have never heard it.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G2097, G2098, G4283

(Go back to: [Mark 1:1](#); [1:14](#); [1:15](#); [8:35](#); [10:29](#); [13:10](#); [14:9](#))

good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best

Definition:

The word “good” has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God’s character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is “good” could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is “good” could be called “fertile” or “productive.”
- A “good” crop could be a “plentiful” crop.
- A person can be “good” at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, the expression, “a good farmer.”
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”
- The term “goodness” usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone.
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [evil](#), [holy](#), [profit](#), [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 05:22-24
- Genesis 01:12
- Genesis 02:09
- Genesis 02:17
- James 03:13
- Romans 02:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:04** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **01:11** God planted the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.”
- **01:12** Then God said, “It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- **02:04** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- **08:12** “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good**!”
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.

- **28:01** “**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you call me ‘**good**?’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H145, H155, H202, H239, H410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G14, G15, G18, G19, G515, G744, G865, G979, G1380, G2095, G2097, G2106, G2107, G2108, G2109, G2114, G2115, G2133, G2140, G2162, G2163, G2174, G2293, G2565, G2567, G2570, G2573, G2887, G2986, G3140, G3617, G3776, G4147, G4632, G4674, G4851, G5223, G5224, G5358, G5542, G5543, G5544

(Go back to: [Mark 3:4](#); [4:8](#); [4:20](#); [7:27](#); [7:37](#); [9:5](#); [9:42](#); [9:43](#); [9:45](#); [9:47](#); [9:50](#); [10:17](#); [10:18](#); [14:6](#); [14:7](#); [14:21](#))

govern, government, governor, proconsul

Definition:

A “governor” is a person who rules over a state, region, or territory. To “govern” means to guide, lead, or manage them.

- The term “proconsul” was a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Roman province.
- In Bible times, governors were appointed by a king or emperor and were under his authority.
- A “government” consists of all the rulers who govern a certain country or empire. These rulers make laws that guide the behavior of their citizens so that there is peace, safety, and prosperity for all the people of that nation.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “governor” can also be translated as “ruler” or “overseer” or “regional leader” or “one who rules over a small territory.”
- Depending on the context, the term “govern” could also be translated as, “rule over” or “lead” or “manage” or supervise.”
- The term “governor” should be translated differently than the terms for “king” or “emperor”, since a governor was a less powerful ruler who was under their authority.
- The term “proconsul” could also be translated as, “Roman governor” or “Roman provincial ruler.”

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), [power](#), province, Rome, [ruler](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 23:22
- Acts 26:30
- Mark 13:9-10
- Matthew 10:18
- Matthew 27:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H324, H1777, H2280, H4951, H5148, H5460, H6346, H6347, H6486, H7989, H8269, H8660, G445, G446, G746, G1481, G2232, G2233, G2230, G4232

(Go back to: [Mark 13:9](#))

grain, grainfields

Definition:

The term “grain” usually refers to the seed of a food plant such as wheat, barley, corn, millet, or rice. It can also refer to the whole plant.

- In the Bible, the main grains that are referred to are wheat and barley.
- A head of grain is the part of the plant that holds the grain.
- Note that some older Bible versions use the word “corn” to refer to grain in general. In modern English however, “corn” only refers to one type of grain.

(See also: [head](#), wheat)

Bible References:

- Genesis 42:03
- Genesis 42:26-28
- Genesis 43:1-2
- Luke 06:02
- Mark 02:24
- Matthew 13:7-9
- Ruth 01:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1250, H1430, H1715, H2233, H2591, H3759, H3899, H7054, H7383, H7641, H7668, G248, G2590, G3450, G4621, G4719

(Go back to: [Mark 2:23](#); [4:28](#); [4:31](#))

grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place

Definition:

The terms “tomb” and “grave” refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A “burial place” is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews sometimes used natural caves as tombs, and sometimes they dug caves into rock in the side of a hill.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If the target language the word for a tomb can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include “cave” or “hole in the side of a hill.”
- The phrase “the grave” is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: [bury](#), [death](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 02:29-31
- Genesis 23:06
- Genesis 50:05
- John 19:41
- Luke 23:53
- Mark 05:1-2
- Matthew 27:53
- Romans 03:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **32:04** The man lived among the **tombs** in the area.
- **37:06** Jesus asked them, “Where have you put Lazarus?” They told him, “In the **tomb**. Come and see.”
- **37:07** The **tomb** was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening.
- **40:09** Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two Jewish leaders who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus’ body. They wrapped his body in cloth and placed it in a **tomb** cut out of rock. Then they rolled a large stone in front the **tomb** to block the opening.
- **41:04** He (the angel) rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the **tomb** and sat on it. The soldiers guarding the **tomb** were terrified and fell to the ground like dead men.
- **41:05** When the women arrived at the **tomb**, the angel told them, “Do not be afraid. Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would! Look in the **tomb** and see.” The women looked into the **tomb** and saw where Jesus’ body had been laid. His body was not there!

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1430, H6900, H6913, H7585, H7845, G3418, G3419, G5028

(Go back to: [Mark 5:2](#); [5:3](#); [5:5](#); [6:29](#); [15:46](#); [16:2](#); [16:3](#); [16:5](#); [16:8](#))

groan, groans, groanings

Definition:

The term to “groan” refers to the uttering of a deep, low sound that is caused by physical or emotional distress. It could also be the sound someone makes without any words.

- A person can groan because of feeling grief.
- Groaning can be caused by feeling a terrible, oppressive burden.
- Other ways to translate “groan” could include, “give a low cry of pain” or “grieve deeply.”
- As a noun, this could be translated as, “a low cry of distress” or “a deep murmur of pain.”

(See also: [cry](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 05:02
- Hebrews 13:17
- Job 23:02
- Psalms 032:3-4
- Psalms 102:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H584, H585, H602, H603, H1901, H1993, H5008, H5009, H5098, H5594, H7581, G4726, G4727, G4959

(Go back to: [Mark 7:34](#); [8:12](#))

guilt, guilty

Definition:

The term “guilt” refers to the fact of having sinned or committed a crime.

- To “be guilty” means to have done something morally wrong, that is, to have disobeyed God.
- The opposite of “guilty” is “innocent.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages might translate “guilt” as “the weight of sin” or “the counting of sins.”
- Ways to translate to “be guilty” could include a word or phrase that means, to “be at fault” or “having done something morally wrong” or “having committed a sin.”

(See also: innocent, iniquity, punish, [sin](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 28:36-38
- Isaiah 06:07
- James 02:10-11
- John 19:04
- Jonah 01:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:02** They brought many witnesses who lied about him (Jesus). However, their statements did not agree with each other, so the Jewish leaders could not prove he was **guilty** of anything.
- **39:11** After speaking with Jesus, Pilate went out to the crowd and said, “I find no **guilt** in this man.” But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, “Crucify him!” Pilate replied, “He is not **guilty**.” But they shouted even louder. Then Pilate said a third time, “He is not **guilty**!”
- **40:04** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Don’t you fear God? We are **guilty**, but this man is innocent.
- **49:10** Because of your sin, you are **guilty** and deserve to die.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H816, H817, H818, H5352, H5355, G338, G1777, G3784, G5267

(Go back to: [Mark 3:29](#))

hand

Definition:

The word “hand” refers to the part of the body at the end of the arm. In the Bible, this term is associated with a person's power, control, or action, whether it be in reference to God or in reference to a human person.

Some of the various uses of the term “hand” include the following:

- To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.”
- To “save from the hand of” means to prevent someone from being harmed by another person.
- The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
- The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, the phrase “by the hand of the Lord” means that God caused something to happen.
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- The term “laying on of hands” can refer to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service, to pray for healing, or to ask God to bless that person.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that he himself wrote that part of the letter rather than speaking it to someone else to write down.

Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as, “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [bless](#), [captive](#), [honor](#), [power](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:25
- Acts 08:17
- Acts 11:21
- Genesis 09:05
- Genesis 14:20
- John 03:35
- Mark 07:32
- Matthew 06:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3225, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8040, H8042, H8168, G710, G1188, G1448, G1451, G2176, G2902, G4084, G4474, G5495, G5496, G5497

(Go back to: [Mark 1:31](#); [1:41](#); [3:1](#); [3:3](#); [3:5](#); [5:23](#); [5:41](#); [6:2](#); [6:5](#); [7:2](#); [7:3](#); [7:5](#); [7:32](#); [8:23](#); [8:25](#); [9:27](#); [9:31](#); [9:43](#); [10:16](#); [10:37](#); [10:40](#); [14:41](#); [14:46](#))

hard, harden, hardness

Definition:

The term “hard” has several different meanings, depending on the context. It usually describes something that is difficult, persistent, or unyielding.

- The expressions “hard heart” or “hard-headed” refer to people who are stubbornly unrepentant. These expressions describe people who persist in disobeying God.
- The figurative expressions “hardness of heart” and “hardness of their hearts” also refer to stubborn disobedience.
- If someone’s heart is “hardened” this means that person refuses to obey and remains stubbornly unrepentant.
- When used as an adverb, as in “work hard” or “try hard,” it means to do something very strongly and diligently, making an effort to do something very well.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “hard” could also be translated as “difficult” or “stubborn” or “challenging,” depending on the context.
- The terms “hardness” or “hardness of heart” or “hard heart” could be translated as “stubbornness” or “persistent rebellion” or “rebellious attitude” or “stubborn disobedience” or “stubbornly not repenting.”
- The term “hardened” could also be translated as “stubbornly unrepentant” or “refusing to obey.”
- “Do not harden your heart” could be translated as “do not refuse to repent” or “do not stubbornly keep disobeying.”
- Other ways to translate “hard-headed” or “hard-hearted” could include “stubbornly disobedient” or “continuing to disobey” or “refusing to repent” or “always rebelling.”
- In expressions such as “work hard” or “try hard,” the term “hard” could be translated as “with perseverance” or “diligently.”
- The expression “press hard against” could also be translated as “shove with force” or “push strongly against.”
- To “oppress people with hard labor” could be translated as “force people to work so hard that they suffer” or “cause people to suffer by forcing them to do very difficult work.”
- A different kind of “hard labor” is experienced by a woman who is about to deliver a baby.

(See also: disobey, [evil](#), [heart](#), labor pains, stiff-necked)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 11:23
- Deuteronomy 15:07
- Exodus 14:04
- Hebrews 04:07
- John 12:40
- Matthew 19:08

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H553, H1692, H2388, H2389, H2420, H2864, H3021, H3332, H3513, H3515, H3966, H4165, H4522, H5450, H5647, H5797, H5810, H5980, H5999, H6089, H6381, H6635, H7185, H7186, H7188, H7280, H8068, H8307, H8631, G917, G1419, G1421, G1422, G1423, G2205, G2532, G2553, G2872, G2873, G3425, G3433, G4053, G4183, G4456, G4457, G4641, G4642, G4643, G4645, G4912

(Go back to: [Mark 3:5](#); [6:52](#); [8:17](#); [10:5](#); [10:24](#))

harvest, reap

Definition:

The term “harvest” refers to the gather the ripe fruits, vegetables, seeds, or grains from the plants on which they were growing. The term “reap” means to harvest crops.

- The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
- The Israelites held a “Festival of Harvest” or “Festival of Ingathering” to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
- In biblical times, reapers usually harvested crops by hand, either pulling up the plants or cutting them with a sharp cutting tool.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate the concept with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
- The event of harvesting could be translated as, “time of gathering in” or “crop gathering time” or “fruit picking time.”
- The verb to “harvest” could be translated as, to “gather in” or to “pick up” or to “collect.”

(See also: firstfruits, [festival](#), [good news](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 09:9-11
- 2 Samuel 21:7-9
- Galatians 06:9-10
- Isaiah 17:11
- James 05:7-8
- Leviticus 19:09
- Matthew 09:38
- Ruth 01:22
- Galatians 06:9-10
- Matthew 06:25-26
- Matthew 13:30
- Matthew 13:36-39
- Matthew 25:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2758, H4395, H4672 H7105, H7114, H7938, G270, G2325, G2326, G2327

(Go back to: [Mark 4:29](#))

head

Definition:

The word "head" refers to the uppermost body part of a human body, above the neck. This term is often used figuratively to mean many different things, including "top," "first," "beginning," "source," and other concepts.

Some examples of various uses of the term "head" include:

- The expression "no razor will ever touch his head" means that he should never cut or shave his hair.
- The expression "let their blood be on his own head" means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.
- The expression "heads of grain" refers to the top part of wheat or barley plants that contains the seeds. Similarly, the expression "head of a mountain" refers to the top part of the mountain.
- The term "head" can also refer to the beginning or source of something, or the first in a series of things (can be objects or people).
- Often the term "head" refers to the most important person in a group or to a person who is in authority over others. For example, the phrase "You have made me the head over nations" means "You have made me the ruler..." or "You have given me authority over...."

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term "head" could be translated as "authority" or "ruler" or "the one who is responsible for."
- The expression "will be on his own head" could be translated as "will be on him" or "he will be punished for" or "he will be held responsible for" or "he will be considered guilty for."
- Depending on the context, some other ways to translate this term might include "top" or "beginning" or "source" or "leader."

(See also: [grain](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:51-54
- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 09:22
- Colossians 02:10
- Colossians 02:19
- Numbers 01:04

Word Data:

- Strong's: H441, H1270, H1538, H3852, H4425, H4761, H4763, H5110, H5324, H6285, H6287, H6797, H6915, H6936, H7139, H7144, H7146, H7217, H7226, H7218, H7541, H7636, H7641, H7872, G346, G755, G2775, G2776, G4719

(Go back to: [Mark 6:24](#); [6:25](#); [6:27](#); [6:28](#); [12:4](#); [12:10](#); [14:3](#); [15:19](#); [15:29](#))

heart

Definition:

The term "heart" refers to the internal bodily organ that pumps blood throughout the body in people and animals. However, in the Bible the term "heart" is often used figuratively to refer to a person's thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a "hard heart" is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" mean to do something with complete sincerity, commitment, or willingness, holding nothing back.
- The expression "take it to heart" means to treat something seriously and apply it to one's life.
- The term "brokenhearted" describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as "stomach" or "liver" to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If "heart" or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as "thoughts" or "emotions" or "desires."
- Depending on the context, "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" could be translated as "with all my energy" or "with complete dedication" or "completely" or "with total commitment."
- The expression "take it to heart" could be translated as "treat it seriously" or "carefully think about it."
- The expression "hard-hearted" could also be translated as "stubbornly rebellious" or "refusing to obey" or "continually disobeying God."
- Ways to translate "brokenhearted" could include "very sad" or "feeling deeply hurt."

(See also: [hard](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:17
- 1 Thessalonians 02:04
- 2 Thessalonians 03:13-15
- Acts 08:22
- Acts 15:09
- Luke 08:15
- Mark 02:06
- Matthew 05:08
- Matthew 22:37

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1079, H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H5640, H7130, H7307, H7356, H7907, G674, G1282, G1271, G2133, G2588, G2589, G4641, G4698, G5590

(Go back to: [Mark 2:6](#); [2:8](#); [3:5](#); [6:52](#); [7:6](#); [7:19](#); [7:21](#); [8:17](#); [11:23](#); [12:30](#); [12:33](#))

heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

Translation Suggestions:

- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as, “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: [kingdom of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:17
- Deuteronomy 09:01
- Ephesians 06:9
- Genesis 01:01
- Genesis 07:11
- John 03:12
- John 03:27
- Matthew 05:18
- Matthew 05:46-48

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:02** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **29:09** Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **37:09** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G932, G2032, G3321, G3770, G3771, G3772

(Go back to: [Mark 1:10](#); [1:11](#); [4:32](#); [6:41](#); [7:34](#); [8:11](#); [10:21](#); [11:25](#); [11:30](#); [11:31](#); [12:25](#); [13:25](#); [13:27](#); [13:31](#); [13:32](#); [14:62](#))

heir

Definition:

An “heir” is a person who legally receives property or money that belonged to a person who has died.

- In Bible times, the main heir was the firstborn son, who received most of the property and money of his father.
- The Bible also uses “heir” in a figurative sense to refer to person who as a Christian receives spiritual benefits from God, his spiritual father.
- As God’s children, Christians are said to be “joint heirs” with Jesus Christ. This could also be translated as “co-heirs” or “fellow heirs” or “heirs together with.”
- The term “heir” could be translated as “person receiving benefits” or whatever expression is used in the language to communicate the meaning of someone who receives property and other things when a parent or other relative dies.

(See also: firstborn, [inherit](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:1-2
- Galatians 04:07
- Genesis 15:01
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 20:14
- Mark 12:07
- Matthew 21:38-39

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1121, H3423, G2816, G2818, G2820, G4789

(Go back to: [Mark 12:7](#))

hell, lake of fire

Definition:

Hell is the final place of unending pain and suffering where God will punish everyone who rebels against him and rejects his plan of saving them through Jesus' sacrifice. It is also referred to as the "lake of fire."

- Hell is described as a place of fire and severe suffering.
- Satan and the evil spirits who follow him will be thrown into hell for eternal punishment.
- People who do not believe in Jesus' sacrifice for their sin and do not trust in him to save them, will be punished forever in hell.

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms should probably be translated differently since they occur in different contexts.
- Some languages cannot use "lake" in the phrase "lake of fire" because it refers to water.
- The term "hell" could be translated as "place of suffering" or "final place of darkness and pain."
- The term "lake of fire" could also be translated as, "sea of fire" or "huge fire (of suffering)" or "field of fire."

(See also: [heaven](#), [death](#), Hades, abyss)

Bible References:

- James 03:06
- Luke 12:05
- Mark 09:42-44
- Matthew 05:21-22
- Matthew 05:29
- Matthew 10:28-31
- Matthew 23:33
- Matthew 25:41-43
- Revelation 20:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **50:14** He (God) will throw them into **hell**, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever. A fire that never goes out will continually burn them, and worms will never stop eating them.
- **50:15** He will throw Satan into **hell** where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7585, G86, G439, G440, G1067, G3041, G4442, G4443, G4447, G4448, G5020, G5394, G5457

(Go back to: [Mark 9:43](#); [9:45](#); [9:47](#))

Herod, Herod Antipas

Facts:

During most of Jesus' lifetime, Herod Antipas was the ruler of the part of the Roman Empire that included Galilee province.

- Like his father Herod the Great, Antipas was sometimes referred to as "King Herod" even though he was not really a king.
- Herod Antipas ruled about one-fourth of the provinces of Israel, so he was also called "Herod the tetrarch." "Tetrarch" was a title for a person who ruled one-fourth of a country.
- Antipas is the "Herod" who gave the order for John the Baptist to be killed by beheading.
- It was also Herod Antipas who questioned Jesus before his crucifixion.
- The other Herods in the New Testament were Antipas' son (Agrippa) and grandson (Agrippa 2) who ruled during the time of the apostles.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [crucify](#), Herod the Great, [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [king](#), Rome)

Bible References:

- Luke 03:1-2
- Luke 03:20
- Luke 09:09
- Luke 13:32
- Luke 23:09
- Mark 06:20
- Matthew 14:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2264, G2265, G2267

(Go back to: [Mark 6:14](#); [6:16](#); [6:17](#); [6:18](#); [6:20](#); [6:21](#); [6:22](#); [8:15](#))

Herodias

Facts:

Herodias was the wife of Herod Antipas in Judea during the time of John the Baptist.

- Herodias was originally the wife of Herod Antipas's brother Philip, but later she unlawfully married Herod Antipas.
- John the Baptist rebuked Herod and Herodias for their unlawful marriage. Because of this, Herod put John in prison and because of Herodias eventually was beheaded.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Herod Antipas](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#))

Bible References:

- Luke 03:19
- Mark 06:17
- Mark 06:22
- Matthew 14:04

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2266

(Go back to: [Mark 6:17](#); [6:19](#); [6:22](#))

high priest, chief priests

Definition:

The term “high priest” refers to a special priest who was appointed to serve for one year as the leader of all of the other Israelite priests. In New Testament times, some other priests were also considered very important Jewish religious leaders, with authority over other priests and the people. These were the chief priests.

- The high priest had special responsibilities. He was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy part of the tabernacle or the temple to offer a special sacrifice once per year.
- The Israelites had many priests, but only one high priest at a time.
- After high priests retired, they still kept the title, along with some of the responsibilities of the office. For example, Annas was still referred to as high priest during the priesthood of Caiaphas and others.
- The chief priests were responsible for everything needed for the worship services at the temple. They were also in charge of the money that was given to the temple.
- The chief priests were higher in rank and power than the ordinary priests. Only the high priest had more authority.
- The chief priests were some of Jesus’ main enemies and they strongly influenced the Roman leaders to arrest and kill him.

Translation Suggestions:

- “High priest” could be translated as “supreme priest” or “highest ranking priest.”
- The term “chief priests” could be translated as “head priests” or “leading priests” or “ruling priests.”

(See also: Annas, Caiaphas, [priest](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 05:27
- Acts 07:01
- Acts 09:01
- Exodus 30:10
- Hebrews 06:19-20
- Leviticus 16:32
- Luke 03:02
- Mark 02:25-26
- Matthew 26:3-5
- Matthew 26:51-54

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:08** No one could enter the room behind the curtain except the **high priest**, because God lived there.
- **21:07** The Messiah who would come would be the perfect **high priest** who would offer himself as a perfect sacrifice to God.
- **38:03** The Jewish leaders, led by the **high priest**, paid Judas thirty silver coins to betray Jesus.
- **39:01** The soldiers led Jesus to the house of the **high priest** in order for the **high priest** to question him.
- **39:03** Finally, the **high priest** looked directly at Jesus and said, “Tell us, are you the Messiah, the Son of the living God?”
- **44:07** The next day, the Jewish leaders brought Peter and John to the **high priest** and the other religious leaders.
- **45:02** So the religious leaders arrested Stephen and brought him to the **high priest** and the other leaders of the Jews, where more false witnesses lied about Stephen.

- **46:01** The **high priest** gave Saul permission to go to the city of Damascus to arrest Christians there and bring them back to Jerusalem.
- **48:06** Jesus is the Great **High Priest**. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only sacrifice that could take away the sin of all the people in the world. Jesus was the perfect **high priest** because he took the punishment for every sin that anyone has ever committed.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7218, H1419, H3548, G748, G749

(Go back to: [Mark 2:26](#); [8:31](#); [10:33](#); [11:18](#); [11:27](#); [14:1](#); [14:10](#); [14:43](#); [14:47](#); [14:53](#); [14:54](#); [14:55](#); [14:60](#); [14:61](#); [14:63](#); [14:66](#); [15:1](#); [15:3](#); [15:10](#); [15:11](#); [15:31](#))

Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit

Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as “the Spirit” and “Spirit of Yahweh” and “Spirit of truth.”
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God’s Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God’s will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate “holy” and “spirit.”
- Ways to translate this term could also include “Pure Spirit” or “Spirit who is Holy” or “God the Spirit.”

(See also: [holy](#), [spirit](#), [God](#), [Lord](#), [God the Father](#), [Son of God](#), gift)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
- Acts 08:17
- Galatians 05:25
- Genesis 01:1-2
- Isaiah 63:10
- Job 33:04
- Matthew 12:31
- Matthew 28:18-19
- Psalms 051:10-11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01** But **God’s Spirit** was there over the water.
- **24:08** When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- **26:01** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **26:03** Jesus read, “God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed.”
- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **43:03** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **43:08** “And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are now seeing and hearing.”
- **43:11** Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit**.”
- **45:01** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G40, G4151

(Go back to: [Mark 1:8](#); [1:10](#); [1:12](#); [Notes](#); [3:29](#); [12:36](#); [13:11](#))

holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term “unholy” means “not holy.” It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called “unholy” could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term “sacred” describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sacred” was oftentimes used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as “religious.”
- “Sacred songs” and “sacred music” refer to music that was sung or played for God’s glory. This could be translated as “music for worshiping Yahweh” or “songs that praise God.”
- The phrase “sacred duties” referred to the “religious duties” or “rituals” that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”
- Ways to translate “unholy” could include “not holy” or “not belonging to God” or “not honoring to God” or “not godly.”
- In some contexts, “unholy” could be translated as “unclean.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), consecrate, sanctify, set apart)

Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 03:02
- Lamentations 04:01
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 07:6
- Mark 08:38

- Acts 07:33
- Acts 11:08
- Romans 01:02
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 01:22
- 1 Thessalonians 03:13
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- 2 Timothy 03:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **09:12** "You are standing on **holy** ground."
- **13:01** "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation."
- **13:05** "Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**."
- **22:05** "So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God."
- **50:02** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G37, G38, G39, G40, G41, G42, G462, G1859, G2150, G2412, G2413, G2839, G3741, G3742

(Go back to: [Mark 1:8](#); [1:24](#); [3:29](#); [6:20](#); [8:38](#); [12:36](#); [13:11](#))

honey, honeycomb

Definition:

“Honey” is the sweet, sticky, edible substance that honeybees make out of flower nectar. Honeycomb is the waxy frame where the bees store honey.

- Depending on the kind, honey can be yellowish or brownish in color.
- Honey can be found in the wild, such as in the hollow of a tree, or wherever bees make a nest. People also raise bees in hives in order to produce honey to eat or sell, but probably the honey mentioned in the Bible was wild honey.
- Three people that the Bible specifically mentions as eating wild honey were Jonathan, Samson, and John the Baptist.
- This term is often used figuratively to describe something that is sweet or very pleasurable. For example, God’s words and decrees are said to be “sweeter than honey.” (See also: [Simile](#), [Metaphor](#))
- Sometimes a person’s words are described as seeming sweet like honey, but instead result in deceiving and harming others.

(See also: [John \(the Baptist\)](#), Jonathan, Philistines, Samson)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:1-3
- Deuteronomy 06:3
- Exodus 13:3-5
- Joshua 05:06
- Proverbs 05:03

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1706, H3293, H3295, H5317, H6688, G3192

(Go back to: [Mark 1:6](#))

honor

Definition:

The terms “honor” and to “honor” refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God instructs Christians to honor others.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
- The terms “honor” and “glory” are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “honor” could include “respect” or “esteem” or “high regard.”
- The term to “honor” could be translated as to “show special respect to” or to “cause to be praised” or to “show high regard for” or to “highly value.”

(See also: dishonor, [glory](#), [glory](#), praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:8
- Acts 19:17
- John 04:44
- John 12:26
- Mark 06:04
- Matthew 15:06

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1420, H1921, H1922, H1923, H1926, H1927, H1935, H2082, H2142, H3366, H3367, H3368, H3372, H3373, H3374, H3444, H3513, H3519, H3655, H3678, H5081, H5375, H5457, H6213, H6286, H6437, H6942, H6944, H6965, H7236, H7613, H7812, H8597, H8416, G820, G1391, G1392, G1784, G2151, G2570, G3170, G4411, G4586, G5091, G5092, G5093, G5399

(Go back to: [Mark 7:6](#); [7:10](#); [10:19](#))

hour

Definition:

In addition to being used to refer to when or how long something took place, the term “hour” is also used in several figurative ways:

- Sometimes “hour” refers to a regular, scheduled time to do something, such as the “hour of prayer.”
- When the text says that the “hour had come” for Jesus to suffer and be put to death, this means that it was the appointed time for this to happen--the time that God had selected long ago.
- The term “hour” is also used to mean “at that moment” or “right then.”
- When the text talks about the “hour” being late, this means that it was late in the day, when the sun would soon be setting.

Translation Suggestions:

- When used figuratively, the term “hour” can be translated as “time” or “moment” or “appointed time.”
- The phrase “in that very hour” or “the same hour” could be translated as “at that moment” or “at that time” or “immediately” or “right then.”
- The expression “the hour was late” could be translated as “it was late in the day” or “it would soon be getting dark” or “it was late afternoon.”

(See also: [hour](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:30
- Acts 10:30
- Mark 14:35

Word Data:

- Strong's: G5610

(Go back to: [Mark 6:35](#); [11:11](#); [13:11](#); [13:32](#); [14:35](#); [14:41](#))

hour, moment, immediately, for a while

Definition:

The term “hour” is often used in the Bible to tell what time of day a certain event took place. It is also used figuratively to mean “time” or “moment.”

- The Jews counted daylight hours starting at sunrise (around 6 a.m.). For example, “the ninth hour” meant “around three in the afternoon.”
- Nighttime hours were counted starting at sunset (around 6 p.m.). For example, “the third hour of the night” meant “around nine in the evening” in our present-day system..
- Since references to time in the Bible will not correspond exactly to the present-day time system, phrases such as “around nine” or “about six o’clock” could be used.
- Some translations might add phrases like “in the evening” or “in the morning” or “in the afternoon” to make it clear what time of day is being talked about.
- The phrase, “in that hour” could be translated as, “at that time” or “in that moment.”
- Referring to Jesus, the expression “his hour had come” could be translated as, “the time had come for him to” or “the appointed time for him had come.”

Bible References:

- Acts 02:15
- John 04:51-52
- Luke 23:44
- Matthew 20:03

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8160, G5610

(Go back to: [Mark 14:37](#); [15:25](#); [15:33](#); [15:34](#))

house

Definition:

The term "house" refers to a small building, shelter, or tent, usually the place where a family sleeps. The term is often used figuratively in the Bible to mean various concepts such as "household" or "descendants," etc.

- Sometimes the term "house" means "household," referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Sometimes the term "house" means "family" or "descendants," referring to all the people related to or descended from a particular person. For example, the phrase "house of David" refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms "house of God" and "house of Yahweh" refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to a central place where Yahweh was worshipped.
- The phrase "house of Israel" can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, "house" could be translated as "household" or "people" or "family" or "descendants" or "temple" or "dwelling place."
- The phrase "house of David" could be translated as "clan of David" or "family of David" or "descendants of David." Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate "house of Israel" could include "people of Israel" or "Israel's descendants" or "Israelites."
- The phrase "house of Yahweh" could be translated as "Yahweh's temple" or "place where Yahweh is worshipped" or "place where Yahweh meets with his people" or "where Yahweh dwells." The phrase "house of God" could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: [David](#), descendant, [house of God](#), [household](#), kingdom of Israel, [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:42
- Acts 07:49
- Genesis 39:04
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 08:39
- Matthew 10:06
- Matthew 15:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1005, G3609, G3613, G3614, G3624

(Go back to: [Mark 1:29](#); [2:1](#); [2:11](#); [2:15](#); [2:26](#); [3:20](#); [3:25](#); [3:27](#); [5:19](#); [5:38](#); [6:10](#); [7:17](#); [7:24](#); [7:30](#); [8:3](#); [8:26](#); [9:28](#); [9:33](#); [10:10](#); [10:29](#); [10:30](#); [11:17](#); [12:40](#); [13:15](#); [13:34](#); [13:35](#); [14:3](#))

house of God, Yahweh's house

Definition:

In the Bible, the phrases “house of God” (God’s house) and “house of Yahweh (Yahweh’s house) refer to a place where God is worshiped.

- This term is also used more specifically to refer to the tabernacle or the temple.
- Sometimes “God’s house” is used to refer to the people of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a place of worship, this term could be translated as “a house for worshiping God” or “a place for worshiping God.”
- If it is referring to the temple or tabernacle, this could be translated as “the temple (or tabernacle) where God is worshiped (or “where God is present” or “where God meets with his people.”)
- The word “house” may be important to use in the translation in order to communicate that God “dwells” there, that is, his spirit is in that place to meet with his people and to be worshiped by them.

(See also: [people of God](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 03:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 23:8-9
- Ezra 05:13
- Genesis 28:17
- Judges 18:30-31
- Mark 02:26
- Matthew 12:04

Word Data:

- Strong's: H426, H430, H1004, H1005, H3068, G2316, G3624

(Go back to: [Mark 2:26](#))

household

Definition:

The term “household” refers to all the people who live together in a house, including family members and all their servants.

- Managing a household would involve directing the servants and also taking care of the property.
- Sometimes “household” can refer figuratively to the whole family line of someone, especially his descendants.

(See also: [house](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:10
- Galatians 06:10
- Genesis 07:01
- Genesis 34:19
- John 04:53
- Matthew 10:25
- Matthew 10:36
- Philippians 04:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H5657, G2322, G3609, G3614, G3615, G3616, G3623, G3624

(Go back to: [Mark 6:4](#))

hypocrite, hypocrisy

Definition:

The term “hypocrite” refers to a person who does things to appear righteous, but who secretly is acting in evil ways. The term “hypocrisy” refers to the behavior that deceives people into thinking a person is righteous.

- Hypocrites want to be seen doing good things so that people will think that they are good people.
- Often a hypocrite will criticize other people for doing the same sinful things that they themselves do.
- Jesus called the Pharisees hypocrites because although they acted religiously like wearing certain clothes and eating certain foods, they were not kind or fair to people.
- A hypocrite points out faults in other people, but doesn't admit his own faults.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages have an expression like “two-faced” that refers to a hypocrite or a hypocrite's actions.
- Other ways to translate “hypocrite” could include “fraud” or “pretender” or “arrogant, deceitful person.”
- The term “hypocrisy” could be translated by, “deception” or “fake actions” or “pretending.”

Bible References:

- Galatians 02:13
- Luke 06:41-42
- Luke 12:54-56
- Luke 13:15
- Mark 07:6-7
- Matthew 06:1-2
- Romans 12:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H120, H2611, H2612, G505, G5272, G5273

(Go back to: [Mark 7:6](#); [12:15](#))

image, carved image, cast metal images, figure, carved figure, statue

Definition:

These terms are all used to refer to idols that have been made for worshiping a false god. In the context of worshiping idols, the term “image” is a shortened form of “carved image.”

- A “carved image” or “carved figure” is a wooden object that has been made to look like an animal, person, or thing.
- A “cast metal figure” is an object or statue created by melting metal and pouring it into a mold that is in the shape of an object, animal, or person.
- These wooden and metal objects were used in the worship of false gods.
- The term “image” when referring to an idol could either refer to a wooden or metal idol.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to an idol, the term “image” could also be translated as “statue” or “engraved idol” or “carved religious object.”
- It may be more clear in some languages to always use a descriptive word with this term, such as “carved image” or “cast metal figure,” even in places where only the term “image” or “figure” is in the original text.
- Make sure it is clear that this term is different than the term used to refer to being in the image of God.

(See also: false god, [God](#), false god, image of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:9-10
- Acts 07:43
- Isaiah 21:8-9
- Matthew 22:21
- Romans 01:23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H457, H1544, H2553, H4541, H4676, H4853, H4906, H5257, H5262, H5566, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6754, H6755, H6816, H8403, H8544, H8655, G1504, G5179

(Go back to: [Mark 12:16](#))

inherit, inheritance, heir

Definition:

The term "inherit" refers to receiving something valuable from a parent after the parent(s) die. The term can also refer to receiving something valuable from some other person because of a special relationship with that person. An "inheritance" is the thing(s) that is received, and an "heir" is a person who receives an inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term "inherit" could be translated might include "receive" or "possess" or "come into possession of."
- Ways to translate "inheritance" could include "promised gift" or "secure possession."
- The term "heir" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "privileged child who receives the father's possessions."
- The term "heritage" could be translated as "inherited blessings."

(See also: [heir](#), Canaan, Promised Land)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:09
- 1 Peter 01:04
- 2 Samuel 21:03
- Acts 07:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16
- Galatians 05:21
- Genesis 15:07
- Hebrews 09:15
- Jeremiah 02:07
- Luke 15:11
- Matthew 19:29
- Psalm 079:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:06** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**."
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?"
- **35:03** "There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, 'Father, I want my **inheritance** now!' So the father divided his property between the two sons."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G2816, G2817, G2819, G2820

(Go back to: [Mark 10:17](#); [12:7](#))

instruct, instruction, instructors

Facts:

The terms “instruct” and “instruction” refer to giving specific directions about what to do.

- To “give instructions” means to tell someone specifically what he is supposed to do.
- When Jesus gave the disciples the bread and fish to distribute to the people, he gave them specific instructions about how to do it.
- Depending on the context, the term “instruct” could also be translated as “tell” or “direct” or “teach” or “give instructions to.”
- The term “instructions” could be translated as “directions” or “explanations” or “what he has told you to do.”
- When God gives instructions, this term is sometimes translated as “commands” or “orders.”

(See also: [command](#), decree, [teach](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 14:04
- Genesis 26:05
- Hebrews 11:22
- Matthew 10:05
- Matthew 11:01
- Proverbs 01:30

Word Data:

- Strong's: H241, H376, H559, H631, H1004, H1696, H1697, H3256, H3289, H3384, H4148, H4156, H4687, H4931, H4941, H6098, H6310, H6490, H6680, H7919, H8451, G1256, G1299, G1319, G1321, G1378, G1781, G1785, G2727, G2753, G3559, G3560, G3811, G3852, G3853, G4264, G4367, G4822

(Go back to: [Mark 5:43](#); [7:36](#); [8:15](#))

interpret, interpretation, interpreter

Facts:

The terms “interpret” and “interpretation” refer to understanding and explaining the meaning of something that is not clear.

- Often in the Bible these terms are used in connection with explaining the meaning of dreams or visions.
- When the king of Babylon had some confusing dreams, God helped Daniel to interpret them and to explain their meanings.
- The “interpretation” of the dream is the “explanation” of the meaning of the dream.
- In the Old Testament, God sometimes used dreams to reveal to people what would happen in the future. So the interpretations of those dreams were prophecies.
- The term “interpret” can also refer to figuring out the meaning of other things, such as figuring out what the weather will be like based on how cold or hot it is, how windy it is, and what the sky looks like.
- Ways to translate the term “interpret” could include, “figure out the meaning of” or “explain” or “give the meaning of.”
- The term “interpretation” could also be translated as “explanation” or “meaning.”

(See also: Babylon, Daniel, dream, [prophet](#), vision)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:10
- Daniel 04:4-6
- Genesis 40:4-5
- Judges 07:15-16
- Luke 12:56

Word Data:

- Strong's: H995, H3887, H6591, H6622, H6623, H7667, H7760, H7922, G1252, G1328, G1329, G1381, G1955, G2058, G3177, G4793

(Go back to: [Mark 5:41](#); [15:22](#); [15:34](#))

Isaac

Facts:

Isaac was the only son of Abraham and Sarah. God had promised to give them a son even though they were very old.

- The name “Isaac” means “he laughs.” When God told Abraham that Sarah would give birth to a son, Abraham laughed because they were both very old. Some time later, Sarah also laughed when she heard this news.
- But God fulfilled his promise and Isaac was born to Abraham and Sarah in their old age.
- God told Abraham that the covenant he had made with Abraham would also be for Isaac and his descendants forever.
- When Isaac was a youth, God tested Abraham’s faith by commanding him to sacrifice Isaac.
- Isaac’s son Jacob had twelve sons whose descendants later became the twelve tribes of the nation of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), descendant, [eternity](#), [fulfill](#), [Jacob](#), Sarah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:28-29
- Genesis 25:9-11
- Genesis 25:19
- Genesis 26:1
- Genesis 26:08
- Genesis 28:1-2
- Genesis 31:18
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:04** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of promise. Name him **Isaac**.”
- **05:06** When **Isaac** was a young man, God tested Abraham’s faith by saying, “Take **Isaac**, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **05:09** God had provided the ram to be the sacrifice instead of **Isaac**.
- **06:01** When Abraham was very old and his son, **Isaac**, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, **Isaac**.
- **06:05** **Isaac** prayed for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **07:10** Then **Isaac** died, and Jacob and Esau buried him. The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to **Isaac** now passed on to Jacob.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3327, H3446, G2464

(Go back to: [Mark 12:26](#))

Isaiah

Facts:

Isaiah was a prophet of God who prophesied during the reigns of four kings of Judah: Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah.

- He lived in Jerusalem during the time when the Assyrians were attacking the city, during the reign of Hezekiah.
- The Old Testament book of Isaiah is one of the major books of the Bible.
- Isaiah wrote many prophecies that came true while he was still living.
- Isaiah is especially known for the prophecies he wrote about the Messiah that came true 700 years later when Jesus was living on earth.
- Jesus and his disciples quoted Isaiah's prophecies to teach people about the Messiah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ahaz, Assyria, [Christ](#), Hezekiah, Jotham, Judah, [prophet](#), Uzziah)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:1-3
- Acts 28:26
- Isaiah 01:1
- Luke 03:4
- Mark 01:01
- Mark 07:06
- Matthew 03:03
- Matthew 04:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:09** The prophet **Isaiah** prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **21:10** The prophet **Isaiah** said the Messiah would live in Galilee, comfort broken-hearted people, and proclaim freedom to captives and release to prisoners.
- **21:11** The prophet **Isaiah** also prophesied that the Messiah would be hated without reason and rejected.
- **21:12** **Isaiah** prophesied that people would spit on, mock, and beat the Messiah.
- **26:02** They handed him (Jesus) the scroll of the prophet **Isaiah** so that he would read from it. Jesus opened up the scroll and read part of it to the people.
- **45:08** When Philip approached the chariot, he heard the Ethiopian reading from what the prophet **Isaiah** wrote.
- **45:10** Philip explained to the Ethiopian that **Isaiah** was writing about Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3470, G2268

(Go back to: [Mark 1:2; 7:6](#))

Israel, Israelite, Jacob

Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac and Rebekah.

- Jacob's name means "he grabs the heel" which is an expression meaning "he deceives." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which means "he struggles with God."
- Jacob was clever and deceptive. He found ways to take the firstborn blessing and inheritance rights from his older brother, Esau.
- Esau was angry and planned to kill him so Jacob left his homeland. But years later Jacob returned with his wives and children to the land of Canaan where Esau was living, and their families lived peacefully near each other.
- Jacob had twelve sons. Their descendants became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- A different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Canaan, [deceive](#), Esau, [Isaac](#), [Israel](#), Rebekah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:11
- Acts 07:46
- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 29:1-3
- Genesis 32:1-2
- John 04:4-5
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **07:01** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **07:07** **Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **07:08** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- **07:10** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- **08:01** Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3290, G2384

(Go back to: [Mark 12:26](#))

Israel, Israelites

Facts:

The term "Israel" is the name that God gave to Jacob. The name means "he struggles with God."

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the "people of Israel" or the "nation of Israel" or the "Israelites."
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called "Judah," and the northern kingdom, called "Israel."
- Often the term "Israel" can be translated as "the people of Israel" or "the nation of Israel," depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), kingdom of Israel, Judah, [nation](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:01
- 1 Kings 08:02
- Acts 02:36
- Acts 07:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 02:06
- Matthew 27:09
- Philippians 03:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **09:03** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **09:05** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **10:01** They said, "This is what the God of **Israel** says, 'Let my people go!'"
- **14:12** But despite all this, the people of *Israel* complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **15:09** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** *its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave Israel* peace along all its borders.
- **16:16** So God punished *Israel* again for worshipping idols.
- **43:06** "Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G935, G2474, G2475

(Go back to: [Mark 12:29](#); [15:32](#))

it is written

Definition:

The phrase “as it is written” or “what is written” occurs frequently in the New Testament and usually refers to commands or prophecies that were written in the Hebrew scriptures.

- Sometimes “as it is written” refers to what was written in the Law of Moses.
- Other times it is a quote from what one of the prophets wrote in the Old Testament.
- This could be translated “as it is written in the Law of Moses” or “as the prophets wrote long ago” or “what it says in God’s laws that Moses wrote down long ago”.
- Another option is to keep “It is written” and give a footnote that explains what this means.

(See also: [command](#), [law](#), [prophet](#), [word of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 05:13-15
- Acts 13:29
- Exodus 32:15-16
- John 21:25
- Luke 03:4
- Mark 09:12
- Matthew 04:06
- Revelation 01:03

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3789, G1125

(Go back to: [Mark 1:2](#); [7:6](#); [9:12](#); [9:13](#); [10:5](#); [11:17](#); [12:19](#); [14:21](#); [14:27](#))

James (son of Alphaeus)

Facts:

James, the son of Alphaeus, was one of Jesus' twelve apostles.

- His name is given in the lists of Jesus' disciples in the gospels of Matthew, Mark, and Luke.
- He is also mentioned in the book of Acts as one of the eleven disciples who were together praying in Jerusalem after Jesus went back up to heaven.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [disciple](#), James (brother of Jesus), [James \(son of Zebedee\)](#), [the twelve](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 01:12-14
- Luke 06:14-16
- Mark 03:17-19
- Mark 14:32-34
- Matthew 10:2-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2385

(Go back to: [Mark 3:18](#))

James (son of Zebedee)

Facts:

James, a son of Zebedee, was one of Jesus' twelve apostles. He had a younger brother named John who was also one of Jesus' apostles.

- James and his brother John worked by fishing with their father Zebedee.
- James and John were nicknamed the "Sons of Thunder," perhaps because they got angry quickly.
- Peter, James, and John were Jesus' closest disciples and were with him for amazing events such as when Jesus was on a mountaintop with Elijah and Moses and when Jesus caused a dead little girl to come back to life.
- This is a different James than the one who wrote a book in the Bible. Some languages may have to write their names differently to make it clear that they were two different men.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [Elijah](#), James (brother of Jesus), [James \(son of Alphaeus\)](#), [Moses](#))

Bible References:

- Luke 09:28-29
- Mark 01:19-20
- Mark 01:29-31
- Mark 03:17
- Matthew 04:21-22
- Matthew 17:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2385

(Go back to: [Mark 1:19](#); [1:29](#); [3:17](#); [5:37](#); [9:2](#); [10:35](#); [10:41](#); [13:3](#); [14:33](#))

Jericho

Facts:

Jericho was a powerful city in the land of Canaan. It was located just west of the Jordan River and just north of the Salt Sea.

- As all Canaanites did, the people of Jericho worshiped false gods.
- Jericho was the first city in the land of Canaan that God told the Israelites to conquer.
- When Joshua led the Israelites against Jericho, God did a great miracle to help them defeat the city.

(See also: Canaan, [Jordan River](#), Joshua, [miracle](#), Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:78
- Joshua 02:1-3
- Joshua 07:2-3
- Luke 18:35
- Mark 10:46-48
- Matthew 20:29-31
- Numbers 22:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:01** Joshua sent two spies to the Canaanite city of **Jericho**.
- **15:03** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of **Jericho**.
- **15:05** Then the walls around **Jericho** fell down! The Israelites destroyed everything in the city as God had commanded.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3405, G2410

(Go back to: [Mark 10:46](#))

Jerusalem

Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

- The name "Jerusalem" is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include "Salem" "city of Jebus," and "Zion." Both "Jerusalem" and "Salem," have the root meaning of "peace."
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called "Zion" which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- It was in Jerusalem that David's son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going "up" to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: Babylon, [Christ](#), [David](#), Jebusites, [Jesus](#), Solomon, [temple](#), Zion)

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:26-27
- John 02:13
- Luke 04:9-11
- Luke 13:05
- Mark 03:7-8
- Mark 03:20-22
- Matthew 03:06
- Matthew 04:23-25
- Matthew 20:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:05** David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- **18:02** In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **20:07** They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.
- **38:01** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- **38:02** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere."
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3389, H3390, G2414, G2415, G2419

(Go back to: [Mark 1:5](#); [3:8](#); [3:22](#); [7:1](#); [10:32](#); [10:33](#); [11:1](#); [11:11](#); [11:15](#); [11:27](#); [15:41](#))

Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

Facts:

Jesus is God's Son. The name "Jesus" means "Yahweh saves." The term "Christ" is a title that means "anointed one" and is another word for Messiah.

- The two names are often combined as "Jesus Christ" or "Christ Jesus." These names emphasize that God's Son is the Messiah, who came to save people from being punished eternally for their sins.
- In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His mother was told by an angel to call him "Jesus" because he was destined to save people from their sins.
- Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many languages "Jesus" and "Christ" are spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesucristo," "Jezus Christus," "Yesus Kristus", and "Hesukristo" are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
- For the term "Christ," some translators may prefer to use only some form of the term "Messiah" throughout.
- Also consider how these names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [God](#), [God the Father](#), [high priest](#), [kingdom of God](#), [Mary](#), [Savior](#), [Son of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:11
- 1 John 02:02
- 1 John 04:15
- 1 Timothy 01:02
- 2 Peter 01:02
- 2 Thessalonians 02:15
- 2 Timothy 01:10
- Acts 02:23
- Acts 05:30
- Acts 10:36
- Hebrews 09:14
- Hebrews 10:22
- Luke 24:20
- Matthew 01:21
- Matthew 04:03
- Philippians 02:05
- Philippians 02:10
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 01:06

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:04** The angel said, "You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him **Jesus** and he will be the Messiah."
- **23:02** "Name him **Jesus** (which means, 'Yahweh saves'), because he will save the people from their sins."
- **24:07** So John baptized him (Jesus), even though **Jesus** had never sinned.
- **24:09** There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw **Jesus** the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized **Jesus**.

- **25:08 Jesus** did not give in to Satan's temptations, so Satan left him.
- **26:08** Then **Jesus** went throughout the region of Galilee, and large crowds came to him. They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and **Jesus** healed them.
- **31:03** Then **Jesus** finished praying and went to the disciples. He walked on top of the water across the lake toward their boat!
- **38:02** He (Judas) knew that the Jewish leaders denied that **Jesus** was the Messiah and that they were plotting to kill him.
- **40:08** Through his death, **Jesus** opened a way for people to come to God.
- **42:11** Then **Jesus** was taken up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight. **Jesus** sat down at the right hand of God to rule over all things.
- **50:17 Jesus** and his people will live on the new earth, and he will reign forever over everything that exists. He will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death. **Jesus** will rule his kingdom with peace and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2424, G5547

(Go back to: [Mark 1:1](#); [1:9](#); [1:14](#); [1:17](#); [1:24](#); [1:25](#); [2:5](#); [2:8](#); [2:15](#); [2:17](#); [2:19](#); [3:7](#); [5:6](#); [5:7](#); [5:15](#); [5:20](#); [5:21](#); [5:27](#); [5:30](#); [5:36](#); [6:4](#); [6:30](#); [8:17](#); [8:27](#); [9:2](#); [9:4](#); [9:5](#); [9:8](#); [9:23](#); [9:25](#); [9:27](#); [9:39](#); [10:5](#); [10:14](#); [10:18](#); [10:21](#); [10:23](#); [10:24](#); [10:27](#); [10:29](#); [10:32](#); [10:38](#); [10:39](#); [10:42](#); [10:47](#); [10:49](#); [10:50](#); [10:51](#); [10:52](#); [11:6](#); [11:7](#); [11:22](#); [11:29](#); [11:33](#); [12:17](#); [12:24](#); [12:29](#); [12:34](#); [12:35](#); [13:2](#); [13:5](#); [14:6](#); [14:18](#); [14:27](#); [14:30](#); [14:48](#); [14:53](#); [14:55](#); [14:60](#); [14:62](#); [14:67](#); [14:72](#); [15:1](#); [15:5](#); [15:15](#); [15:34](#); [15:37](#); [15:43](#); [16:6](#))

Jew, Jewish

Facts:

Jews are people who are descendants of Abraham's grandson Jacob. The word "Jew" comes from the word "Judah."

- People began to call the Israelites "Jews" after they returned to Judah from their exile in Babylon.
- Jesus the Messiah was Jewish. However, the Jewish religious leaders rejected Jesus and demanded that he be killed.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), Babylon, Jewish leaders)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:05
- Acts 10:28
- Acts 14:5-7
- Colossians 03:11
- John 02:14
- Matthew 28:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:11** The Israelites were now called **Jews** and most of them had lived their whole lives in Babylon.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of **Jews** returned to the city of Jerusalem in Judah.
- **37:10** Many of the **Jews** believed in Jesus because of this miracle.
- **37:11** But the religious leaders of the **Jews** were jealous, so they gathered together to plan how they could kill Jesus and Lazarus.
- **40:02** Pilate commanded that they write, "King of the **Jews**" on a sign and put it on the cross above Jesus' head.
- **46:06** Right away, Saul began preaching to the **Jews** in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3054, H3061, H3062, H3064, H3066, G2450, G2451, G2452, G2453, G2454

(Go back to: [Mark 7:3](#); [15:2](#); [15:9](#); [15:12](#); [15:18](#); [15:26](#))

John (the apostle)

Facts:

John was one of Jesus' twelve apostles and one of Jesus' closest friends.

- John and his brother James were sons of a fisherman named Zebedee.
- In the gospel that he wrote about Jesus' life, John referred to himself as "the disciple whom Jesus loved." This seems to indicate that John was an especially close friend of Jesus.
- The Apostle John wrote five New Testament books: the gospel of John, the Revelation of Jesus Christ, and three letters written to other believers.
- Note that the Apostle John was a different person than John the Baptist.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [reveal](#), [James \(son of Zebedee\)](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [Zebedee](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 02:9-10
- John 01:19-21
- Mark 03:17-19
- Matthew 04:21-22
- Revelation 01:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **36:01** One day, Jesus took three of his disciples, Peter, James, and **John** with him. (The disciple named **John** was not the same person who baptized Jesus.) They went up on a high mountain by themselves.\
- **44:01** One day, Peter and **John** were going to the Temple. As they approached the Temple gate, they saw a crippled man who was begging for money.\
- **44:06** The leaders of the Temple were very upset by what Peter and **John** were saying. So they arrested them and put them into prison.\
- **44:07** The next day, the Jewish leaders brought Peter and **John** to the high priest and the other religious leaders. They asked Peter and **John**, "By what power did you heal this crippled man?"\
- **44:09** The leaders were shocked that Peter and **John** spoke so boldly because they could see that these men were ordinary men who were uneducated. But then they remembered that these men had been with Jesus. After they threatened Peter and **John**, they let them go.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2491

(Go back to: [Mark 1:19](#); [1:29](#); [3:17](#); [5:37](#); [9:2](#); [9:38](#); [10:35](#); [10:41](#); [13:3](#); [14:33](#))

John (the Baptist)

Facts:

John was the son of Zechariah and Elizabeth. Since “John” was a common name, he is often called “John the Baptist” to distinguish him from the other people named John, such as the Apostle John.

- John was the prophet whom God sent to prepare people to believe in and follow the Messiah.
- John told people to confess their sins, turn to God, and stop sinning, so that they would be ready to receive the Messiah.
- John baptized many people in water as a sign that they were sorry for their sins and were turning away from them.
- John was called “John the Baptist” because he baptized many people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [baptize](#), Zechariah (NT))

Bible References:

- John 03:22-24
- Luke 01:11-13
- Luke 01:62-63
- Luke 03:7
- Luke 03:15-16
- Luke 07:27-28
- Matthew 03:13
- Matthew 11:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:02** The angel said to Zechariah, “Your wife will have a son. You will name him **John**. He will be filled with the Holy Spirit, and will prepare the people for Messiah!”
- **22:07** After Elizabeth gave birth to her baby boy, Zechariah and Elizabeth named the baby **John**, as the angel had commanded.
- **24:01 John**, the son of Zechariah and Elizabeth, grew up and became a prophet. He lived in the wilderness, ate wild honey and locusts, and wore clothes made from camel hair.
- **24:02** Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to **John**. He preached to them, saying, “Repent, for the kingdom of God is near!”
- **24:06** The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by **John**. When **John** saw him, he said, “Look! There is the Lamb of God who will take away the sin of the world.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: G910 G2491

(Go back to: [Mark 1:4](#); [1:6](#); [1:9](#); [1:14](#); [2:18](#); [6:14](#); [6:16](#); [6:17](#); [6:18](#); [6:20](#); [6:24](#); [6:25](#); [8:28](#); [11:30](#); [11:32](#))

Jordan River, Jordan

Facts:

The Jordan River is a river that flows from north to south, and forms the eastern boundary of the land that was called Canaan.

- Today, the Jordan River separates Israel on its west from Jordan on its east.
- The Jordan River flows through the Sea of Galilee and then empties into the Dead Sea.
- When Joshua led the Israelites into Canaan, they had to cross the Jordan River. It was too deep to cross normally, but God miraculously stopped the river from flowing so they could walk across the river bed.
- Often in the Bible the Jordan River is referred to as “the Jordan.”

(See also: Canaan, Salt Sea, [Sea of Galilee](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 32:9-10
- John 01:26-28
- John 03:25-26
- Luke 03:3
- Matthew 03:06
- Matthew 03:13-15
- Matthew 04:14-16
- Matthew 19:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:02** The Israelites had to cross the **Jordan River** to enter into the Promised Land.
- **15:03** After the people crossed the **Jordan River**, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.
- **19:14** Elisha told him (Naaman) to dip himself seven times in the **Jordan River**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3383, G2446

(Go back to: [Mark 1:5](#); [1:9](#); [3:8](#); [10:1](#))

joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing

Definition:

joy

The term "joy" refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term "joyful" describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

rejoice

The term "rejoice" means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as "be very happy" or "be very glad" or "be full of joy."
- When Mary said "my soul rejoices in God my Savior," she meant "God my Savior has made me very happy" or "I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "joy" could also be translated as "gladness" or "delight" or "great happiness."
- The phrase, "be joyful" could be translated as "rejoice" or "be very glad" or it could be translated "be very happy in God's goodness."
- A person who is joyful could be described as "very happy" or "delighted" or "deeply glad."
- A phrase such as "make a joyful shout" could be translated as "shout in a way that shows you are very happy."
- A "joyful city" or "joyful house" could be translated as "city where joyful people live" or "house full of joyful people" or "city whose people are very happy." (See: [metonymy](#))

Bible References:

- Nehemiah 08:10
- Psalm 048:02
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 02:9-10
- Luke 15:07
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 03:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 05:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 05:23
- Philippians 04:10-13
- 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 05:16
- Philemon 01:4-7

- James 01:02
- 3 John 01:1-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:07** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with **joy**."
- **34:04** "The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- **41:07** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G20, G21, G2165, G2167, G2744, G4640, G4796, G4913, G5463, G5479

(Go back to: [Mark 4:16](#); [14:11](#))

Judas Iscariot

Facts:

Judas Iscariot was one of Jesus' apostles. He was the one who betrayed Jesus to the Jewish leaders.

- The name "Iscariot" may mean "from Kerioth," perhaps indicating that Judas grew up in that city.
- Judas Iscariot managed the apostles' money and regularly stole some of it to use for himself.
- Judas betrayed Jesus by telling the religious leaders where Jesus was so they could arrest him.
- After the religious leaders condemned Jesus to die, Judas regretted that he had betrayed Jesus, so he gave the betrayal money back to the Jewish leaders and then killed himself.
- Another apostle was also named Judas, as was one of Jesus' brothers. Jesus' brother was also known as "Jude."

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [betray](#), Jewish leaders, Judas the son of James)

Bible References:

- Luke 06:14-16
- Luke 22:47-48
- Mark 03:19
- Mark 14:10-11
- Matthew 26:23-25

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **38:02** One of Jesus' disciples was a man named **Judas**. ... After Jesus and the disciples arrived in Jerusalem, **Judas** went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **38:03** The Jewish leaders, led by the high priest, paid **Judas** thirty silver coins to betray Jesus.
- **38:14** **Judas** came with the Jewish leaders, soldiers, and a large crowd. They were all carrying swords and clubs. **Judas** came to Jesus and said, "Greetings, teacher," and kissed him.
- **39:08** Meanwhile, **Judas**, the betrayer, saw that the Jewish leaders had condemned Jesus to die. He became full of sorrow and went away and killed himself.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2455, G2469

(Go back to: [Mark 3:19](#); [14:10](#); [14:43](#))

Judea

Facts:

The term “Judea” refers to an area of land in ancient Israel. It is sometimes used in a narrow sense and other times in a broad sense.

- Sometimes “Judea” is used in a narrow sense to refer only to the province located in the southern part of ancient Israel just west of the Dead Sea. Some translations call this province “Judah.”
- Other times “Judea” has a broad sense and refers to all the provinces of ancient Israel, including Galilee, Samaria, Perea, Idumea and Judea (Judah).
- If translators want to make the distinction clear, the broad sense of Judea could be translated as “Judea Country” and the narrow sense could be translated as “Judea Province,” or “Judah Province” since this is the part of ancient Israel where the tribe of Judah had originally lived.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Galilee](#), [Edom](#), [Judah](#), [Judah](#), [Samaria](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14
- Acts 02:09
- Acts 09:32
- Acts 12:19
- John 03:22-24
- Luke 01:05
- Luke 04:44
- Luke 05:17
- Mark 10:1-4
- Matthew 02:01
- Matthew 02:05
- Matthew 02:22-23
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 19:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2453

(Go back to: [Mark 1:5](#); [3:7](#); [10:1](#); [13:14](#))

kin, kinfolk, kindred, kinsman

Definition:

The term “kin” refers to a person’s blood relatives, considered as a group. The word “kinsman” refers specifically to a male relative.

- “Kin” can only refer to a person’s close relatives, such as parents and siblings, or it can also include more distant relatives, such as an aunts, uncles, or cousins.
- In ancient Israel, if a man died, his nearest male relative was expected to marry his widow, manage his property, and help carry on his family name. This relative was called a “kinsman-redeemer.”
- This term “kin” could also be translated as, “relative” or “family member.”

Bible References:

- Romans 16:9-11
- Ruth 02:20
- Ruth 03:09

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H251, H1350, H4129, H4130, H7138, H7607, G4773

(Go back to: [Mark 6:4](#))

kind [NOT kindness]

Definition:

The term “kind” refers to a group or classification of something(s) that share some common characteristics but not all characteristics.

- In the Bible, this term is specifically used to refer to the distinctive kinds of plants and animals that God made when he created the world.
- Often there are many different variations or species within each “kind.” For example, horses, zebras, and donkeys are all members of the same “kind,” but they are different species.
- The main thing that distinguishes each “kind” as a separate group is that members of that group can reproduce more of their same “kind.” Members of different kinds cannot do that with each other.

Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate this term could include “type” or “class” or “group” or “animal (plant) group” or “category.”

Bible References:

- Genesis 01:21
- Genesis 01:24
- Mark 09:29
- Matthew 13:47

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2178, H3978, H4327, G1085, G5449

(Go back to: [Mark 9:29](#))

King of the Jews

Definition:

The term “King of the Jews” is a title that refers to Jesus, the Messiah.

- The first time the Bible records this title is when it was used by the wise men who traveled to Bethlehem looking for the baby who was “King of the Jews.”
- The angel revealed to Mary that her son, a descendant of King David, would be a king whose reign would last forever.
- Before Jesus was crucified, Roman soldiers mockingly called Jesus “King of the Jews.” This title was also written on a piece of wood and nailed to the top of Jesus’ cross.
- Jesus truly is the King of the Jews and the king over all creation.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “King of the Jews” could also be translated as “king over the Jews” or “king who rules over the Jews” or “supreme ruler of the Jews.”
- Check to see how the phrase “king of” is translated in other places in the translation.

(See also: descendant, [Jew](#), [Jesus](#), [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingdom of God](#), wise men)

Bible References:

- Luke 23:03
- Luke 23:38
- Matthew 02:02
- Matthew 27:11
- Matthew 27:35-37

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:09** Some time later, wise men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky. They realized it meant a new **king of the Jews** was born.
- **39:09** Pilate asked Jesus, “Are you the **King of the Jews**?”
- **39:12** The Roman soldiers whipped Jesus and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they mocked him by saying, “Look, the **King of the Jews**!”
- **40:02** Pilate commanded that they write, “**King of the Jews**” on a sign and put it on the cross above Jesus’ head.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G935, G2453

(Go back to: [Mark 15:2](#); [15:9](#); [15:12](#); [15:18](#); [15:26](#))

king, kingdom, kingship

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a particular group of people or a particular region of land (or both).

- In biblical times, a king was usually chosen to rule on the basis of family relation to the previous king(s). When a king died, usually his oldest son became the next king.
- The Bible often refers to God as a king who rules over the entire universe (in a general sense) and over his people (in a specific sense).
- The New Testament refers to Jesus as a king in various ways, including: “king of the Jews;” “king of Israel;” and “king of kings.”
- Depending on the context, the term “king” might also be translated as “supreme chief” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” might be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: [authority](#), [Herod Antipas](#), [kingdom](#), [kingdom of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 06:15-16
- 2 Kings 05:18
- 2 Samuel 05:03
- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 13:22
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 01:05
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 05:35
- Matthew 14:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:06** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **16:01** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **17:05** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **21:06** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4427, H4428, H4430, G935, G936

(Go back to: [Mark 6:14](#); [6:22](#); [6:25](#); [6:26](#); [6:27](#); [13:9](#); [15:2](#); [15:9](#); [15:12](#); [15:18](#); [15:26](#); [15:32](#))

kingdom

Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase “kingdom of light” could be translated as “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), [kingdom of God](#), kingdom of Israel, Judah, Judah, [priest](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:12
- 2 Timothy 04:17-18
- Colossians 01:13-14
- John 18:36
- Mark 03:24
- Matthew 04:7-9
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 16:28
- Revelation 01:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon’s death.
- **18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **18:08** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G932

(Go back to: [Mark 1:15](#); [3:24](#); [4:11](#); [4:26](#); [4:30](#); [6:23](#); [9:1](#); [9:47](#); [10:14](#); [10:15](#); [10:23](#); [10:24](#); [10:25](#); [11:10](#); [12:34](#); [13:8](#); [14:25](#); [15:43](#))

kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven

Definition:

The terms “kingdom of God” and “kingdom of heaven” both refer to God’s rule and authority over his people and over all creation.

- The Jews often used the term “heaven” to refer to God, to avoid saying his name directly. (See: [metonymy](#))
- In the New Testament book that Matthew wrote, he referred to God’s kingdom as “the kingdom of heaven,” probably because he was writing primarily for a Jewish audience.
- The kingdom of God refers to God ruling people spiritually as well as ruling over the physical world.
- The Old Testament prophets said that God would send the Messiah to rule with righteousness. Jesus, the Son of God, is the Messiah who will rule over God’s kingdom forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “kingdom of God” can be translated as “God’s rule (as king)” or “when God reigns as king” or “God’s rule over everything.”
- The term “kingdom of heaven” could also be translated as “God’s rule from heaven as king” or “God in heaven reigning” or “heaven’s reign” or “heaven ruling over everything.” If it is not possible to translate this simply and clearly, the phrase “kingdom of God” could be translated instead.
- Some translators may prefer to capitalize “Heaven” to show that it refers to God. Others may include a note in the text, such as “kingdom of heaven (that is, ‘kingdom of God’).”
- A footnote at the bottom of the page of a printed Bible may also be used to explain the meaning of “heaven” in this expression.

(See also: [God](#), [heaven](#), [king](#), [kingdom](#), [King of the Jews](#), [reign](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 01:05
- Acts 08:12-13
- Acts 28:23
- Colossians 04:11
- John 03:03
- Luke 07:28
- Luke 10:09
- Luke 12:31-32
- Matthew 03:02
- Matthew 04:17
- Matthew 05:10
- Romans 14:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:02** He (John) preached to them, saying, “Repent, for the **kingdom of God** is near!”
- **28:06** Then Jesus said to his disciples, “It is extremely hard for rich people to enter into the **kingdom of God**! Yes, it is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter the **kingdom of God**.”
- **29:02** Jesus said, “The **kingdom of God** is like a king who wanted to settle accounts with his servants.”
- **34:01** Jesus told many other stories about the **kingdom of God**. For example, he said, “The **kingdom of God** is like a mustard seed that someone planted in his field.”
- **34:03** Jesus told another story, “The **kingdom of God** is like yeast that a woman mixes into some bread dough until it spreads throughout the dough.”

- **34:04** "The **kingdom of God** is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again."
- **34:05** "The **kingdom of God** is also like a perfect pearl of great value."
- **42:09** He proved to his disciples in many ways that he was alive, and he taught them about the **kingdom of God**.
- **49:05** Jesus said that the **kingdom of God** is more valuable than anything else in the world.
- **50:02** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will preach the good news about the **kingdom of God** to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."

Word Data:

- Strong's: G932, G2316, G3772

(Go back to: [Mark 1:15](#); [4:11](#); [4:26](#); [4:30](#); [9:1](#); [9:47](#); [10:14](#); [10:15](#); [10:23](#); [10:24](#); [10:25](#); [12:34](#); [14:25](#); [15:43](#))

kiss

Definition:

A kiss is an action in which one person puts his lips to another person's lips or face. This term can also be used figuratively.

- Some cultures kiss each other on the cheek as a form of greeting or to say goodbye.
- A kiss can communicate deep love between two people, such as a husband and wife.
- The expression to "kiss someone farewell" means to say goodbye with a kiss.
- Sometimes the word "kiss" is used to mean "say goodbye to." When Elisha said to Elijah, "Let me first go and kiss my father and mother," he wanted to say goodbye to his parents before leaving them to follow Elijah.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:25-28
- Genesis 27:26-27
- Genesis 29:11
- Genesis 31:28
- Genesis 45:15
- Genesis 48:10
- Luke 22:48
- Mark 14:45
- Matthew 26:48

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5390, H5401, G2705, G5368, G5370

(Go back to: [Mark 14:44](#); [14:45](#))

know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Definition:

The term “know” and “knowledge” means generally to understand something or someone. It can also mean to be aware of a fact or to be familiar with a person. The expression “to make known” means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God’s will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as “distinguish.” When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition “between.”
- Some languages have two different words for “know,” one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: [law](#), [reveal](#), [understand](#), [wise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 02:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 02:15
- 2 Peter 01:3-4
- Deuteronomy 04:39-40
- Genesis 19:05
- Luke 01:77

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H3045, H3046, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G50, G56, G1097, G1107, G1108, G1492, G1921, G1922, G1987, G2467, G2589, G4267, G4894

(Go back to: [Mark 1:24; 1:34; 2:8; 2:10; 4:27; 5:29; 5:30; 5:33; 5:43; 6:20; 6:33; 6:38; 6:54; 7:24; 8:17; 9:6; 9:30; 10:19; 10:38; 10:42; 11:33; 12:12; 12:14; 12:15; 12:24; 13:28; 13:29; 13:32; 13:33; 13:35; 14:40; 14:68; 14:71; 15:10; 15:45](#))

labor, laborer, work, hard work

Definition:

The term "labor" refers to doing hard work of any kind.

- In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It is often implied that the task is difficult.
- A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
- In English, the word "labor" is also used for part of the process of giving birth. Other languages may have a completely different word for this.
- Ways to translate "labor" could include "work" or "hard work" or "difficult work" or to "work hard."

(See also: [hard](#), labor pains)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:09
- 1 Thessalonians 03:05
- Galatians 04:10-11
- James 05:04
- John 04:38
- Luke 10:02
- Matthew 10:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3018, H3021, H3022, H3205, H4522, H4639, H5447, H5450, H5647, H5656, H5998, H5999, H6001, H6089, H6468, H6635, G75, G2038, G2040, G2041, G2872, G2873, G4866, G4904

(Go back to: [Mark 14:6](#))

lamp

Definition:

The term “lamp” generally refers to something that produces light. The lamps used in Bible times were usually oil lamps.

The type of lamp that was used in Bible times is a small container with a fuel source, usually oil, that gives light when it burns.

- An ordinary oil lamp usually consisted of a common piece of pottery filled with olive oil, with a wick placed in the oil to burn.
- For some lamps, the pot or jar was oval, with one end pinched close together to hold the wick.
- An oil lamp could be carried or placed on a stand so that its light could fill a room or house.
- In scripture, lamps are used in several figurative ways as symbols of light and life.

(See also: [lampstand](#), [life](#), [light](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:36
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Luke 08:16-18
- Matthew 05:15
- Matthew 06:22
- Matthew 25:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3940, H3974, H4501, H5215, H5216, G2985, G3088

(Go back to: [Mark 4:21](#))

lampstand

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lampstand” generally refers to a structure on which a lamp is placed in order to provide light to a room.

- A simple lampstand usually held one lamp and was made of clay, wood, or metal (such as bronze, silver, or gold.)
- In the Jerusalem temple there was a special gold lampstand which had seven branches for holding seven lamps.

Translation Suggestions

- This term could be also translated as “lamp pedestal” or “structure for holding a lamp” or “lamp holder.”
- For the temple lampstand, this could be translated as “seven-lamp lampstand” or “gold pedestal with seven lamps.”
- It would also be helpful in a translation to include pictures of a simple lampstand and a seven-branch lampstand in the relevant Bible passages.

(See also: bronze, gold, [lamp](#), [light](#), [silver](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- Daniel 05:5-6
- Exodus 37:17
- Mark 04:21-23
- Matthew 05:15-16
- Revelation 01:12-13
- Revelation 01:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4501, G3087

(Go back to: [Mark 4:21](#))

law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law

Definition:

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms "law" and "God's law" are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the "law" can refer to:
 - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
 - all the laws given to Moses
 - the first five books of the Old Testament
 - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as "scriptures" in the New Testament).
 - all of God's instructions and will
- The phrase "the law and the prophets" is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or "Old Testament")

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, "laws," since they refer to many instructions.
- The "law of Moses" could be translated as "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
- Depending on the context, "the law of Moses" could also be translated as "the law that God told to Moses" or "God's laws that Moses wrote down" or "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
- Ways to translate "the law" or "law of God" or "God's laws" could include "laws from God" or "God's commands" or "laws that God gave" or "everything that God commands" or "all of God's instructions."
- The phrase "law of Yahweh" could also be translated as "Yahweh's laws" or "laws that Yahweh said to obey" or "laws from Yahweh" or "things Yahweh commanded."

(See also: [instruct](#), [Moses](#), Ten Commandments, [lawful](#), Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Acts 15:06
- Daniel 09:13
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Ezra 07:25-26
- Galatians 02:15
- Luke 24:44
- Matthew 05:18
- Nehemiah 10:29
- Romans 03:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:07** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.\
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed **God's law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.\
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.\
- **16:01** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God's laws**.\
- **21:05** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.\
- **27:01** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"\

- **28:01** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws.**"\

Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G2316, G3551, G3565

(Go back to: [Introduction to the Gospel of Mark](#); [Mark 3 General Notes](#); [Notes](#))

lawful, unlawful, not lawful, lawless, lawlessness

Definition:

The term “lawful” refers to something that is permitted to be done according to a law or other requirement. The opposite of this is “unlawful,” which simply means “not lawful.”

- In the Bible, something was “lawful” if it was permitted by God’s moral law, or by the Law of Moses and other Jewish laws. Something that was “unlawful” was “not permitted” by those laws.
- To do something “lawfully” means to do it “properly” or “in the right way.”
- Many of the things that the Jewish laws considered lawful or not lawful were not in agreement with God’s laws about loving others.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “lawful” could include “permitted” or “according to God’s law” or “following our laws” or “proper” or “fitting.”
- The phrase “Is it lawful?” could also be translated as “Do our laws allow?” or “Is that something our laws permit?”

The terms “unlawful” and “not lawful” are used to describe actions that break a law.

- In the New Testament, the term “unlawful” is not only used to refer to breaking God’s laws, but also often refers to breaking Jewish man-made laws.
- Over the years, the Jews added to the laws that God gave to them. The Jewish leaders would call something “unlawful” if it did not conform to their man-made laws.
- When Jesus and his disciples were picking grain on a Sabbath day, the Pharisees accused them of doing something “unlawful” because it was breaking the Jewish laws about not working on that day.
- When Peter stated that eating unclean foods was “unlawful” for him, he meant that if he ate those foods he would be breaking the laws God had given the Israelites about not eating certain foods.

The term “lawless” describes a person who does not obey laws or rules. When a country or group of people are in a state of “lawlessness,” there is widespread disobedience, rebellion, or immorality.

- A lawless person is rebellious and does not obey God’s laws.
- The apostle Paul wrote that in the last days there will be a “man of lawlessness,” or a “lawless one,” who will be influenced by Satan to do evil things.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term “unlawful” should be translated using a word or expression that means “not lawful” or “lawbreaking.”
- Other ways to translate “unlawful” could be “not permitted” or “not according to God’s law” or “not conforming to our laws.”
- The expression “against the law” has the same meaning as “unlawful.”
- The term “lawless” could also be translated as “rebellious” or “disobedient” or “law-defying”.
- The term “lawlessness” could be translated as “not obeying any laws” or “rebellion (against God’s laws).”
- The phrase “man of lawlessness” could be translated as “man who does not obey any laws” or “man who rebels against God’s laws.”
- It is important to keep the concept of “law” in this term, if possible.
- Note that the term “unlawful” has a different meaning from this term.

(See also: law, [law](#), [Moses](#), [Sabbath](#))

Bible References:

- Matthew 07:21-23
- Matthew 12:02

- Matthew 12:04
- Matthew 12:10
- Mark 03:04
- Luke 06:02
- Acts 02:23
- Acts 10:28
- Acts 22:25
- 2 Thessalonians 02:03
- Titus 02:14
- 1 John 03:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6530, G111, G113, G266, G458, G459, G1832, G3545

(Go back to: [Mark 2:24](#); [2:26](#); [3:4](#); [6:18](#); [10:2](#); [12:14](#))

leper, leprosy

Definition:

The term “leprosy” is used in the Bible to refer to several different skin diseases. A “leper” is a person who has leprosy. The term “leprous” describes a person or body part that is infected with leprosy.

- Certain kinds of leprosy cause the skin to become discolored with white patches, as when Miriam and Naaman had leprosy.
- In modern times, leprosy often causes hands, feet, and other body parts to become damaged and deformed.
- According to the instructions that God gave to the Israelites, when a person had leprosy, he was considered “unclean” and had to stay away from other people so that they would not become infected with the disease.
- A leper would often call out “unclean” so that others would be warned not to come near him.
- Jesus healed many lepers, and also people who had other kinds of diseases.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “leprosy” in the Bible can be translated as “skin disease” or “dreaded skin disease.”
- Ways to translate “leprous” could include “full of leprosy” or “infected with skin disease” or “covered with skin sores.”

(See also: Miriam, Naaman, [clean](#))

Bible References:

- Luke 05:13
- Luke 17:12
- Mark 01:40
- Mark 14:03
- Matthew 08:03
- Matthew 10:8-10
- Matthew 11:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6879, H6883, G3014, G3015

(Go back to: [Mark 1:40](#); [1:42](#); [14:3](#))

life, live, living, alive

Definition:

The term "life" refers to being physically alive as opposed to being physically dead.

1. Physical life

- A "life" can also refer to an individual person as in "a life was saved".
- Sometimes the word "life" refers to the experience of living as in, "his life was enjoyable."
- It can also refer to a person's lifespan, as in the expression, "the end of his life."
- The term "living" may refer to being physically alive, as in "my mother is still living." It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, "they were living in the city."
- In the Bible, the concept of "life" is often contrasted with the concept of "death."

2. Eternal life

- A person has eternal life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- The opposite of eternal life is eternal death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "life" can be translated as "existence" or "person" or "soul" or "being" or "experience."
- The term "live" could be translated by "dwell" or "reside" or "exist."
- The expression "end of his life" could be translated as "when he stopped living."
- The expression "spared their lives" could be translated as "allowed them to live" or "did not kill them."
- The expression "they risked their lives" could be translated as "they put themselves in danger" or "they did something that could have killed them."
- When the Bible text talks about eternal life, the term "life" could be translated in the following ways: "eternal life" or "God making us alive in our spirits" or "new life by God's Spirit" or "being made alive in our inner self."
- Depending on the context, the expression "give life" could also be translated as "cause to live" or "give eternal life" or "cause to live eternally."

(See also: [death](#), [everlasting](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 01:03
- Acts 10:42
- Genesis 02:07
- Genesis 07:22
- Hebrews 10:20
- Jeremiah 44:02
- John 01:04
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 12:23
- Matthew 07:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were *_living_* in the world.
- **08:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:09** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **35:05** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **44:05** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G198, G222, G227, G806, G590

(Go back to: [Mark 3:4](#); [5:23](#); [8:35](#); [9:43](#); [9:45](#); [10:17](#); [10:30](#); [10:45](#); [12:27](#))

light, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten

Definition:

There are several figurative uses of the term “light” in the Bible. It is often used as a metaphor for righteousness, holiness, and truth. (See: [Metaphor](#))

- Jesus said, “I am the light of the world” to express that he brings God’s true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
- Christians are commanded to “walk in the light,” which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
- The apostle John stated that “God is light” and in him there is no darkness at all.
- Light and darkness are complete opposites. Darkness is the absence of all light.
- Jesus said that he was “the light of the world” and that his followers should shine like lights in the world by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
- “Walking in the light” represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

Translation Suggestions:

- When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms “light” and “darkness” even when they are used figuratively.
- It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, “walk as children of light” could be translated as, “live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight.”
- Make sure that the translation of “light” does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: [darkness](#), [holy](#), [righteous](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 John 02:08
- 2 Corinthians 04:06
- Acts 26:18
- Isaiah 02:05
- John 01:05
- Matthew 05:16
- Matthew 06:23
- Nehemiah 09:12-13
- Revelation 18:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H216, H217, H3313, H3974, H5051, H5094, H5105, H5216, H7837, G681, G796, G1645, G2985, G3088, G5338, G5457, G5458, G5460, G5462

(Go back to: [Mark 13:24](#))

like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if

Definition:

The terms “like” and “likeness” refer to something being the same as, or similar to, something else.

- The word “like” is also often used in a figurative expressions called a “simile” in which something is compared to something else, usually highlighting a shared characteristic. For example, “his clothes shined like the sun” and “the voice boomed like thunder.” (See: [Simile](#))
- To “be like” or “sound like” or “look like” something or someone means to have qualities that are similar to the thing or person being compared to.
- People were created in God’s “likeness,” that is, in his “image.” It means that they have qualities or characteristics that are “like” or “similar to” qualities that God has, such as the ability to think, feel, and communicate.
- To have “the likeness of” something or someone means to have characteristics that look like that thing or person.

Translation Suggestions

- In some contexts, the expression “the likeness of” could be translated as “what looked like” or “what appeared to be.”
- The expression “in the likeness of his death” could be translated as “sharing in the experience of his death” or “as if experiencing his death with him.”
- The expression “in the likeness of sinful flesh” could be translated as “being like a sinful human being” or to “be a human being.” Make sure the translation of this expression does not sound like Jesus was sinful.
- “In his own likeness” could also be translated as to “be like him” or “having many of the same qualities that he has.”
- The expression “the likeness of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts and of creeping things” could be translated as “idols made to look like perishable humans, or animals, such as birds, beasts, and small, crawling things.”

(See also: [beast](#), [flesh](#), image of God, [image](#), [perish](#))

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 01:05
- Mark 08:24
- Matthew 17:02
- Matthew 18:03
- Psalms 073:05
- Revelation 01:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1823, H8403, H8544, G1503, G1504, G2509, G2531, G2596, G3664, G3665, G3666, G3667, G3668, G3669, G3697, G4833, G5108, G5613, G5615, G5616, G5618, G5619

(Go back to: [Mark 1:2](#); [1:10](#); [1:22](#); [4:16](#); [4:26](#); [4:30](#); [4:31](#); [4:33](#); [4:36](#); [6:15](#); [6:34](#); [7:6](#); [8:24](#); [9:13](#); [9:21](#); [9:26](#); [10:1](#); [10:14](#); [10:15](#); [11:6](#); [12:21](#); [12:25](#); [12:31](#); [12:33](#); [13:34](#); [14:16](#); [14:21](#); [14:31](#); [14:48](#); [15:8](#); [15:31](#); [16:7](#))

locust

Facts:

The term “locust” refers to a type of large, flying grasshopper that sometimes flies with many other of its kind in a very destructive swarm that eats all vegetation.

- Locusts and other grasshoppers are large, straight-winged insects with long, jointed back legs that give them the ability to jump a long distance way.
- In the Old Testament, swarming locusts were referred to figuratively as a symbol or picture of the overwhelming devastation that would come as a result of Israel's disobedience.
- God sent locusts as one of the ten plagues against the Egyptians.
- The New Testament says that locusts were a main source of food for John the Baptist while he was living in the desert.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [captive](#), Egypt, [Israel](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), plague)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:28
- Deuteronomy 28:38-39
- Exodus 10:3-4
- Mark 01:06
- Proverbs 30:27-28

Word Data:

- Strong's: H697, H1357, H1462, H1501, H2284, H3218, H5556, H6767, G200

(Go back to: [Mark 1:6](#))

loins, waist

Definition:

The term “loins” refers to the part of the body of an animal or person that is between the lower ribs and the hip bones, also known as the lower abdomen.

- The expression “gird up the loins” refers to preparing to work hard. It comes from the custom of tucking the bottom of one’s robe into a belt around the waist in order to move with ease.
- The term “loins” is often used in the Bible to refer to the lower back part of an animal that was sacrificed.
- In the Bible, the term “loins” often refers figuratively and euphemistically to a man’s reproductive organs as the source of his descendants. (See: [euphemism](#))
- The expression “will come from your loins” could also be translated as, “will be your offspring” or “will be born from your seed” or “God will cause to come from you.” (See: [euphemism](#))
- When referring to a part of the body, this could also be translated as “abdomen” or “hips” or “waist,” depending on the context.

(See also: descendant, gird, offspring)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:13
- 2 Chronicles 06:09
- Deuteronomy 33:11
- Genesis 37:34
- Job 15:27

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2504, H3409, H3689, H4975, G3751

(Go back to: [Mark 1:6](#))

lord, Lord, master, sir

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lord” generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULT and UST, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as “master.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated with a respectful form of address such as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as “Lord” (capitalized) in English.

(See also: [God](#), [Jesus](#), [ruler](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 39:02
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Psalms 086:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:04
- Lamentations 02:02
- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 09:09

- Daniel 09:17-19
- Malachi 03:01
- Matthew 07:21-23
- Luke 01:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 06:23
- Ephesians 06:9
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Colossians 03:23
- Hebrews 12:14
- James 02:01
- 1 Peter 01:03
- Jude 01:05
- Revelation 15:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:05** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, "In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the **Lord** your God.'"
- **25:07** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:03** This is the year of the **Lord's** favor.
- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:05** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
- **47:03** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H113, H136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G203, G634, G962, G1203, G2962

(Go back to: [Mark 1:3](#); [2:28](#); [5:19](#); [7:28](#); [10:42](#); [11:3](#); [11:9](#); [12:9](#); [12:11](#); [12:29](#); [12:30](#); [12:36](#); [12:37](#); [13:20](#); [13:35](#); [14:14](#))

lots, casting lots

Definition:

In the Bible, a "lot" is a marked object(s) used as a way of making a fair and/or random decision, usually for the purpose of selecting a specific person within a group. "Casting lots" refers to the process of using "lots" to make a fair and/or random decision.

- In modern times, some cultures "draw" or "pull out" lots using a bunch of straws. Someone holds the straws so that no one can see how long they are. Each person pulls out a straw and the one who picks the longest (or shortest) straw is the one who is chosen.
- In biblical times, the objects cast (the "lots") were probably small marked stones. It is unknown how the "lots" actually indicated a decision, but it probably involved dropping or throwing marked stones on the ground.
- The phrase "casting lots" can be translated as "tossing lots" or "throwing lots" or "rolling lots." The translation of "cast" should not sound like the lots were being thrown a long distance.
- If a decision is made "by lot," this could be translated as "by casting lots" or "by throwing lots," etc.

(See also: Elizabeth, [priest](#), Zechariah (OT), Zechariah (NT))

Bible References:

- Jonah 01:07
- Luke 01:8-10
- Luke 23:34
- Mark 15:22
- Matthew 27:35-37
- Psalms 022:18-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1486, H5307, G2819, G2975

(Go back to: [Mark 15:24](#))

love, beloved

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for "love" some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn't benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.
 - Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
 - When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
 - In the ULT, the word "love" refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.
2. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.
 - This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
 - The term can also be used in such contexts as, "They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet." This means that they "like very much" or "greatly desire" to do that.
3. The word "love" can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word "love" in the ULT refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, "devoted, faithful caring" or "care for unselfishly" or "love from God." Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word "love" describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, "like very much" or "care for" or "have strong affection for."
- In contexts where the word "love" is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by "strongly prefer" or "like very much" or "greatly desire."
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express "love" as an action. So for example, they might translate "love is patient, love is kind" as, "when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him."

(See also: [covenant](#), [death](#), [sacrifice](#), [save](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:07
- 1 John 03:02
- 1 Thessalonians 04:10
- Galatians 05:23
- Genesis 29:18
- Isaiah 56:06
- Jeremiah 02:02
- John 03:16

- Matthew 10:37
- Nehemiah 09:32-34
- Philippians 01:09
- Song of Solomon 01:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself."
- **33:08** "The thorny ground is a person who hears God's word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God."
- **36:05** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, "This is my Son whom I **love**."
- **39:10** "Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me."
- **47:01** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- **48:01** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- **49:03** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- **49:04** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- **49:07** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- **49:09** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H157, H158, H159, H160, H2245, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H5691, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G25, G26, G5360, G5361, G5362, G5363, G5365, G5367, G5368, G5369, G5377, G5381, G5382, G5383, G5388

(Go back to: [Mark 10:21](#); [12:30](#); [12:31](#); [12:33](#))

lust, lustful, passions, desires

Definition:

Lust is a very strong desire, usually in the context of wanting something sinful or immoral. To lust is to have lust.

- In the Bible, "lust" usually referred to sexual desire for someone other than one's own spouse.
- Sometimes this term was used in a figurative sense to refer to worshiping idols.
- Depending on the context, "lust" could be translated as "wrong desire" or "strong desire" or "wrongful sexual desire" or "strong immoral desire" or to "strongly desire to sin."
- The phrase to "lust after" could be translated as to "wrongly desire" or to "think immorally about" or to "immorally desire."

(See also: [adultery](#), false god)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:16
- 2 Timothy 02:22
- Galatians 05:16
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Genesis 39:7-9
- Matthew 05:28

Word Data:

- Strong's: H183, H185, H310, H1730, H2181, H2183, H2530, H5178, H5375, H5689, H5691, H5869, H7843, G766, G1937, G1939, G2237, G3715, G3806

(Go back to: [Mark 4:19](#))

Mary Magdalene

Facts:

Mary Magdalene was one of several women who believed in Jesus and followed him in his ministry. She was known as the one whom Jesus had healed from seven demons who had controlled her.

- Mary Magdalene and some other women helped support Jesus and his apostles by giving to them.
- She is also mentioned as one of the women who were the first to see Jesus after he rose from the dead.
- As Mary Magdalene stood outside the empty tomb, she saw Jesus standing there and he told her to go tell the other disciples that he was alive again.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [demon](#), [demon-possessed](#))

Bible References:

- Luke 08:1-3
- Luke 24:8-10
- Mark 15:39-41
- Matthew 27:54-56

Word Data:

- Strong's: G3094, G3137

(Go back to: [Mark 15:40](#); [15:47](#); [16:1](#))

Mary, the mother of Jesus

Facts:

Mary was a young woman living in the city of Nazareth who was pledged to be married to a man named Joseph. God chose Mary to be the mother of Jesus the Messiah, the Son of God.

- The Holy Spirit miraculously caused Mary to become pregnant while she was a virgin.
- An angel told Mary that the baby to be born to her was the Son of God and that she must name him Jesus.
- Mary loved God and praised him for being gracious to her.
- Joseph married Mary, but she remained a virgin until after the baby was born.
- Mary thought deeply about the amazing things that the shepherds and wise men said about the baby Jesus.
- Mary and Joseph took the baby Jesus to be dedicated at the temple. Later they took him to Egypt to escape King Herod's plot to kill the baby. Eventually they moved back to Nazareth.
- When Jesus was an adult, Mary was with him when he changed water to wine at a wedding in Cana.
- The gospels also mention that Mary was at the cross when Jesus was dying. He told his disciple John to take care of her like his own mother.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Cana, Egypt, Herod the Great, [Jesus](#), Joseph (NT), [Son of God](#), virgin)

Bible References:

- John 02:04
- John 02:12
- Luke 01:29
- Luke 01:35
- Mark 06:03
- Matthew 01:16
- Matthew 01:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:04** When Elizabeth was six months pregnant, the same angel appeared to Elizabeth's relative, whose name was **Mary**. She was a virgin and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph. The angel said, "You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him Jesus and he will be the Messiah."
- **22:05** The angel explained, "The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God." **Mary** believed and accepted what the angel said.
- **22:06** Soon after the angel spoke to **Mary**, she went and visited Elizabeth. As soon as Elizabeth heard **Mary's** greeting, Elizabeth's baby jumped inside her.
- **23:02** The angel said, "Joseph, do not be afraid to take **Mary** as your wife. The baby in her body is from the Holy Spirit."
- **23:04** Joseph and **Mary** had to make a long journey from where they lived in Nazareth to Bethlehem because their ancestor was David whose hometown was Bethlehem.
- **49:01** An angel told a virgin named **Mary** that she would give birth to God's Son. So while she was still a virgin, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G3137

(Go back to: [Mark 6:3](#))

Matthew, Levi

Facts:

Matthew was one of the twelve men that Jesus chose to be his apostles. He was also known as Levi, son of Alphaeus.

- Levi (Matthew) was a tax-collector from Capernaum before he met Jesus.
- Matthew wrote the gospel that bears his name.
- There are several other men named Levi in the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [Levite](#), [tax collector](#))

Bible References:

- Luke 05:27
- Luke 06:14-16
- Mark 02:14
- Mark 03:17-19
- Matthew 09:09
- Matthew 10:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: G3017, G3156

(Go back to: [Mark 2:14](#); [3:18](#))

mercy, merciful

Definition:

The terms “mercy” and “merciful” refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term “mercy” can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as “merciful” when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “mercy” could be translated as “kindness” or “compassion” or “pity.”
- The term “merciful” could be translated as “showing pity” or “being kind to” or “forgiving.”
- To “show mercy to” or “have mercy on” could be translated as “treat kindly” or “be compassionate toward.”

(See also: [compassion](#), [forgive](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:3-5
- 1 Timothy 01:13
- Daniel 09:17
- Exodus 34:06
- Genesis 19:16
- Hebrews 10:28-29
- James 02:13
- Luke 06:35-36
- Matthew 09:27
- Philippians 02:25-27
- Psalms 041:4-6
- Romans 12:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing justice and **mercy** to others.
- **19:17** He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had **mercy** on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- **20:12** The Persian Empire was strong but **merciful** to the people it conquered.
- **27:11** Then Jesus asked the law expert, “What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?” He replied, “The one who was **merciful** to him.”
- **32:11** But Jesus said to him, “No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had **mercy** on you.”
- **34:09** “But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ‘God, please be **merciful** to me because I am a sinner.’”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2551, H2603, H2604, H2616, H2617, H2623, H3722, H3727, H4627, H4819, H5503, H5504, H5505, H5506, H6014, H7349, H7355, H7356, H7359, G1653, G1655, G1656, G2433, G2436, G3628, G3629, G3741, G4698

(Go back to: [Mark 5:19](#); [10:47](#); [10:48](#))

messenger

Facts:

The term “messenger” refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate “angel” as “messenger.”
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah’s coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus’ apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.

(See also: [angel](#), [apostle](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 19:1-3
- 1 Samuel 06:21
- 2 Kings 01:1-2
- Luke 07:27
- Matthew 11:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1319, H4397, H4398, H5046, H5894, H6735, H6737, H7323, H7971, G32, G652

(Go back to: [Mark 1:2](#))

might, mighty, mighty works

Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: Almighty, [miracle](#), [power](#), [strength](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:22
- Genesis 06:4
- Mark 09:38-39
- Matthew 11:23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H46, H47, H117, H202, H386, H410, H430, H533, H650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1396, H1397, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2428, H3201, H3524, H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H7227, H7580, H8623, H8624, G1411, G1415, G1498, G2478, G2479, G2900, G2904, G3167, G3173

(Go back to: [Mark 1:7](#))

mind, mindful, remind, reminder, likeminded

Definition:

The term “mind” refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To “have the mind of Christ” means to be thinking and acting as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To “change his mind” means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “mind” could also be translated as “thoughts” or “reasoning” or “thinking” or “understanding.”
- The expression “keep in mind” could be translated as “remember” or “pay attention to this” or “be sure to know this.”
- The expression “heart, soul, and mind” could also be translated as “what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about.”
- The expression “call to mind” could be translated as “remember” or “think about.”
- The expression “changed his mind and went” could also be translated as “decided differently and went” or “decided to go after all” or “changed his opinion and went.”
- The expression “double-minded” could also be translated as “doubting” or “unable to decide” or “with conflicting thoughts.”

(See also: [believe](#), [heart](#), [soul](#))

Bible References:

- Luke 10:27
- Mark 06:51-52
- Matthew 21:29
- Matthew 22:37
- James 04:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3629, H3820, H3824, H5162, H7725, G1271, G1374, G3328, G3525, G3540, G3563, G4993, G5590

(Go back to: [Mark 3:21](#); [5:15](#); [8:33](#); [12:30](#))

miracle, wonder, sign

Definition:

A “miracle” is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called “wonders” because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term “wonder” can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God’s power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called “signs” because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God’s acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God’s acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah’s time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God’s miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God’s power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God’s power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of “miracles” or “wonders” could include “impossible things that God does” or “powerful works of God” or “amazing acts of God.”
- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: [power](#), [prophet](#), [apostle](#), [sign](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 02:8-10
- Acts 04:17
- Acts 04:22
- Daniel 04:1-3
- Deuteronomy 13:01
- Exodus 03:19-22
- John 02:11
- Matthew 13:58

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:08** Gideon asked God for two **signs** so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- **19:14** God did many **miracles** through Elisha.
- **37:10** Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this **miracle**.
- **43:06** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty **signs** and **wonders** by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

- **49:02** Jesus did many **miracles** that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H226, H852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H5953, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H6725, H7560, H7583, H8047, H8074, H8539, H8540,, G880, G1213, G1229, G1411, G1569, G1718, G1770, G1839, G2285, G2296, G2297, G3167, G3902, G4591, G4592, G5059

(Go back to: [Mark 6:2](#); [6:5](#); [6:14](#); [9:39](#))

mock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, laughingstock

Definition:

The terms “mock,” “ridicule,” and “scoff at” all refer to making fun of someone, especially in a cruel way.

- Mocking often involves imitating people’s words or actions with the intent to embarrass them or show contempt for them.
- The Roman soldiers mocked or ridiculed Jesus when they put a robe on him and pretended to honor him as king.
- A group of young people ridiculed or scoffed at Elisha when they called him a name, making fun of his bald head.
- The term “scoff at” can also refer to ridiculing an idea that is not considered believable or important.
- A “mocker” is someone who mocks and ridicules consistently.

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 03:04
- Acts 02:12-13
- Galatians 06:6-8
- Genesis 39:13-15
- Luke 22:63-65
- Mark 10:34
- Matthew 09:23-24
- Matthew 20:19
- Matthew 27:29

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:12** Isaiah prophesied that people would spit on, **mock**, and beat the Messiah.
- **39:05** The Jewish leaders all answered the high priest, “He deserves to die!” Then they blindfolded Jesus, spit on him, hit him, and **mocked** him.
- **39:12** The soldiers whipped Jesus, and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they **mocked** him by saying, “Look, the King of the Jews!”
- **40:04** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them **mocked** Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God?”
- **40:05** The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd **mocked** Jesus. They said to him, “If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross and save yourself! Then we will believe you.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1422, H2048, H2049, H2778, H2781, H3213, H3887, H3931, H3932, H3933, H3934, H3944, H3945, H4167, H4485, H4912, H5058, H5607, H6026, H6711, H7046, H7048, H7814, H7832, H8103, H8148, H8437, H8595, G1592, G1701, G1702, G1703, G2301, G2606, G3456, G5512

(Go back to: [Mark 10:34](#); [Notes](#); [15:20](#); [15:31](#))

Moses

Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Miriam, Promised Land, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:21
- Acts 07:30
- Exodus 02:10
- Exodus 09:01
- Matthew 17:04
- Romans 05:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:12** One day while **Moses** was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **12:05 Moses** told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you."
- **12:07** God told **Moses** to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters.
- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **13:07** Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to **Moses**.

\

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4872, H4873, G3475

(Go back to: [Mark 1:44](#); [7:10](#); [9:4](#); [9:5](#); [10:3](#); [10:4](#); [12:19](#); [12:26](#))

Most High

Facts:

The term “Most High” is a title for God. It refers to his greatness or authority.

- The meaning of this term is similar to the meaning of “Sovereign” or “Supreme.”
- The word “high” in this title does not refer to physical height or distance. It refers to greatness.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can also be translated as “Most High God” or “Most Supreme being” or “God Most High” or “Greatest One” or “Supreme One” or “God, who is Greater than all.”
- If a word like “high” is used, make sure it does not refer to being physically high or tall.

(See also: [God](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:47-50
- Acts 16:16-18
- Daniel 04:17-18
- Deuteronomy 32:7-8
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Hebrews 07:1-3
- Hosea 07:16
- Lamentations 03:35
- Luke 01:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5945, G5310

(Go back to: [Mark 5:7](#))

Mount of Olives

Definition:

The Mount of Olives is a mountain or large hill located near the east side of the city of Jerusalem. It is about 787 meters high.

- In the Old Testament, this mountain is sometimes referred to as “the mountain that is east of Jerusalem.”
- The New Testament records several occasions when Jesus and his disciples went to the Mount of Olives to pray and rest.
- Jesus was arrested in the Garden of Gethsemane, which is located on the Mount of Olives.
- This could also be translated as “Olive Hill” or “Olive Tree Mountain.”

(See also: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Gethsemane](#), [olive](#))

Bible References:

- Luke 19:29
- Luke 19:37
- Mark 13:03
- Matthew 21:1-3
- Matthew 24:3-5
- Matthew 26:30

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2022, H2132, G3735, G1636

(Go back to: [Mark 11:1](#); [13:3](#); [14:26](#))

multiply, multiplied, multiplication

Definition:

The term “multiply” means to greatly increase in number. It can also mean to cause something to increase in amount, such as causing pain to multiply.

- God told animals and human beings to “multiply” and fill the earth. This was a command to reproduce many more of their own kind.
- Jesus made the bread and fish multiply in order to feed the 5,000 people. The amount of food kept increasing so that there was more than enough food to feed everyone.
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated as “increase” or “cause to increase” or “greatly increase in number” or “become greater in number” or “become more numerous.”
- The phrase “greatly multiply your pain” could also be translated as “cause your pain to become more severe” or “cause you to experience much more pain.”
- To “multiply horses” means to “greedily keep acquiring more horses” or to “get large numbers of horses.”

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 08:01
- Genesis 09:07
- Genesis 22:17
- Hosea 04:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3254, H3527, H6280, H7231, H7233, H7235, H7680, G4052, G4129

(Go back to: [Mark 12:44](#))

mystery, hidden truth

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “mystery” refers to something unknown or difficult to understand that God is now explaining.

- The New Testament states that the gospel of Christ was a mystery that was not known in past ages.
- One of the specific points described as a mystery is that Jews and Gentiles would be equal in Christ.
- This term could also be translated as “secret” or “hidden things” or “something unknown.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [Gentile](#), [good news](#), [Jew](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- Colossians 04:2-4
- Ephesians 06:19-20
- Luke 08:9-10
- Mark 04:10-12
- Matthew 13:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1219, H7328, G3466

(Go back to: [Mark 4:11](#))

name

Definition:

The term "name" refers to the word by which a specific person or thing is called. In the Bible, however, the term "name" is used in several different ways to refer to several different concepts.

- In some contexts, "name" could refer to a person's reputation, as in "let us make a name for ourselves."
- The term "name" could also refer to the memory of something. For example, "cut off the names of the idols" means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking "in the name of God" meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The "name" of someone could refer to the entire person, as in "there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved." (See: [metonymy](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like "his good name" could be translated as "his good reputation."
- Doing something "in the name of" could be translated as "with the authority of" or "with the permission of" or "as the representative of" that person.
- The expression "make a name for ourselves" could be translated "cause many people to know about us" or "make people think we are very important."
- The expression "call his name" could be translated as "name him" or "give him the name."
- The expression "those who love your name" could be translated as "those who love you."
- The expression "cut off the names of idols" could be translated as "get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered" or "cause people to stop worshiping false gods" or "completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them."

(See also: [call](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:12
- 2 Timothy 02:19
- Acts 04:07
- Acts 04:12
- Acts 09:27
- Genesis 12:02
- Genesis 35:10
- Matthew 18:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2564, G3686, G3687, G5122

(Go back to: [Mark 3:14](#); [3:16](#); [3:17](#); [5:9](#); [5:22](#); [6:14](#); [9:37](#); [9:38](#); [9:39](#); [9:41](#); [11:9](#); [13:6](#); [13:13](#); [14:32](#))

nation

Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A “nation” usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” was also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: Assyria, Babylon, Canaan, [Gentile](#), Greek, [people group](#), Philistines, Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:06
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 02:05
- Acts 13:19
- Acts 17:26
- Acts 26:04
- Daniel 03:04
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29
- Genesis 35:11
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 07:05
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43
- Romans 04:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H523, H524, H776, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G246, G1074, G1085, G1484

(Go back to: [Mark 11:17](#); [13:8](#); [13:10](#))

Nazareth, Nazarene

Facts:

Nazareth is a town in the region of Galilee in northern Israel. It is about 100 kilometers north of Jerusalem, and it takes about three to five days to travel there on foot.

- Joseph and Mary were from Nazareth, and this is where they raised Jesus. That is why Jesus was known as “the Nazarene.”
- Many of the Jews living in Nazareth did not respect Jesus’ teaching because he had grown up among them, and they thought he was just an ordinary person.
- Once, when Jesus was teaching in Nazareth’s synagogue, the Jews there tried to kill him because he claimed to be the Messiah and had rebuked them for rejecting him.
- The remark Nathaniel made when he heard that Jesus was from Nazareth indicated that this city was not thought of very highly.

(See also: [Christ](#), [Galilee](#), Joseph (NT), [Mary](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 26:9-11
- John 01:43-45
- Luke 01:26-29
- Mark 16:5-7
- Matthew 02:23
- Matthew 21:9-11
- Matthew 26:71-72

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:04** Joseph and Mary had to make a long journey from where they lived in **Nazareth** to Bethlehem because their ancestor was David whose hometown was Bethlehem.
- **26:02** Jesus went to the town of **Nazareth** where he had lived during his childhood.
- **26:07** The people of **Nazareth** dragged Jesus out of the place of worship and brought him to the edge of a cliff to throw him off of it in order to kill him.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G3478, G3479, G3480

(Go back to: [Mark 1:9](#); [1:24](#); [10:47](#); [14:67](#); [16:6](#))

neighbor, neighborhood, neighboring

Definition:

The term “neighbor” usually refers to a person who lives nearby. It can also refer more generally to someone who lives in the same community or people group.

- A “neighbor” is someone who would be protected and treated kindly because he is part of the same community.
- In the New Testament parable of the Good Samaritan, Jesus used the term “neighbor” figuratively, expanding its meaning to include all human beings, even someone who is considered an enemy.
- If possible, it is best to translate this term literally with a word or phrase that means “person who lives nearby.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [parable](#), [people group](#), Samaria)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:26-28
- Ephesians 04:25-27
- Galatians 05:14
- James 02:08
- John 09:8-9
- Luke 01:58
- Matthew 05:43
- Matthew 19:19
- Matthew 22:39

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5997, H7138, H7453, H7468, H7934, G1069, G2087, G4040, G4139

(Go back to: [Mark 12:31](#); [12:33](#))

oath, swear, swearing, swear by

Definition:

The term "oath" in the Bible refers to a formal promise, usually made in a legal or religious context, in which the person making the oath accepts some kind of accountability or punishment if he does not fulfill his promise. In the Bible, the term "swear" means to make an oath.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In modern times, one meaning of the word "swear" is to use foul or vulgar language. This is never its meaning in the Bible.
- The term "swear by" means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham's relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "an oath" could also be translated as "a pledge" or "a solemn promise."
- To "swear" could be translated as to "formally promise" or to "pledge" or to "commit to do something."
- Other ways to translate "swear by my name" could include "make a promise using my name to confirm it."
- To "swear by heaven and earth" could be translated as to, "promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it."
- Make sure the translation of "swear" or "oath" does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: Abimelech, [covenant](#), vow)

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:23
- Genesis 24:03
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:31
- Luke 01:73
- Mark 06:26
- Matthew 05:36
- Matthew 14:6-7
- Matthew 26:72

Word Data:

- Strong's: H422, H423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G332, G3660, G3727, G3728

(Go back to: [Mark 6:23](#); [6:26](#); [14:71](#))

obey, obedient

Definition:

The term "obey" means to do what has been commanded by a person or law. The term "obedient" describes someone who obeys. Sometimes a command prohibits doing something, as in "do not steal." In this case, to "obey" means not to steal.

- Usually the term "obey" is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority. For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, they obey by not doing that.
- Ways to translate obey could include a word or phrase that means "do what is commanded" or "follow orders" or "do what God says to do."
- The term "obedient" could be translated as "doing what was commanded" or "following orders" or "doing what God commands."

(See also: citizen, [command](#), disobey, [kingdom](#), law)

Bible References:

- Acts 05:32
- Acts 06:7
- Genesis 28:6-7
- James 01:25
- James 02:10
- Luke 06:47
- Matthew 07:26
- Matthew 19:20-22
- Matthew 28:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:04** Noah **obeyed** God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **05:06** Again Abraham **obeyed** God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- **05:10** "Because you (Abraham) have *_obeyed_* me, all the families of the world will be blessed through your family"
- **05:10** But the Egyptians did not believe God or **obey** his commands.
- **13:07** If the people **obeyed** these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1697, H2388, H3349, H4928, H6213, H7181, H8085, H8086, H8104, G191, G3980, G3982, G5083, G5084, G5218, G5219, G5255, G5292, G5293, G5442

(Go back to: [Mark 1:27](#); [4:41](#); [7:3](#); [7:9](#); [10:20](#))

oil

Definition:

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that can be taken from certain plants. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized, and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: [olive](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 01:21
- Exodus 29:02
- Leviticus 05:11
- Leviticus 08:1-3
- Mark 06:12-13
- Matthew 25:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2091, H3323, H4887, H6671, H7246, H8081, G1637, G3464

(Go back to: [Mark 6:13](#))

olive

Definition:

The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

- Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
- The olive tree's fruit starts out green and changes to black as they ripen. Olives were useful for food and for the oil that could be extracted from them.
- Olive oil was used for cooking in lamps and for religious ceremonies.
- In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: [lamp](#), the sea, [Mount of Olives](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:28-29
- Deuteronomy 06:10-12
- Exodus 23:10-11
- Genesis 08:11
- James 03:12
- Luke 16:06
- Psalms 052:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2132, H3323, H8081, G65, G1636, G1637, G2565

(Go back to: [Mark 11:1](#); [13:3](#); [14:26](#))

on high, in the highest

Definition:

The terms “on high” and “in the highest” are expressions that usually mean “in heaven.”

- Another meaning for the expression “in the highest” could be “the most honored.”
- This expression could also be used literally, as in the expression “in the highest tree, ” which means “in the tallest tree.”
- The expression “on high” could also refer to being high in the sky, such as a bird’s nest that is on high. In that context it could be translated as “high in the sky” or “at the top of a tall tree.”
- The word “high” could also indicate the elevated location or importance of a person or thing.
- The expression “from on high” could be translated as “from heaven.”

(See also: [heaven](#), [honor](#))

Bible References:

- Lamentations 01:13
- Psalms 069:29

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1361, H4605, H4791, H7682, G1722, G5308, G5310, G5311

(Go back to: [Mark 11:10](#))

palace

Definition:

The term “palace” refers to the building or house where a king lived, along with his family members and servants.

- The high priest also lived in a palace complex, as mentioned in the New Testament.
- Palaces were very ornate, with beautiful architecture and furnishings.
- The buildings and furnishings of a palace were constructed of stone or wood, and often were overlaid with expensive wood, gold, or ivory.
- Many other people also lived and worked in the palace complex, which usually included several buildings and courtyards.

(See also: [courtyard](#), [high priest](#), [king](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 28:7-8
- 2 Samuel 11:2-3
- Daniel 05:5-6
- Matthew 26:3-5
- Psalms 045:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H759, H1002, H1004, H1055, H1406, H1964, H1965, G833, G933, G4232

(Go back to: [Mark 15:16](#))

parable

Definition:

The term “parable” usually refers to a short story or object lesson that is used to explain or teach a moral truth.

- Jesus used parables to teach his disciples. Although he also told parables to the crowds of people, he did not always explain the parable.
- A parable could be used to reveal truth to his disciples while hiding that truth from people like the Pharisees who did not believe in Jesus.
- The prophet Nathan told David a parable to show the king his terrible sin.
- The story of the Good Samaritan is an example of a parable that is a story. Jesus’ comparison of old and new wineskins is an example of a parable that was an object lesson to help the disciples understand Jesus’ teachings.

(See also: Samaria)

Bible References:

- Luke 05:36
- Luke 06:39
- Luke 08:04
- Luke 08:9-10
- Mark 04:01
- Matthew 13:03
- Matthew 13:10
- Matthew 13:13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1819, H4912, G3850, G3942

(Go back to: [Introduction to the Gospel of Mark](#); [Mark 3:23](#); [4:2](#); [4:10](#); [4:11](#); [4:13](#); [4:30](#); [4:33](#); [4:34](#); [7:17](#); [12:1](#); [12:12](#); [13:28](#))

partial, partiality

Definition:

The terms “be partial” and “show partiality” refer to making a choice to treat certain people as more important than other people.

- This is similar to showing favoritism, which means to treat some people better than others.
- Usually partiality or favoritism is shown to people because they are more rich or more popular than other people.
- The Bible instructs his people to not show partiality or favoritism to people who are rich or of high status.
- In his letter to the Romans, Paul teaches that God judges people fairly and with no partiality.
- The book of James teaches that it is wrong to give someone a better seat or better treatment because they are rich.

(See also: favor)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 01:17
- Malachi 02:09
- Mark 12:13-15
- Matthew 22:16
- Romans 02:10-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5234, H6440, G991, G1519, G2983, G4299, G4383

(Go back to: [Mark 12:14](#))

Passover

Facts:

The “Passover” is the name of a religious festival that the Jews celebrate every year, to remember how God rescued their ancestors, the Israelites, from slavery in Egypt.

- The name of this festival comes from the fact that God “passed over” the houses of the Israelites and did not kill their sons when he killed the firstborn sons of the Egyptians.
- The Passover celebration includes a special meal of a perfect lamb that they have killed and roasted, as well as bread made without yeast. These foods remind them of the meal that the Israelites ate the night before they escaped from Egypt.
- God told the Israelites to eat this meal every year in order to remember and celebrate how God “passed over” their houses and how he set them free from slavery in Egypt.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “Passover” could be translated by combining the words “pass” and “over” or another combination of words that has this meaning.
- It is helpful if the name of this festival has a clear connection to the words used to explain what the angel of the Lord did in passing by the houses of the Israelites and sparing their sons.

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:07
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- 2 Kings 23:23
- Deuteronomy 16:02
- Exodus 12:26-28
- Ezra 06:21-22
- John 13:01
- Joshua 05:10-11
- Leviticus 23:4-6
- Numbers 09:03

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:14** God commanded the Israelites to remember his victory over the Egyptians and their deliverance from slavery by celebrating the **Passover** every year.
- **38:01** Every year, the Jews celebrated the **Passover**. This was a celebration of how God had saved their ancestors from slavery in Egypt many centuries earlier.
- **38:04** Jesus celebrated the **Passover** with his disciples.
- **48:09** When God saw the blood, he passed over their houses and did not kill their firstborn sons. This event is called the **Passover**.
- **48:10** Jesus is our **Passover** Lamb. He was perfect and sinless and was killed at the time of the **Passover** celebration.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6453, G3957

(Go back to: [Mark 14:1](#); [14:12](#); [14:14](#); [14:16](#))

peace, peaceful, peacemakers

Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:1-3
- Acts 07:26
- Colossians 01:18-20
- Colossians 03:15
- Galatians 05:23
- Luke 07:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 04:39
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 10:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:06** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- **15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- **16:03** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- **21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- **48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G269, G1514, G1515, G1516, G1517, G1518, G2272

(Go back to: [Mark 5:34](#); [9:50](#))

people of God

Definition:

The concept of the “people of God” in the Bible refers to people with whom God has established a covenant relationship.

- In the Old Testament, the phrase “people of God” refers to the nation of Israel. The nation of Israel was chosen by God and set apart from the other nations of the world in order to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, the phrase “people of God” refers to the "Church," meaning everyone who believes in Jesus. This includes both Jews and Gentiles. In the New Testament, sometimes this group of people is called the "sons of God" or "children of God."
- When God uses the phrase “my people,” he is referring to people who have a covenant relationship with him. God’s people are chosen by him, and he wants them to live in a way that is pleasing to him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people of God” could be translated as “God’s people” or “the people who worship God” or “people who serve God” or “people who belong to God.”
- When God says “my people” other ways to translate it could include “the people I have chosen” or “the people who worship me” or “the people who belong to me.”
- Similarly, “your people” could be translated as “the people who belong to you” or “the people you chose to belong to you.”
- Also “his people” could be translated as “the people who belong to him” or “the people God chose to belong to himself.”

(See also: [Israel](#), [people group](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:02
- Acts 07:34
- Acts 07:51-53
- Acts 10:36-38
- Daniel 09:24-25
- Isaiah 02:5-6
- Jeremiah 06:20-22
- Joel 03:16-17
- Micah 06:3-5
- Revelation 13:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H430, H5971, G2316, G2992

(Go back to: [Mark 8 General Notes](#))

people, people group,

Definition:

The terms “people” and “people group” refer to some group of people that shares a common language and culture. The term “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, the term “people” can refer to a “people group” or “family” or “relatives” or “army.”
- In plural form, the term “peoples” often refers to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations, the term “nations” is also used in this way.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “the people of” could be translated as “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of,” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: descendant, [nation](#), tribe, [world](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:51-53
- 1 Samuel 08:07
- Deuteronomy 28:09
- Genesis 49:16
- Ruth 01:16

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:02** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there. what follows is
- **21:02** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.
- **42:08** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere.”

- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **48:11** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God’s people by believing in Jesus.
- **50:03** He (Jesus) said, “Go and make disciples of all **people groups!**” and, “The fields are ripe for harvest!”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H249, H523, H524, H776, H1121, H1471, H3816, H5712, H5971, H5972, H6153, G1074, G1085, G1218, G1484, G2560, G2992, G3793

(Go back to: [Mark 7:6](#); [11:32](#); [14:2](#))

perish

Definition:

The term "perish" means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or disaster. In the New Testament, it often has the spiritual meaning of being lost or separated from the people of God.

Spiritual Meaning of "Perish:"

- People who are "perishing" are those who have refused to trust in Jesus for their salvation.
- Those who "perish" will not live eternally with God in heaven. Instead, they will live eternally in hell under God's punishment.
- Everyone will die physically, but only those who do not trust in Jesus for their salvation will perish eternally.
- When "perish" is used in a spiritual sense, make sure that your translation expresses this differently than dying physically.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include "be lost from God's people," "die eternally," "be punished in hell," or "be destroyed."
- Try to use a term or expression that does not only mean "die physically" or "cease to exist."

(See also: [death](#), [everlasting](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:23
- 2 Corinthians 02:16-17
- 2 Thessalonians 02:10
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Psalms 049:18-20
- Zechariah 09:5-7
- Zechariah 13:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H7, H8, H1478, H1820, H1826, H5486, H5595, H6544, H8045, G599, G622, G684, G853, G1311, G2704, G4881, G5356

(Go back to: [Mark 2:22](#); [4:38](#); [8:35](#); [9:22](#); [9:41](#); [11:18](#))

persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue

Definition:

The terms “persecute” and “persecution” refer to continually treating a person or a certain group of people in a harsh way that causes harm to them.

- Persecution can be against one person or many people and usually involves repeated, persistent attacks.
- The Israelites were persecuted by many different people groups Who attacked them, captured them, and stole things from them.
- People often persecute other people who have different religious beliefs or who are weaker.
- The Jewish religious leaders persecuted Jesus because they did not like what he was teaching.
- After Jesus went back to heaven, the Jewish religious leaders and the Roman government persecuted his followers.
- The term “persecute” could also be translated as “keep oppressing” or “treat harshly” or “continually mistreat.”
- Ways to translate “persecution” could include, “harsh mistreatment” or “oppression” or “persistent hurtful treatment”

(See also: Christian, church, oppress, Rome)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:52
- Acts 13:50
- Galatians 01:13-14
- John 05:16-18
- Mark 10:30
- Matthew 05:10
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 10:22
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Philippians 03:06

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:07** “The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with joy. But when he experiences hardship or **persecution**, he falls away.”
- **45:06** That day many people in Jerusalem started **persecuting** the followers of Jesus, so the believers fled to other places.
- **46:02** Saul heard someone say, “Saul! Saul! Why do you **persecute** me?” Saul asked, “Who are you, Master?” Jesus replied to him, “I am Jesus. You are **persecuting** me!”
- **46:04** But Ananias said, “Master, I have heard how this man has **persecuted** the believers.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1814, H7291, H7852, G1375, G1376, G1377, G1559, G2347

(Go back to: [Mark 4:17](#); [10:30](#))

Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas

Facts:

Peter was one of Jesus' twelve apostles. He was an important leader of the early Church.

- Before Jesus called him to be his disciple, Peter's name was Simon.
- Later, Jesus also named him "Cephas," which means "stone" or "rock" in the Aramaic language. The name Peter also means "stone" or "rock" in the Greek language.
- God worked through Peter to heal people and to preach the good news about Jesus.
- Two books in the New Testament are letters that Peter wrote to encourage and teach fellow believers.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [disciple](#), [apostle](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 08:25
- Galatians 02:6-8
- Galatians 02:12
- Luke 22:58
- Mark 03:16
- Matthew 04:18-20
- Matthew 08:14
- Matthew 14:30
- Matthew 26:33-35

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **28:09 Peter** said to Jesus, "We have left everything and followed you. What will be our reward?"
- **29:01** One day **Peter** asked Jesus, "Master, how many times should I forgive my brother when he sins against me? As many as seven times?"
- **31:05** Then **Peter** said to Jesus, "Master, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water." Jesus told **Peter**, "Come!"
- **36:01** One day, Jesus took three of his disciples, **Peter**, James, and John with him.
- **38:09 Peter** replied, "Even if all the others abandon you, I will not!" Then Jesus said to **Peter**, "Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, **Peter**, that your faith will not fail. Even so, tonight, before the rooster crows, you will deny that you even know me three times."
- **38:15** As the soldiers arrested Jesus, **Peter** pulled out his sword and cut off the ear of the servant of the high priest.
- **43:11 Peter** answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins."
- **44:08 Peter** answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah."

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2786, G4074, G4613

(Go back to: [Mark 1:16](#); [1:29](#); [1:30](#); [1:36](#); [3:16](#); [5:37](#); [8:29](#); [8:32](#); [8:33](#); [9:2](#); [9:5](#); [10:28](#); [11:21](#); [13:3](#); [14:29](#); [14:33](#); [14:37](#); [14:54](#); [14:66](#); [14:67](#); [14:70](#); [14:72](#); [16:7](#))

Pharisee

Facts:

The Pharisees were an important, powerful group of Jewish religious leaders in Jesus' time.

- Many of them were middle class businessmen and some of them were also priests.
- Of all the Jewish leaders, the Pharisees were the most strict in obeying the Laws of Moses and other Jewish laws and traditions.
- They were very concerned about keeping the Jewish people separated from the influence of the Gentiles around them. The name "Pharisee" comes from the word to "separate."
- The Pharisees believed in life after death; they also believed in the existence of angels and other spiritual beings.
- The Pharisees and Sadducees actively opposed Jesus and the early Christians.

(See also: [council](#), Jewish leaders, [law](#), [Sadducee](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 26:04
- John 03:1-2
- Luke 11:44
- Matthew 03:07
- Matthew 05:20
- Matthew 09:11
- Matthew 12:02
- Matthew 12:38
- Philippians 03:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: G5330

(Go back to: [Mark 2:16](#); [2:18](#); [2:24](#); [3:6](#); [7:1](#); [7:3](#); [7:5](#); [8:11](#); [8:15](#); [10:2](#); [12:13](#))

Philip, the apostle

Facts:

Philip the apostle was one of the original twelve disciples of Jesus. He was from the town of Bethsaida.

- Philip brought Nathanael to meet Jesus.
- Jesus questioned Philip about how to provide food for a crowd of over 5,000 people.
- At the last Passover supper that Jesus ate with his disciples, he talked to them about God, his Father. Philip asked Jesus to show them the Father.
- Some languages may prefer to spell this Philip's name in a different way from the other Philip (the evangelist) to avoid confusion.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Philip)

Bible References:

- Acts 01:14
- John 01:44
- John 06:06
- Luke 06:14
- Mark 03:17-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: G5376

(Go back to: [Mark 3:18](#))

pig, pork, swine

Definition:

A pig is a type of four-legged, hooved animal that is raised for meat. Its meat is called “pork.” The general term for pigs and related animals is “swine.”

- God told the Israelites not to eat pig meat and to consider it unclean. Jews today still view pigs as unclean and do not eat pork.
- Pigs are raised on farms to be sold to other people for their meat.
- There is a kind of swine that is not raised on farms but rather lives out in the wild; it is called a “wild boar.” Wild boars have tusks and are considered to be very dangerous animals.
- Sometimes large pigs are referred to as “hogs.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [clean](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:22
- Mark 05:13
- Matthew 07:6
- Matthew 08:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2386, G5519

(Go back to: [Mark 5:11](#); [5:12](#); [5:13](#); [5:16](#))

Pilate

Facts:

Pilate was the governor of the Roman province of Judea who sentenced Jesus to death.

- Because Pilate was the governor, he had the authority to put criminals to death.
- The Jewish religious leaders wanted Pilate to crucify Jesus, so they lied and said that Jesus was a criminal.
- Pilate realized that Jesus was not guilty, but he was afraid of the crowd and wanted to please them, so he ordered his soldiers to crucify Jesus.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [crucify](#), [governor](#), [guilt](#), [Judea](#), [Rome](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 04:27-28
- Acts 13:28
- Luke 23:02
- Mark 15:02
- Matthew 27:13
- Matthew 27:58

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:09** Early the next morning, the Jewish leaders brought Jesus to **Pilate**, the Roman governor. They hoped that **Pilate** would condemn Jesus as guilty and sentenced him to be killed. **Pilate** asked Jesus, "Are you the King of the Jews?"
- **39:10** **Pilate** said, "What is truth?"
- **39:11** After speaking with Jesus, **Pilate** went out to the crowd and said, "I find no guilt in this man." But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, "Crucify him!" **Pilate** replied, "He is not guilty." But they shouted even louder. Then **Pilate** said a third time, "He is not guilty!"
- **39:12** **Pilate** became afraid that the crowd would begin to riot, so he ordered his soldiers to crucify Jesus.
- **40:02** **Pilate** commanded that a sign be put above Jesus' head that read, "King of the Jews."
- **41:02** **Pilate** said, "Take some soldiers and make the tomb as secure as you can."

Word Data:

- Strong's: G4091, G4194

(Go back to: [Mark 15:1](#); [15:2](#); [15:4](#); [15:5](#); [15:9](#); [15:12](#); [15:14](#); [15:15](#); [15:43](#); [15:44](#))

plant, planted, implanted, replanted, transplanted, sow

Definition:

A “plant” is generally something that grows and is attached to the ground. To “sow” means to put seeds in the ground in order to grow plants. A “sower” is a person who sows or plants seeds.

- The method of sowing or planting varies, but one method is to take handfuls of seeds and scatter them on the ground.
- Another method for planting seeds is to make holes in the soil and place seeds in each hole.
- The term “sow” can be used figuratively, as in “a person will reap what he sows.” This means that if a person does something evil, he will receive a negative result, and if a person does good, he will receive a positive result.

Translations Suggestions

- The term to “sow” could also be translated as to “plant.” Make sure the word used to translate this can include planting seeds.
- Other ways to translate “sower” could include “planter” or “farmer” or “person who plants seeds.”
- In English, “sow” is only used for planting seeds, but the English word “plant” can be used for planting seeds as well as larger things, such as trees. Other languages may also use different words, depending on what is being planted.
- The expression “a person reaps what he sows” could also be translated as “just like a certain kind of seed produces a certain kind of plant, in the same way a person’s good actions will bring a good result and a person’s evil actions will bring an evil result.”

(See also: [evil](#), [good](#), [harvest](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 06:08
- Luke 08:05
- Matthew 06:25-26
- Matthew 13:04
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 25:24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2221, H2232, H2233, H2236, H4218, H4302, H5193, H7971, H8362, G4687, G4703, G5452

(Go back to: [Mark 4:3](#); [4:4](#); [4:14](#); [4:15](#); [4:16](#); [4:18](#); [4:20](#); [4:26](#); [4:31](#); [4:32](#))

possess, possessed, possession, dispossess

Facts:

The terms “possess” and “possession” usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of “possessing” or “taking possession of” an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to “possess” the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as “their possession.” This could also be translated as “their rightful place to live.”
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh’s “special possession.” This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “possess” could also be translated as “own” or “have” or “have charge over.”
- The phrase “take possession of” could be translated as “take control of” or “occupy” or “live on,” depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, “possessions” could be translated as “belongings” or “property” or “owned things” or “things they owned.”
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, “my special possession” this could also be translated as “my special people” or “people who belong to me” or “my people whom I love and rule.”
- The sentence, “they will become their possession” when referring to land, means “they will occupy the land” or “the land will belong to them.”
- The expression, “found in his possession” could be translated as, “that he was holding” or “that he had with him.”
- The phrase “as your possession” could also be translated as, “as something that belongs to you” or “as a place where your people will live.”
- The phrase, “in his possession” could be translated as “that he owned” or “which belonged to him.”

(See also: Canaan, [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:70
- 1 Kings 09:17-19
- Acts 02:45
- Deuteronomy 04:5-6
- Genesis 31:36-37
- Matthew 13:44

Word Data:

- Strong's: H270, H272, H834, H2505, H2631, H3027, H3423, H3424, H3425, H3426, H4180, H4181, H4672, H4735, H4736, H5157, H5159, H5459, H7069, G1139, G2192, G2697, G2722, G2932, G2933, G2935, G4047, G5224, G5564

(Go back to: [Mark 3:27](#); [5:15](#); [10:22](#))

power, powerful, powerfully

Definition:

The term “power” refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. “Powers” refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The “power of God” refers to God’s ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “power” could also be translated as “ability” or “strength” or “energy” or “ability to do miracles” or “control.”
- Possible ways to translate the term “powers” could include “powerful beings” or “controlling spirits” or “those who control others.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [miracle](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:05
- Colossians 01:11-12
- Genesis 31:29
- Jeremiah 18:21
- Jude 01:25
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 01:17
- Luke 04:14
- Matthew 26:64
- Philippians 03:21
- Psalm 080:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:05** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the **power** of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”
- **26:01** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the **power** of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **32:15** Immediately Jesus realized that **power** had gone out from him.
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, “Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you **power** when the Holy Spirit comes on you.”
- **43:06** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the **power** of God, as you have seen and already know.”
- **44:08** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the **power** of Jesus the Messiah.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H410, H1369, H1370, H2220, H2393, H2428, H2429, H2632, H3027, H3028, H3581, H4475, H4910, H5794, H5797, H5808, H6184, H7786, H7980, H7981, H7983, H7989, H8280, H8592, H8633, G1411, G1415, G1754, G1756, G1849, G1850, G2159, G2478, G2479, G2904, G3168

(Go back to: [Mark 2:7](#); [3:27](#); [5:3](#); [5:30](#); [8:4](#); [9:1](#); [9:3](#); [9:22](#); [9:23](#); [9:28](#); [12:24](#); [13:25](#); [13:26](#); [14:62](#); [15:31](#))

pray, prayer

Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: false god, [forgive](#), praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:09
- Acts 08:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 04:04
- John 17:09
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:05** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- **19:08** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- **21:07** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- **43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- **49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G154, G1162, G1189, G1783, G2065, G2171, G2172, G3870, G4335, G4336

(Go back to: [Mark 1:35](#); [6:46](#); [9:29](#); [11:17](#); [11:24](#); [11:25](#); [12:40](#); [13:18](#); [13:33](#); [14:32](#); [14:35](#); [14:38](#); [14:39](#))

preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

Definition:

To “preach” means to speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him. To “proclaim” means to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
- “Preaching” and “teaching” are similar, but are not exactly the same.
- “Preaching” mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. “Teaching” is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
- The term “preach” is usually used with the word “gospel.”
- What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his “teachings.”
- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See also: [good news](#), [Jesus](#), [kingdom of God](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:1-2
- Acts 08:4-5
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:21-22
- Acts 20:25
- Luke 04:42
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 04:17
- Matthew 12:41
- Matthew 24:14
- Acts 09:20-22
- Acts 13:38-39
- Jonah 03:1-3
- Luke 04:18-19
- Mark 01:14-15
- Matthew 10:26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:02** He (John) **preached** to them, saying, “Repent, for the Kingdom of God is near!”
- **30:01** Jesus sent his apostles to **preach** and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:01** About three years after Jesus first began **preaching** and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **45:06** But in spite of this, they **preached** about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **45:07** He (Philip) went to Samaria where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.
- **46:06** Right away, Saul began **preaching** to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to **preach** the good news of Jesus in many other places.

- **47:14** Paul and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, **preaching** and teaching people the good news about Jesus.
- **50:02** When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My disciples will **preach** the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”

Word Data:

- Strong's:
 - preach: H1319, H7121, H7150, G1229, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2783, G2784, G2980, G4283
 - proclaim: H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H5046, H5608, H6963, H7121, H7440, H8085, G518, G591, G1229, G1861, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2784, G2980, G3142, G4135

(Go back to: [Mark 1:4](#); [1:7](#); [1:14](#); [1:38](#); [1:39](#); [1:45](#); [3:14](#); [5:19](#); [5:20](#); [6:12](#); [7:36](#); [13:10](#); [14:9](#))

priest, priesthood

Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: Aaron, chief priests, [high priest](#), mediator, [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:22
- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:31
- Mark 01:44
- Mark 02:25-26
- Matthew 08:4
- Matthew 12:04
- Micah 03:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 01:06

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:07** "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was

sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.

- **19:07** So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- **21:07** An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G748, G749, G2405, G2406, G2407, G2409, G2420

(Go back to: [Mark 1:44](#); [2:26](#))

prison, prisoner, imprison

Definition:

The term “prison” refers to a place where criminals are kept as a punishment for their crimes. A “prisoner” is someone who has been put in the prison.

- A person may be kept in a prison while waiting to be judged in a trial.
- The term “imprisoned” means “kept in a prison” or “kept in captivity.”
- Many prophets and other servants of God were put in prison even though they had not done anything wrong.

Translation Suggestions:

- Another word for “prison” is “jail.”
- This term could also be translated as “dungeon” in contexts where the prison is probably underground or beneath the main part of a palace or other building.
- The term “prisoners” can also refer in general to people who have been captured by an enemy and kept somewhere against their will. Another way to translate this meaning would be “captives.”
- Other ways to translate “imprisoned” could be, “kept as a prisoner” or “kept in captivity” or “held captive.”

(See also: [captive](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 25:04
- Ephesians 04:01
- Luke 12:58
- Luke 22:33-34
- Mark 06:17
- Matthew 05:26
- Matthew 14:03
- Matthew 25:34-36

Word Data:

- Strong's: H612, H613, H615, H616, H631, H1004, H1540, H3608, H3628, H3947, H4115, H4307, H4455, H4525, H4929, H5470, H6495, H7617, H7622, H7628, G1198, G1199, G1200, G1201, G1202, G1210, G2252, G3612, G4788, G4869, G5084, G5438, G5439

(Go back to: [Mark 6:17](#); [6:27](#); [15:6](#))

profit, profitable, unprofitable

Definition:

In general, the terms “profit” and “profitable” refer to gaining something good through doing certain actions or behaviors.

Something is “profitable” to someone if it brings them good things or if it helps them bring about good things for other people.

- More specifically, the term “profit” often refers to money that is gained from doing business. A business is “profitable” if it gains more money than it spends.
- Actions are profitable if they bring about good things for people.
- 2 Timothy 3:16 says that all Scripture is “profitable” for correcting and training people in righteousness. This means that the Bible’s teachings are helpful and useful for teaching people to live according to God’s will.

The term “unprofitable” means to not be useful.

- It literally means to not profit anything or to not help someone gain anything.
- Something that is unprofitable is not worth doing because it does not give any benefit.
- This could be translated as “useless” or “worthless” or “not useful” or “unworthy” or “not beneficial” or “giving no benefit.”

(See also: [worthy](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “profit” could also be translated as “benefit” or “help” or “gain.”
- The term “profitable” could be translated as “useful” or “beneficial” or “helpful.”
- To “profit from” something could be translated as “benefit from” or “gain money from” or “receive help from.”
- In the context of a business, “profit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “money gained” or “surplus of money” or “extra money.”

Bible References:

- Job 15:03
- Proverbs 10:16
- Jeremiah 02:08
- Ezekiel 18:12-13
- John 06:63
- Mark 08:36
- Matthew 16:26
- 2 Peter 02:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1215, H3148, H3276, H3504, H4195, H4768, H5532, H7737, H7939, G147, G255, G512, G888, G889, G890, G1281, G2585, G2770, G2771, G3408, G4297, G4298, G4851, G5539, G5622, G5623, G5624

(Go back to: [Mark 5:26](#); [7:11](#); [8:36](#))

promise, promised

Definition:

When used as a verb, the term "promise" refers to the action of a person saying that he will do something in such way that he obligates himself to fulfill what he has said. When used as a noun, the term "promise" refers to the thing that a person obligates himself to do.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.

Translation Suggestions:


- The term "promise" could be translated as "commitment" or "assurance" or "guarantee."
- To "promise to do something" could be translated as "assure someone that you will do something" or "commit to doing something."

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), vow)

Bible References:

- Galatians 03:15-16
- Genesis 25:31-34
- Hebrews 11:09
- James 01:12
- Numbers 30:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, "I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children." 
- **03:16** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God's **promise**.
- **05:04** "Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of **promise**."
- **08:15** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob's twelve sons and their families.
- **17:14** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **50:01** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H562, H1696, H8569, G1843, G1860, G1861, G1862, G3670, G4279

(Go back to: [Mark 14:11](#))

prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as, “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as, “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as, “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: Baal, divination, false god, [false prophet](#), [fulfill](#), [law](#), vision)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- Acts 03:25
- John 01:43-45
- Malachi 04:4-6
- Matthew 01:23
- Matthew 02:18
- Matthew 05:17
- Psalm 051:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:01** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God’s messages.
- **19:06** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.

- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:09** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:05** "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:07** "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G2495, G4394, G4395, G4396, G4397, G4398, G5578

(Go back to: [Mark 1:2](#); [6:4](#); [6:15](#); [7:6](#); [8:28](#); [11:32](#); [14:65](#))

prostrate, worship

Definition:

To “prostrate” oneself means to lie flat on the ground, usually in submission to a person of authority such as a king or some other powerful person. This same term can also mean to “worship,” referring to the actions of honoring, praising, and obeying God.

- This term often means literally “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- This term can be used both of people who worship Yahweh as the One True God and others who worship false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), praise, [honor](#))

Bible References:

- Colossians 02:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:18
- Exodus 03:11-12
- Luke 04:07
- Matthew 02:02
- Matthew 02:08

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.”
- **14:02** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.
- **17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- **25:07** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- **26:02** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- **47:01** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G1391, G1479, G2151, G2318, G2323, G2356, G3000, G3511, G4352, G4353, G4573, G4574, G4576

(Go back to: [Mark 7:7](#))

proud, pride, prideful

Definition:

The terms “proud” and “prideful” refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms “proud” and “pride” can also be used in a positive sense, such as being “proud of” what someone else has achieved and being “proud of” your children. The expression “take pride in your work” means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of “pride.”
- The term “prideful” is always negative, with the meaning of being “arrogant” or “conceited” or “self-important.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The noun “pride” could be translated as “arrogance” or “conceit” or “self-importance.”
- In other contexts, “pride” could be translated as “joy” or “satisfaction” or “pleasure.”
- To be “proud of” could also be translated as “happy with” or “satisfied with” or “joyful about (the accomplishments of).”
- The phrase “take pride in your work” could be translated as, “find satisfaction in doing your work well.”
- The expression “take pride in Yahweh” could also be translated as “be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done” or “be happy about how amazing Yahweh is.”

(See also: arrogant, humble, [joy](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 03:6-7
- 2 Corinthians 01:12
- Galatians 06:3-5
- Isaiah 13:19
- Luke 01:51

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:02** They were very **proud**, and they did not care about what God said.
- **34:10** Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is **proud**, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1341, H1343, H1344, H1346, H1347, H1348, H1349, H1361, H1362, H1363, H1364, H1396, H1466, H1467, H1984, H2086, H2087, H3093, H3238, H3513, H4062, H1431, H4791, H5965, H7295, H7312, H7342, H7311, H7830, H8597, G1391, G1392, G2744, G2745, G2746, G3173, G5187, G5229, G5243, G5244, G5308, G5309, G5426

(Go back to: [Mark 7:22](#))

purple

Facts:

The term “purple” is the name of a color that is a mixture of blue and red.

- In ancient times, purple was a rare and highly valuable color of dye that was used to dye the clothing of kings and other high officials.
- Because it was costly and time-consuming to produce this dye, purple clothing was considered a sign of wealth, distinction, and royalty.
- Purple was also one of the colors used for the curtains in the tabernacle and temple, and for the ephod worn by the priests.
- Purple dye was extracted from a kind of sea snail by either crushing or boiling the snails or by causing them to release the dye while still alive. This was an expensive process.
- Roman soldiers put a purple royal robe on Jesus before his crucifixion, to mock him for his claim to be King of the Jews.
- Lydia from the town of Philippi was a woman who made her living by selling purple cloth.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: ephod, Philippi, royal, [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 02:13-14
- Daniel 05:7
- Daniel 05:29-31
- Proverbs 31:22-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H710, H711, H713, G4209, G4210, G4211

(Go back to: [Mark 15:17](#); [15:20](#))

quench, quenched, unquenchable

Definition:

The term “quench” means to put out or stop something that is demanding to be satisfied.

- This term is usually used in the context of quenching thirst and means to stop being thirsty by drinking something.
- It can also be used to refer to putting out a fire.
- Both thirst and fire are quenched with water.
- Paul uses the term “quench” in a figurative way when he instructs believers to not “quench the Holy Spirit.” This means to not discourage people from allowing the Holy Spirit from produce his fruits and gifts in them. Quenching the Holy Spirit means preventing the Holy Spirit from freely manifesting his power and work in people..

(See also: [fruit](#), gift, [Holy Spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:19
- Ezekiel 20:47
- Isaiah 01:31
- Jeremiah 21:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1846, H3518, H7665, G762, G4570

(Go back to: [Mark 9:48](#))

Rabbi

Definition:

The term “Rabbi” literally means “my master” or “my teacher.”

- It was a title of respect that was used to address a man who was a Jewish religious teacher, especially a teacher of God’s laws.
- Both John the Baptist and Jesus were sometimes called “Rabbi” by their disciples.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate this term could include “My Master” or “My Teacher” or “Honorable Teacher” or “Religious Teacher.” Some languages may capitalize a greeting like this, while others may not.
- The project language may also have a special way that teachers are normally addressed.
- Make sure the translation of this term does not indicate that Jesus was a schoolteacher.
- Also consider how “Rabbi” is translated in a Bible translation in a related language or a national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [teacher](#))

Bible References:

- John 01:49-51
- John 06:24-25
- Mark 14:43-46
- Matthew 23:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G4461

(Go back to: [Mark 9:5](#); [11:21](#); [14:45](#))

raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up

Definition:

raise, raise up

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The phrase “raise up” sometimes means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

rise, arise

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose,” and “arose” express past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen!”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “raise” or “raise up” could be translated as “lift up” or “make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as to “cause to appear” or to “appoint” or to “bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as, “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as “provide” or to “appoint” or to “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: [resurrection](#), [appoint](#), exalt)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- 2 Samuel 07:12
- Acts 10:40
- Colossians 03:01
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 06:01
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 07:22
- Matthew 20:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.

- **41:05** "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- **43:07** "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- **44:05** " You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead. "
- **44:08** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- **48:04** This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- **49:02** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2210, H2224, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6965, H6966, H6974, H7613, G305, G386, G393, G450, G1096, G1326, G1453, G1525, G1817, G1825, G1892, G1999, G4891

(Go back to: [Mark 1:31](#); [1:35](#); [2:9](#); [2:11](#); [2:12](#); [2:14](#); [3:3](#); [3:26](#); [4:27](#); [5:41](#); [5:42](#); [6:14](#); [6:16](#); [7:24](#); [8:31](#); [9:9](#); [9:10](#); [9:27](#); [9:31](#); [10:1](#); [10:34](#); [10:49](#); [10:50](#); [12:19](#); [12:23](#); [12:25](#); [12:26](#); [13:8](#); [13:12](#); [13:22](#); [14:28](#); [14:42](#); [14:57](#); [14:60](#); [16:2](#); [16:6](#))

ransom, ransomed

Definition:

The term “ransom” refers to a sum of money or other payment that is demanded or paid for the release of a person who is held captive.

- As a verb, to “ransom” means to make a payment or to do something self-sacrificially in order to rescue someone who has been captured, enslaved or imprisoned. This meaning of “buy back” is similar to the meaning of “redeem.”
- Jesus allowed himself to be killed as a ransom to free sinful people from their enslavement to sin. This act of God buying back his people through paying the penalty of their sin is also called “redemption” in the Bible.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “ransom” could also be translated as to “pay to release” or to “pay a price to free” or to “buy back.”
- The phrase to “pay a ransom” could be translated as to “pay the price (of freedom)” or to “pay the penalty (to free people)” or to “make the required payment.”
- The noun “ransom” could be translated as “a buying back” or “a penalty paid” or “the price paid” (to free or buy back people or land).
- The terms a “ransom” and a “redemption” have the same meaning in English but are sometimes used slightly differently. Other languages may have only one term for this concept.
- Make sure this is translated differently from “atonement.”

(See also: atonement, redeem)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 02:06
- Isaiah 43:03
- Job 06:23
- Leviticus 19:20
- Matthew 20:28
- Psalms 049:07

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H3724, H6299, H6306, G487, G3083

(Go back to: [Mark 10:45](#))

rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness

Definition:

The term “rebel” means to refuse to submit to someone’s authority. A “rebellious” person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called “a rebel.”

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term to “rebel” could also be translated as to “disobey” or to “revolt,” depending on the context.
- “Rebellious” could also be translated as “continually disobedient” or “refusing to obey.”
- The term “rebellion” means “refusal to obey” or “disobedience” or “law-breaking.”
- The phrase “the rebellion” or “a rebellion” can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

(See also: [authority](#), [governor](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 12:18-19
- 1 Samuel 12:14
- 1 Timothy 01:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
- Acts 21:38
- Luke 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:14** After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for forty years, all of them who had **rebelled** against God were dead.
- **18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel **rebelled** against Rehoboam.
- **18:09** Jeroboam **rebelled** against God and caused the people to sin.
- **18:13** Most of the people of Judah also **rebelled** against God and worshiped other gods.
- **20:07** But after a few years, the king of Judah **rebelled** against Babylon.
- **45:03** Then he (Stephen) said, “You stubborn and **rebellious** people always reject the Holy Spirit, just as your ancestors always rejected God and killed his prophets.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4775, H4776, H4777, H4779, H4780, H4784, H4805, H5327, H5627, H5637, H6586, H6588, H7846, G3893, G4955

(Go back to: [Mark 15:7](#))

rebuke

Definition:

The term "rebuke" refers to correcting someone verbally, usually with sternness or force.

- The New Testament commands Christians to rebuke other believers when they are clearly disobeying God.
- The book of Proverbs instructs parents to rebuke their children when they are disobedient.
- A rebuke is typically given to prevent those who committed a wrong from further involving themselves in sin.
- This could be translated by "sternly correct" or "admonish."
- The phrase "a rebuke" could be translated by "a stern correction" or "a strong criticism."
- "Without rebuke" could be translated as "without admonishing" or "without criticism."

(See also admonish, disobey)

Bible References:

- Mark 01:23-26
- Mark 16:14
- Matthew 08:26-27
- Matthew 17:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1605, H1606, H2778, H2781, H3198, H4045, H4148, H8156, H8433, G1649, G1651, G1969, G2008, G3679

(Go back to: [Mark 1:25](#); [3:12](#); [4:39](#); [8:32](#); [8:33](#); [9:25](#); [10:13](#); [10:48](#))

receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance

Definition:

The term "receive" generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To "receive" can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in "he received punishment for what he did."
- There is also a special sense in which we can "receive" a person. For example, to "receive" guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To "receive the gift of the Holy Spirit" means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To "receive Jesus" means to accept God's offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person "receives his sight" means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "receive" could be translated as "accept" or "welcome" or "experience" or "be given."
- The expression "you will receive power" could be translated as "you will be given power" or "God will give you power" or "power will be given to you (by God)" or "God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you."
- The phrase "received his sight" could be translated as "was able to see" or "became able to see again" or "was healed by God so that he was able to see."

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [lord](#), [save](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 05:09
- 1 Thessalonians 01:06
- 1 Thessalonians 04:01
- Acts 08:15
- Jeremiah 32:33
- Luke 09:05
- Malachi 03:10-12
- Psalms 049:14-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to **receive** the punishment for other people's sin. His punishment would bring peace between God and people.
- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, **receive** my spirit."
- **49:06** He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the cross, he **received** your punishment.
- **49:13** God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and **receives** him as their Master.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3557, H3947, H6901, H6902, H8254, G308, G324, G353, G354, G568, G588, G618, G1183, G1209, G1523, G1653, G1926, G2865, G2983, G3028, G3335, G3336, G3549, G3858, G3880, G4327, G4355, G4356, G4687, G5264, G5562

(Go back to: [Mark 4:16](#); [4:20](#); [6:11](#); [7:4](#); [9:37](#); [10:15](#); [10:30](#); [11:24](#); [12:2](#); [12:40](#))

reed

Facts:

The term “reed” refers to a plant with a long stalk that grows in the water, usually along the edge of a river or stream.

- The reeds in the Nile River where Moses was hidden as a baby were also called “bulrushes.” They were tall, hollow stalks growing in dense clumps in the river water.
- These fibrous plants were used in ancient Egypt for making paper, baskets, and boats.
- The stalk of the reed plant is flexible and is easily bent over by the wind.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Egypt, [Moses](#), Nile River)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:15
- Luke 07:24
- Matthew 11:07
- Matthew 12:20
- Psalm 068:30

Word Data:

- Strong's: H98, H100, H260, H5488, H6169, H7070, G2563

(Go back to: [Mark 15:19](#); [15:36](#))

reject, rejected, rejection

Definition:

To “reject” someone or something means to refuse to accept that person or thing.

- The term “reject” can also mean to “refuse to believe in” something.
- To reject God also means to refuse to obey him.
- When the Israelites rejected Moses’ leadership, it means that they were rebelling against his authority. They did not want to obey him.
- The Israelites showed that they were rejecting God when they worshiped false gods.
- The term “push away” is the literal meaning of this word. Other languages may have a similar expression that means to reject or refuse to believe someone or something.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “reject” could also be translated by “not accept” or “stop helping” or “refuse to obey” or “stop obeying.”
- In the expression “stone that the builders rejected,” the term “rejected” could be translated as “refused to use” or “did not accept” or “threw away” or “got rid of as worthless.”
- In the context of people who rejected God’s commandments, rejected could be translated as “refused to obey” his commands or “stubbornly chose to not accept” God’s laws.

(See also: [command](#), disobey, [obey](#), stiff-necked)

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:12-14
- Hosea 04:6-7
- Isaiah 41:09
- John 12:48-50
- Mark 07:09

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H947, H959, H2186, H2310, H3988, H5006, H5034, H5186, H5203, H5307, H5541, H5800, G114, G483, G550, G579, G580, G593, G683, G720, G1609, G3868

(Go back to: [Mark 7:9](#); [8:31](#); [12:10](#))

repent, repentance

Definition:

The terms “repent” and “repentance” refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To “repent” literally means to “change one’s mind.”
- In the Bible, “repent” usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God’s way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “repent” can be translated with a word or phrase that means “turn back (to God)” or “turn away from sin and toward God” or “turn toward God, away from sin.”
- Often the term “repentance” can be translated using the verb “repent.” For example, “God has given repentance to Israel” could be translated as “God has enabled Israel to repent.”
- Other ways to translate “repentance” could include “turning away from sin” or “turning to God and away from sin.”

(See also: [forgive](#), [sin](#), [turn](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 03:19-20
- Luke 03:3
- Luke 03:8
- Luke 05:32
- Luke 24:47
- Mark 01:14-15
- Matthew 03:03
- Matthew 03:11
- Matthew 04:17
- Romans 02:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:02** After many years of disobeying God and being oppressed by their enemies, the Israelites **repented** and asked God to rescue them.
- **17:13** David **repented** of his sin and God forgave him.
- **19:18** They (prophets) warned people that God would destroy them if they did not **repent**.
- **24:02** Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, “**Repent**, for the kingdom of God is near!”
- **42:08** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to **receive** forgiveness for their sins.”
- **44:05** “So now, **repent** and turn to God so that your sins will be washed away.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5150, H5162, H5164, G278, G3338, G3340, G3341

(Go back to: [Mark 1:4](#); [1:15](#); [6:12](#))

report, reported, reputation

Definition:

The term to “report” means to tell people about something that happened, often giving details about that event. A “report” is what is told, and can be spoken or written.

- “Report” could also be translated as “tell” or “explain” or “tell the details of.”
- The expression “Report this to no one” could be translated as, “Don’t talk about this with anyone” or “Don’t tell anyone about this.”
- Ways to translate “a report” could include “an explanation” or “a story” or “a detailed account,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

- Acts 05:22-23
- John 12:38
- Luke 05:15
- Luke 08:34-35
- Matthew 28:15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1681, H1696, H1697, H5046, H7725, H8034, H8052, H8085, H8088, G189, G191, G312, G518, G987, G1225, G1310, G1834, G2036, G2163, G3004, G3056, G3140, G3377

(Go back to: [Mark 1:28](#); [5:14](#); [5:16](#); [6:30](#))

rest, rested, restless

Definition:

The term “rest” generally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. However, the term can refer to various kinds of rest besides only rest from working. For example, a person might rest from fighting, rest from speaking, or rest from moving, etc.

- An object can be said to be “resting” somewhere, which means it is “standing” or “sitting” there.
- A boat that “comes to rest” somewhere has “stopped” or “landed” there.
- When a person or animals rest, they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the “Sabbath” day.
- To rest an object on something means to “place” or “put” it there.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “rest (oneself)” could also be translated as to “stop working” or to “refresh himself” or to “stop carrying burdens.”
- To “rest” an object on something could be translated as to “place” or “put” or “set” that object on something.
- When Jesus said, “I will give you rest,” this could also be translated as “I will cause you to stop carrying your burden” or “I will help you be at peace” or “I will empower you to relax and trust in me.”
- God said, “they will not enter my rest,” and this statement could be translated as “they will not experience my blessings of rest” or “they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me.”
- The term “the rest” could be translated as “those that remain” or “all the other people” or “everything that is left.”

(See also: remnant, [Sabbath](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- Genesis 02:03
- Jeremiah 06:16-19
- Matthew 11:29
- Revelation 14:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H14, H1824, H1826, H2308, H3498, H3499, H4494, H4496, H4771, H5117, H5118, H5183, H5564, H6314, H7258, H7280, H7599, H7604, H7605, H7606, H7611, H7673, H7677, H7901, H7931, H7954, H8058, H8172, H8252, H8300, G372, G373, G425, G1515, G1879, G1954, G1981, G2270, G2663, G2664, G2681, G2838, G3062, G4520

(Go back to: [Mark 6:31](#); [14:41](#))

resurrection

Definition:

The term “resurrection” refers to the act of becoming alive again after having died.

- To resurrect someone means to bring that person back to life again. Only God has the power to do this.
- The word “resurrection” often refers to Jesus’ coming back to life after he died.
- When Jesus said, “I am the Resurrection and the Life” he meant that he is the source of resurrection, and the one who causes people to come back to life.

Translation Suggestions:

- A person’s “resurrection” could be translated as his “coming back to life” or his “becoming alive again after being dead.”
- The literal meaning of this word is “a rising up” or “the act of being raised (from the dead).” These would be other possible ways to translate this term.

(See also: [life](#), [death](#), [raise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:13
- 1 Peter 03:21
- Hebrews 11:35
- John 05:28-29
- Luke 20:27
- Luke 20:36
- Matthew 22:23
- Matthew 22:30
- Philippians 03:11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** Through the Messiah’s death and **resurrection**, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the New Covenant.
- **37:05** Jesus replied, “I am the **Resurrection** and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he dies.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G386, G1454, G1815

(Go back to: [Mark 12:18](#); [12:23](#))

return

Definition:

The term “return” means to go back or to give something back.

- To “return to” something means to start doing that activity again. To “return to” a place or person means to go back to that place or person again.
- When the Israelites returned to their worship of idols, they were starting to worship them again.
- When they returned to Yahweh, they repented and were worshiping Yahweh again.
- To return land or things that were taken or received from someone else means to give that property back to the person it belongs to.

(See also: [turn](#))

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G344, G360, G390, G1877, G1880, G1994, G5290

(Go back to: [Mark 13:16](#))

reveal, revealed, revelation

Definition:

The term “reveal” means to cause something to be known. A “revelation” is something that has been made known.

- God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
- God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
- When Paul said that he received the gospel by “revelation from Jesus Christ,” he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
- In the New Testament book “Revelation” is about God revealed events that will happen in the end times. He revealed them to the apostle John through visions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “reveal” could include “make known” or “disclose” or “show clearly.”
- Depending on the context, possible ways to translate “revelation” could be “communication from God” or “things that God has revealed” or “teachings about God.” It is best to keep the meaning of “reveal” in the translation.
- The phrase “where there is no revelation” could be translated as “when God is not revealing himself to people” or “when God is not speaking to people” or “among people whom God has not communicating.”

(See also: [good news](#), [good news](#), dream, vision)

Bible References:

- Daniel 11:1-2
- Ephesians 03:05
- Galatians 01:12
- Lamentations 02:13-14
- Matthew 10:26
- Philippians 03:15
- Revelation 01:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H241, H1540, H1541, G601, G602, G5537

(Go back to: [Mark 3:12](#); [4:22](#))

reward, prize, deserve,

Definition:

The term "reward" refers to what a person receives because of something he has done, either good or bad. To "reward" someone is to give someone something he deserves. However, this is different than the concept of "wages," which refers to payment (often money) given in exchange for work performed.

- A reward can be a good or positive thing that a person receives because he has done something well or because he has obeyed God.
- Sometimes a reward can refer to negative things that may result from bad behavior, such as the statement "the reward of the wicked." In this context "reward" refers to the punishment or negative consequences they receive because of their sinful actions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "reward" could be translated as "payment" or "something that is deserved" or "punishment."
- To "reward" someone could be translated by to "repay" or to "punish" or to "give what is deserved."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to wages. A reward is not specifically about earning money as part of a job.

(See also: punish)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 32:06
- Isaiah 40:10
- Luke 06:35
- Mark 09:40-41
- Matthew 05:11-12
- Matthew 06:3-4
- Psalms 127:3-5
- Revelation 11:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H319, H866, H868, H1576, H1578, H1580, H4909, H4991, H5023, H6118, H6468, H6529, H7938, H7939, H7999, G469, G514, G591, G2603, G3405, G3406, G3408

(Go back to: [Mark 9:41](#))

right hand

Definition:

The figurative expression “right hand” refers to the place of honor or strength on the right side of a ruler or other important individual.

- The right hand is also used as a symbol of power, authority, or strength.
- The Bible describes Jesus as sitting “at the right hand of” God the Father as the head of the body of believers (the Church) and in control as ruler of all creation.
- A person’s right hand was used to show special honor when placed on the head of someone being given a blessing (as when the patriarch Jacob blessed Joseph’s son Ephraim).
- To “serve at the right hand” of someone means to be the one whose service is especially helpful and important to that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- Sometimes the term “right hand” literally refers to a person’s right hand, as when Roman soldiers put a staff into Jesus’ right hand to mock him. This should be translated using the term that the language uses to refer to this hand.
- Regarding figurative uses, if an expression that includes the term “right hand” does not have the same meaning in the project language, then consider whether that language has a different expression with the same meaning.
- The expression “at the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of” or “in the place of honor beside” or “in the position of strength” or “ready to help.”
- Ways to translate “with his right hand” could include “with authority” or “using power” or “with his amazing strength.”
- The figurative expression “his right hand and his mighty arm” uses two ways of emphasizing God’s power and great strength. One way to translate this expression could be “his amazing strength and mighty power.” (See: [parallelism](#))
- The expression “their right hand is falsehood” could be translated as, “even the most honorable thing about them is corrupted by lies” or “their place of honor is corrupted by deception” or “they use lies to make themselves powerful.”

(See also: [accuse](#), [evil](#), [honor](#), [mighty](#), punish, [rebel](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 02:33
- Colossians 03:01
- Galatians 02:09
- Genesis 48:14
- Hebrews 10:12
- Lamentations 02:03
- Matthew 25:33
- Matthew 26:64
- Psalms 044:03
- Revelation 02:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3225, H3231, H3233, G1188

(Go back to: [Mark 10:37](#); [10:40](#); [12:36](#); [14:62](#); [15:27](#))

righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

Definition:

The term “righteousness” refers to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God “righteous.” Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus’ righteousness.

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God’s teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms “upright” and “uprightness” refer to acting in a way that follows God’s laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is “upright” is someone who obeys God’s rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as “integrity” and “righteous” have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as “integrity and uprightness.” (See: [parallelism](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good”
- The term “unrighteous” could simply be translated as “not righteous.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”
- Ways to translate “upright” could include “acting rightly” or “one who acts rightly” or “following God’s laws” or “obedient to God” or “behaving in a way that is right.”
- The term “uprightness” could be translated as “moral purity” or “good moral conduct” or “rightness.”
- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: [evil](#), [faithful](#), [good](#), [holy](#), integrity, just, law, [law](#), [obey](#), pure, [righteous](#), [sin](#), [unlawful](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:16
- Job 01:08
- Psalms 037:30
- Psalms 049:14
- Psalms 107:42
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 02:06
- Matthew 06:01
- Acts 03:13-14
- Romans 01:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 06:09
- Galatians 03:07
- Colossians 03:25
- 2 Thessalonians 02:10
- 2 Timothy 03:16
- 1 Peter 03:18-20
- 1 John 01:09
- 1 John 05:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **04:08** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God's promise.
- **17:02** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **23:01** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1368, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H4749, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H6968, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G93, G94, G458, G1341, G1342, G1343, G1344, G1345, G1346, G2118, G3716, G3717

(Go back to: [Mark 2:17](#); [6:20](#))

robe, robed

Definition:

A robe is an outer garment with long sleeves that can be worn by a man or a woman. It is similar to a coat.

- Robes are open in the front and are tied shut with a sash or belt.
- They can be long or short.
- Purple robes were worn by kings as a sign of royalty, wealth, and prestige.

(See also: royal, [tunic](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 28:4-5
- Genesis 49:11-12
- Luke 15:22
- Luke 20:46
- Matthew 27:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H145, H155, H899, H1545, H2436, H2684, H3671, H3801, H3830, H3847, H4060, H4254, H4598, H5497, H5622, H6614, H7640, H7757, H7897, H8071, G1746, G2067, G2440, G4749, G4016, G5511

(Go back to: [Mark 12:38](#); [16:5](#))

rule, ruler, ruling, overrules

Definition:

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group. A ruler is one who “rules,” and his authority is his “rule.”

- In the Old Testament, a king was sometimes referred to generally as a “ruler,” as in the phrase “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God was referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action to “rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It means the same thing as “reign” when it refers to the ruling of a king.

(See also: [authority](#), [governor](#), [king](#), [synagogue](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 03:17-18
- Acts 07:35-37
- Luke 12:11
- Luke 23:35
- Mark 10:42
- Matthew 09:32-34
- Matthew 20:25
- Titus 03:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H995, H1166, H1167, H1404, H2708, H2710, H3027, H3548, H3920, H4043, H4410, H4427, H4428, H4438, H4467, H4474, H4475, H4623, H4910, H4941, H5057, H5065, H5387, H5401, H5461, H5715, H6113, H6213, H6485, H6957, H7101, H7218, H7287, H7300, H7336, H7786, H7860, H7980, H7981, H7985, H7989, H7990, H8199, H8269, H8323, H8451, G746, G752, G755, G757, G758, G932, G936, G1018, G1203, G1299, G1778, G1785, G1849, G2232, G2233, G2525, G2583, G2888, G2961, G3545, G3841, G4165, G4173, G4291

(Go back to: [Mark 3:22](#); [10:42](#))

run, runner, rushed, quickly went, scattered, flows

Definition:

Literally the term “run” means “move very quickly on foot,” usually at a greater speed than can be accomplished by walking.

This main meaning of “run” is also used in figurative expressions such as the following: * To “run in such a way as to win the prize” – refers to persevering in doing God’s will with the same perseverance as running a race in order to win. * To “run in the path of your commands” – means to gladly and quickly obey God’s commands. * To “run after other gods” means to persist in worshiping other gods. * “I run to you to hide me” means to quickly turn to God for refuge and safety when faced with difficult things. * Water and other liquids such as tears, blood, sweat, and rivers are said to “run.” This could also be translated as, “flow.” The border of a country or region is said to “run along” a river or the border of a different country. This could be translated by saying that the country’s border “is next to” the river or other country or by saying that the country “borders” the river or other country.” * Rivers and streams can “run dry,” which means that they no longer have water in them. This could be translated as “have dried up” or “have become dry.” * The days of a feast can “run their course,” which means they “have passed by” or “are finished” or “are over.”*

(See also: false god, persevere, refuge, [turn](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:18
- Galatians 02:02
- Galatians 05:07
- Philippians 02:16
- Proverbs 01:16

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H213, H386, H1065, H1272, H1556, H1980, H2100, H2416, H3001, H3212, H3332, H3381, H3920, H3988, H4422, H4754, H4794, H4944, H5074, H5127, H5140, H5472, H5756, H6437, H6440, H6544, H6805, H7272, H7291, H7310, H7323, H7325, H7519, H7751, H8264, H8308, H8444, G413, G1377, G1601, G1530, G1532, G1998, G2701, G3729, G4063, G4370, G4390, G4890, G4936, G5143, G5240, G5295, G5343

(Go back to: [Mark 9:25](#))

Sabbath

Definition:

The term “Sabbath” refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

- After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
- The command to “keep the Sabbath holy” is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.
- Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
- Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called “Sabbath day” rather than only the Sabbath.

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “resting day” or “day for resting” or “day of not working” or “God’s day of rest.”
- Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in “Sabbath Day” or “Resting Day.”
- Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [rest](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:2-3
- Acts 13:26-27
- Exodus 31:14
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Lamentations 02:06
- Leviticus 19:03
- Luke 13:14
- Mark 02:27
- Matthew 12:02
- Nehemiah 10:32-33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:05** “Always be sure to keep the **Sabbath day** holy. That is, do all your work in six days, for the seventh day is a day for you to rest and to honor me.”
- **26:02** Jesus went to the town of Nazareth where he had lived during his childhood. On the **Sabbath**, he went to the place of worship.
- **41:03** The day after Jesus was buried was a **Sabbath** day, and the Jews were not permitted to go to the tomb on that day.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4868, H7676, H7677, G4315, G4521

(Go back to: [Mark 1:21](#); [2:23](#); [2:24](#); [2:27](#); [2:28](#); [3:2](#); [3:4](#); [6:2](#); [16:1](#))

sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

sacrifice

- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin animal sacrifices could never do that.

offering

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action to “sacrifice” could be translated as to “give up something valuable” or to “kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: altar, [burnt offering](#), drink offering, false god, fellowship offering, freewill offering peace offering, [priest](#), sin offering, [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:06
- Acts 07:42
- Acts 21:25
- Genesis 04:3-5
- James 02:21-24
- Mark 01:43-44
- Mark 14:12
- Matthew 05:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- **05:06** “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me.” Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **05:09** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.

- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **48:06** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **48:08** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **49:11** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H801, H817, H819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4503, H4504, H5066, H5068, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8548, H8573, H8641, G266, G334, G1049, G1435, G1494, G2378, G2380, G3646, G4376, G5485

(Go back to: [Mark 12:33](#); [14:12](#))

Sadducee

Definition:

The Sadducees were a political group of Jewish priests during the time of Jesus Christ. They supported Roman rule and did not believe in the resurrection.

- Many Sadducees were wealthy, upper-class Jews who held powerful leadership positions such as chief priest and high priest.
- The duties of the Sadducees included taking care of the temple complex and priestly tasks such as offering sacrifices.
- The Sadducees and the Pharisees strongly influenced the Roman leaders to crucify Jesus.
- Jesus spoke against these two religious groups because of their selfishness and hypocrisy.

(See also: chief priests, [council](#), [high priest](#), [hypocrite](#), Jewish leaders, [Pharisee](#), [priest](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 04:03
- Acts 05:17-18
- Luke 20:27
- Matthew 03:07
- Matthew 16:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: G4523

(Go back to: [Mark 12:18](#))

sandal

Definition:

A sandal is a simple shoe with a flat sole that is held onto the foot by straps that go around the foot or ankle. Sandals are worn by both men and women.

- In ancient Israel, a sandal was sometimes used to confirm a legal transaction, such as the selling of property. One person would take off a sandal and give it to the other person to show that the transaction was legal and binding.
- John said that he was not worthy to even untie Jesus' sandals, which was a normal task for the servant or slave with the lowest status in a Jewish household.

Bible References:

- Acts 07:33
- Deuteronomy 25:10
- John 01:27
- Joshua 05:15
- Mark 06:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5274, H5275, H8288, G4547, G5266

(Go back to: [Mark 1:7](#); [6:9](#))

Satan, devil, evil one

Facts:

Although the devil is a spirit being that God created, he rebelled against God and became God's enemy. The devil is also called "Satan" and "the evil one."

- The devil hates God and all that God created because he wants to take the place of God and be worshiped as God.
- Satan tempts people to rebel against God.
- God sent his Son, Jesus, to rescue people from Satan's control.
- The name "Satan" means "adversary" or "enemy."
- The word "devil" means "accuser."

Translation Suggestions:

- The word "devil" could also be translated as "the accuser" or "the evil one" or "the king of evil spirits" or "the chief evil spirit."
- "Satan" could be translated as "Opponent" or "Adversary" or some other name that shows that he is the devil.
- These terms should be translated differently from demon and evil spirit.
- Consider how these terms are translated in a local or national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [demon](#), [evil](#), [kingdom of God](#), [tempt](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:08
- 1 Thessalonians 02:17-20
- 1 Timothy 05:15
- Acts 13:10
- Job 01:08
- Mark 08:33
- Zechariah 03:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:01** The snake who deceived Eve was **Satan**. The promise meant that the Messiah who would come would defeat **Satan** completely.
- **25:06** Then **Satan** showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their glory and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."
- **25:08** Jesus did not give in to **Satan's** temptations, so **Satan** left him.
- **33:06** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the word of God. The path is a person who hears God's word, but does not understand it, and the **devil** takes the word from him."
- **38:07** After Judas took the bread, **Satan** entered into him.
- **48:04** God promised that one of Eve's descendants would crush **Satan's** head, and **Satan** would wound his heel. This meant that **Satan** would kill the Messiah, but God would raise him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of **Satan** forever.
- **49:15** God has taken you out of **Satan's** kingdom of darkness and put you into God's kingdom of light.
- **50:09** "The weeds represent the people who belong to the **evil one**. The enemy who planted the weeds represents the **devil**."

- **50:10** "When the world ends, the angels will gather together all the people who belong to the **devil** and throw them into a raging fire, where they will cry and grind their teeth in terrible suffering."
- **50:15** When Jesus returns, he will completely destroy **Satan** and his kingdom. He will throw **Satan** into hell where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7700, H7854, H8163, G1139, G1140, G1141, G1142, G1228, G4190, G4566, G4567

(Go back to: [Mark 1:13](#); [3:23](#); [3:26](#); [4:15](#); [8:33](#))

save, saved, safe, salvation

Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” then God, through Jesus’ death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”
- The term “salvation” could also be translated using words related to “save” or “rescue,” as in “God’s saving people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God’s rescuing his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: [cross](#), deliver, punish, [sin](#), Savior)

Bible References:

- Genesis 49:18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 080:03
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 06:3-5
- Luke 02:30
- Luke 08:36-37
- Acts 04:12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 02:21
- Romans 01:16
- Romans 10:10
- Ephesians 06:17
- Philippians 01:28
- 1 Timothy 01:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:08** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:02** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:05** Moses told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you."
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:08** "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, "What must I do to be **saved**?" Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**."
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H983, H2421, H2502, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4931, H5338, H6308, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8199, H8668, G803, G804, G806, G1295, G1508, G4982, G4991, G4992, G5198

(Go back to: [Mark 3:4](#); [8:35](#); [10:26](#); [13:13](#); [13:20](#); [15:30](#); [15:31](#))

scribe

Definition:

Scribes were officials who were responsible for writing or copying important government or religious documents by hand. Another name for a Jewish scribe was “expert in Jewish law.”

- Scribes were responsible for copying and preserving the books of the Old Testament.
- They also copied, preserved, and interpreted religious opinions and commentary on the law of God.
- At times, scribes were important government officials.
- Important biblical scribes include Baruch and Ezra.
- In the New Testament, the term translated “scribes” was also translated as “teachers of the Law.”
- In the New Testament, scribes were usually part of the religious group called the “Pharisees,” and the two groups were frequently mentioned together.

(See also: [law](#), [Pharisee](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 04:05
- Luke 07:29-30
- Luke 20:47
- Mark 01:22
- Mark 02:16
- Matthew 05:19-20
- Matthew 07:28
- Matthew 12:38
- Matthew 13:52

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5608, H5613, H7083, G1122

(Go back to: [Mark 1:22](#); [2:6](#); [2:16](#); [3:22](#); [7:1](#); [7:5](#); [8:31](#); [9:11](#); [9:14](#); [10:33](#); [11:18](#); [11:27](#); [12:28](#); [12:32](#); [12:35](#); [12:38](#); [14:1](#); [14:43](#); [14:53](#); [15:1](#); [15:31](#))

Sea of Galilee, Sea of Kinnereth, lake of Gennesaret, Sea of Tiberias

Facts:

The “Sea of Galilee” is a lake in eastern Israel. In the Old Testament it was called the “Sea of Kinnereth.”

- The water of this lake flows south through the Jordan River down to the Salt Sea.
- Capernaum, Bethsaida, Gennesaret, and Tiberias were some of the towns located on the Sea of Galilee during New Testament times.
- Many events of Jesus’ life took place on or near the Sea of Galilee.
- The Sea of Galilee was also referred to as the “Sea of Tiberias” and the “lake of Gennesaret.”
- This term could also be translated as “lake in the region of Galilee” or “Lake Galilee” or “lake near Tiberias (Gennesaret).”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Capernaum](#), [Galilee](#), [Jordan River](#), Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- John 06:1-3
- Luke 05:01
- Mark 01:16-18
- Matthew 04:12-13
- Matthew 04:18-20
- Matthew 08:18-20
- Matthew 13:1-2
- Matthew 15:29-31

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3220, H3672, G1056, G1082, G2281, G3041, G5085

(Go back to: [Mark 1:16](#); [2:13](#); [3:7](#); [4:1](#); [4:39](#); [4:41](#); [5:1](#); [5:13](#); [5:21](#); [6:47](#); [6:48](#); [6:49](#); [7:31](#))

seed, semen

Definition:

A "seed" is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. However, in the Bible the term "seed" is used figuratively to mean several different things.

- The term "seed" is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man that combine with cells of a woman to cause a baby to grow inside her. A collection of these cells is called "semen."
- Related to this, "seed" is also used to refer to a person's offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people's hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term "seed" to refer to the Word of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for "seed" that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God's Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word "descendant" or "descendants" instead of "seed." Some languages may have a word that means "children and grandchildren."
- For a man or woman's "seed," consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people. (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: descendant, offspring)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:32
- Genesis 01:11
- Jeremiah 02:21
- Matthew 13:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2232, H2233, H3610, H6507, G4615, G4687, G4690, G4701, G4703

(Go back to: [Mark 4:26](#); [4:27](#); [4:31](#))

seek, search, look for

Definition:

The term “seek” means to look for something or someone. In the past tense, the verb is “sought.” This term is sometimes used figuratively, meaning to “attempt” or “make an effort” to do something or to ask for something.

- To “seek” or “look for” an opportunity to do something can mean to “try to find a time” to do it.
- To “seek Yahweh” means to “spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him.”
- To “seek protection” means to “try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger.”
- To “seek justice” means to “make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly.”
- To “seek the truth” means to “make an effort to find out what the truth is.”
- To “seek favor” means to “urgently ask for favor” or to “do things to cause someone to help you.”

(See also: [just](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:06
- Luke 11:09
- Psalms 027:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7836, H8446, G327, G1567, G1934, G2052, G2212

(Go back to: [Mark 1:37](#); [3:32](#); [8:11](#); [8:12](#); [11:18](#); [12:12](#); [14:1](#); [14:11](#); [14:55](#); [16:6](#))

seize, seizure

Definition:

The term “seize” means to take or capture someone or something by force. It can also mean to overpower and control someone.

- When a city was taken by means of military force, the soldiers would seize the valuable property of the people they had conquered.
- When used figuratively, a person can be described as being “seized with fear.” This means that the person was suddenly “overcome by fear.” If a person was “seized with fear” it could also be stated that the person “suddenly became very afraid.”
- In the context of labor pains that “seize” a woman, the meaning is that the pains are sudden and overpowering. This could be translated by saying that the pains “overcome” or “suddenly come upon” the woman.
- This term could also be translated as “take control of” or “suddenly take” or “grab.”
- The expression “seized and slept with her” could be translated as “forced himself on her” or “violated her” or “raped her.” Make sure the translation of this concept is acceptable.

(See: [euphemism](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 16:19-21
- Exodus 15:14
- John 10:37-39
- Luke 08:29
- Matthew 26:48

Word Data:

- Strong's: H270, H1497, H2388, H3027, H3920, H3947, H4672, H5377, H5860, H6031, H7760, H8610, G724, G1949, G2638, G2902, G2983, G4815, G4884

(Go back to: [Mark 3:21](#); [6:17](#); [9:18](#); [12:12](#); [14:1](#); [14:44](#); [14:46](#); [14:49](#); [14:51](#))

send, sent, send out

Definition:

To “send” is to cause someone or something to go somewhere. To “send out” someone is to tell that person to go on an errand or a mission.

- Often a person who is “sent out” has been appointed to do a specific task.
- Phrases like “send rain” or “send disaster” mean to “cause...to come.” This type of expression is usually used in reference to God causing these things to happen.
- The term “send” is also used in expressions such as to “send word” or to “send a message,” which means to give someone a message to tell someone else.
- To “send” someone “with” something can mean to “give” that thing “to” someone else, usually moving it some distance in order for the person to receive it.
- Jesus frequently used the phrase “the one who sent me” to refer to God the Father, who “sent” him to earth to redeem and save people. This could also be translated as “the one who commis

(See also: [appoint](#), redeem)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:33-34
- Acts 08:14-17
- John 20:21-23
- Matthew 09:37-38
- Matthew 10:05
- Matthew 10:40
- Matthew 21:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H935, H1540, H1980, H2199, H2904, H3318, H3474, H3947, H4916, H4917, H5042, H5130, H5375, H5414, H5674, H6963, H7368, H7725, H7964, H7971, H7972, H7993, H8421, H8446, G782, G375, G630, G649, G652, G657, G1026, G1032, G1544, G1599, G1821, G3333, G3343, G3936, G3992, G4311, G4341, G4369, G4842, G4882

(Go back to: [Mark 1:2](#); [1:43](#); [3:14](#); [3:31](#); [4:29](#); [5:10](#); [5:12](#); [6:7](#); [6:17](#); [6:27](#); [8:26](#); [9:37](#); [11:1](#); [11:3](#); [12:2](#); [12:3](#); [12:4](#); [12:5](#); [12:6](#); [12:13](#); [13:27](#); [14:13](#))

servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Definition:

The term "serve" generally means to do work, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts. The term refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. In the Bible, any of the following people might be called a "servant:" a slave, a young female worker, a young male worker, someone who obeys God, and others. In biblical times, there was less of a difference between a "servant" and a "slave" than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of a household, and many servants were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his "owner" or "master." Some masters treated their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treated their slaves very well, as a servant who was a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means "care for" or "serve food to" or "provide food for." When Jesus told the disciples to "serve" the fish to the people, this could be translated as, "distribute" or "hand out" or "give."
- In the Bible, the phrase "I am your servant" was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- The term "serve" can also be translated as "minister to" or "work for" or "take care of" or "obey," depending on the context.
- In the Old Testament, God's prophets and other people who worshiped God were often referred to as his "servants."
- To "serve God" can be translated as to "worship and obey God" or to "do the work that God has commanded."
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his "servants."
- To "serve tables" means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to "distribute food."
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to "serve" the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they "serve" the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus' sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their "service" to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as "serving" or "obeying" or "devotion to."

(See also: [commit](#), [enslave](#), [household](#), [lord](#), [obey](#), [righteous](#), [covenant](#), [law](#),)

Bible References:

- Acts 04:29-31
- Acts 10:7-8
- Colossians 01:7-8
- Colossians 03:22-25
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 12:47-48
- Mark 09:33-35
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- 2 Timothy 02:3-5
- Acts 06:2-4
- Genesis 25:23
- Luke 04:8

- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 22:26-27
- Mark 08:7-10
- Matthew 04:10-11
- Matthew 06:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:01** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **08:04** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **09:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt."
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- **29:03** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- **35:06** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- **47:04** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- **50:04** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

Word Data:

- (Servant) Strong's: H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G1249, G1401, G1402, G2324, G3407, G3411, G3610, G3816, G4983, G5257
- (Serve) H327, H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6213, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G1247, G1248, G1398, G1402, G1438, G1983, G2064, G2212, G2323, G2999, G3000, G3009, G4337, G4342, G4754, G5087, G5256

(Go back to: [Mark 1:20](#); [10:44](#); [12:2](#); [12:4](#); [13:34](#); [14:47](#); [14:66](#); [14:69](#))

sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication

Definition:

The term “sexual immorality” refers to sexual activity that takes place outside the marriage relationship of a man and a woman. This is against God’s plan. Older English Bible versions call this “fornication.”

- This term can refer to any kind of sexual activity that is against God’s will, including homosexual acts and pornography.
- One type of sexual immorality is adultery, which is sexual activity specifically between a married person and someone who is not that person’s spouse.
- Another type of sexual immorality is “prostitution,” which involves being paid to have sex with someone.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to Israel’s unfaithfulness to God when they worshiped false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sexual immorality” could be translated as “immorality” as long as the correct meaning of the term is understood.
- Other ways to translate this term could include “wrong sexual acts” or “sex outside of marriage.”
- This term should be translated in a different way from the term “adultery.”
- The translation of this term’s figurative uses should retain the literal term if possible since there is a common comparison in the Bible between unfaithfulness to God and unfaithfulness in the sexual relationship.

(See also: [adultery](#), false god, prostitute, [faithful](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 15:20
- Acts 21:25-26
- Colossians 03:5-8
- Ephesians 05:03
- Genesis 38:24-26
- Hosea 04:13-14
- Matthew 05:31-32
- Matthew 19:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2181, H8457, G1608, G4202, G4203

(Go back to: [Mark 7:21](#))

shadow, overshadow, shade

Definition:

The word “shadow” literally refers to the darkness that is caused by an object blocking the light. It also has several figurative meanings.

- The “shadow of death” means that death is present or near, just as a shadow indicates the presence of its object.
- Many times in the Bible, the life of a human being is compared to a shadow, which does not last very long and has no substance.
- Sometimes “shadow” is used as another word for “darkness.”
- The Bible talks about being hidden or protected in the shadow of God’s wings or hands. This is a picture of being protected and hidden from danger. Other ways to translate “shadow” in these contexts could include “shade” or “safety” or “protection.”
- It is best to translate “shadow” literally using the local term that is used to refer to an actual shadow.

(See also: [darkness](#), [light](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:09
- Genesis 19:08
- Isaiah 30:02
- Jeremiah 06:04
- Psalms 017:08

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2927, H6738, H6751, H6752, H6754, H6757, G644, G1982, G2683, G4639

(Go back to: [Mark 4:32](#))

shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

Definition:

The term “shame” refers to the painful feeling of being disgraced or humiliated that a person feels when they do something that others consider dishonorable or improper.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something improper or dishonorable.
- The term “humiliate” means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced, usually publicly. The act of shaming someone is called “humiliation.”
- To “reproach” someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person’s character or behavior.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their actions so that they feel ashamed of themselves. The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- The term “disgraceful” can be used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it. When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame. For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- When God humbles someone, it means that he is causing a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different from humiliating someone, which is often done in order to hurt that person.
- Saying that a person is “above reproach” or “beyond reproach” or “without reproach” means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.

Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate “disgrace” could include “shame” or “dishonor.”
- Ways to translate “disgraceful” could include “shameful” or “dishonoring.”
- To “humiliate” could also be translated as to “shame” or to “cause to feel shame” or to “embarrass.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “humiliation” could include “shame” or “degrading” or “disgrace.”
- The word “reproach” could also be translated as “accusation” or “shame” or “disgrace.”
- To “reproach” could also be translated as to “rebuke” or to “accuse” or to “criticize,” depending on the context.

(See also: dishonor, [accuse](#), [rebuke](#), false god, humble, [Isaiah](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:15-17
- 2 Kings 02:17
- 2 Samuel 13:13
- Luke 20:11
- Mark 08:38
- Mark 12:4-5
- 1 Timothy 03:07
- Genesis 34:07
- Hebrews 11:26
- Lamentations 02:1-2
- Psalms 022:06
- Deuteronomy 21:14
- Ezra 09:05
- Proverbs 25:7-8

- Psalms 006:8-10
- Psalms 123:03
- 1 Timothy 05:7-8
- 1 Timothy 06:13-14
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Job 16:9-10
- Proverbs 18:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: H937, H954, H955, H1317, H1322, H1421, H1442, H1984, H2490, H2616, H2617, H2659, H2778, H2781, H2865, H3001, H3637, H3639, H3640, H3971, H5007, H5034, H5039, H6030, H6031, H6172, H6256, H7022, H7034, H7036, H7043, H7511, H7817, H8103, H8213, H8216, H8217, H8589, G149, G152, G153, G410, G422, G423, G808, G818, G819, G821, G1788, G1791, G1870, G2617, G3059, G3679, G3680, G3681, G3856, G5014, G5195, G5196, G5484

(Go back to: [Mark 8:38](#); [12:4](#); [15:32](#))

shepherd, chief shepherd

Definition:

A shepherd is a person who takes care of sheep. The verb to “shepherd” means to protect the sheep and provide them with food and water. Shepherds watch over the sheep, leading them to places with good food and water. Shepherds also keep the sheep from getting lost and protect them from wild animals.

- This term is often used metaphorically in the Bible to refer to taking care of people’s spiritual needs. This includes teaching them what God has told them in the Bible and guiding them in the way they should live.
- In the Old Testament, God was called the “shepherd” of his people because he took care of all their needs and protected them. He also led and guided them. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Moses was a shepherd for the Israelites as he guided them spiritually in their worship of Yahweh and led them physically on their journey to the land of Canaan.
- In the New Testament, Jesus called himself the “good shepherd.” The apostle Paul also referred to him as the “great shepherd” over the Church.
- Also, in the New Testament, the term “shepherd” was used to refer to a person who was a spiritual leader over other believers. The word translated as “pastor” is the same word that is translated as “shepherd.” The elders and overseers were also called shepherds.

Translation Suggestions

- When used literally, the action “shepherd” could be translated as “take care of sheep” or “watch over sheep.”
- The person “shepherd” could be translated as “person who takes care of sheep” or “sheep tender” or “sheep caregiver.”
- When used as a metaphor, different ways to translate this term could include “spiritual shepherd” or “spiritual leader” or “one who is like a shepherd” or “one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep” or “one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep” or “one who takes care of God’s sheep.”
- In some contexts, “shepherd” could be translated as “leader” or “guide” or “caregiver.”
- The spiritual expression to “shepherd” could be translated as to “take care of” or to “spiritually nourish” or to “guide and teach” or to “lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep).”
- In figurative uses, it is best to use or include the literal word for “shepherd” in the translation of this term.

(See also: [believe](#), Canaan, church, [Moses](#), pastor, [sheep](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 49:24
- Luke 02:09
- Mark 06:34
- Mark 14:26-27
- Matthew 02:06
- Matthew 09:36
- Matthew 25:32
- Matthew 26:31

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:11** Moses became a **shepherd** in the wilderness far away from Egypt.to
- **17:02** David was a **shepherd** from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s sheep, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the sheep.
- **23:06** That night, there were some **shepherds** in a nearby field guarding their flocks.

- **23:08** The **shepherds** soon arrived at the place where Jesus was and they found him lying in a feeding trough, just as the angel had told them.
- **30:03** To Jesus, these people were like sheep without a **shepherd**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6629, H7462, H7469, H7473, G750, G4165, G4166

(Go back to: [Mark 6:34](#); [14:27](#))

Sidon, Sidonians

Facts:

Sidon was the oldest son of Canaan. There is also a Canaanite city called Sidon, probably named after Canaan's son.

- The city of Sidon was located northwest of Israel on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is part of the present-day country of Lebanon.
- The "Sidonians" were a Phoenician people group who lived in ancient Sidon and the region surrounding it.
- In the Bible, Sidon is closely associated with the city of Tyre, and both cities were known for their wealth and for immoral behavior of their people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Canaan, Noah, Phoenicia, the sea, [Tyre](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 12:20
- Acts 27:3-6
- Genesis 10:15-18
- Genesis 10:19
- Mark 03:7-8
- Matthew 11:22
- Matthew 15:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6721, H6722, G4605, G4606

(Go back to: [Mark 3:8](#); [7:24](#); [7:31](#))

sign, proof, reminder

Definition:

A sign is an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- Signs can help people to remember a promise that God has made:
 - The rainbows God creates in the sky are signs to remind people that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
 - God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign of his covenant with them.
 - In the Old Testament, God tells his people that he will “confirm” his covenant with them. This means he is stating that he will keep the promises he made in that covenant.
- Signs can reveal or point to something:
 - An angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
 - Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.
- Signs can prove that something is true:
 - The miracles performed by the prophets and apostles were signs that proved they were speaking God’s message.
 - The miracles that Jesus performed were signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on its context, “sign” could also be translated as “signal” or “symbol” or “mark” or “evidence” or “proof” or “gesture.”
- To “make signs with the hands” could also be translated as “motion with the hands” or “gesture with the hands” or “make gestures.”
- In some languages, there may be one word for a “sign” that proves something and a different word for a “sign” that is a miracle.

(See also: [miracle](#), [apostle](#), [Christ](#), [covenant](#), circumcise)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:18-19
- Exodus 04:8-9
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Genesis 01:14
- Genesis 09:12
- John 02:18
- Luke 02:12
- Mark 08:12
- Psalms 089:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H226, H852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H6161, H6725, H6734, H7560, G364, G880, G1213, G1229, G1718, G1730, G1732, G1770, G3902, G4102, G4591, G4592, G4953, G4973, G5280

(Go back to: [Mark 8:11](#); [8:12](#); [13:4](#); [13:22](#); [14:44](#))

silver

Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 02:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- Acts 03:06
- Matthew 26:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G693, G694, G695, G696, G1406

(Go back to: [Mark 14:11](#))

Simon the Zealot

Facts:

Simon the Zealot was one of Jesus' twelve disciples.

- Simon is mentioned three times in the listing of Jesus' disciples, but little else is known about him.
- Simon was one of the Eleven who met to pray together in Jerusalem after Jesus went back up into heaven.
- The term "zealot" may mean that Simon was a member of "the Zealots," a Jewish religious party that was very zealous in upholding the Law of Moses while strongly opposing the Roman government.
- Or, "zealot" may simply mean "the zealous one," referring to Simon's religious zeal.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [disciple](#), [the twelve](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 01:12-14
- Luke 06:14-16
- Mark 03:17-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2208, G2581, G4613

(Go back to: [Mark 3:18](#))

sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: [disobey](#), [evil](#), [flesh](#), [tax collector](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:1-3
- 1 John 01:10
- 1 John 02:02
- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 03:19
- Daniel 09:24
- Genesis 04:07
- Hebrews 12:02
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 04:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31
- Romans 06:23

- Romans 08:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:01** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:01** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:08** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H817, H819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G264, G265, G266, G268, G361, G3781, G3900, G4258

(Go back to: [Mark 1:4](#); [1:5](#); [Notes](#); [2:5](#); [2:7](#); [2:9](#); [2:10](#); [2:15](#); [2:16](#); [2:17](#); [3:28](#); [3:29](#); [8:38](#); [14:41](#))

sister

Definition:

A sister is a female person who shares at least one biological parent with another person. She is said to be that other person's sister or the sister of that other person.

- In the New Testament, "sister" is also used figuratively to refer to a woman who is a fellow believer in Jesus Christ.
- Sometimes the phrase "brothers and sisters" is used to refer to all believers in Christ, both men and women.
- In the Old Testament book Song of Songs, "sister" refers to a female lover or spouse.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological sister, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- Other ways to translate this could include "sister in Christ" or "spiritual sister" or "woman who believes in Jesus" or "fellow woman believer."
- If possible, it is best to use a family term.
- If the language has a feminine form for "believer," this may be a possible way to translate this term.
- When referring to a lover or wife, this could be translated using a feminine form of "loved one" or "dear one."

(See also: [brother](#) in Christ, [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:16-17
- Deuteronomy 27:22
- Philemon 01:02
- Romans 16:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H269, H1323, G27, G79

(Go back to: [Mark 3:35](#); [6:3](#); [10:29](#); [10:30](#))

skull

Definition:

The term “skull” refers to the bony, skeletal structure of the head of a person or animal.

- Sometimes the term “skull” means “head,” as in the phrase “shave your skull.”
- The term “Place of the Skull” was another name for Golgotha, where Jesus was crucified.
- This term could also be translated as “head” or “head bone.”

(See also: [crucify](#), [Golgotha](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 09:35-37
- Jeremiah 02:16
- John 19:17
- Matthew 27:32-34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1538, H6936, H7218, G2898

(Go back to: [Mark 15:22](#))

soldier, warrior

Facts:

The terms “warrior” and “soldier” both can refer to someone who fights in an army. But there are also some differences.

- Usually the term “warrior” is a general, broad term to refer to a man who is gifted and courageous in battle.
- Yahweh is figuratively described as a “warrior.”
- The term “soldier” more specifically refers to someone who belongs to a certain army or who is fighting in a certain battle.
- Roman soldiers in Jerusalem were there to keep order and to carry out duties such as executing prisoners. They guarded Jesus before crucifying him and some were ordered to stand guard at his tomb.
- The translator should consider whether there are two words in the project language for “warrior” and “soldier” that also differ in meaning and use.

(See also: [courage](#), [crucify](#), Rome, [tomb](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:05
- Acts 21:33
- Luke 03:14
- Luke 23:11
- Matthew 08:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H352, H510, H1368, H1416, H1995, H2389, H2428, H2502, H3715, H4421, H5971, H6518, H6635, H7273, H7916, G4686, G4753, G4754, G4757, G4758, G4961

(Go back to: [Mark 15:16](#))

son

Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their “son” for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An “adopted son” is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- In the Bible, the phrase “son of” can be used to identify a person's father, mother, or an ancestor from some previous generation. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah son of Zadok” and “Azariah son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah son of Amaziah” in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.

(See also: Azariah, descendant, [ancestor](#), firstborn, [Son of God](#), sons of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:15
- 1 Kings 13:02
- 1 Thessalonians 05:05
- Galatians 04:07
- Hosea 11:01
- Isaiah 09:06
- Matthew 03:17
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 08:12
- Nehemiah 10:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **04:09** God said, “I will give you a **son** from your own body.”
- **05:05** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s **son**.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, “Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me.”
- **09:07** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **11:06** God killed every one of the Egyptians’ firstborn **sons**.
- **18:01** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **26:04** “Is this the **son** of Joseph?” they said.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H4497, H5209, H5220, G3816, G5043, G5207

(Go back to: [Mark 2:19](#); [3:17](#); [3:28](#); [6:3](#); [9:17](#); [10:35](#); [10:46](#); [10:47](#); [10:48](#); [12:6](#); [12:35](#); [12:37](#))

Son of God, the Son

Facts:

The term “Son of God” refers to Jesus, the Word of God, who came into the world as a human being. He is also often referred to as “the Son.”

- The Son of God has the same nature as God the Father, and is fully God.
- God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit are all of one essence.
- Unlike human sons, the Son of God has always existed.
- In the beginning, the Son of God was active in creating the world, along with the Father and the Holy Spirit.

Because Jesus is God’s Son, he loves and obeys his Father, and his Father loves him.

Translation Suggestions:

- For the term “Son of God,” it is best to translate “Son” with the same word the language would naturally use to refer to a human son.
- Make sure the word used to translate “son” fits with the word used to translate “father” and that these words are the most natural ones used to express a true father-son relationship in the project language.
- Using a capital letter to begin “Son” may help show that this is talking about God.
- The phrase “the Son” is a shortened form of “the Son of God,” especially when it occurs in the same context as “the Father.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [ancestor](#), [God](#), [God the Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [son](#), sons of God)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:10
- Acts 09:20
- Colossians 01:17
- Galatians 02:20
- Hebrews 04:14
- John 03:18
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 11:27
- Revelation 02:18
- Romans 08:29

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:05** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the **Son of God.**”
- **24:09** God had told John, “The Holy Spirit will come down and rest on someone you baptize. That person is **the Son of God.**”
- **31:08** The disciples were amazed. They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, “Truly, you are **the Son of God.**”
- **37:05** Martha answered, “Yes, Master! I believe you are the Messiah, the **Son of God.**”
- **42:10** So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, **the Son**, and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **46:06** Right away, Saul began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the **Son of God!**”
- **49:09** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only **Son** so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H426, H430, H1121, H1247, G2316, G5207

(Go back to: [Mark 1:1](#); [1:11](#); [3:11](#); [5:7](#); [9:7](#); [13:32](#); [14:61](#); [15:39](#))

Son of Man, son of man

Definition:

The title “Son of Man” was used by Jesus to refer to himself. He often used this term instead of saying “I” or “me.”

- In the Bible, “son of man” could be a way of referring to or addressing a man. It could also mean “human being.”
- Throughout the Old Testament book of Ezekiel, God frequently addressed Ezekiel as “son of man.” For example he said, “You, son of man, must prophesy.”
- The prophet Daniel saw a vision of a “son of man” coming with the clouds, which is a reference to the coming Messiah.
- Jesus also said that the Son of Man will be coming back someday on the clouds.
- These references to the Son of Man coming on the clouds reveal that Jesus the Messiah is God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When Jesus uses the term “Son of Man” it could be translated as “the One who became a human being” or “the Man from heaven.”
- Some translators occasionally include “I” or “me” with this title (as in “I, the Son of Man”) to make it clear that Jesus was talking about himself.
- Check to make sure that the translation of this term does not give a wrong meaning (such as referring to an illegitimate son or giving the wrong impression that Jesus was only a human being).
- When used to refer to a person, “son of man” could also be translated as “you, a human being” or “you, man” or “human being” or “man.”

(See also: [heaven](#), [son](#), [Son of God](#), Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:56
- Daniel 07:14
- Ezekiel 43:6-8
- John 03:12-13
- Luke 06:05
- Mark 02:10
- Matthew 13:37
- Psalms 080:17-18
- Revelation 14:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H120, H606, H1121, H1247, G444, G5207

(Go back to: [Introduction to the Gospel of Mark](#); [Mark 2:10](#); [2:28](#); [8:31](#); [8:38](#); [Notes](#); [9:9](#); [9:12](#); [9:31](#); [10:33](#); [10:45](#); [13:26](#); [Notes](#); [14:21](#); [14:41](#); [14:62](#))

soul, self

Definition:

The term "soul" can either refer generally to the non-physical part of a person or refer specifically to a person's awareness of themselves as a person distinct from others.

- In the Bible, the terms "soul" and "spirit" may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
- When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
- In contrast to the body, the "soul" can be spoken of as the part of a person that "relates to God."
- The word "soul" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to the whole person. For example, "the soul who sins" means "the person who sins" and "my soul is tired" means "I am tired."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "soul" could also be translated as "inner self" or "inner person."
- In some contexts, "my soul" could be translated as "I" or "me."
- Usually the phrase "the soul" can be translated as "the person" or "he" or "him," depending on the context.
- Some languages might only have one word for the concepts "soul" and "spirit."
- In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase "dividing soul and spirit" could mean "deeply discerning or exposing the inner person."

(See also: [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:08
- Acts 02:27-28
- Acts 02:41
- Genesis 49:06
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- James 01:21
- Jeremiah 06:16-19
- Jonah 02:7-8
- Luke 01:47
- Matthew 22:37
- Psalms 019:07
- Revelation 20:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5082, H5315, H5397, G5590

(Go back to: [Mark 8:36](#); [8:37](#); [12:30](#); [14:34](#))

spirit, spiritual

Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. “Spirit” can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person’s spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, “spiritual food” refers to God’s teachings, which give nourishment to a person’s spirit, and “spiritual wisdom” refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings, who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.”
- Examples of “spirit” as an attitude or emotion would include “spirit of fear” and “spirit of jealousy.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person, as in “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- The term “spiritual gift” could be translated as “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives

(See also: [angel](#), [demon](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [soul](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:05
- 1 John 04:03
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23
- Acts 05:09
- Colossians 01:09
- Ephesians 04:23
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Isaiah 04:04
- Mark 01:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 01:27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:03** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **48:07** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G5326, G5427

(Go back to: [Mark 1:23](#); [1:26](#); [1:27](#); [2:8](#); [3:11](#); [3:30](#); [5:2](#); [5:8](#); [5:13](#); [6:7](#); [6:49](#); [7:25](#); [8:12](#); [9:17](#); [9:20](#); [9:25](#); [14:38](#))

staff, clubs

Definition:

A staff is a long wooden stick or rod, often used as a walking stick.

- When Jacob was old, he used a staff to help him walk.
- God turned Moses' staff into a snake to show his power to Pharaoh.
- Shepherds also used a staff to help guide their sheep, or to rescue the sheep when they fell or wandered.
- The shepherd's staff had a hook on the end, so it differed from the shepherd's rod, which was straight and was used to kill wild animals that were trying to attack the sheep.

(See also: Pharaoh, [power](#), [sheep](#), [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 04:1-3
- Exodus 07:09
- Luke 09:03
- Mark 06:7-9
- Matthew 10:8-10
- Matthew 27:29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4132, H4294, H4731, H4938, H6086, H6418, H7626, G2563, G3586, G4464

(Go back to: [Mark 6:8](#))

strength, strengthen, strong

Facts:

The term “strength” refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To “strengthen” someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has “strength of will” if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his “strength” because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being “strengthened,” people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
 - “puts strength on me like a belt” means “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
 - “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
 - “will renew their strength” means “will become stronger again.”
 - “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
 - “strengthen the wall” means “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
 - “I will strengthen you” means “I will cause you to be strong”
 - “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
 - “the rock of your strength” means “the faithful one who makes you strong”
 - “with the saving strength of his right hand” means “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
 - “of little strength” means “not very strong” or “weak.”
 - “with all my strength” means “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.”

(See also: [faithful](#), persevere, [right hand](#), [save](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 2 Peter 02:11
- Luke 10:27
- Psalm 021:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H193, H202, H353, H360, H386, H410, H553, H556, H1369, H1396, H2220, H2388, H2391, H2392, H2393, H2428, H3027, H3028, H3559, H3581, H3811, H3955, H4581, H5326, H5331, H5582, H5797, H5807, H5810, H5934, H5975, H6106, H6109, H6697, H6965, H7292, H7307, H8003, H8443, H8632, H8633, G461, G950, G1411, G1412, G1743, G1765, G1840, G1991, G2479, G2480, G2901, G2904, G3619, G3756, G4599, G4732, G4733, G4741

(Go back to: [Mark 2:17](#); [3:27](#); [5:4](#); [9:18](#); [12:30](#); [12:33](#); [14:37](#))

stumble, reeling

Definition:

The term “stumble” means “almost fall” when walking or running. Usually it involves tripping over something.

- Figuratively, to “stumble” can mean to “sin” or to “falter” in believing.
- This term can also refer to faltering or showing weakness when fighting a battle or when being persecuted or punished.

Translation Suggestions

- In contexts where the term “stumble” means to physically trip over something, it should be translated with a term that means “almost fall” or “trip over.”
- This literal meaning could also be used in a figurative context, if it communicates the correct meaning in that context.
- For figurative uses where the literal meaning would not make sense in the project language, “stumble” could be translated as, “sin” or “falter” or “stop believing” or “become weak,” depending on the context.
- Another way to translate this term could be, “stumble by sinning” or “stumble by not believing.”
- The phrase “made to stumble” could be translated as “caused to become weak” or “caused to falter.”

(See also: [believe](#), [persecute](#), [sin](#), stumbling block)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 02:08
- Hosea 04:05
- Isaiah 31:3
- Matthew 11:4-6
- Matthew 18:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1762, H3782, H4383, H5062, H5063, H5307, H6328, H6761, H8058, G679, G4348, G4350, G4417, G4624, G4625

(Go back to: [Mark 9:42](#); [9:43](#); [9:45](#); [9:47](#))

suffer, suffering

Definition:

The terms “suffer” and “suffering” refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

- When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.
- Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
- Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional, such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
- The phrase “suffer me” means “bear with me” or “hear me out” or “listen patiently.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “suffer” can be translated as “feel pain” or “endure difficulty” or “experience hardships” or “go through difficult and painful experiences.”
- Depending on the context, “suffering” could be translated as “extremely difficult circumstances” or “severe hardships” or “experiencing hardship” or “time of painful experiences.”
- The phrase “suffer thirst” could be translated as “experience thirst” or “suffer with thirst.”
- To “suffer violence” could also be translated as “undergo violence” or “be harmed by violent acts.”

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- 2 Thessalonians 01:3-5
- 2 Timothy 01:08
- Acts 07:11-13
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 06:6-8
- Matthew 16:21
- Psalms 022:24
- Revelation 01:09
- Romans 05:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:13** God said, “I have seen the **suffering** of my people.”
- **38:12** Jesus prayed three times, “My Father, if it is possible, please let me not have to drink this cup of **suffering**.”
- **42:03** He (Jesus) reminded them that the prophets said the Messiah would **suffer** and be killed, but would rise again on the third day.
- **42:07** He (Jesus) said, “It was written long ago that the Messiah would **suffer**, die, and rise from the dead on the third day.”
- **44:05** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to fulfill the prophecies that the Messiah would **suffer** and die.”
- **46:04** God said, “I have chosen him (Saul) to declare my name to the unsaved. I will show him how much he must **suffer** for my sake.”
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more **suffering**, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H943, H1741, H1934, H4531, H5142, H5375, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6041, H6064, H6090, H6770, H6869, H6887, H7661, G91, G941, G971, G2210, G2346, G2347, G2552, G2553, G2561, G3804, G3958, G4310, G4778, G4777, G4841, G5004

(Go back to: [Mark 5:26](#); [8:31](#); [9:12](#))

sword, swordsmen

Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: James (brother of Jesus), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [tongue](#), [word of God](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 12:02
- Genesis 27:40
- Genesis 34:25
- Luke 02:33-35
- Luke 21:24
- Matthew 10:34
- Matthew 26:55
- Revelation 01:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H19, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G3162, G4501

(Go back to: [Mark 14:43](#); [14:47](#); [14:48](#))

synagogue

Definition:

A synagogue is a building where Jewish people meet together to worship God.

- Since ancient times, a synagogue's services have included times of prayer, scripture reading, and teaching about the scriptures.
- The Jews originally started building synagogues as places to pray and worship God in their own cities, because many of them lived far away from the temple in Jerusalem.
- Jesus often taught in synagogues and healed people there.
- The word "synagogue" can be used figuratively to refer to the group of people meeting there.

(See also: [heal](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Jew](#), [pray](#), [temple](#), [word of God](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 06:09
- Acts 14:1-2
- Acts 15:21
- Acts 24:10-13
- John 06:59
- Luke 04:14
- Matthew 06:1-2
- Matthew 09:35-36
- Matthew 13:54

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4150, G656, G752, G4864

(Go back to: [Mark 1:21](#); [1:23](#); [1:29](#); [1:39](#); [3:1](#); [6:2](#); [12:39](#); [13:9](#))

tabernacle

Definition:

The tabernacle was a special tent-like structure where the Israelites worshiped God during the 40 years they traveled around in the desert.

- God had given the Israelites detailed instructions for building this large tent, which had two rooms and was surrounded by an enclosed courtyard.
- Each time the Israelites moved to a different place in the desert to live, the priests would take the tabernacle apart and carry it to their next campsite. Then they would set it up again in the center of their new camp.
- The tabernacle was constructed of wood frames hung with curtains made of cloth, goat hair, and animal skins. The courtyard surrounding it was enclosed with more curtains.
- The two sections of the tabernacle were the Holy Place (where the altar for burning incense was located) and the Most Holy Place (where the ark of the covenant was kept).
- The courtyard of the tabernacle had an altar for burning animal sacrifices and a special washbasin for ritual cleansing.
- The Israelites stopped using the tabernacle when the temple was built in Jerusalem by Solomon.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “tabernacle” means “dwelling place.” Other ways to translate it could include, “sacred tent” or “tent where God was” or “God’s tent.”
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of “temple.”

(See also: altar, altar of incense, ark of the covenant, [temple](#), tent of meeting)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:30
- 2 Chronicles 01:2-5
- Acts 07:43
- Acts 07:45
- Exodus 38:21
- Joshua 22:19-20
- Leviticus 10:16-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H168, H4908, H5520, H5521, H5522, H7900, G4633, G4634, G4636, G4638

(Go back to: [Mark 9:5](#))

tax, taxed, taxation, taxpayers, tax collector,

Definition:

The terms “tax” and “taxes” refer to money or goods that people pay to a government that is in authority over them. A “tax collector” was a government worker whose job was to receive money that people were required to pay the government in taxes.

- The amount of money that is paid as a tax is usually based on the value of an item or on how much a person's property is worth.
- In the time of Jesus and the apostles, the Roman government required taxes from everyone living in the Roman empire, including the Jews.
- If taxes are not paid, the government can take legal action against a person to get the money that is owed.
- Joseph and Mary traveled to Bethlehem to be counted in the census held to tax everyone living in the Roman empire.
- The term “tax” could also be translated as, “required payment” or “government money” or “temple money,” depending on the context.
- To “pay taxes” could also be translated as to “pay money to the government” or “receive money for the government” or “make the required payment.” To “collect taxes” could be translated as to “receive money for the government.”
- A “tax collector” is someone who works for the government and receives the money that people are required to pay it.
- The people who collected taxes for the Roman government would often demand more money from the people than the government required. The tax collectors would keep the extra amount for themselves.
- Because tax collectors cheated people in this way, the Jews considered them to be among the worst of sinners.
- The Jews also considered Jewish tax collectors to be traitors to their own people because they worked for the Roman government which was oppressing the Jewish people.
- The phrase, “tax collectors and sinners” was a common expression in the New Testament, showing how much the Jews despised tax collectors.

(See also: [Jew](#), [Rome](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- Luke 20:21-22
- Mark 02:13-14
- Matthew 09:7-9
- Numbers 31:28-29
- Romans 13:6-7
- Luke 03:12-13
- Luke 05:27-28
- Matthew 05:46-48
- Matthew 09:10-11
- Matthew 11:18-19
- Matthew 17:26-27
- Matthew 18:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

34:06 He said, “Two men went to the Temple to pray. One of them was a tax collector, and the other was a religious leader.” 34:07 “The religious leader prayed like this, ‘Thank you, God, that I am not a sinner like other men—such as robbers, unjust men, adulterers, or even like that tax collector.’” 34:09 “But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ‘God, please be

merciful to me because I am a sinner.” 34:10 Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous.” 35:01 One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other sinners who had gathered to hear him.

Word Data:

- Tax: Strong’s: H2670, H4060, H4371, H4522, H4864, H6186, G1323, G2778, G5055, G5411
- Tax Collector: Strong’s: H5065, H5674, G5057, G5058

(Go back to: [Mark 2:14](#); [2:15](#); [2:16](#))

teach, teaching, untaught

Definition:

To “teach” someone is to tell him something he doesn’t already know. It can also mean to “provide information” in general, with no reference to the person who is learning. Usually the information is given in a formal or systematic way. A person’s “teaching” is or his “teachings” are what he has taught.

- A “teacher” is someone who teaches. The past action of “teach” is “taught.”
- When Jesus was teaching, he was explaining things about God and his kingdom.
- Jesus’ disciples called him “Teacher” as a respectful form of address for someone who taught people about God.
- The information that is being taught can be shown or spoken.
- The term “doctrine” refers to a set of teachings from God about himself as well as God’s instructions about how to live. This could also be translated as “teachings from God” or “what God teaches us.”
- The phrase “what you have been taught” could also be translated as, “what these people have taught you” or “what God has taught you,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate “teach” could include “tell” or “explain” or “instruct.”
- Often this term can be translated as “teaching people about God.”

(See also: [instruct](#), [teacher](#), [word of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:03
- Acts 02:40-42
- John 07:14
- Luke 04:31
- Matthew 04:23
- Psalms 032:08

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H502, H2094, H2449, H3045, H3046, H3256, H3384, H3925, H3948, H7919, H8150, G1317, G1321, G1322, G2085, G2605, G2727, G3100, G2312, G2567, G3811, G4994

(Go back to: [Mark 1:21](#); [1:22](#); [1:27](#); [2:13](#); [4:1](#); [4:2](#); [6:2](#); [6:6](#); [6:30](#); [6:34](#); [7:7](#); [8:31](#); [9:31](#); [10:1](#); [11:17](#); [11:18](#); [12:14](#); [12:35](#); [12:38](#); [14:49](#))

teacher, Teacher

Definition:

A teacher is a person who gives other people new information. Teachers help others to obtain and use both knowledge and skills.

- In the Bible, the word “teacher” is used in a special sense to refer to someone who teaches about God.
- People who learn from a teacher are called “students” or “disciples.”
- In some Bible translations, this term is capitalized (“Teacher”) when it is used as a title for Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- The usual word for a teacher can be used to translate this term, unless that word is only used for a school teacher.
- Some cultures may have a special title that is used for religious teachers, such as “Sir” or “Rabbi” or “Preacher.”

(See also: [disciple](#), [preach](#))

Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 01:12-15
- Ephesians 04:11-13
- Galatians 06:6-8
- Habakkuk 02:18
- James 03:02
- John 01:37-39
- Luke 06:40
- Matthew 12:38-40

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “**Teacher**, what must I do to inherit eternal life?”
- **28:01** One day a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good **Teacher**, what must I do to have eternal life?”
- **37:02** After the two days had passed, Jesus said to his disciples, “Let’s go back to Judea.” “But **Teacher**,” the disciples answered, “Just a short time ago the people there wanted to kill you!”
- **38:14** Judas came to Jesus and said, “Greetings, **Teacher**,” and kissed him.
- **49:03** Jesus was also a great **teacher**, and he spoke with authority because he is the Son of God.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3384, H3925, G1320, G2567, G3547, G5572

(Go back to: [Mark 4:38](#); [5:35](#); [9:17](#); [9:38](#); [10:17](#); [10:20](#); [10:35](#); [12:14](#); [12:19](#); [12:32](#); [13:1](#); [14:14](#))

temple

Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God’s holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [Solomon](#), [Babylon](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [tabernacle](#), [courtyard](#), [Zion](#), [house](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 03:02
- Acts 03:08
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Luke 19:46
- Nehemiah 10:28
- Psalm 079:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:06** David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:02** In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.
- **20:07** They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.
- **20:13** When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- **25:04** Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- **40:07** When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1964, H1965, G1493, G2411, G3485

(Go back to: [Mark 11:11](#); [11:15](#); [11:16](#); [11:27](#); [12:35](#); [13:1](#); [13:3](#); [14:49](#); [14:58](#); [15:29](#); [15:38](#))

tempt, temptation

Definition:

To tempt someone is to try to get that person to do something wrong.

- A temptation is something that causes a person to want to do something wrong.
- People are tempted by their own sinful nature and by other people.
- Satan also tempts people to disobey God and to sin against God by doing wrong things.
- Satan tempted Jesus and tried to get him to do something wrong, but Jesus resisted all of Satan's temptations and never sinned.
- Someone who is "tempting God" is not trying to get him to do something wrong, but rather, is continuing in stubborn disobedience of him to the point that God must respond by punishing him. This is also called "testing God."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "tempt" can be translated as, "try to cause to sin" or "entice" or "cause a desire to sin."
- Ways to translate "temptations" could include, "things that tempt" or "things that entice someone to sin" or "things that cause desire to do something wrong."
- To "tempt God" could be translated as to "put God to the test" or to "test God" or to "try God's patience" or to "cause God to have to punish" or to "stubbornly keep disobeying God."

(See also: disobey, [Satan](#), [sin](#), [test](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:4-5
- Hebrews 04:15
- James 01:13
- Luke 04:02
- Luke 11:04
- Matthew 26:41

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:01** Then Satan came to Jesus and **tempted** him to sin.
- **25:08** Jesus did not give in to Satan's **temptations**, so Satan left him.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to pray that they would not enter into **temptation**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H974, H4531, H5254, G551, G1598, G3985, G3986, G3987

(Go back to: [Mark 1:13](#); [14:38](#))

test, tested, testing, testing in the fire

Definition:

The term “test” refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person’s strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them to sin. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people’s sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To “put to the test” can mean, “challenge something or someone to prove its value.”
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to try to make him do a miracle for us, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “test” could also be translated as, to “challenge” or to “cause to experience difficulties” or to “prove.”
- Ways to translate “a test” could be, “a challenge” or “a difficult experience.”
- To “put to the test” could be translated as to “test” or to “set up a challenge” or to “force to prove oneself.”
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as, “trying to force God to prove his love.”
- In some contexts, when God is not the subject, the term “test” can mean “tempt.”

(See also: [tempt](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:01
- 1 Thessalonians 05:21
- Acts 15:10
- Genesis 22:01
- Isaiah 07:13
- James 01:12
- Lamentations 03:40-43
- Malachi 03:10
- Philippians 01:10
- Psalm 026:02

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G1242, G1263, G1303, G1382, G1957, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3984, G4303, G4451, G4828, G6020

(Go back to: [Mark 8:11](#); [10:2](#); [12:15](#))

testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness

Definition:

When a person gives “testimony” he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To “testify” is to give “testimony.”

- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To “witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as, “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as, to “show them what is true” or to “prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as, “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”
- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- To “witness to” could be translated as to “tell what was seen” or to “testify” or to “state what happened.”
- To “witness” something could be translated as to “see something” or to “experience something happen.”

(See also: ark of the covenant, [guilt](#), judge, [prophet](#), [testimony](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:28
- Micah 06:03
- Matthew 26:60
- Mark 01:44
- John 01:07

- John 03:33
- Acts 04:32-33
- Acts 07:44
- Acts 13:31
- Romans 01:09
- 1 Thessalonians 02:10-12
- 1 Timothy 05:19-20
- 2 Timothy 01:08
- 2 Peter 01:16-18
- 1 John 05:6-8
- 3 John 01:12
- Revelation 12:11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:02** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- **43:07** "We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G267, G1263, G1957, G2649, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3144, G4303, G4828, G4901, G5575, G5576, G5577, G6020

(Go back to: [Mark 1:44](#); [6:11](#); [13:9](#); [14:55](#); [14:56](#); [14:59](#); [14:60](#); [14:63](#))

the twelve, the eleven

Definition:

The term “the twelve” refers to the twelve men that Jesus chose to be his closest disciples, or apostles. After Judas killed himself, they were called “the eleven.”

- Jesus had many other disciples, but the title “the twelve” distinguished those who were apparently closest to Jesus.
- The names of these twelve disciples are listed in Matthew 10, Mark 3, and Luke 6.
- Some time after Jesus had returned to heaven, “the eleven” chose a disciple named Matthias to take Judas’ place. Then they were called “the twelve” again.

Translation Suggestions:

- For many languages it may be clearer or more natural to add the noun and say, “the twelve apostles” or “Jesus’ twelve closest disciples.”
- “The eleven” could also be translated as “Jesus’ eleven remaining disciples.”
- Some translations may prefer to use a capital letter to show that it was used as a title, as in “the Twelve” and “the Eleven.”

(See also: [apostle](#), [disciple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:5-7
- Acts 06:02
- Luke 09:01
- Luke 18:31
- Mark 10:32-34
- Matthew 10:07

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G1427, G1733

(Go back to: [Mark 3:14](#); [3:16](#); [4:10](#); [6:7](#); [9:35](#); [10:32](#); [11:11](#); [14:10](#); [14:17](#); [14:20](#); [14:43](#))

thief, rob, robber, robbery, bandits

Facts:

The term “thief” refers to a person who steals money or property from other people. The plural of “thief” is “thieves.” The term “robber” often refers to a thief who also physically harms or threatens the people he is stealing from.

- Jesus told a parable about a Samaritan man who took care of a Jewish man who had been attacked by robbers. The robbers had beaten the Jewish man and wounded him before stealing his money and clothing.
- Both thieves and robbers come suddenly to steal, when people are not expecting it. Often they use the cover of darkness to hide what they are doing.
- In a figurative sense, the New Testament describes Satan as a thief who comes to steal, kill, and destroy. This means that Satan’s plan is to try to get God’s people to stop obeying him. If he succeeded in doing this Satan would be stealing from them the good things that God has planned for them.
- Jesus compared the suddenness of his return to the suddenness of a thief coming to steal from people. Just as a thief comes at a time when people are not expecting it, so Jesus will return at a time when people do not expect it.

(See also: [bless](#), crime, [crucify](#), [darkness](#), destroyer, [power](#), Samaria, [Satan](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 03:10
- Luke 12:33
- Mark 14:48
- Proverbs 06:30
- Revelation 03:03

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H1215, H1416, H1589, H1590, H1980, H6530, H7703, G727, G2417, G2812, G3027

(Go back to: [Mark 11:17](#); [14:48](#); [15:27](#))

Thomas

Facts:

Thomas was one of twelve men whom Jesus chose to be his disciples and later, apostles. He was also known as "Didymus," which means "twin."

- Near the end of Jesus' life, he told his disciples that he was going away to be with the Father and would prepare a place for them to be with him. Thomas asked Jesus how they could know the way to get there when they didn't even know where he was going.
- After Jesus died and came back to life, Thomas said he would not believe that Jesus was really alive again unless he could see and feel the scars where Jesus had been wounded.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [disciple](#), [God the Father](#), [the twelve](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 01:12-14
- John 11:15-16
- Luke 06:14-16
- Mark 03:17-19
- Matthew 10:2-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2381

(Go back to: [Mark 3:18](#))

thorn, thorn bush, thistle

Facts:

Thorn bushes and thistles are plants that have prickly branches or flowers. These plants do not produce fruit or anything else that is useful.

- A “thorn” is a hard, sharp growth on the branch or stem of a plant. A “thornbush” is a type of small tree or shrub that has many thorns on its branches.
- A “thistle” is a plant with prickly stems and leaves. Often the flowers are purple.
- Thorn and thistle plants multiply quickly and can cause nearby plants or crops to not be able to grow. This is a picture of how sin keeps a person from producing good spiritual fruit.
- A crown made of twisted thorn branches was placed on Jesus’ head before he was crucified.
- If possible, these terms should be translated by the names of two different plants or bushes that are known in the language area.

(See also: [crown](#), [fruit](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Hebrews 06:7-8
- Matthew 13:07
- Matthew 13:22
- Numbers 33:55

Word Data:

- Strong's: H329, H1863, H2312, H2336, H4534, H5285, H5518, H5544, H6791, H6796, H6975, H7063, H7898, G173, G174, G4647, G5146

(Go back to: [Mark 4:7](#); [4:18](#); [15:17](#))

time, untimely, date

Facts:

In the Bible the term “time” was often used figuratively to refer to a specific season or period of time when certain events took place. It has a meaning similar to “age” or “epoch” or “season.”

- In both Daniel and Revelation speak of a “time” of great trouble or tribulation that will come upon the earth.
- In the phrase “time, times, and half a time” the term “time” means “year.” This phrase refers to a three-and-a-half-year period of time during the great tribulation at the end of this present age.
- “Time” can mean “occasion” in a phrase like “third time.” The phrase “many times” can mean “on many occasions.”
- To be “on time” means to arrive when expected, not late.
- Depending on the context, the term “time” could be translated as, “season” or “time period” or “moment” or “event” or “occurrence.”
- The phrase “times and seasons” is a figurative expression which states the same idea twice. This could also be translated as “certain events happening in certain time periods.” (See: [doublet](#))

(See also: [age](#), [tribulation](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 01:07
- Daniel 12:1-2
- Mark 11:11
- Matthew 08:29
- Psalms 068:28-29
- Revelation 14:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H116, H227, H310, H1697, H1755, H2165, H2166, H2233, H2465, H3027, H3117, H3118, H3119, H3259, H3427, H3967, H4150, H4279, H4489, H4557, H5331, H5703, H5732, H5750, H5769, H6235, H6256, H6440, H6471, H6635, H6924, H7105, H7138, H7223, H7272, H7281, H7637, H7651, H7655, H7659, H7674, H7992, H8027, H8032, H8138, H8145, H8462, H8543, G744, G530, G1074, G1208, G1441, G1597, G1626, G1909, G2034, G2119, G2121, G2235, G2250, G2540, G3461, G3568, G3764, G3819, G3956, G3999, G4178, G4181, G4183, G4218, G4287, G4340, G4455, G5119, G5151, G5305, G5550, G5551, G5610

(Go back to: [Mark 1:15](#); [2:19](#); [4:17](#); [6:31](#); [9:21](#); [10:30](#); [11:13](#); [12:2](#); [13:33](#))

to minister, ministry

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “ministry” refers to serving others by teaching them about God and caring for their spiritual needs.

- In the Old Testament, the priests would “minister” to God in the temple by offering sacrifices to him.
- Their “ministry” also included taking care of the temple and offering prayers to God on behalf of the people.
- The job of “ministering” to people can include serving them spiritually by teaching them about God.
- It can also refer to serving people in physical ways, such as caring for the sick and providing food for the poor.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of ministering to people, to “minister” could also be translated as to “serve” or to “care for” or to “meet the needs of.”
- When referring to ministering in the temple, the term “minister” could be translated as “serve God in the temple” or “offer sacrifices to God for the people.”
- In the context of ministering to God, this could be translated as to “serve” or to “work for God.”
- The phrase “ministered to” could also be translated as “took care of” or “provided for” or “helped.”

(See also: [serve](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 20:23-26
- Acts 06:04
- Acts 21:17-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6399, H8120, H8334, H8335, G1247, G1248, G1249, G2023, G2038, G2418, G3008, G3009, G3010, G3011, G3930, G5256, G5257, G5524

(Go back to: [Mark 1:13](#); [1:31](#); [9:35](#); [10:43](#); [10:45](#); [15:41](#))

tongue, language

Definition:

The term "tongue" refers to the organ inside a person's mouth that is used to speak. The term is often used figuratively to mean "language" or "speaking." There also several other figurative meanings as well.

- In the Bible, the most common figurative meaning for this term is "language" or "speech."
- Sometimes "tongue" may refer to a human language spoken by a certain people group.
- Other times it refers to a supernatural language that the Holy Spirit gives believers in Christ as one of the "gifts of the Spirit."
- In the book of Acts, the expression "tongues" of fire refers to "flames" of fire, presumably shaped like tongues.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term "tongue" can be translated as "language" or "supernatural language." If it is not clear which one it is referring to, it is better to translate it as "language."
- When referring to fire, this term could be translated as "flames."
- The expression "my tongue rejoices" could be translated as "I rejoice and praise God" or "I am joyfully praising God."
- The phrase, "tongue that lies" could be translated as "person who tell lies" or "people who lie."
- Phrases such as "with their tongues" could be translated as "with what they say" or "by their words."

(See also: gift, [Holy Spirit](#), joy, praise, [rejoice](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:10
- 1 John 03:18
- 2 Samuel 23:02
- Acts 02:26
- Ezekiel 36:03
- Philippians 02:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3956, G1100, G1258, G2084

(Go back to: [Mark 7:33](#); [7:35](#))

torment, tormented, tormentors

Facts:

The term “torment” refers to terrible suffering. To torment someone means to cause that person to suffer, often in a cruel way.

- Sometimes the term “torment” refers to physical pain and suffering. For example, the book of Revelation describes physical torment that worshipers of the “beast” will suffer in the end times.
- Suffering may also take the form of spiritual and emotional pain, as experienced by Job.
- The apostle John wrote in the book of Revelation that people who do not believe in Jesus as their Savior will experience eternal torment in the lake of fire.
- This term could be translated as “terrible suffering” or “cause someone to suffer greatly” or “agony.” Some translators may add “physical” or “spiritual” to make the meaning clear.

(See also: [beast](#), [everlasting](#), Job, Savior, [spirit](#), [suffer](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:08
- Jeremiah 30:20-22
- Lamentations 01:11-12
- Luke 08:28-29
- Revelation 11:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3013, G928, G929, G930, G931, G2558, G2851, G3600

(Go back to: [Mark 5:7](#); [14:65](#))

tradition

Definition:

The term “tradition” refers to a custom or practice that has been kept over time and which is passed down to people in later generations.

- Often in the Bible the word “traditions” referred to teachings and practices that people made, not God’s laws. The expression “tradition of men” or “human tradition” makes this clear.
- Phrases such as “traditions of the elders” or “traditions of my fathers” referred specifically to Jewish customs and practices that Jewish leaders over time had added to the laws God gave to the Israelites through Moses. Even though these added traditions had not come from God, people thought they had to obey them in order to be righteous.
- The apostle Paul used the term “tradition” in a different way to refer to teachings about Christian practice that came from God and that he and other apostles had taught new believers.
- In modern times, there are many Christian traditions that are not taught in the Bible, but rather are the result of historically accepted customs and practices. These traditions should always be evaluated in light of what God teaches us in the Bible.

(See also: [apostle](#), [believe](#), [Christian](#), [ancestor](#), [generation](#), [Jew](#), [law](#), [Moses](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 03:6-9
- Colossians 02:08
- Galatians 01:13-14
- Mark 07:02
- Matthew 15:03

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G3862

(Go back to: [Mark 7:3](#); [7:5](#); [7:8](#); [7:9](#); [7:13](#))

tremble, stagger

Definition:

The term "tremble" means to quiver or to shake slightly and repeatedly, usually from fear or distress. The term can also be used figuratively, meaning "to be very afraid."

- Sometimes when the ground shakes it is said to "tremble." It can do this during an earthquake or in response to a very loud noise.
- The Bible says that in the presence of the Lord the earth will tremble. This could mean that the people of the earth will shake out of fear of God or that the earth itself will shake.
- This term could be translated as "be afraid" or "fear God" or "shake," depending on the context.

(See also: [earth](#), [fear](#), [Lord](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 07:15
- 2 Samuel 22:44-46
- Acts 16:29-31
- Jeremiah 05:22
- Luke 08:47

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1674, H2111, H2112, H2151, H2342, H2648, H2729, H2730, H2731, H5128, H5568, H6342, H6426, H6427, H7264, H7268, H7269, H7322, H7460, H7461, H7481, H7493, H7578, H8078, H8653, G1790, G5141, G5156, G5425

(Go back to: [Mark 5:33](#); [16:8](#))

trespass

Definition:

The term “trespass” means to cross a line or to violate a boundary. This term is often used figuratively, meaning to break a law or to violate the rights of another person.

- This term is very similar to the word “transgression,” but is generally used more often to describe violations against other people than against God.
- A trespass can be a violation of a moral law or a civil law.
- A trespass can also be a sin committed against another person.
- This term is related to the terms “sin” and “transgress,” especially as it relates to disobeying God. All sins are trespasses against God.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “trespass against” could be translated as to “sin against” or to “break the rule.”
- Some languages may have an expression like “cross the line” that could be used to translate “trespass.”
- Consider how this term fits with the meaning of the surrounding Bible text and compare it to other terms that have a similar meaning, such as “transgress” and “sin.”

(See also: disobey, iniquity, [sin](#), transgress)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 25:28
- 2 Chronicles 26:16-18
- Colossians 02:13
- Ephesians 02:01
- Ezekiel 15:7-8
- Romans 05:17
- Romans 05:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H816, H817, H819, H2398, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G264, G3900

(Go back to: [Mark 11:25](#))

tribulation, distresses, trouble

Definition:

The term “tribulation” refers to a time of hardship, suffering, and distress.

- It is explained in the New Testament that Christians will endure times of persecution and other kinds of tribulation because many people in this world are opposed to Jesus’ teachings.
- “The Great Tribulation” is a term used in the Bible to describe a period of time just before Jesus’ second coming when God’s wrath will be poured out on the earth for several years.
- The term “tribulation” could also be translated as “time of great suffering” or “deep distress” or “severe difficulties.”

(See also: [earth](#), [teach](#), wrath)

Bible References:

- Mark 04:17
- Mark 13:19
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Matthew 24:09
- Matthew 24:29
- Romans 02:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6869, G2347, G4423

(Go back to: [Mark 4:17](#); [13:19](#); [13:24](#))

tribute, contribution, fined

Definition:

The term “tribute” refers to a gift from one ruler to another ruler, for the purpose of protection and for good relations between their nations. A tribute can also be a payment that a ruler or government requires from the people, such as a toll or tax.

- In Bible times, traveling kings or rulers sometimes paid a tribute to the king of the region they were traveling through to make sure they would be protected and safe.
- Often the tribute would include things besides money, such as foods, spices, rich clothing, and expensive metals such as gold.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “tribute” could be translated as “official gifts” or “special tax” or “required payment.”

(See also: gold, [king](#), [ruler](#), [tax](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 09:22-24
- 2 Kings 17:03
- Luke 23:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1093, H4061, H4503, H4530, H4853, H6066, H7862, G5411

(Go back to: [Mark 12:14](#))

trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, hardship

Definition:

A “trouble” is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To “trouble” someone means to “bother” that person or to cause him distress. To be “troubled” means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of “trouble” also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “trouble” or “troubles” could also be translated as “danger” or “painful things that happen” or “persecution” or “difficult experiences” or “distress.”
- The term “troubled” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “undergoing distress” or “feeling terrible distress” or “worried” or “anxious” or “distressed” or “terrified” or “disturbed.”
- “Don’t trouble her” could also be translated as “don’t bother her” or “don’t criticize her.”
- The phrase “day of trouble” or “times of trouble” could also be translated as “when you experience distress” or “when difficult things happen to you” or “when God causes distressing things to happen.”
- Ways to translate “make trouble” or “bring trouble” could include “cause distressing things to happen” or “cause difficulties” or “make them experience very difficult things.”

(See also: [afflict](#), [persecute](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:19
- Luke 24:38
- Matthew 24:06
- Matthew 26:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H205, H926, H927, H1204, H1607, H1644, H1804, H2000, H4103, H5916, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6470, H6696, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7264, H7267, H7451, H7489, H8513, G387, G1613, G1776, G2346, G2347, G2350, G2360, G2873, G3636, G3926, G3930, G3986, G4423, G4660, G5015, G5182

(Go back to: [Mark 5:35](#); [6:50](#); [14:6](#))

true, truth

Definition:

The term "truth" refers to facts, events, and statements that correspond with reality. True facts describe the universe as it really exists. True events are events that actually happened. True statements are statements that are not false according to the real world.

- "True" things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- "Truth" means understandings, beliefs, facts, or statements that are true.
- To say that a prophecy "came true" or "will come true" mean that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
- In the Bible the concept of "truth" includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God's truth in the words that he spoke.
- The Bible is truth. It teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term "true" could also be translated by "real" or "factual" or "correct" or "right" or "certain" or "genuine."
- Ways to translate the term "truth" could include "what is true" or "fact" or "certainty" or "principle."
- The expression "come true" could also be translated as "actually happen" or "be fulfilled" or "happen as predicted."
- The expression "tell the truth" or "speak the truth" could also be translated as "say what is true" or "tell what really happened" or "say things that are reliable."
- To "accept the truth" could be translated as "believe what is true about God."
- In an expression such as "worship God in spirit and in truth," the expression "in truth" could also be translated by "faithfully obeying what God has taught us."

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#), [fulfill](#), [obey](#), [prophet](#), [understand](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
- 1 John 01:5-7
- 1 John 02:08
- 3 John 01:08
- Acts 26:24-26
- Colossians 01:06
- Genesis 47:29-31
- James 01:18
- James 03:14
- James 05:19
- Jeremiah 04:02
- John 01:09
- John 01:16-18
- John 01:51
- John 03:31-33
- Joshua 07:19-21
- Lamentations 05:19-22
- Matthew 08:10
- Matthew 12:17
- Psalm 026:1-3
- Revelation 01:19-20

- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:04** The snake responded to the woman, "That is not **true**! You will not die."
- **14:06** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, "It is *_true_* that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the *_true_* God.
- **31:08** They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God."
- **39:10** "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H199, H389, H403, H529, H530, H543, H544, H551, H571, H935, H3321, H3330, H6237, H6656, H6965, H7187, H7189, G225, G226, G227, G228, G230, G1103, G3303, G3483, G3689, G4103, G4137

(Go back to: [Mark 5:33](#); [12:14](#); [12:32](#); [14:70](#); [15:39](#))

tunic

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “tunic” referred to a garment that was worn next to the skin, under other clothing.

- A tunic reached from the shoulders down to the waist or knees and was usually worn with a belt. Tunics worn by wealthy people sometimes had sleeves and reached down to the ankles.
- Tunics were made of leather, haircloth, wool, or linen, and were worn by both men and women.
- A tunic was normally worn under a longer over-garment, such as a toga or outer robe. In warmer weather a tunic was sometimes worn with no outer garment.
- This term could be translated as “long shirt” or “long undergarment” or “shirt-like garment.” It could also be written in a similar way to “tunic,” with a note to explain what kind of clothing it was.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See Also: [robe](#))

Bible References:

- Daniel 03:21-23
- Isaiah 22:21
- Leviticus 08:12-13
- Luke 03:11
- Mark 06:7-9
- Matthew 10:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2243, H3801, H6361, G5509

(Go back to: [Mark 6:9](#); [14:63](#))

turn, turn away, turn back, return

Definition:

To “turn” means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

- The term “turn” can also mean “turn around” to look behind or to face a different direction.
- To “turn back” or “turn away” means to “go back” or “go away” or “cause to go away.”
- To “turn away from” can mean to “stop” doing something or to reject someone.
- To “turn toward” someone means to look directly at that person.
- To “turn and leave” or “turn his back to leave” means to “go away.”
- To “turn back to” means to “start doing something again.”
- To “turn away from” means to “stop doing something.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “turn” can be translated as “change direction” or “go” or “move.”
- In some contexts, “turn” could be translated as “cause” (someone) to do something. To “turn (someone) away from” could be translated as “cause (someone) to go away” or “cause (someone) to stop.”
- The phrase “turn away from God” could be translated as “stop worshiping God.”
- The phrase “turn back to God” could be translated as “start worshiping God again.”
- When enemies “turn back,” it means they “retreat.” To “turn back the enemy” means to “cause the enemy to retreat.”
- Used figuratively, when Israel “turned to” false gods, they “started to worship” them. When they “turned away” from idols, they “stopped worshiping” them.
- When God “turned away from” his rebellious people, he “stopped protecting” or “stopped helping” them.
- The phrase “turn the hearts of the fathers to their children” could be translated as “cause fathers to care for their children again.”
- The expression “turn my honor into shame” could be translated as “cause my honor to become shame” or “dishonor me so that I am shamed” or “shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me.”
- “I will turn your cities into ruin” could be translated as “I will cause your cities to be destroyed” or “I will cause enemies to destroy your cities.”
- The phrase “turn into” could be translated as “become.” When Moses’ rod “turned into” a snake, it “became” a snake.” It could also be translated as “changed into.”

(See also: false god, [leprosy](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:02
- Acts 07:42
- Acts 11:21
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 01:17
- Malachi 04:06
- Revelation 11:06

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H541, H2015, H2017, H2186, H2559, H3943, H4672, H4740, H4878, H5186, H5253, H5414, H5437, H5472, H5493, H5528, H5627, H5753, H6437, H7227, H7725, H7734, H7750, H7760, H7847, H8159, H8447, G344, G387, G402, G654, G665, G868, G1294, G1578, G1612, G1624, G1994, G3179, G3313, G3329, G3344, G3346, G4762, G5157, G5290

(Go back to: [Mark 4:12](#); [5:30](#); [8:33](#); [14:40](#))

Tyre, Tyrians

Facts:

Tyre was an ancient Canaanite city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is now part of the modern-day country of Lebanon. Its people were called "Tyrians."

- Part of the city was located on an island in the sea, about one kilometer from the mainland.
- Because of its location and its valuable natural resources, such as cedar trees, Tyre had a prosperous trading industry and was very wealthy.
- King Hiram of Tyre sent wood from cedar trees and skilled laborers to help build a palace for King David.
- Years later, Hiram also sent King Solomon wood and skilled laborers to help build the temple. Solomon paid him with large amounts of wheat and olive oil.
- Tyre was often associated with the nearby ancient city of Sidon. These were the most important cities of the region of Canaan called Phoenicia.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Canaan, cedar, [Israel](#), the sea, Phoenicia, [Sidon](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 12:20
- Mark 03:7-8
- Matthew 11:22
- Matthew 15:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6865, H6876, G5183, G5184

(Go back to: [Mark 3:8](#); [7:24](#); [7:31](#))

understand, understanding, thinking

Definition:

The term “understand” means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term “understanding” can refer to “knowledge” or “wisdom” or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term “understand” could be translated by “know” or “believe” or “comprehend” or “know what (something) means.”
- Often the term “understanding” can be translated by “knowledge” or “wisdom” or “insight.”

(See also: [believe](#), [know](#), [wise](#))

Bible References:

- Job 34:16-17
- Luke 02:47
- Luke 08:10
- Matthew 13:12
- Matthew 13:14
- Proverbs 03:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H995, H998, H999, H1847, H2940, H3045, H3820, H3824, H4486, H7200, H7919, H7922, H7924, H8085, H8394, G50, G145, G191, G801, G1097, G1108, G1271, G1921, G1922, G1987, G1990, G2657, G3539, G3563, G4907, G4908, G4920, G5424, G5428, G5429

(Go back to: [Mark 4:12](#); [4:13](#); [6:52](#); [7:14](#); [7:18](#); [8:17](#); [8:21](#); [9:32](#); [12:33](#); [13:14](#); [14:68](#))

unleavened bread

Definition:

The term “unleavened bread” refers to bread that is made without yeast or other leavening. This kind of bread is flat because it has no leaven to make it rise.

- When God freed the Israelites from slavery in Egypt, he told them to flee Egypt quickly without waiting for their bread to rise. So they ate unleavened bread with their meal. Since then unleavened bread is used in their yearly Passover celebrations to remind them of that time.
- Since leaven sometimes is used as a picture of sin, “unleavened bread” represents the removal of sin from a person’s life in order to live in a way that honors God.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “bread with no yeast” or “flat bread that did not rise.”
- Make sure the translation of this term is consistent with how you translate the term “yeast, leaven.”
- In some contexts, the term “unleavened bread” refers to the “Feast of Unleavened Bread” and can be translated that way.

(See also: [bread](#), [Egypt](#), [feast](#), [Passover](#), [servant](#), [sin](#), [yeast](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- Acts 12:03
- Exodus 23:14-15
- Ezra 06:21-22
- Genesis 19:1-3
- Judges 06:21
- Leviticus 08:1-3
- Luke 22:01

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4682, G106

(Go back to: [Mark 14:1](#); [14:12](#))

vain, vanity

Definition:

The terms "vain" and "vanity" describe something that is useless or extremely temporary.

- In the Old Testament, idols are sometimes described as "vain" things that are worthless and cannot do anything.
- If something is done "in vain," it means that the effort or action did not accomplish what was intended. The phrase "in vain" might be translated in various ways, including: "without result;" "with no result;" "for no reason;" "for no purpose," or "with no purpose."
- Depending on the context, the term "vain" could be translated as "empty," "useless," "hopeless," "worthless," "meaningless," etc.

(See also: false god, [worthy](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:1-2
- 1 Samuel 25:21-22
- 2 Peter 02:18
- Isaiah 45:19
- Jeremiah 02:29-31
- Matthew 15:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1891, H1892, H2600, H7307, H7385, H7387, H7723, H8193, H8267, H8414, G945, G1500, G2756, G2758, G2761, G3151, G3152, G3153, G3155

(Go back to: [Mark 7:7](#); [12:3](#))

vine

Definition:

The term “vine” refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word “vine” in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

- In the Bible, the word “vine” almost always means “grapevine.”
- The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
- Jesus called himself the “vine” and called his people the “branches.” In this context, the word “vine” could also be translated as “grapevine stem” or “grape plant stem.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: grape, [vineyard](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 40:09
- Genesis 49:11
- John 15:01
- Luke 22:18
- Mark 12:03
- Matthew 21:35-37

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5139, H1612, H8321, G288, G290, G1009, G1092

(Go back to: [Mark 12:1](#); [14:25](#))

vineyard

Definition:

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

- A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
- God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Vineyard could be also translated as “grapevine garden” or “grape plantation.”

(See also: [grape](#), [Israel](#), [vine](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 09:20-21
- Luke 13:06
- Luke 20:15
- Matthew 20:02
- Matthew 21:40-41

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1612, H3754, H3755, H8284, G290

(Go back to: [Mark 12:1](#); [12:2](#); [12:8](#); [12:9](#))

voice

Definition:

The term "voice" refers to audible sound that a person makes when speaking or communicating. In the Bible, the term can be used figuratively to refer to the concepts of sound, communication, and/or obedience.

Translation Suggestions

- The expression "to hear someone's voice" can mean either "to hear someone speaking" or "to heed what someone says."
- The Bible describes God as "speaking" and having a "voice," even though God doesn't have a physical body in the same way a human being does.
- The term "voice" sometimes implies the presence of a person, as in this statement: "A voice is heard in the desert saying, 'Prepare the way of the Lord.'" This could be translated as "A person is heard calling out in the desert...." (See: [synecdoche](#))
- However, sometimes the word "voice" is used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the heavens have a "voice" that reaches the whole earth. This means that the objects in the sky communicate something to human beings about God the Creator. (See: [metaphor](#))

(See also: [call](#), [proclaim](#), splendor.)

Bible References:

- John 05:36-38
- Luke 01:42
- Luke 09:35
- Matthew 03:17
- Matthew 12:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6963, H7032, H7445, H8193, G2906, G5456

(Go back to: [Mark 1:3](#); [1:11](#); [1:26](#); [5:7](#); [9:7](#); [15:34](#))

walk, walked

Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as, “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [honor](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Kings 02:04
- Colossians 02:07
- Galatians 05:25
- Genesis 17:01
- Isaiah 02:05
- Jeremiah 13:10
- Micah 04:02

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1869, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, G1704, G4043, G4198, G4748

(Go back to: [Mark 2:9](#); [5:42](#); [6:48](#); [6:49](#); [7:5](#); [8:24](#); [11:27](#); [12:38](#))

waste, wasted, wasteland, becomes weak

Definition:

To waste something means to carelessly throw it away or to use it unwisely. Something that is a “wasteland” or a “waste” refers to land or a city that has been destroyed so that nothing lives in it anymore.

- The term “waste away” is an expression that means to become more and more sick or ruined. A person who is wasting away usually becomes very thin due to illness or lack of food.
- To “lay waste” to a city or land means to destroy it.
- Another word for a “wasteland” could be “desert” or “wilderness.” But a wasteland also implies that people used to live there and the land used to have trees and plants that produced food.

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 06:06
- Leviticus 26:39
- Matthew 26:08
- Revelation 18:15-17
- Zechariah 07:13-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H535, H1086, H1104, H1326, H2100, H2490, H2522, H2717, H2721, H2723, H3615, H3856, H4127, H4198, H4592, H4743, H5307, H5327, H7334, H7582, H7703, H7736, H7843, H8047, H8074, H8077, H8414, G684, G1287, G2049, G2673

(Go back to: [Mark 14:4](#))

watch (biblical time)

Definition:

In biblical times, a “watch” was a period of time at night during which a watchman or guard for a city would be on duty looking out for any danger from an enemy.

- In the Old Testament, the Israelites had three watches which were called “beginning” (sunset to 10 p.m.), “middle” (10 p.m. to 2 a.m.), and “morning” (2 a.m. to sunrise) watches.
- In the New Testament, the Jews followed the Roman system and had four watches, named simply “first” (sunset to 9 p.m.), “second” (9 p.m. to 12 midnight), “third” (12 midnight to 3 a.m.), and “fourth” (3 a.m. to sunrise) watches.
- These could also be translated with more general expressions such as “late evening” or “middle of the night” or “very early in the morning,” depending on which watch is being referred to.

(See also: [watch](#))

Bible References:

- Luke 12:37-38
- Mark 06:48-50
- Matthew 14:25-27
- Psalms 090:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H821, G5438

(Go back to: [Mark 6:48](#))

watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

Definition:

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:06
- Hebrews 13:17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 08:15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H821, H2370, H4929, H4931, H5027, H5341, H6486, H6822, H6836, H6974, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G69, G991, G1127, G1492, G2334, G2892, G3525, G3708, G3906, G4337, G4648, G5083, G5438

(Go back to: [Mark 3:2](#); [6:48](#); [13:33](#); [13:34](#); [13:35](#); [13:37](#); [14:34](#); [14:37](#); [14:38](#))

watchtower, tower

Definition:

The term “watchtower” refers to a tall structure built as a place from which guards could look out for any danger. These towers were often made of stone.

- Landowners sometimes built watchtowers from which they could guard their crops and protect them from being stolen.
- The towers often included rooms where the watchmen or family lived, so that they could guard the crops day and night.
- Watchtowers for cities were built higher than the city walls so that watchmen could see if any enemies were coming to attack the city.
- The term “watchtower” is also used as a symbol of protection from enemies. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [adversary](#), [watch](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:25-27
- Ezekiel 26:3-4
- Mark 12:1-3
- Matthew 21:33-34
- Psalm 062:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H803, H971, H975, H1785, H2918, H4026, H4029, H4692, H4707, H4869, H6076, H6438, H6836, G4444

(Go back to: [Mark 12:1](#))

water

Definition:

In addition to its primary meaning, “water” also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

- The term “waters” refers to bodies of water or many sources of water. It can also be a general reference for a large amount of water.
- A figurative use of “waters” refers to great distress, difficulties, and suffering. For example, God promises that when we “go through the waters” he will be with us.
- The phrase “many waters” emphasizes how great the difficulties are.
- To “water” livestock and other animals means to “provide water for” them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as the spring or fountain of “living waters” for his people. This means he is the source of spiritual power and refreshment.
- In the New Testament, Jesus used the phrase “living water” to refer to the Holy Spirit working in a person to transform and bring new life.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase, “draw water” could be translated as “pull water up from a well with a bucket.”
- “Streams of living water will flow from them” could be translated as “the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them like streams of water.” Instead of “blessings” the term “gifts” or “fruits” or “godly character” could be used.
- When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase “living water” could be translated as “water that gives life” or “lifegiving water.” In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
- Depending on the context, the term “waters” or “many waters” could be translated as “great suffering (that surrounds you like water)” or “overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)” or “large amounts of water.”

(See also: [life](#), [spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [power](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 08:36-38
- Exodus 14:21
- John 04:10
- John 04:14
- John 04:15
- Matthew 14:28-30

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2222, H4325, H4529, H4857, H7301, H7783, H8248, G504, G4215, G4222, G5202, G5204

(Go back to: [Mark 1:8](#); [1:10](#); [9:22](#); [9:41](#); [14:13](#))

will of God

Definition:

The “will of God” refers to God’s desires and plans.

- God’s will especially relates to his interactions with people and how he wants people to respond to him.
- It also refers to his plans or desires for the rest of his creation.
- The term to “will” means to “determine” or to “desire.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The “will of God” could also be translated as “what God desires” or “what God has planned” or “God’s purpose” or “what is pleasing to God.”

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:15-17
- 1 Thessalonians 04:3-6
- Colossians 04:12-14
- Ephesians 01:1-2
- John 05:30-32
- Mark 03:33-35
- Matthew 06:8-10
- Psalms 103:21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6310, H6634, H7522, G1012, G1013, G2307, G2308, G2309, G2596

(Go back to: [Mark 3:35](#))

wine, wineskin, new wine

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also referred to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: grape, [vine](#), [vineyard](#), [winepress](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:23
- Genesis 09:21
- Genesis 49:12
- John 02:3-5
- John 02:10
- Matthew 09:17
- Matthew 11:18

smashed

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G1098, G3631, G3820, G3943

(Go back to: [Mark 2:22](#); [15:23](#))

winepress

Definition:

During Bible times, a “winepress” was a large container or open place where the juice of grapes was extracted in order to make wine.

- In Israel, winepresses were usually large, wide basins that were dug out of solid rock. Clusters of grapes were put on the flat bottom of the hole and people trampled the grapes with their feet to get the grape juice to flow out.
- Usually a winepress had two levels, with the grapes being trampled in the top level so that the juice would run down into the lower level where it could be collected.
- The term “winepress” is also used figuratively in the Bible as a picture of God’s wrath being poured out on wicked people. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: grape, wrath)

Bible References:

- Isaiah 63:02
- Mark 12:01
- Matthew 21:33
- Revelation 14:20

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1660, H3342, H6333, G3025, G5276

(Go back to: [Mark 12:1](#))

wise, wisdom

Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: [obey](#), [fruit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 06:03
- Colossians 03:15-17
- Exodus 31:06
- Genesis 03:06
- Isaiah 19:12
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Matthew 07:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:05** She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- **18:01** When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- **23:09** Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- **45:01** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H998, H1350, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3823, H6195, H6493, H6912, H7535, H7919, H7922, H8454, G4678, G4679, G4680, G4920, G5428, G5429, G5430

(Go back to: [Mark 6:2](#))

Woe

Definition:

The term “woe” refers to a feeling of great distress. It also gives a warning that someone will experience severe trouble.

- The expression “woe to” is followed by a warning to people that they will experience suffering as punishment for their sins.
- In several places in the Bible, the word “woe” is repeated, to emphasize an especially terrible judgment.
- A person who says “woe is me” or “woe to me” is expressing sorrow about severe suffering.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “woe” could also be translated as “great sorrow” or “sadness” or “calamity” or “disaster.”
- Other ways to translate the expression “Woe to (name of city)” could include, “How terrible it will be for (name of city)” or “The people in (that city) will be severely punished” or “Those people will suffer greatly.”
- The expression, “Woe is me!” or “Woe to me!” could be translated as “How sad I am!” or “I am so sad!” or “How terrible this is for me!”
- The expression “Woe to you” could also be translated as “You will suffer terribly” or “You will experience terrible troubles.”

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 13:17-18
- Habakkuk 02:12
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Jeremiah 45:1-3
- Jude 01:9-11
- Luke 06:24
- Luke 17:1-2
- Matthew 23:23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H188, H190, H337, H480, H1929, H1945, H1958, G3759

(Go back to: [Mark 13:17](#); [14:21](#))

womb

Definition:

The term “womb” refers to where a baby grows inside its mother.

- This is an older term that is sometimes used in order to be polite and less direct. (See: [euphemism](#))
- A more modern term for womb is “uterus.”
- Some languages use a word like “belly” to refer to a woman’s womb or uterus.
- Use a word for this in the project language that is well-known, natural, and acceptable.

Bible References:

- Genesis 25:23
- Genesis 25:24-26
- Genesis 38:27-28
- Genesis 49:25
- Luke 02:21
- Luke 11:27
- Luke 23:29
- Matthew 19:12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H990, H4578, H7356, H7358, G1064, G2836, G3388

(Go back to: [Mark 13:17](#))

word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God’s message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God’s word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

The term “word of truth” is another way of referring to “God’s word,” which is his message or teaching. It does not refer to just one word.

- God’s word of truth includes everything that God has taught people about himself, his creation, and his plan of salvation through Jesus.
- This term emphasizes the fact that what God has told us is true, faithful, and real.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “the message of Yahweh” or “God’s message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God’s words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”
- When “word” occurs alone and it refers to God’s word, it could be translated as “the message” or “God’s word” or “the teachings.” Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.
- When the Bible refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Truth.”
- “Word of truth” could be translated as “God’s true message” or “God’s word, which is true.”
- It is important for the translation of this term to include the meaning of being true.

(See also: [prophet](#), [true](#), Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:01
- 1 Kings 13:01
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 08:11
- John 05:39
- Acts 06:02
- Acts 12:24
- Romans 01:02
- 2 Corinthians 06:07
- Ephesians 01:13
- 2 Timothy 03:16

- James 01:18
- James 02:8-9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:07** In **God's word** he commands his people, "Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him."
- **33:06** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the **word of God**."
- **42:03** Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- **42:07** Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled." Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**."
- **45:10** Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- **48:12** But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**."
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H561, H565, H1697, H3068, G3056, G4487

(Go back to: [Mark 4:15](#); [4:16](#); [4:17](#); [4:18](#); [4:19](#); [4:20](#); [4:33](#); [7:13](#); [12:10](#); [12:24](#); [13:31](#); [14:49](#))

work, works, deeds

Definition:

The term “work” refers generally either to the action of expending effort in order to accomplish something, or to the result of that action. The term “works” refers generally to actions as a whole (that is, things that have been done or that need to be done).

- In the Bible, these terms are commonly used both in reference to God and humans.
- When used in reference to God, the term “work” in the Bible often refers to God's action of creating the universe or saving his people (either from enemies, from sin, or both).
- God's works refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place.
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “works” could be “deeds” or “actions” or “things that are done.”
- God's “works” or “deeds” or the “work of his hands” could also be translated as “miracles” or “mighty acts” or “things that God does.”
- The expression “the work of God” could be translated as “the things that God is doing” or “the miracles God does” or “everything that God has accomplished.”
- The term “work” can just be the singular of “works” as in “every good work” or “every good deed.”
- When work is done for God or others, it can be translated as “service” or “ministry.”

(See also: [fruit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [miracle](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:12
- Acts 02:8-11
- Daniel 04:37
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Galatians 02:15-16
- James 02:17
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Micah 02:07
- Romans 03:28
- Titus 03:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4566, H4567, H4611, H4659, H5949, G2041

(Go back to: [Mark 13:34](#); [14:6](#))

world, worldly

Definition:

The term “world” usually refers to the part of the universe where people live: the earth. The term “worldly” describes the evil values and behaviors of people living in this world.

- In its most general sense, the term “world” refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.
- In many contexts, “world” actually means “people in the world.”
- Sometimes it is implied that this refers to the evil people on earth or the people who do not obey God.
- The apostles also used “world” to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. This can include self-righteous religious practices which are based on human efforts.
- People and things characterized by these values are said to be “worldly.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “world” could also be translated as “universe” or “people of this world” or “corrupt things in the world” or “evil attitudes of people in the world.”
- The phrase “all the world” often means “many people” and refers to the people living in a certain region. For example, “all the world came to Egypt” could be translated as “many people from the surrounding countries came to Egypt” or “people from all the countries surrounding Egypt came there.”
- Another way to translate “all the world went to their hometown to be registered in the Roman census” would be “many of the people living in regions ruled by the Roman empire went...”
- Depending on the context, the term “worldly” could be translated as, “evil” or “sinful” or “selfish” or “ungodly” or “corrupt” or “influenced by the corrupt values of people in this world.”
- The phrase “saying these things in the world” can be translated as “saying these things to the people of the world.”
- In other contexts, “in the world” could also be translated as “living among the people of the world” or “living among ungodly people.”

(See also: corrupt, [heaven](#), Rome, godly)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:15
- 1 John 04:05
- 1 John 05:05
- John 01:29
- Matthew 13:36-39

Word Data:

- Strong's: H776, H2309, H2465, H5769, H8398, G1093, G2886, G2889, G3625

(Go back to: [Mark 8:36](#); [14:9](#))

worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless

Definition:

The term “worthy” describes someone or something that deserves respect or honor. To “have worth” means to be valuable or important. The term “worthless” means to not have any value.

- Being worthy is related to being valuable or having importance
- To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any special notice.
- To not feel worthy means to feel less important than someone else or to not feel deserving of being treated with honor or kindness.
- The term “unworthy” and the term “worthless” have related, but different meanings. To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any honor or recognition. To be “worthless” means to not have any purpose or value.

Translation Suggestions:

- “Worthy” could be translated as “deserving” or “important” or “valuable.”
- The word “worth” could be translated as “value” or “importance.”
- The phrase to “have worth” could also be translated as to “be valuable” or to “be important.”
- The phrase “is worth more than” could be translated as “is more valuable than.”
- Depending on the context, the term, “unworthy” could also be translated as “unimportant” or “dishonorable” or “undeserving.”
- The term “worthless” could be translated as “with no value” or “with no purpose” or “worth nothing.”

(See also: [honor](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 22:04
- 2 Thessalonians 01:11-12
- Acts 13:25
- Acts 25:25-27
- Acts 26:31
- Colossians 01:9-10
- Jeremiah 08:19
- Mark 01:07
- Matthew 03:10-12
- Philippians 01:25-27

Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H639, H1929, H3644, H4242, H4373, H4392, H4592, H4941, H6994, H7386, H7939, G96, G514, G515, G516, G2425, G2661, G2735

(Go back to: [Mark 1:7](#))

wrong, wronged, wrongdoer, mistreat, hurt, hurtful

Definition:

To “wrong” someone means to treat that person unjustly and dishonestly.

- The term “mistreat” means to act badly or roughly toward someone, causing physical or emotional harm to that person.
- The term “hurt” is more general and means to “cause someone harm in some way.” It often has the meaning of “physically injure.”
- Depending on the context, these terms could also be translated as “do wrong to” or, “treat unjustly” or “cause harm to” or treat in a harmful way” or “injure.”

Bible References:

- Acts 07:26
- Exodus 22:21
- Genesis 16:05
- Luke 06:28
- Matthew 20:13-14
- Psalms 071:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H816, H2248, H2250, H2255, H2257, H2398, H2554, H2555, H3238, H3637, H4834, H5062, H5142, H5230, H5627, H5753, H5766, H5791, H5792, H5916, H6031, H6087, H6127, H6231, H6485, H6565, H6586, H7451, H7489, H7563, H7665, H7667, H7686, H8133, H8267, H8295, G91, G92, G93, G95, G264, G824, G983, G984, G1536, G1626, G1651, G1727, G1908, G2556, G2558, G2559, G2607, G3076, G3077, G3762, G4122, G5195, G5196

(Go back to: [Mark 15:14](#))

year

Definition:

When used literally, the term “year” in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

- A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into twelve months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
- In both calendar systems a year has twelve months. But an extra thirteenth month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is eleven days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
- In the Bible, the term “year” is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, “the year of Yahweh” or “in the year of drought” or “the favorable year of the Lord.” In these contexts, “year” could be translated as “time” or “season” or “time period.”

(See also: month)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:31
- Acts 19:8-10
- Daniel 08:01
- Exodus 12:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H7620, H7657, H8140, H8141, G1763, G2094

(Go back to: [Mark 5:25](#); [5:42](#))

yeast, leaven, unleavened

Definition:

“Leaven” is a general term for a substance that causes bread dough to expand and rise. “Yeast” is a specific kind of leaven.

- In some English translations, the word for leaven is translated as “yeast,” which is a modern leavening agent that fills the bread dough with gas bubbles, making the dough expand before baking it. The yeast is kneaded into the dough so that it spreads throughout the entire lump of dough.
- In Old Testament times, the leavening or rising agent was produced by allowing the dough to sit for awhile. Small amounts of dough from a previous batch of dough were saved as leavening for the next batch.
- When the Israelites escaped from Egypt, they didn’t have time to wait for bread dough to rise, so they made bread without leaven to take with them on their journey. As a reminder of this, every year the Jewish people celebrate Passover by eating bread that has no leaven in it.
- The term “leaven” or “yeast” is used figuratively in the Bible as a picture of how sin spreads through a person’s life or how sin can influence other people.
- It can also refer to false teaching which often spreads to many people and influences them.
- The term “leaven” is also used in a positive way to explain how the influence of God’s kingdom spreads from person to person.

Translation Suggestions

- This could be translated as “leaven” or “substance that causes dough to rise” or “expanding agent.” The word “rise” could be expressed as “expand” or “get bigger” or “puff up.”
- If a local leavening agent is used for making bread dough rise, that term can be used. If the language has a well-known, general term that means, “leavening,” this would be the best term to use.

(See also: Egypt, [Passover](#), [unleavened bread](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 12:08
- Galatians 05:9-10
- Luke 12:1
- Luke 13:21
- Matthew 13:33
- Matthew 16:08

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2556, H2557, H4682, H7603, G106, G2219, G2220

(Go back to: [Mark 8:15](#))

Zebedee

Facts:

Zebedee was a fisherman from Galilee who is known because of his sons, James and John, who were Jesus' disciples. They are often identified in the New Testament as the "sons of Zebedee."

- Zebedee's sons were also fishermen and worked with him to catch fish.
- James and John quit their fishing work with their father Zebedee and left to go follow Jesus.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [disciple](#), [fishermen](#), [James \(son of Zebedee\)](#), [John \(the apostle\)](#))

Bible References:

- John 21:1-3
- Luke 05:8-11
- Mark 01:19-20
- Matthew 04:21-22
- Matthew 20:20
- Matthew 26:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2199

(Go back to: [Mark 1:19](#); [1:20](#); [3:17](#); [10:35](#))

Contributors

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community

Aaron Fenlason

Abner Bauman

Adam Van Goor

Alan Bird

Alan Borkenhagen

Alfred Van Dellen

Alice Wright

Allen Bair

Allyson Presswood Nance

Amanda Adams

Andrew Belcher

Andrew Johnson

Andrew Rice

Angelo Palo

Anita Moreau

April Linton

Aurora Lee

Barbara Summers

Barbara White

Becky Hancock

Beryl Carpenter

Bethany Fenlason

Betty Forbes

Bianca Elliott

Bill Cleveland

Bill Pruett

Bob Britting

Bram van den Heuvel

Brian Metzger

Bruce Bridges

Bruce Collier

Bruce Smith

Caleb Worgess

Carlyle Kilmore

Carol Pace

Carol Heim

Caroline Crawford

Caroline Fleming

Caroline S Wong

Carol Lee

Carol Moyer

Carolyn Lafferty

Catherine C Newton

Charese Jackson

Charlotte Gibson

Charlotte Hobbs

Cheryl A Chojnacki
Cheryl Stieben
Cheryl Warren
Christian Berry
Christine Harrison
Clairmene Pascal
Connie Bryan
Connie Goss
Craig Balden
Craig Lins
Craig Scott
Cynthia J Puckett
Dale Hahs
Dale Masser
Daniel Lauk
Daniel Summers
Darlene M Hopkins
Darlene Silas
David Boerschlein
David F Withee
David Glover
David J Forbes
David Mullen
David N Hanley
David Sandlin
David Shortess
David Smith
David Whisler
Debbie Nispel
Debbie Piper
Deborah Bartow
Deborah Bush
Deborah Miniard
Dennis Jackson
Dianne Forrest
Donna Borkenhagen
Donna Mullis
Douglas Hayes
Drew Curley
Ed Davis
Edgar Navera
Edward Kosky
Edward Quigley
Elaine VanRegenmorter
Elizabeth Nataly Silvestre Herbas
Ellen Lee
Emeline Thermidor
Emily Lee
Esther Roman
Esther Trew
Esther Zirk
Ethel Lynn Baker
Evangeline Puen
Evelyn Wildgust
Fletcher Coleman

Freda Dibble
Gail Spell
Gary Greer
Gary Shogren
Gay Ellen Stulp
Gene Gossman
George Arlyn Briggs
Gerald L. Naughton
Glen Tallent
Grace Balwit
Grace Bird
Greg Stoffregen
Gretchen Stencil
Hallie Miller
Harry Harriss
Heather Hicks
Helen Morse
Hendrik deVries
Henry Bult
Henry Whitney
Hilary O'Sullivan
Ibrahim Audu
Ines Gipson
Irene J Dodson
Jackie Jones
Jacqueline Bartley
James Giddens
James Pedersen
James Pohlig
James Roe
Janet O'Herron
Janice Connor
Jaqueline Rotruck
Jeanette Friesen
Jeff Graf
Jeff Kennedy
Jeff Martin
Jennifer Cunneen
Jenny Thomas
Jerry Lund
Jessica Lauk
Jim Frederick
Jim Lee
Jimmy Warren
Jim Rotruck
Jim Swartzentruber
Jody Garcia
Joe Chater
Joel Bryan
Joey Howell
John Anderson
John Geddis
John D Rogers
John Hutchins
John Luton

John Pace
John P Tornifolio
Jolene Valeu
Jon Haahr
Joseph Fithian
Joseph Greene
Joseph Wharton
Joshua Berkowitz
Joshua Calhoun
Joshua Rister
Josh Wondra
Joy Anderson
Joyce Jacobs
Joyce Pedersen
JT Crowder
Judi Brodeen
Judith Cline
Judith C Yon
Julia N Bult
Patty Li
Julie Susanto
Kahar Barat
Kannah Sellers
Kara Anderson
Karen Davie
Karen Dreesen
Karen Fabean
Karen Riecks
Karen Smith
Karen Turner
Kathleen Glover
Kathryn Hendrix
Kathy Mentink
Katrina Geurink
Kay Myers
Kelly Strong
Ken Haugh
Kim Puterbaugh
Kristin Butts Page
Kristin Rinne
Kwesi Opoku-debrah
Langston Spell
Larry Sallee
Lawrence Lipe
Lee Sipe
Leonard Smith
Lester Harper
Lia Hadley
Linda Buckman
Linda Dale Barton
Linda Havemeier
Linda Homer
Linda Lee Sebastien
Linn Peterson
Liz Dakota

Lloyd Box
Luis Keelin
Madeline Kilmore
Maggie D Paul
Marc Nelson
Mardi Welo
Margo Hoffman
Marilyn Cook
Marjean Swann
Marjorie Francis
Mark Albertini
Mark Chapman
Mark Thomas
Marselene Norton
Mary Jane Davis
Mary Jean Stout
Mary Landon
Mary Scarborough
Megan Kidwell
Melissa Roe
Merton Dibble
Meseret Abraham-Zemedet
Michael Bush
Michael Connor
Michael Francis
Michael Geurink
Mike Tisdell
Mickey White
Miel Horrilleno
Monique Greer
Morgan Mellette
Morris Anderson
Nancy C. Naughton
Nancy Neu
Nancy VanCott
Neal Snook
Nicholas Scovil
Nick Dettman
Nils Friberg
Noah Crabtree
Pamela B Johnston
Pamela Nungesser
Pamela Roberts
Pam Gullifer
Pat Ankney
Pat Giddens
Patricia Brougher
Patricia Carson
Patricia Cleveland
Patricia Foster
Patricia Middlebrooks
Paul Mellema
Paula Carlson
Paula Oestreich
Paul Holloway

Paul Nungesser
Peggy Anderson
Peggyrose Swartzentruber
Peter Polloni
Phillip Harms
Phyllis Mortensen
Priscilla Enggren
Rachel Agheyisi
Rachel Ropp
Raif Turner
Ray Puen
Reina Y Mora
Rene Bahrenfuss
Renee Triplett
Rhonda Bartels
Richard Beatty
Richard Moreau
Richard Rutter
Richard Stevens
Rick Keaton
Robby Little
Robert W Johnson
Rochelle Hook
Rodney White
Rolaine Franz
Ronald D Hook
Rosario Baria
Roxann Carey
Roxanne Pittard
Ruben Michael Garay
Russell Isham
Russ Perry
Ruth Calo
Ruth E Withee
Ruth Montgomery
Ryan Blizek
Sam Todd
Samuel Njuguna
Sandy Anderson
Sandy Blanes
Sara Giesmann
Sara Van Cott (Barnes)
Sharon Johnson
Sharon Peterson
Sharon Shortess
Shelly Harms
Sherie Nelson
Sherman Sebastien
Sherry Mosher
Stacey Swanson
Steve Gibbs
Steve Mercier
Susan Langohr
Susan Quigley
Susan Snook

Suzanne Richards
Sylvia Thomas
Sze Suze Lau
Tabitha Price
Tammy L Enns
Tammy White
Teresa Everett-Leone
Teresa Linn
Terri Collins
Theresa Baker
Thomas Jopling
Thomas Nickell
Thomas Warren
Tim Coleman
Tim Ingram
Tim Linn
Tim Lovestrand
Tim Mentink
Tom Penry
Tom William Warren
Toni Shuma
Tracie Pogue
Tricia Coffman
Vicki Ivester
Victoria G DeKraker
Victor M Prieto
Vivian Kamph
Vivian Richardson
Ward Pyles
Warren Blaisdell
Wayne Homer
Wendy Coleman
Wendy Colon
Wilbur Zirk
Wil Gipson
William Carson
William Cline
William Dickerson
William Smitherman
William Wilder
Yvonne Tallent

unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
David Trombold, M. Div.
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages

James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
David Trombold
Dean Ropp
Gene Mullen
James Vigen
Leonard Smith
Nicholas Alsop
Michael Francis
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
David Trombold, M. Div.
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
David Trombold
Dean Ropp
Gene Mullen
James Vigen
Leonard Smith
Nicholas Alsop
Michael Francis
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages

Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Henry Whitney, BA in Linguistics
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Ben Jore, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.
Joel D. Ruark, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Theology
Todd L. Price, PhD in New Testament/Linguistics
Bev Staley
Carol Brinneman
Jody Garcia
Kara Anderson
Kim Puterbaugh
Lizz Carlton
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors

Andrew Belcher
David Book
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982–2000
Larry Saltee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Lizz Carlton
Jan Zanutto
Matthew Latham
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Richard Joki
Door43 World Missions Community